The Sanskrit Language

T. Burrow
The
Sanskrit Language

T. Burrow
The discovery of the Sanskrit language by European scholars at the end of the eighteenth century was the starting point from which developed the study of the comparative philology of the Indo-European languages and eventually the whole science of modern linguistics. In spite of this there does not exist in English any book presenting a systematic account of Sanskrit in its relation to the other Indo-European languages. One may even go further and say that there is no work in any language which adequately fulfils this purpose. Wackernagel's great work, begun sixty years ago, still remains to be completed, although, with the recent appearance of a further instalment, its completion has been brought nearer. Thumb's Handbuch des Sanskrit which was of service to many generations of students is now very much dated, and always fell between the two stools of trying to be an elementary text-book of Sanskrit and a treatise on its comparative grammar at the same time.

On account of its antiquity and well-preserved structure Sanskrit is of unique importance for the study of Indo-European, and an up-to-date account of its comparative grammar is necessary, not only to students of Sanskrit itself, but also to those interested in any branch of Indo-European philology. Consequently when I was asked to contribute a book on Sanskrit to the series The Great Languages, it was clear that by concentrating on the study of Sanskrit from this point of view the greatest need would be met. This is particularly true since for the history of Indo-Aryan inside India, from Sanskrit down to modern times, students already have at their disposal the excellent work of Jules Bloch.

Providing a reliable account of Sanskrit in its relation to Indo-European is at the present moment not altogether a simple matter. Forty years ago there existed a generally agreed doctrine of Indo-European theory which had been systematically presented in the early years of the century in Brugmann's Grundriss. At that time it would merely have been a question
of adopting this corpus of agreed doctrine to the needs of the student and general reader, and of the particular language described. Since then the discovery of Hittite has revolutionised Indo-European studies and a considerable part of the older theory has been unable to stand up to the new evidence. Consequently Indo-European studies can now be said to be in a state of flux. New theories have appeared, and are clearly necessary, but the process is not yet completed. There is no generally received body of doctrine replacing the old, and many of the fundamental points at issue remain disputed. Furthermore attention has tended to be largely concentrated on phonetic questions raised by Hittite, and matters of morphology, on which its evidence is also of fundamental importance, have been less exhaustively studied.

In these circumstances I have attempted to present a reasonably consistent account of the comparative grammar of Sanskrit based on the evaluation of the new evidence. A work like this is not the place to enter into discussion of the various conflicting theories that are in the field, if only for reasons of space, and bibliographical references have been systematically omitted. What has been written in recent years on these problems has been taken into account, and such theories as appear acceptable are incorporated in this exposition. It is hoped that it will go some way to providing an up-to-date synthesis of a subject which in its present state is hardly accessible outside the widely scattered specialist literature.

The study of Sanskrit has advanced recently in another direction also. Investigation of the influence of the pre-Aryan languages of India on Sanskrit and on Indo-Aryan in its later stages, has shown that this is considerable and solid results have been achieved. As far as the structure of the language is concerned, particularly in its early stage, which is the only one relevant to the comparative study of Indo-European, this influence hardly counts at all. On the other hand in the field of vocabulary it is very important that the Indo-European and non-Indo-European elements should be separated. The last chapter of the book contains a summary of the main findings on the part of the subject so far as established at the present stage. Future work will no doubt add more.

T. Burrow
PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION

A number of alterations to the text of the *The Sanskrit Language* have been made in this edition, the principal ones being as follows. In Chapter I the latter part of Section 6 has been rewritten to conform with the now prevailing opinion that the Aryan vestiges of the ancient Near East are to be connected specifically with Indo-Aryan. Also rewritten are Section 11 and (in part) Section 17 of Chapter III to take account of the conclusions reached on those topics in the articles of mine which are quoted in the Appendix. Chapter VIII has been renamed Loanwords in Sanskrit, so that loanwords from Greek and Iranian (Section 2) can be dealt with in it as well as loanwords from Austro-Asiatic and Dravidian (Section 1). The list of loanwords from Dravidian in this chapter has been shortened by the omission of some items now considered to be false or dubious.

At the end an Appendix has been added containing references to the most important contributions to the subject which have appeared since 1955, and also some supplementary notes.

September 1972

T. Burrow
CONTENTS

PREFACE page v

I. SANSKRIT AND INDO-EUROPEAN 1

II. OUTLINES OF THE HISTORY OF SANSKRIT 35

III. PHONOLOGY 67

IV. THE FORMATION OF NOUNS 118

V. THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS 220

VI. NUMERALS, PRONOUNS, INDECLINABLES 258

VII. THE VERB 289

VIII. LOANWORDS IN SANSKRIT 374

APPENDIX TO THE THIRD EDITION 390

SELECT BIBLIOGRAPHY 399

INDEX 402
SANSKRIT AND INDO-EUROPEAN

§ 1. INDO-ARYAN AND INDO-IRANIAN

In the greater part of India today languages are spoken which are derived from a single form of speech which was introduced into India by invaders from the north-west more than three thousand years ago. The invading peoples were known in their own language as ārya-, a word which is also commonly used as an adjective meaning 'noble, honourable'. Behind them in Central Asia remained kindred peoples who eventually occupied the plateau of Iran, as well as large tracts of Central Asia. These peoples used the same name of themselves, in Avestan airya-, and from the genitive plural of this word the modern name Êrân is ultimately derived. In conformance with this usage the term Aryan is now used as the common name of these peoples and their languages; alternatively the term Indo-Iranian is commonly used. To distinguish the Indian branch from the Iranian, the term Indo-Aryan has been coined, and as applied to language, it covers the totality of languages and dialects derived from this source from the earliest times to the present day. It is practical to distinguish three periods, Old, Middle and Modern Indo-Aryan. The classical form of Old Indo-Aryan eventually came to be designated by the term Sanskrit- meaning 'polished, cultivated, correct (according to the rules of grammar)', in contradistinction to Prākṛta the speech of the uneducated masses, which was the same Indo-Aryan in origin, but was subject to a process of steady change and evolution. As a term to distinguish Indo-Aryan from the non-Aryan languages the adjective ārya- was used in opposition to mlecchā- 'barbarian'. In addition we may note that one of the terms for 'speech', bhāratī (sc. vāk) had originally an ethnic sense, meaning 'language of the Bharatas'.

1 At an early period the most prominent of the Indo-Aryan tribes, whence also the indigenous name of India bhārata(-varṣa),
Sanskrit in its narrower sense applies to standard classical Sanskrit as regulated by the grammarians but may be conveniently used more widely as equivalent to Old Indo-Aryan. In this sense it covers both classical Sanskrit and the pre-classical or Vedic language. Middle Indo-Aryan, that is Prakrit in the widest sense of the term, comprises three successive stages of development: (1) The earliest stage is represented in literature by Pāli, the language of the canonical writings of the Thera-vāda school of Buddhism. This is a language of the centuries immediately preceding the Christian era. On the same level of development are the various dialects recorded in the inscriptions of Aśoka (c. 250 B.C.), and also the language of other early inscriptions. (2) Prakrit in the narrower sense of the word, or Standard Literary Prakrit, represents the stage of development reached some centuries after the Christian era. It is found mainly in the Drama and in the religious writings of the Jains. The various literary forms of Prakrit were stabilised by grammarians at this period and, as a written language, it remains essentially unchanged during the succeeding centuries. (3) Apabhramśa is known from texts of the tenth century A.D. but as a literary language it was formed some centuries earlier. It represents the final stage of Middle Indo-Aryan, the one immediately preceding the emergence of the Modern Indo-Aryan languages. The Modern languages, Bengali, Hindi, Gujarati, Marathi, etc., begin to be recorded from about the end of the first millennium A.D., and from then their development can be followed as they gradually acquire their present-day form.

Thus we have before us in India three thousand years of continuous linguistic history, recorded in literary documents. During the course of this period a single, and originally alien idiom has spread over the greater part of the country, and, evolving by slow degrees, has resulted in the various languages now spoken in Northern and Central India. Enormous changes have taken place during this time, and the languages we meet today are very different indeed from the ancient speech spoken by the invading Aryan tribes. Nevertheless the documentation available enables us to follow in detail the various intermediate stages of development and to observe how, by changes hardly noticeable from generation to generation, an original language has altered into descendant languages which superficially at any rate, are now barely recognisable as the same.
The earliest document of the linguistic history of Indo-Aryan is the *Rgveda*, which, by rough guess-work, is placed in the region of 1000 B.C. The language we find there is the source from which all later developments in India have arisen. But this language itself had evolved out of a yet earlier form of speech, by precisely the same kind of slow change and alteration which caused it to evolve later into something else. This earlier evolution is unrecorded by any direct documentation, but it can be reconstructed in considerable detail by means of comparison with related languages. By this method two stages in the prehistory of the language can be established: (1) By comparison of early Indo-Aryan with the very closely related Iranian, it is possible to form a fairly accurate idea of the original Indo-Iranian or Aryan language from which both have evolved. (2) By comparing Indo-Aryan and Iranian with the other Indo-European languages (enumerated below) it is possible also to go beyond this, and to reconstruct in general outline the characteristics of the original language from which all these are derived.

Since Iranian in view of its very close relationship with Indo-Aryan is of the first importance for the study of Indo-Aryan philology, a short account of its distribution and documentation is desirable. The migration of the Indo-Aryans to India brought about, or perhaps was the final stage of, the separation of the primitive Aryan community into two distinct divisions which henceforth evolved separately in linguistic as in other respects. The Iranians left behind in the region of the Oxus valley proceeded to expand rapidly in various directions, occupying not only the Iranian plateau which remained their centre of gravity, but also large tracts of Central Asia, extending on the one hand to the confines of China and on the other hand to the plains of South Russia. From an early period Iranian showed a much stronger tendency to differentiation into separate dialects which soon became independent languages than was the case with Indo-Aryan, which for geographical and other reasons maintained a comparative unity over most of North India for a very long period.

For the old period Iranian is represented by documents in Avestan and Old Persian, and it is these texts which are of

1 A recollection of Chorasmia as their original home is preserved in the traditions of the ancient Iranians.
prime importance for comparison with Vedic Sanskrit. Avesta is the name given to the ancient collection of sacred writings preserved by the adherents of the Zoroastrian religion, and it is after this that the language is named. It is an eastern Iranian dialect, the exact location of which has not been precisely determined. The oldest section of the Avesta, the Gāhās are attributed to Zoroaster himself. Concerning his date there has been much dispute, and it seems that the traditional date of the Zoroastrians themselves, which places him around 600 B.C. can hardly be correct. The language of the Gāhās is no less ancient than that of the Rgveda, and for this and other reasons the composition of the two texts must belong roughly to the same period. Old Persian, a south-western dialect, and one showing tendencies to modernisation in comparison with the earliest Avestan, is preserved in inscriptions of the Achaemenian kings in a special cuneiform alphabet invented for the purpose.

The relations between this ancient Iranian and the language of the Veda are so close that it is not possible satisfactorily to study one without the other. Grammatically the differences are very small; the chief differentiation in the earliest period lies in certain characteristic and well-defined phonetic changes which have affected Iranian on the one hand and Indo-Aryan on the other. It is quite possible to find verses in the oldest portion of the Avesta, which simply by phonetic substitutions according to established laws can be turned into intelligible Sanskrit. The greater part of the vocabulary is held in common and a large list could be provided of words shared between the two which are absent from the rest of Indo-European. This resemblance is particularly striking in the field of culture and religion, and may be illustrated by a few examples: Skt. hiranya-, Av. zaranya- ‘gold’, Skt. sēnā, Av. haēnā, O. Pers. hainā ‘army’, Skt. ṛṣī-, Av., O. Pers. aršī- ‘spear’, Skt. kṣatrá-, Av. xšaβra- ‘sovereignty’, Skt. āsura-, Av. ahura- ‘lord’, Skt. yajñā-, Av. yāsna- ‘sacrifice’, Skt. hōtar-, Av. zaotar- ‘sacrificing priest’, Skt. sōma-, Av. haoma- ‘the sacred drink Soma’, Skt. āharvan- ‘a class of priest’, Av. ahaurvan-, ābravan- ‘fire-priest’, Skt. aryaman-, Av. airyaman- ‘member of a religious sodality’. In the same way we find the names of divinities and mythological personages held in common, e.g., Skt. Mitrā-, Av. mīthra-, Skt. Yama-, son of Vivāsvant-, Av. Yima, son of Vivāsvant-, Skt. Apām Nāpāt, Av. apām napāt
'Grandson of the waters' (a divinity), etc. In this field, however, movements of religious reform with which the name of Zarathuštra is associated have tended to alter the picture from the Iranian side. For instance Av. *daēva-* , O. Pers. *daiva-* , corresponding to Sanskrit *deva-* 'god' has acquired the meaning of 'devil'. In the same way some Vedic divinities appear in the Avesta as evil spirits: Skt. *Indra-* , Nāsatyā- : Av. *Indra,* Nāṣatya-. The material for Old Iranian is somewhat restricted both as to quantity and as regards the number of dialects represented. For the Middle Iranian period, thanks mainly to discoveries of the present century, the documentation is much wider. We now have, in addition to Middle Persian proper (Pahlavī) extensive documents in two important East Iranian languages which are not represented in the early period, namely Sogdian and Saka (mainly in the dialect of Khotan, but with a few texts in a neighbouring dialect). The publication and interpretation of the material in these languages has progressed rapidly and successfully, but the results are not yet in the main available in a form easily accessible to students of general Indo-Aryan or Indo-European philology. Eventually a considerable contribution should be available from this source, because, although they cannot compete in antiquity with the Avestan and Old Persian texts, they constitute independent branches of Iranian which were not previously known and therefore have preserved things which were lost elsewhere from an early period.\(^1\)

In the mediaeval period the domain of Iranian became very much restricted, mainly on account of Turkish expansion. Over large tracts of Central Asia Iranian has long since died out. It has remained principally in Iran or Persia proper, where modern Persian can look back to a continuous literary tradition of over a thousand years. On the periphery of this area, particularly on the Indo-Iranian frontier, there are still many minor languages surviving in small areas, and one which is still important, namely Paštō, the official language of Afghanistan. At the other side of the territory in the Northern Caucasus Ossetic still survives from one of the numerous Iranian invasions of South Russia.

---

\(^1\) For instance the IE word for ' (young) pig ', Lat. *porcus*, Lith. *pašas*, was not previously known in Indo-Iranian, but has now turned up in Khotanese: *pāśa-*.
§ 2. PRIMITIVE INDO-EUROPEAN

The Indo-Iranian languages which have been briefly outlined form together one branch of the Indo-European family. The discovery of the historical relationship of the members of the Indo-European family was a direct result of the discovery of the Sanskrit language and literature by European scholars towards the close of the eighteenth century. The similarity of the Sanskrit language, both in grammar and vocabulary to the classical languages of Europe is so far-reaching that scholars familiar with Latin and Greek could not fail to be struck by the resemblance. Since up to this time there had existed no clear idea of the real nature of the development of languages and of their relations with each other, the explanation of this unexpected but quite undeniable affinity could not be provided without a completely new and scientific approach to the study of language. In his famous address to the Royal Asiatic Society of Bengal in 1786, Sir William Jones indicated in broad outlines the significance of the new discovery:

'The Sanscrit language, whatever be its antiquity, is of wonderful structure; more perfect than the Greek, more copious than the Latin, and more exquisitely refined than either; yet bearing to both of them a stronger affinity both in the roots of verbs and the forms of grammar, than could possibly have been produced by accident; so strong indeed that no philologer could examine them at all without believing them to have sprung from some common source, which perhaps no longer exists. There is a similar reason though not quite so forcible, for supposing that both the Gothick and the Celtick, though blended with a different idiom, had the same origin with the Sanscrit; and the old Persian might be added to the same family.'

The truth of these remarks has been adequately demonstrated by the subsequent development of the science of Comparative Philology, which dates from this time. During the past century and a half the languages of the Indo-European family have been the subject of intensive scientific study. The main features of the parent language have been reliably reconstructed, and the historical and prehistorical development of the several branches has been worked out in detail. The methods and principles employed have been subject to pro-
gressive improvement and refinement, and new discoveries have continued and still continue to produce a wider and deeper understanding of the subject. The methods first evolved in the study of the Indo-European languages have further been successfully employed in the study of independent linguistic families (Semitic, Finno-ugrian, Bantu, etc.). The whole science of linguistics has come into existence as a result of the stimulus provided by the discovery of Sanskrit.

The Indo-European languages are divided into ten major branches, in addition to which there are known to have been other branches which have died out without leaving adequate record. The ten major branches are as follows:

I. Aryan or Indo-Iranian, summarised above.

II. Baltic (Lithuanian, Lettish and the extinct Old Prussian) and Slavonic (Old Church Slavonic or Old Bulgarian, Russian, Polish, Czech, Serbo-Croatian, Bulgarian, etc.). These two groups are very closely related to each other, though not as closely as Indo-Aryan and Iranian. There are some ancient divergencies between them which make it impossible to reconstruct a primitive Balto-Slavonic language, intermediate between Indo-European and the existing languages in the same way as Indo-Iranian can be reconstructed. Nevertheless in view of their many close resemblances it is convenient to group them together under a common name, Balto-Slavonic. The earliest recorded Slavonic is the Old Bulgarian of the ninth century; Lithuanian is known only from the sixteenth century.

III. Armenian, known from the fifth century A.D.

IV. Albanian, known only from modern times.

These four groups are collectively known as the satem-languages for reasons which will be explained below. Opposed to them are the centum-languages, which are as follows:

V. Greek, with numerous dialects. The literature begins with the Homeric poems, c. 800 B.C., but during the last twenty-five years the decipherment of documents in the linear B script and Mycenean dialect has pushed back the history of the language by 500 years.

VI. Latin, which has developed into the various Romance Languages (French, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, Rumanian, etc.). It is known in literature from c. 200 B.C., and there are scanty inscrptional remains from an earlier date.

VII. Celtic, consisting of Continental Celtic or Gallic,
which is extinct, and Insular Celtic which is divided into Irish (Gaelic) and Brittanic (Welsh, Cornish, Breton). Literary records of Celtic begin with the Old Irish glosses of the eighth century.

VIII. Germanic, which may be divided into East Germanic or Gothic (extinct), Nordic or Scandinavian, and West Germanic, to which belong the English and German languages. The earliest literary monument of Germanic is the Gothic translation of the Bible by Ulfila (A.D. fourth cent.).

The two major members of the family which remain to be mentioned are known from discoveries made in the present century. They are:

IX. The so-called ‘Tocharian’ preserved in Buddhist manuscripts discovered in Chinese Turkestan, dating from the sixth to the tenth centuries A.D. It is divided into two dialects which are for convenience termed A and B.

X. Hittite, which is preserved in cuneiform tablets recovered from Boghaz-köi in Anatolia, the site of the capital of the ancient Hittite kingdom. The time covered by these records is the period from c. 1700 to c. 1200 B.C., the bulk of them being dated towards the end of this period. It is the oldest recorded IE language, and at the same time in many ways aberrant from the usual type. Its discovery has raised many new and interesting problems.

In addition to the major languages listed above, there existed in antiquity a considerable number of other IE languages which have become extinct and are known only from scanty remains in the form of inscriptions, proper names and occasional glosses. To put the Indo-European family into proper perspective the more important of these are enumerated below.

In the first place there are certain ancient languages of Asia Minor which together with Hittite form a special group. The cuneiform texts from Boghaz-köi include texts in two such languages, Luwian and Palaean, which show close relationship with Hittite. The so-called Hittite Hieroglyphic inscriptions which have now been partially deciphered, have revealed a language which is closely related to the Luwian of the cuneiform texts. Later the Lycian language, in which there are inscriptions in alphabetic script, has been shown to have relationship with Luwian. Most recently the Lydian language, known from inscriptions from Sardis, has been shown to belong with the above languages in the Anatolian group.
Fragmentary records of other Indo-European languages have been preserved from the Italian and Balkan peninsulas, and, resulting from a later movement of peoples, and separate from the above Anatolian group, in Western Asia Minor. In Italy Oscan and Umbrian are known from a fair number of inscriptions, and together with Latin they are classed as the Italic group. The language of the Siculi in Sicily is also considered to belong with Italic. In the south-east corner of Italy, Messapian is held to be a later introduction from across the Adriatic, possibly related to Illyrian. Venetic in North East Italy is classed as a separate Indo-European language, though showing some signs of relationship with Italic. In the Balkan peninsula the Illyrian language is known only from proper names, and there is an unsettled debate as to whether or not it is the ancestor of Albanian. The information of Thracian, the other main Balkan language in ancient times is equally scanty, and its position remains obscure. In Asia Minor fresh invasions from the Balkans brought to an end the Hittite empire (c. 1200 B.C.) and introduced new Indo-European languages into the area. Of these Phrygian is scantily preserved in inscriptions.

The languages of the Indo-European family have become more widely diffused over the world than those of any other linguistic family. They also form the majority of the cultivated languages of mankind. It is not surprising therefore that the question of the original home of Indo-European has been the subject of much speculation. In the early days it was usually held that this lay in Central Asia, and that from there successive waves of emigration had carried the various members of the family to Europe. This was mainly due to the exaggerated importance attached to Sanskrit and to confusion between the primitive Aryans of whom we have spoken with the much earlier Indo-Europeans. It is as we have seen reasonably certain that it was from Central Asia, more specifically the Oxus valley, that the Indians and Iranians set out to occupy their respective domains. But there is not the slightest trace of evidence or probability that the ancestors of the Germans, Celts, Greeks and other European members of the family were ever near this area. Consequently it is now usually held that the original home lay somewhere in Europe. The main argument for this is the simple but effective one that it is in Europe that the greatest number of Indo-European languages, and the
greatest diversity of them is to be found, and this from the earliest recorded times. At an ancient period we find enormous stretches of Asia in the occupation of Indo-Iranian, a single member of the family, and as yet little differentiated; in Europe on the other hand a concentration of many languages occupying comparatively restricted areas, and already markedly different from each other. It follows of necessity that the presence of Indo-European in the Indo-Iranian area is the result of late colonial expansion on a vast scale, while in Europe the existence of such great diversity at the earliest recorded period indicates the presence there of Indo-European from remote antiquity.

It is true that the discovery of the two Tocharian dialects in Chinese Turkestan has slightly modified this picture, and it has led some to think again of an Asiatic home. But the addition of one new branch only in Asia is obviously insufficient to turn the balance. Moreover the nature of Tocharian, which has undergone profound and far-reaching phonetic changes strongly suggestive of alien influence, makes it clear that this language has travelled far from its original home. Somewhat similar changes have taken place in Hittite and the allied languages of Asia Minor, and this is held to have been due to the influence of the pre-Indo-European languages which existed in that area (Proto-Hittite, Churrian, Urartean, etc.). So we may conclude that these languages also have been brought in by invaders, and since in ancient times the distribution of languages in this area was such that the non-Indo-European languages mentioned lay to the East and the Indo-European languages to the West, it becomes clear that the direction of the invasions must have been from the West, that is to say from Europe, across the Hellespont. Further it has been pointed out that the characteristics of this Asianic branch of Indo-European are such as can only be explained by the assumption that it was separated from the main branch of Indo-European at a period very much earlier than the movements which lead to the final break-up of IE linguistic unity. This means that the earliest of all the Indo-European migrations which can be deduced from our evidence, and one that must have antedated the migration of the Indo-Iranians by a very long period of time, already points to the existence in Europe of the Indo-European tongue.

Within Europe it is possible to narrow down considerably the
territorial limits within which the cradle of the Indo-European languages is to be sought. It is known with reasonable certainty that the Italian and Greek peninsulas were colonised from the North. The occupation of France and the British Isles by Celts from Central Europe occurred at a comparatively late date (c. 500 B.C.). The Iberian peninsula remained predominantly non-Indo-European till Roman times, and in modern Basque there still exists a survival of pre-Indo-European speech. The Eastern limit is indicated by the fact that before the two Asiatic migrations (Tocharian and Indo-Iranian) Indo-European must have been bounded to the East by an early form of Finno-ugrian, and there is some evidence of contact between these two families in the primitive period. There is reason to believe that the original centre of Finno-ugrian expansion lay between the Volga and the Urals and this forms the extreme limit beyond which Indo-European was not to be found in the early stages of its history. This leaves the central portion of Europe extending from the Rhine to Central and Southern Russia, and it is probable that by the time of the Indo-Iranian migrations the larger part of this area had long been occupied by various Indo-European dialects.

It is not possible to define the original Indo-European homeland in terms any narrower than these, nor is it desirable to try, since those who have attempted to do so have usually suffered from misconceptions about the nature of 'Primitive Indo-European' and about the time when the earliest divisions began. The evolution of the Indo-European should not be regarded as being on a par with that of the Romance languages from Latin. In the latter case the various languages are derived from a single unitary language, the language to begin with of one city. But in the case of Indo-European it is certain that there was no such unitary language which can be reached by means of comparison. It would be easy to produce, more or less ad infinitum a list of forms like Skt. nābhī-, Gk. ὀμφαλός 'navel', which although inherited directly from the primitive IE period, and radically related are irreducible to a single original. In fact detailed comparison makes it clear that the Indo-European that we can reach by this means was already deeply split up into a series of varying dialects.

It is from this point of view that the question of the 'splitting' of Indo-European should be regarded. It has not been
uncommon to find in works of general history or linguistics a conception that somewhere about the second half of the third millennium B.C. a single undivided Indo-European occupying a comparatively restricted area being taken by a series of migrations to the various countries where IE languages are later found, after which migrations the various individual languages were evolved. But it is now becoming clear that by this period the various members of the family must have already begun to assume their historic form. For instance when the Indo-Iranians first set off on their migrations from Europe, very likely about 2000 B.C. as is often suggested, they took with them not Indo-European which they subsequently proceeded to change into Indo-Iranian, but the Indo-Iranian which we can reconstruct, which had already assumed its essential features in the original European homeland. It is clear that once the migrations began over such wide territories all opportunities for unitary development of Indo-Iranian must have ceased, and since, as we have observed there quite undoubtedly was at one time a unitary development of Indo-Iranian, this must have taken place before any migrations began.

What applies to Indo-Iranian must apply with equal force to the other members of the family. We have already remarked on the deep divergencies between the various European members of the family, and this can only be accounted for by pushing back the period of original division to a period much earlier than is usually assumed. If there ever existed a unitary Indo-European which spread from a restricted area, this lies long behind the earliest period which can be reached by any comparison. ‘Primitive Indo-European’ must be regarded as a continuum of related dialects occupying an extensive territory in Europe (very likely the major part of the area indicated above), dialects which already before the period of the great migrations had begun to assume the character of separate languages.

§ 3. Divisions of Indo-European

The question of the early Indo-European dialects has been the subject of considerable study and some useful results have been acquired. It is possible to form a fair idea of their distribution in the period preceding the emergence of the individual
languages. The most striking and important early dialect distinction is that which separates the satem-languages from the centum-languages. These two groups are so named from the way they treat IE $k$ in the word for ‘hundred’ (IE *kemptóm). The centum-languages preserve it as such (Lat. centum, Gk. ἱκαρόν, Ir. cēt, Toch. A. kānt); in the satem-languages it is changed to some kind of sibilant (Skt. satām, Av. satom, Lith. šimtas, O. Sl. sūto). Similar changes occur in the case of IE $g$ and $gh$. The languages participating in this change are Indo-Iranian, Balto-Slavonic, Armenian, Albanian. Since this feature is so wide-spread, and since it occurs without any variation of the conditions in all the languages concerned, it must be assumed that the change took place in the Indo-European period, before the dispersal of the several languages, and that it affected a group of contiguous dialects within the Indo-European area. The unity of these dialects, and of the languages derived from them is further confirmed by the fact that the loss of the labial element in the IE series $kʷ, gʷ, gʷh$ (e.g. Skt. kā- ‘who?’, Lith. kās as opposed to Gk. νοθευ, Lat. quo–d, Goth. has) is characteristic of precisely this same group of languages.

Before the discovery of Tocharian and Hittite it was common to regard the centum-satem division as a division between Western and Eastern Indo-European, and it was customary to regard the centum-languages as a united group like the satem-languages. This was never altogether satisfactory, since not only is Greek cut off from the Western IE languages by the intervening satem-language Albanian, but also because apart from this it displays no special similarities with them, but rather with the satem-languages. The discovery of the new languages, which were unmistakeably centum-languages, made it quite impossible to speak of an East-West division any longer, and also made it clear that there was no unitary centum-group. The centum-languages are alike only in preserving original $k$, $g$, $gh$ as occlusives, and it is a commonplace of linguistics that common preservations are not necessarily a sign that dialects or languages are closely related. We may therefore substitute a division of the Indo-European dialects into:

I. A central group which can be equated with the satem-languages, and is characterised by the innovations mentioned above.
II. Four peripheral dialect groups surrounding the central group, namely (1) West Indo-European comprising Italic, Celtic and Germanic; (2) Greek, which however has special relations with the central group; (3) Eastern Indo-European which has survived as ‘Tocharian’; (4) Hittite and other IE languages of Asia Minor which separated earliest from the original IE stock.

The historical distribution of the IE languages corresponds on the whole to this, but in the case of Sanskrit migrations at a comparatively late date took it to the extreme East of the Indo-European domain. Before this period its ancestor, primitive Indo-Iranian must have held a fairly central position, being directly in contact with the other dialects of the satem-group, and having to the East of it that form of Indo-European which eventually turned into the dialects A and B of Chinese Turkestan. Its position can further be determined by the specially close relations which are found to exist between it and Balto-Slavonic. Since the Balts and the Slavs are not likely to have moved far from the positions in which they are to be found in their earliest recorded history, the original location of Indo-Iranian towards the South-East of this area becomes highly probable.

The Western group of Indo-European languages consisting of Italic, Celtic and Germanic, is distinguished by certain common features in grammar and vocabulary, which indicate a fairly close mutual connection in prehistoric times. These ties are particularly close in the case of Italic and Celtic, even though they are not sufficient to justify the theory of common Italo-celtic. The connections of Germanic with the other two groups are less close, but they are quite definite. At the same time it has some special affinities with Slavonic, and further with the central group in general (e.g. absence of the medio-passive terminations in -\(r\)).

There is an almost complete absence of special features common to Indo-Iranian and Western Indo-European. All that has been pointed out so far consists of certain common elements of vocabulary which have been largely eliminated in the rest of Indo-European. These words are in many respects highly interesting and important, but they consist entirely of ancient Indo-European words which have been preserved independently by two groups which otherwise have no special connection. Such
words are: Lat. *credo*, Ir. *cretim*, Skt. *śrad-dhā-* 'believe'; Lat. *rex*, Ir. *rī* 'king'; Skt. *rāj-, rājan-,* Ir. *rigain* 'queen'; Skt. *rājñī*, Ir. *rīge* 'kingdom'; Skt. *rājya-;* Lat. *ius* 'justice'; *iustus*, Ir. *uīsse* 'just, righteous', Skt. *yōs*, Av. *yaoš* 'righteousness, purity'; Lat. *ensis* 'sword', Skt. *asi-;* Lat. *rēs* 'property'; Skt. *rai-;* Ir. *brō* 'millstone'; Skt. *grāvan- (also, differently formed Goth. *qairmus,* etc.); Ir. *gert* 'milk', Skt. *gṛtā-, ghee*; Ir. *aire* (gen. s. *airech*) 'chief, noble'; Skt. *aryā-,* ārya-'master, lord, noble, Aryan'. More dubious is the old equation Lat. *flamen*, Skt. *brahman-* 'priest'. Many of these words are connected with religion, law, etc., and the fact that they are preserved in these two branches alone is due to the highly conservative tendencies which characterised the societies concerned. They do not imply any close connection between the original dialects on which the languages are based.

Greek shows little sign of close connection with any of the other centum-groups. On the contrary its closest connection appears to be with the satem-languages, particularly with Indo-Iranian and Armenian. It is sufficient to glance through a comparative grammar of Sanskrit to see that the correspondences between Sanskrit and Greek are much more numerous than those between Sanskrit and any other language of the family outside Indo-Iranian. This is particularly so in the case of verbal inflection. The fact that the two languages are recorded from such an early period is partly responsible for this state of affairs, but it is by no means entirely so. Some of the common features involved are of late Indo-European origin, and must be regarded as common innovations, and not as cases of the common preservation of ancient forms. For instance the Indo-European languages have no common form of the genitive singular of *o*-stems. The form *-osyo* which is common to Greek (*-ou, ou*), Armenian (*-oy*) and Indo-Iranian (Skt. *-asya*, Av. *-ahya*) has no more claim to antiquity than Italo-Celtic *-i* or the Hittite form (*-as, *-os*) which appears to be identical with the nominative. In fact the great variations in case suggest that the various forms have developed in the late Indo-European period when the language was already widely divided into dialects. It is therefore important evidence of close prehistoric connection. Likewise the augment is found only in Greek (*ἐφερε*), Indo-Iranian (Skt. *āḥharat*) and Armenian (*eber*), with traces of Phyrgian. Since there is no reason to
believe that it ever existed as a regular component of the verbal inflection in those languages in which it is not recorded, its development in Indo-Iranian, Greek and Armenian must be regarded as a common innovation of the closely related dialects on which they are based. The elimination of the *r*- endings of the medio-passive in Sanskrit and Greek is a significant common characteristic. Phonetically Sanskrit and Greek show a common treatment of the sonant nasals (IE *ν, η*), replacing them by the vowel *a*. In view of the close connection that exists between them in other respects this is unlikely to be a matter of chance. In other respects, e.g. in the matter of prothetic vowels Greek seems to be closest to Armenian, and there are also some remarkable coincidences of vocabulary between them.

The fact that Greek shows more signs of close connection with the *sātəm*-languages Armenian and Indo-Iranian than with any other is in striking contrast to the absence in it of the distinctive sound changes of the *sātəm* group. We must assume that the IE dialect on which Greek is based was originally in the closest contact with the central dialect group, but that this contact was severed at a period preceding the *sātəm* sound changes.

The most striking thing about the two Tocharian languages is that they have no special connections whatever with Indo-Iranian, the only other Asiatic family. They are no closer to Indo-Iranian—in some respects they appear more different—than to languages far to the West like Italic and Celtic. This is in accordance with the fact that the parent dialect of Indo-Iranian was originally a central dialect, and as such would have with a dialect on the Eastern periphery, from which Tocharian is descended, no more in common than with the percurors of Italic and Celtic on the extreme West. Neither have they any special relations with any other of the individual groups of Indo-European. The prevalence of the middle terminations in *r* in Tocharian does not indicate any close relationship with Italo-Celtic on the one hand or with Hittite on the other, but merely a type of inflection that was characteristic of early Indo-European, but was tending to be reduced or eliminated in the later period in dialects of the central area. Attempts to find other evidence of connection with one group or another have been singularly lacking in results. The two languages have become much altered from the original Indo-European.
old system of nominal inflection has to a large extent broken down, and the percentage of words in the vocabulary for which it is possible to find satisfactory etymologies is comparatively small. At the same time some features of the two languages have an ancient aspect which suggests that they are derived from a comparatively early form of Indo-European. This would imply a comparatively early migration in the case of Tocharian, and such an assumption accounts best for the great difference between Tocharian and Indo-Iranian. We must assume that an Eastern Indo-European dialect group had for centuries existed in isolation before the comparatively late migration which took Indo-Iranian to Asia from the central Indo-European area.

The separation of Hittite and the languages allied to it from the main body of Indo-European must have taken place earliest of all. This is the only way to explain the great differences which exist between it and the type of Indo-European that has been reconstructed from the previously known members of the family. The most striking feature of Hittite is the preservation of $h$, which has elsewhere disappeared. In addition to this the language deviates from the usual type in many other respects. In the formation of nouns the percentage of consonantal stems, and in particular the old neuter types in $l$ and $r$ alternating with $n$, is much greater than in the standard types of Indo-European. The feminine gender is undeveloped. The inflection of nouns is much simpler than in the type of Indo-European represented by Sanskrit, and there is no reason to believe that this is due to losses on the part of Hittite. Above all, the conjugation of the verb differs widely from the system reconstructed largely by the comparison of Sanskrit and Greek, which at one time passed for primitive Indo-European. Consideration of these facts has led some scholars, notably E. Sturtevant, to separate Hittite from the Indo-European family proper, and to postulate an earlier Indo-Hittite from which Hittite on the one hand and Indo-European on the other are separately descended. The majority of opinion is against this extreme view and it seems more satisfactory to speak of Early and Late Indo-European, rather than of Indo-Hittite and Indo-European. It has already been pointed out that the dialect divisions of Indo-European go back to a period long antedating the migration of Indo-Iranian. Even though the separation of
Hittite must have been very early indeed, it need not have preceded the beginning of these dialectal divergences of Indo-European. Certainly there was no united Indo-European in the late period, which the Indo-Hittite theory demands. It is true that much of the evolution which has taken place in Indo-European outside Hittite, and which must be placed in the period following the separation of Hittite, is evolution common to all the branches (e.g. the development of the feminine), but this is easily understandable as long as the various dialects remained in contiguity. The important difference now is that instead of thinking simply in the terms of Primitive Indo-European we may now distinguish Early Indo-European of the time previous to the separation of Hittite, and Late Indo-European characterised by certain developments which can be determined, in which different dialects evolving in common were gradually beginning to assume the character of different languages.

§ 4. INDO-IRANIAN AND BALTO-SLAVONIC

The satem-languages, apart from Indo-Iranian are only known from times much more recent than most of the centum-languages. Further there is the possibility that some ancient members of this group, notably in the Balkan and Danubian regions, have disappeared without record. It is therefore not possible to form a precise idea of the position of Indo-Iranian within the satem group as a whole at an early period. The only thing that emerges clearly is that there did at one time exist a special relationship between early Indo-Iranian and those dialects of Indo-European which developed eventually into the Baltic and Slavonic languages. Since this is important for the location of the early home of Indo-Iranian, the evidence may be given in some detail.

Phonetically the most noteworthy common feature is the change of s to ŝ (>Slav. čh) after k, r, i and u in Indo-Iranian and Slavonic, and after r also in Lithuanian.¹ This is unlikely to be a matter of chance, since the conditions under which the change takes place are so closely parallel. The conclusion which must be drawn is that at one time the two branches were in close geographical proximity, and that this innovation affecting IE s

¹ For examples see p. 79.
established itself over a limited area comprising Slavonic and Indo-Iranian, but excluding the rest of Indo-European. The fact that the change appears only to a very small extent in Baltic demonstrates that the Baltic group was to a certain extent autonomous of Slavonic even at this early date.

Another change which has occurred in both groups is that of $k$ to $c$ before the vowels $e, i, 1$. This however seems to be a case of parallel independent development. In Old Slavonic the paradigmatic alternation occasioned by this change, and by the second Slavonic palatalisation, remains in full force (e.g. Nom. S. vlükü, Voc. vlüče, Loc. vlücè). Such alternation has been eliminated in Sanskrit even at the earliest period, and it is unlikely that it could have maintained itself in Slavonic over the very long period that it would be necessary to assume if the change in Slavonic had been so ancient.

In grammar a fair number of special features common to both groups can be enumerated, though there are also some notable divergences. The most important of these latter is the existence in Balto-Slavonic in common with Germanic of an element -m- which appears regularly in place of the -bh- which is familiar from Sanskrit and other IE languages (e.g. Dat. abl. Pl. Lith. vilkams, Sl. vlükomà, Goth wulfam : Skt. vfkebhyas). This is an ancient Indo-European divergence cutting across the usual dialect divisions. Another idiosyncrasy of Balto-Slavonic is the use of the old ablative to form the genitive singular of o-stems: Lith. vilko, O. Sl. vlüka.

In spite of these divergences there are many special grammatical features uniting the two groups. The more important of these may be briefly enumerated:

A. Nominal Inflection: (1) Nominative without r of r- stems, Skt. mätå 'mother', sváså 'sister': O. Sl. mati, Lith. molë, sesuò. (2) The locative plural in -su (as opposed to -ai in Greek) is found only in these two groups: Skt. vfkešu, O. Sl. vlüčehu. (3) The Dual inflection is closely similar, containing a good deal that is not found elsewhere, e.g. Skt. Nom. D. båle, yugé, nåmani, mánasì, akštì, sùnù: O. Sl. žené, ižé, imeni, tèlesi, očì (Lith. aki), syny (Lith. sùnu), Gen. D. Skt. tayos, dvayos: O. Sl. toju, dvoju. (4) A similar development in the singular stem of feminine nouns in -ā : e.g. Instr. Skt. tàyā, sènayā : O. Sl. tojá, rkojá, Loc. Skt. sènāyām, Av. haënaya : Lith. rañkoje. (5)

1For examples see p. 76.
Close similarity in the declension of $i$- and $u$- stems, as illustrated by equations like Dat. S. Skt. $s̥uñāve$: O. Sl. $synovi$.

B. Pronouns and Adverbs: (1) Common characteristics in the form of the personal pronouns, e.g. Nom. S. in -$om$, Skt. $ahām$, O. Sl. $azu$, nasalised accusative, Skt. $mām$, O. Sl. $mę$, Gen. S. Av. $mana$, O. Sl. $mene$ (as opposed to Skt. $māma$). (2) The extended stem of the demonstrative pronoun, etc., in certain cases, e.g. Dat. S. Masc. Skt. $tāsmai$, O. Pruss. $kasmu stesmu$, O. Sl. $tomu$, Fem. Skt. $lāsyai$, O. Pruss. $stessei$. (3) Preference for the interrogative stem $k̥wo$- as opposed to the stem $k̥wi$-, Skt. $kā$, Lith. $kās$. (4) The possession of certain common pro-nominal stems, e.g. Av. $ava$-, O. Sl. $ovū$, Skt. Av. $ana$-, Lith. $anās$, O. Sl. $onū$. (5) Various adverbs, Skt. $kūha$, Av. $ku dhā 'where$', O. Sl. $ku de$, Skt. $kadā 'when?$', $tadā 'then$', Lith. $kadā$, $tadā$, Skt. $nā 'like$', Lith. $nei$, Skt. $bahīs 'outside$', O. Sl. $bezū 'without$', Skt. $vinā$, O. Sl. $vūnē 'outside$', O. Pers. (avahya) $rādī 'on account of (that)', O. Sl. (logo) $rādī$.

C. The Verb. In the conjugation of the verb features special to Indo-Iranian and Balto-Slavonic are not remarkably common. This may partly be due to the fact that Slavonic (and to a greater extent, Baltic) is only recorded late, and in the verbal inflection is less conservative than it is in the nominal inflection (e.g. loss of the perfect and the middle). Points of note are (1) similarities in the s-aorist, e.g. $vrddhi$ of root (Sl. $vesti$: $vēsu$, Skt. $vāhati$ $dvāksam$) and termination -$om$ of 1sg. (as opposed to Gk. $a$); (2) The future in -$syo-$ is found with certainty only in Indo-Aryan and Lithuanian: Skt. $dāsyāmi 'I will give$', Lith. $du osiu$; (3) The causative is well developed in both groups, and many identical forms can be quoted, e.g. Skt. $bodhāyati 'he awakens'$, O. Sl. $buždop$, $buditi$.

In the sphere of vocabulary Indo-Iranian shares with Baltic and Slavonic a considerable number of words which are not found in the other Indo-European languages. These correspondences are much more numerous than those which can be discovered between Indo-Iranian and any other member of the family, and they supply important evidence for the early connection of the two families. There is for instance no common Indo-European word for 'goat'. Sanskrit $ajā$- is connected with Lith. $ožys$, but parallels are absent in other IE languages. Greek and Armenian which go together in this case, as frequently have a similar word ($aίξ$, $aič$), but one that cannot be united
with it according to the laws of IE phonology. Another word is peculiar to the Western IE languages (Lat. haedus, Engl. goat, etc.). The distribution of these words corresponds roughly to the dialectal division sketched above, and illustrates the importance of vocabulary in the study of this question. The derivative ajina- 'skin' corresponds to O. Sl. azinu, jazino, and in both languages an original meaning 'goat's skin' has been widened to the meaning 'skin' in general. There is also a class of words in which the root is common to many IE languages, but the particular suffix found in Indo-Iranian is found elsewhere only in Slavonic and Baltic. Examples of these are: Skt. phéna- 'foam', O. Pr. spoayno, Lith. spáine, as opposed to the Western IE words with m-suffix (Lat. spúma, Engl. foam). Skt. dáksiña- 'right(-hand)' corresponds exactly to O. Sl. desinu, Lith. dešiné, whereas various different suffixes appear in other languages (Gk. δεξίος, δεξιερός, Lat. dexter, Goth. tãthswe). Similarly Skt. griva- 'neck' and O. Sl. griva 'mane' correspond exactly in formation, but can be compared only as far as the root is concerned with Gk. δέρη 'neck' (neuter). The n- suffix of Skt. majján- reappears only in Slavonic (O. Sl. moždanu) and Baltic (O. Pruss. nužgeno). A form corresponding precisely to Skt. mśrā- 'mixed' appears only in Lith. mśras.

Another feature which deserves consideration is the existence of special meanings common to the two groups. The meaning 'wake' is common to Skt. budh- and the related Balto-Slavonic words, but is not found in other languages. The meaning 'write' of Iranian (ni-)pis- recurs in O. Sl. píšati.

Of the remaining words which are peculiar to Indo-Iranian and Balto-Slavonic the following are the most important: Av. spóna- 'holy', O. Sl. svetů, Lith. svečtas; Skt. savyā- 'left', Av. haoya-, O. Sl. šujī; Skt. bhṛhis 'bed of Kuśa grass', Av. barzisiš 'cushion, pillow', O. Sl. blazina 'cushion'; Skt. kṛṣṇā- 'black', O. Sl. črūnǔ, O. Pruss. kirsna; Skt. bhāra- 'fight, battle', cf. O. Sl. borjo 'fight'; Skt. oṣṭha- 'lip', O. Sl. usta, O. Pruss. austin 'mouth'; Skt. avala- 'spring, well', Lett. avuots; Av. varasa- 'hair', O. Sl. vlasů, Russ. volos; Skt. girā- 'mountain', Av. gairi-, O. Sl. gara 'id', Lith. gūra, girė 'forest'; Skt. tuśnām 'silently', Av. tušni- 'silent', O. Pruss. tūsan; Skt. tuckhyā- 'empty', Khotanese tüşkṣa-, O. Sl. tustry, Lith. tūščias 'id'; Skt. dādhi (gen. dādinās) 'curds', O. Pruss. ḍadan; Skt. pāyas 'milk', Av.
\[ 
\textit{paema}, \text{Lith. pēnas} \text{ (with varying suffixes)} ; \text{Av. xśvid-} \text{ 'milk', cf. Lith. sviestras \text{ 'butter'} ; Skt. āṅgāra-} \text{ 'coal', O. Sl. ogli, Russ. ugol'} ; \text{Skt. bradhnā-} \text{ 'yellowish, light-coloured', O. Sl. bronū \text{ 'white'} ; Skt. ārbha-} \text{ 'small, child', cf. Russ. rebēnok \text{ 'child'} ; Skt. vratā-} \text{ 'vow', Av. urvata-, O. Sl. rota \text{ 'oath'} ; Skt. āṅgā- \text{ 'egg, testicle' (Kalaśa ondrag 'egg'), O. Sl. jedro \text{ 'testicle'} ; Skt. pāmsū-} \text{ 'dust Av. pāśnu-, O. Sl. pēsūkū \text{ 'sand'} ; Skt. dhānā \text{ 'corn, grain'} ; Pers. dāna, Lith. dūona \text{ 'bread'} ; Skt. śyāmā-, śyāvā- \text{ 'dark-coloured', Lith. šēnas \text{ 'grey'} ; Skt. śandra-} \text{ 'thick, viscid', cf. O.Sl. sedry krivīnyje, sjadry krovnyja \text{ 'thickened, congealed blood'} ; Pers. raz \text{ 'vine, vine-tendril', O. Sl. loza ; Av. fśarmā-, Pers. šarm \text{ 'shame', O. Sl. sramū ; Skt. srāmū-} \text{ 'lame', O. Sl. chromū ; Av. hāma-} \text{ 'the same', Pali sāmān adv. \text{ 'self, of oneself', O. Sl. samū \text{ 'self'} ; Skt. viśpāti-} \text{ 'head of settlement or clan', Av. viśpāti-, Lith. viēšpats \text{ 'lord'} ; Av. sarsta-} \text{ 'cold', Lith. šaltas} ; Skt. šāka- \text{ 'vegetables, greens', Lith. šekas \text{ 'green fodder'} ; Skt. šaphara-} \text{ 'Cyprinus sophore', Lith. šāpalas 'Cyprinus dobula'} ; Skt. šakunā- \text{ ' (large) bird', O. Sl. sokolū \text{ 'falcon'} ; Skt. šāpa- \text{ 'drift wood', Lith. šapai ; Skt. bhauga-} \text{ 'wave', Lith. bangā. Among verbs which are common to the two groups we may} mention Skt. hávate \text{ 'calls', Av. zavai, O. Sl. zovětů ; Skt. svī-} \text{ 'to be bright, white', Lith. švitěti, O. Sl. svitěti ; Skt. bhī-, bhāyate \text{ 'fear', O. Sl. bojo sc, Lith. bījaus ; Skt. pruṣ-, pruṣnāti \text{ 'sprinkle', O. Sl. pryṣnōti ; Skt. dham-, dhmā-} \text{ 'to blow', O. Sl. dūmo, dōti, Lith. dūmiu, dūmī ; Skt. brṃh-, brṃhate \text{ ' (elephant) trumpets', Lith. brengzu, branzu \text{ 'to sound, make a noise'} ; Skt. muc- \text{ 'to release, Lith. munkū, mūkti \text{ 'to get loose'} ; Skt. gṛ-, gṛṇāti \text{ 'praises', O. Pruss. girtwei \text{ 'to praise', Lith. giriū, girtī. The list of common words and other features which are special to the two groups is clearly impressive, and the whole of the material must be referred to the period of Primitive Indo-Iranian. When on the contrary we look for signs of special contact between Iranian itself and Slavonic (or Baltic) we find that there are practically none. It is true that some of the words that are listed above are found only in Iranian and not in Sanskrit, but it is equally possible to point out others in which the reverse is the case. Furthermore if we take such a word, e.g. Av. śpanta-, O. Sl. světů, Lith. šveius, it is immediately clear that the form of the Baltic and Slavonic words is} } \]
such that they cannot be derived either from the Primitive Iranian form (*svanta-) or the Primitive Indo-Iranian (*śvanta-), but that all the words must be referred to an earlier satəm form (*śvento-).

Attempts to find examples of Iranian loanwords in Slavonic have been singularly unsuccessful. There is a Russian word sobâka 'dog' which is plausibly derived from Median σπάκα (Herod.) but the word is not pan-Slavonic, and it remains quite obscure by what means the word has reached Russian. In the case of Russ. topór 'axe', Pers. tabar, we are dealing with a migratory word of uncertain origin. Iranian origin has been assumed for Sl. súto '100' because the form of the word does not agree with Slavonic phonology, but neither is it the form we would expect to be derived from Iranian satəm (which should give sot-). There is a remarkable coincidence between the Slavonic word for 'god' (O. Sl. bogû) and O. Pers. baga-, but in view of the complete absence of other loanwords it is better to see in these words a case of common inheritance.

This absence of Iranian influence on Slavonic is surprising in view of the repeated incursions of Scythian tribes into Europe, and the prolonged occupation by them of extensive territories reaching to the Danube. Clearly at this later period the Slavs must have remained almost completely uninfluenced politically and culturally by the Iranians. On the other hand at a much earlier period (c. 2000 B.C.) before the primitive Aryans left their European homeland, Indo-Iranian and the prototypes of Baltic and Slavonic must have existed as close neighbours for a considerable period of time. Practically all the contacts which can be found between the two groups are to be referred to this period and this period alone.

§ 5. INDO-IRANIAN AND FINNO-UGRIAN

During the same period there is conclusive evidence of contact between Indo-Iranian and Finno-ugrian, a neighbouring family of non-Indo-European languages. This latter family consists of three European languages which have attained the status of literary languages, Finnish, Esthonian and Hungarian, and a number of now minor languages which are spoken by a small number: Lapp, Mordwin, Čeremis, Zyryan, Votyak, Vogul, Ostyak. Of these Vogul and Ostyak are now found to
the East of the Urals, but are considered to have moved there from the West. These two, with Hungarian form the Ugric sub-group, and are distinguished from the rest by certain common features. The Hungarians moved from the region of the Volga to the territory they now occupy in the ninth century. In Siberia there are several Samoyedic languages which as a group are related to Finno-Ugrian. The two families are classed together as the Uralic languages.

Even before the Indo-Iranian period there is evidence of contact between Indo-European and Finno-Ugrian. Certain remarkable coincidences (e.g. Lat. sal ‘salt’, Finn. suola; Skt. mdāhu ‘honey’, Gk. μέθυ: Finn. mete-; Skt. nāman-, Gk. ὄνομα ‘name’: Finn. nime-, Goth. waiō ‘water’, etc.: Fin. vele-) have long since attracted attention, but there is lack of agreement as to how exactly they are to be interpreted. One theory is that the two families are ultimately related, but the available evidence is not sufficient to establish this with any certainty. On the whole it seems more probable that the coincidences, insofar as they are not due to chance, are the result of mutual contact and influence in the early prehistoric period.1

Evidence is both more abundant and easier to interpret when it comes to early Indo-Iranian contacts with Finno-Ugrian. Here it is possible to point out a considerable number of words in Finno-Ugrian which can be shown to have been borrowed from Indo-Iranian at this stage. The most important of the Finno-Ugrian words which have been ascribed to Indo-Iranian are as follows:


1 Borrowings are likely to have occurred in both directions, and usually it is difficult to decide which family has been the borrower. As an example of a probable loan from Finno-Ugrian we may quote Engl. whale, O.N. hvālir, O. Pruss. kalis: Av. kara- ‘mythical fish living in the Raḥā (=Volga): Finn. kala ‘fish’ etc. The restriction of the meaning indicates that the IE languages are the borrowers, and it is likely that Iranian and the northern IE languages have done so separately.
Voty. *parš, pariš 'pig' was ascribed to an Aryan *parśa- (= Lat. porcus) and this is now attested by Khotanese pā'sa-.
(5) Finn. oras ' (castrated) boar', Mordv. orēš 'id': Skt. varāhā-, Av. varāṣa- 'boar'. (6) Finn. utor, Mordv. odar, Čer. vodor 'udder': Skt. ādhar 'id'; (7) Finn. ora, Mordv. uro, Hung. ār 'awl': Skt. ārā 'id' (= OHG āla, etc.);
(10) Finn. arvo 'value, price', Hung. *ár, etc.: Skt. arghā-, Osset. ary 'id' (Lith. algā, etc.); (11) Finn. sisar 'sister', Mordv. suzor, Čer. šćar: Skt. svāsar-, Av. x'anyhar-;
(12) Hung. sör 'beer', Voty. sur, Vog. sor, Osty. sar: Skt. sūrā 'strong drink', Av. hurā; (13) Finn. sarvī 'horn', Mordv. šuro, Čer. šur, Lapp čarvoe, Hung. szaru: Av. srū-, svā 'horn' (= Gk. képalos, etc.); (14) Vog. šorp, šörp 'elk': Skt. śarabhā- 'a kind of deer' (from the root of the last);
(15) Mordv. sed 'bridge': Skt. sesūt-, Av. haēt-;
(16) Mordv. vorgas 'wolf', Zpiry. vôrkaš: Skt. vyka-, Av. vhrka-;
(17) Zpiry. Voty. turīn 'grass': Skt. tīna-;
(18) Zpiry. vörk 'kidney': Skt. vykka-, Av. varōka-'id'; (19) Vog. tas 'stranger': Skt. dāsā-'non-Aryan, slave'; (20) Hung. vászon 'linen': Skt. vāsana-'garment, cloth'. (21) Fi. mehi-läinen 'bee', Mordv. meks, Čer. mūks, Zpiry. Voty. muš, Hung. méh: Skt. māks-, māksa, mākṣa- 'bee, fly', Av. māṣa- 'fly';
(22) Fi. suika-šen 'beard of grain, etc.', Mordv. šuva, Čer. šu, Zpiry. šu: Skt. śuka- 'id'; (23) Mordv. šava, šeja 'goat': Skt. chāga-.

The detailed problems raised by these and other comparisons are not without complications, but certain general conclusions emerge clearly. Most important of all is the fact that, taking the words as a whole, the primitive forms which have to be assumed after a comparison of the Finno-Ugrian forms, are identical with those which have been reconstructed for primitive Indo-Iranian, and are free of any of the later sound changes which are characteristic of Iranian on the one hand and Indo-Aryan on the other. This is quite well illustrated by the first word which represents a primitive form satya- (the Indo-Iranian and Sanskrit form) and not satsa- (the Iranian form). The characteristic Iranian change of s to h is uniformly absent (3 Mordv. azoro, 11 Mordv. sazor, 15 Mordv. sed', etc.). Like-
wise characteristic Indo-Aryan changes such as of ēh, jh to h
are not to be found (5 Finn, oras, etc.). There is therefore not
the slightest doubt that the period when these borrowings took
place was the primitive Indo-Iranian period, and it appears
probable that the seat of this primitive Indo-Iranian must have
been in the region of the middle Volga and the Urals for this
contact to have been possible.

One point that is noticeable when looking at a few of these
words is that the change of Indo-European l, l to Aryan r, r has
vargas). This is a change which is complete in Iranian, but in­
complete in Indo-Aryan. That is to say that there were dialects
in early Indo-Aryan which preserved IE l (not l), as well as
those (the Rigvedic) which agreed with Iranian in this respect.
The Finno-ugrian forms show that this feature must have
already been widespread in the earlier, Indo-Aryan period, and
the existence of r-forms in the Aryan of the Near East cor­
roborates this. It cannot however have been universal, for
in that case no l-forms would have been found in Sanskrit
at all.

It is usually quite clear that these words have been borrowed
by Finno-ugrian from Indo-Iranian and not vice versa. We
have equivalents of the words in other IE languages, and before
being borrowed into Finno-ugrian they have undergone the
changes characteristic of the Aryan branch. Even where an
Indo-Iranian word has no actual equivalent in the other IE
languages, its structure and the possibility of deriving it from a
known IE root will often show it to be an old inherited word.
For instance Skt. vájra-, Av. vazra-, is formed with the well­
known suffix -ra (IE -ro), and can be derived from the IE root
which appears in Gk. (F)dýymu ‘break, smash’. There are
however a few words in the above list where it is not possible to
be certain in this way. Nothing like the Indo-Iranian word for
‘bee’ (No. 21) is found in any other IE language, and this
makes it more likely on the whole that in this case the Indo­
Iranians have adopted a Finno-ugrian word. Similar considera­
tions apply to Nos. 22 (Skt. šúka-) and 23 (Skt. chága-). There
may be further examples of Finno-ugrian words in Indo­
Iranian, but the matter has never been investigated from this
point of view. As plausible equations we may mention:
Skt. kapha- ‘phlegm’, Av. kafa-, Pers. kaf ‘foam, scum:

kəb
Hung. ūb 'foam, froth, cream', Veps. köbe 'wave, foam', Sam. (Kam.) khōwū 'foam'; Skt. kāpa 'pit, well': Fi. kuoppa 'pit', Lapp guopppe, Čer. kup, Voty. gop, etc.; Skt. śalākū 'splinter, etc.': Hung. szilank 'chip, splinter', Fi. sale, 3. saleen 'id', etc. In cases like these, and others could be added, no IE etymology has been found for the Sanskrit words. Since it is certain that we must assume long contact between the early Indo-Iranians and the neighbouring Finno-ugrians, and since there is no reason why the movement of words should have been entirely one way, we should consider Finno-ugrian to be a likely source of Aryan words in cases like the above where striking similarity in form and meaning is found.

§6. ARYANS IN THE NEAR EAST

The earliest recorded traces of the Aryan peoples come neither from India nor from Iran, but from the Near East. The presence of Aryans in this area is recorded principally in documents of the Mitanni kingdom of North Mesopotamia during the period 1500-1300 B.C. The list of royal names preserved in a variety of cuneiform documents has a distinctly Aryan appearance, even though their interpretation is not absolutely certain in all cases. The names of these kings are as follows: Sutarna, Parsasaiar, Sauśšatar, Artaḏāna, Artašumara, Tušṛatha, Matiśāza, i.e. in Indo-Aryan form Sutara1;ta-(d. Ved. sutdrman-), Praśāstār- 'director, ruler', *Sauḵšatra- 'son of Sauḵšatra- (?)', Rtadāman- (nom. Ṛtādhāmā) V.S., Ṛtasmara- 'mindful of right', *Tušṛatha-, cf. V. tuṣāratha- 'having rushing chariots', *Mativāja- 'victorious through prayer'. In addition there are found in private documents from this area written in Assyrian a number of proper names of local notables which can be interpreted as Aryan, e.g. Artamna, Bardaśva, Biryaśura, Puruśa, Śaimaśura, Satawaza, i.e. Ṛtamna- 'mindful of the law', Vārdhāśva- 'son of Vṛdhdāśva-', Viṃyaśura- 'hero of valour', Pūrusa- 'man, male', Ḳeṃmaśura- 'hero of peace or security', Sātavāja- 'who has won prizes' (Bvr. cf. v. Vājasāti-).

This was a period of the expansion of Mitanni influence in the surrounding territories. Consequently we come across rulers of neighbouring principalities having similar Aryan names, and this extends as far as Syria and Palestine. The clearest examples of Aryan names among these are Šuvardata:
*svardāta- 'given by heaven', Śatuara : *Satuara-, a stem bearing the same relation to Skt. sātvan- 'powerful, victorious: a warrior', as does Skt. īśvāra- 'lord' to Av. īsvan-; Aṛtamanyā : Rātamanyā- 'thinking on the law', Bīridāśva : Vṛddahāśva- 'possessing large horses', Bīryavāśa : Vīryavāja- 'having the prize of valour', Indarota : Ḫ índrotā- (RV) 'helped by Indra', Subandu : Subandhu-.

The contemporary Hittite kingdom had close relations both of peace and war with the Mitanni kingdom, and some of the documents from the Hittite capital provide important evidence for the presence of Aryans in the Mitanni country. The most interesting of these documents is a treaty concluded between the Hittite king Suppiluliuma and the Mitanni king Matiwaza (c. 1350 B.C.). Among the divinities sworn by in this document there occur four well known Vedic divine names. They are Indara, Mitraṣ(i), Naśatia(nna), Uruvanaṇḍ(i), which stripped of their non-Aryan terminations are unmistakeably Ved. Indra-, Mitra-, Naśatya and Varuna-. It is clear that not only Aryan language, but also Aryan religion in a form closely resembling that known from the Ṛgveda, was current in this region of the Near East during this period.

The introduction of the horse to the countries of the Near East which took place during the early part of the second millenium B.C. seems to have been due mainly to these Aryans. The usefulness of this animal in war soon made it popular in the neighbouring kingdoms, among them the Hittites. Among the archives of the Hittite capital there exists a treatise on the care and training of horses. This is written in the Hittite language, but the author, who had charge of the royal horses was a Mitannian called Kikkuli. Furthermore some of the technical terms used in the work are Aryan words. These are aika vartanna, tera v̄, panza v̄, satta v̄ and navartanna (hapl. for nava-v̄) = Skt. eka-vartana- 'one turn (of the course)', and likewise for the numbers 3, 5, 7 and 9. The existence of these loanwords in the Hittite text shows clearly the priority of the Aryans in this field.

In addition to the above evidence there are a few Aryan traces among the documents of the Kassite dynasty of Babylon (c. 1750-1170 B.C.). The Kassites themselves were invaders from the East, from the Iranian plateau, and their language, of which something is known, has no connection whatever with
Aryan or Indo-European. Nevertheless in a list of names of gods with Babylonian equivalents we find a sun god Šurias (rendered Šamaš) which must clearly be identified with Skt. sūrya-. In addition Maruttas the war god (rendered En-urtu) has been compared with Skt. marút-, though here some difficulty is caused by the fact that the Skt. word always occurs in the plural. Among the kings of this dynasty one has a name which can be interpreted as Aryan: Abiruttas: abhi-ratha- 'facing chariots (in battle)'.

The existence of Aryans in this area was unsuspected until the discovery of these Aryan names in cuneiform documents, and a long discussion has proceeded for many years concerning them. Even though the material is small, it can nevertheless be concluded that a significant migration of Aryans in this direction had taken place at this early period. Although the chief centre of the Aryan influence, as far as our records go is the Hurrian state of Mitanni, what we find there is an Aryan dynasty ruling over a Hurrian population, with no evidence of any sizeable Aryan settlement. The kings of the Mitanni belonging to the dynasty with the Aryan names use Hurrian as their official language, and it is considered unlikely that in this situation they would have retained their original Aryan speech for long. The question that then arises is to decide from what base the conquest of the Mitanni state had proceeded, since such a base, with an Aryan population, is necessary to account for it. A clue to the answer to this problem is probably to be found in the fact that Aryan influence is found not only among the Hurrians, but also among the Kassites, a people originating in the mountainous regions of Western Iran. A settlement of Aryans in North-Western Iran, to the East of the Hurrian country, and to the North of the Kassites, would account for both of these developments.

Since the first discovery of Aryan traces in the ancient Near East discussion has proceeded as to whether these Aryans are to be connected with the Indo-Aryans or the Iranians, whether they are to be identified with the Proto-Aryans from which those two branches are descended, or whether they are to be regarded as a third branch of Aryans beside the other two. The predominant opinion at present is that they are to be connected specifically with the Indo-Aryans. This conclusion is founded partly on linguistic grounds, and partly on the fact
that the Aryan gods mentioned in the above mentioned treaty are specifically Vedic gods. The linguistic argument for this conclusion is illustrated by the word *aika- 'one' which corresponds to Sanskrit *eka- whereas Iranian has *aiva- with a different suffix (cf. p. 258). Likewise the name of the sungod Śūriyaś corresponds to Sanskrit Śūryaś, whereas Iranian shows no such form, but only the base (*hvār = Vedic svār) form which śūrya- is derived. As far as the treaty gods are concerned, they are prominent in the Rgveda, and are indeed all mentioned together in one hymn (RV. 10.125.1), but they cannot be shown to be all Proto-Aryan or Proto-Iranian, and there are in fact some reasons for believing that they were not so.

If the Aryans of the ancient Near East are to be connected specifically with the Indo-Aryans, then we must assume that they were two migrations proceeding from the same source, a massive one into North-West India and a smaller one in the direction of North-Western Iran. Since the Vedic Aryans certainly entered India across the mountain barrier separating the subcontinent from North-Eastern Iran, we must conclude that the closely related section of the Aryans who appear in the Near East started from the same source, taking a route which was to be followed early in the next millennium by the Medes and Persians.

The chronology of these two movements corresponds very closely. The Aryan invasion of N.W. India can be dated by the end of the Indus civilisation, for which no doubt they were largely responsible, and it may be assumed to have taken place in successive waves over a considerable period of time. In the ancient Near East their presence is established by 1500 B.C. at latest, and the process of migration and settlement must have occupied a considerable period before that.

§ 7. The Emergence of Indo-Aryan

The pre-history of the Aryan language of India takes us far from the North-West India of the Vedic period both in space and time. Comparison with other languages renders possible a reconstruction of linguistic history which is nowhere directly recorded, and establishes as a fact important migrations and movements of peoples which otherwise would be unknown to history. It has also been possible to say something definite,
though naturally within fairly wide limits, about the origin of these movements, and about their chronology. The distribution of the IE languages suggests that their origin is to be sought in Central and Eastern Europe. The special relations of Indo-Iranian with the *satam*-group of languages, and with Balto-Slavonic in particular, together with evidence of contact between it and Finno-ugrian in the Primitive Indo-Iranian period, point to its original location in Central Russia. From there the movement was eastward and southward, with the result that Central Asia became for a time the home of the Aryans. There is evidence that the division into the two branches, Indo-Aryan and Iranian, had already commenced at this early period. The Indo-Aryan group was the first to move south, first into eastern Iran, and then into India on the one hand, and into western Iran on the other. The second wave of migration was that of the Iranians, who established themselves first in eastern Iran, thereby cutting off the Indo-Aryans to the east from the Proto-Indoaryans to the west. Later the advance of the Iranians westwards resulted in the submergence of the latter, but their original presence there is attested by these documents from the Near East.

Chronologically there is not much direct information to rely on. The earliest and most important data are those relating to the presence of Aryans in the Near East from 1500 B.C. onwards. This is an important pointer to the period of the migrations, which to judge by historical analogies are likely to have taken place during a limited period of time. The first half of the second millennium B.C. which would seem to be indicated by this evidence as the general period of the migrations is one which agrees comfortably with all the general considerations which can be adduced. The next direct information about the Aryans refers to the Iranians. The presence of Medes and Persians in Iran proper is attested in the Assyrian annals from the ninth century B.C. onwards, and it is unlikely that they had occupied this area in any force for very long before this period. For the Indo-Aryan invasion of India no direct evidence is available. Nevertheless the very great similarity between the Vedic language and the earliest Iranian precludes any long period of separation between the two, and makes it impossible that the age of the Vedic hymns can be pushed back to the third or fourth millennium B.C. The average rough guess which places
the period of the Indo-Aryan invasions c. 1700-1400 B.C. and the period of the composition of the *Rgveda* c. 1200-1000 B.C. is not likely to be many centuries out, either one way or the other.

There is some linguistic evidence to show that the Indo-Aryan invasion took place in successive phases, and not in one simultaneous movement. There are dialectal differences between the Vedic language of the North West and the later classical language of Madhyadeśa. The most striking of these is that the Vedic language turns *l* into *r* whereas the classical language, to a large extent, preserves the distinction between *r* and *l*. This Vedic feature is characteristic of the whole of Iranian, and furthermore it can be traced in the Aryan of the Near East and in some Aryan words in Finno-ugrian. Clearly the fact that the more easterly dialects of early Indo-Aryan have avoided this change indicates a comparatively early separation from the main body, in comparison with the Vedic dialect which has undergone this change in common with the rest of Aryan before being introduced into India.

Certain features of the Kafiri languages of the North West indicate important dialectal divergencies of ancient Aryan at a time preceding the invasion of India. In some ways these languages stand half way between Indo-Aryan and Iranian. They agree with Indo-Aryan in retaining *s* which Iranian changes to *h*, but with Iranian in the treatment of the two palatal series (*e.g.* *zim* 'snow': Skt. *himá-, já- 'kill': Skt. *han*). In this respect they form simply an intermediate dialect group, as might be expected from their position between the two main groups. On the other hand in their treatment of the sound which appears in Sanskrit as *ś* they have preserved a form which is more archaic than anything found elsewhere in Indian and Iranian (*e* in *cuna- 'dog', *duc* 'to', etc.). This can only be satisfactorily explained as the isolated preservation of a very ancient dialectal feature within Indo-Iranian. The same considerations apply to the absence of cerebralisation of *s* after *u* in words like *dōs* 'yesterday' and *mūsō* 'mouse'. The change of *s* to *ś* (>Skt. *ś*) under specified conditions is, as we have seen, so ancient as to be shared by both Indo-Aryan and Slavonic, but it seems that some peripheral dialect of Indo-Aryan must have escaped it in connection with *ū*, and it is from this source that the Kafiri forms are derived. The evidence would suggest that the Aryan dialect which preserved
these archaisms was the very first to reach the borders of India, and that later successive waves of Indo-Aryan invaders confined it into a narrow space in the mountain valleys of the North-West frontier, where it has survived in isolation to this day.

The history of Indo-Aryan begins with the first introduction of Aryan speech into India, but between this event and the composition of the first recorded document of Indo-Aryan, the hymns of the Rgveda, a considerable period must have elapsed. This is clear from the fact that in the text of the Rgveda itself, although historical allusions are not uncommon, there is no reference anywhere to the fact of the migration, nor any definite indication that it was still remembered. Linguistic reasons also compel us to assume such a period, since the number of linguistic (mainly phonetic) changes that have taken place since the common Indo-Iranian stage is considerable. No doubt the beginnings of dialectal cleavage go back to the Indo-Aryan period, but there is no doubt that the bulk of the characteristic changes of Indo-Aryan and Iranian respectively have taken place after the complete separation of the two groups, that is to say, after the Aryan invasion of India.

Some of the more important changes that affected Indo-Aryan during this period may be briefly listed: (1) $jh$ and $zh$ become $h$ (= Ir. $j$ and $z$), (2) $j$ and $z$ are confused as $j$ (= Ir. $j$ and $z$), (3) a single group $ks$ results from the two combinations $k + s$ and $s + s$; these are kept apart in Iranian, (4) Aryan voiced groups of the type $gzh$, $bzh$ are replaced by unvoiced $ks$, $ps$ (Skt. $dip$asa: Av. $dive$za-), (5) Aryan $z$ is elided in all positions (Skt. $medh$à-, cf. Av. $mazd$à), (6) Elision of Aryan $z$ before $d$ gives rise to cerebral $d$ (ni$d$à-) and this, in conjunction with other combinatory changes (a$st$au, vi$ti$, kàrana-) is the beginning of a new series of consonants previously foreign to Aryan, as well as to the rest of Indo-European. (7) $s$ ($\theta$) is elided between two consonants (abhakta, s-aor.). (8) All final consonant groups are simplified and only the first remains (Skt. $v$àk: Av. $v$àx$\tilde{s}$). (9) A tendency begins to weaken the aspirates $dh$ and $bh$ to $h$ ($ih$à 'here': Av. $i$dà, but Pa. $i$dha has retained the older form). (10) The Aryan diphthongs $ai$, $au$ are turned into the simple vowels $\hat{e}$, $\hat{o}$.

This list of changes is impressive enough, and of great importance for the future history of Indo-Aryan, and a reasonable
length of time must be assumed for their completion. At the same time we have the impression that the period of fairly rapid linguistic change preceded the Vedic period. With the establishment of a recognised literary language, and a tradition of education associated with it, this rapid evolution was stopped as far as classical Sanskrit is concerned. The phonetic changes that distinguish Classical Sanskrit from the Vedic language are negligible in comparison with those that took place in the immediate pre-Vedic period. On the other hand the popular language, developing soon into the Prakrits, continued to show this tendency to rapid change. In particular it is interesting to note that the type of change seen in the examples listed above is similar to that of the later Middle Indo-Aryan changes. The assimilation of consonant groups in final position is the beginning of a process that affects all consonant groups. The development of voiced aspirates to $h$, which is general in the case of $\text{j}h$, $\text{zh}$ and sporadic elsewhere, is continued in Pali and Prakrit. The cerebral consonants once created become more and more prevalent. From the first Indo-Aryan is affected by certain characteristic tendencies to change which continue to be influential in later periods. These changes which set in from the beginning were rapid, and in the language of the people continued to be rapid. It was only the standardisation of Sanskrit at a very early period by organisers of Brahman civilisation, that arrested this development, in the case of the classical language, before it had proceeded too long, and thereby preserved for us a form of language which in most respects is more archaic and less altered from original Indo-European than any other member of the family.
CHAPTER II

OUTLINES OF THE HISTORY OF SANSKRIT

§ I. THE VEDIC LANGUAGE AND THE CLASSICAL LANGUAGE

About the pre-history of Indo-Aryan, both in India where it emerged as an independent form of speech, and outside India through the successive stages of Indo-Iranian and Indo-European, much can be deduced, and deduced with certainty with the help of comparative philology. But of all these stages of the language no direct record is preserved. The historical period of the language begins—probably, as we have seen, round about the period 1200-1000 B.C.—with the composition and compilation of the Rgveda. From this time the literary tradition is continuous and uninterrupted, and the gradual development of Indo-Aryan, through the various stages until the period of the modern languages is reached, can be followed in detail.

During this period great changes have taken place, and their operation has been continuous throughout the whole period. By all this change and development Sanskrit has been affected only to a small extent. From the beginning, from the time of the composition of the Vedic hymns and the establishment thereby of a recognised literary language, there was a strong tendency among the Brahmins, the guardians of this literature and of the religious and social system that went with it, to preserve the language against change. This applied not only to the preservation of the sacred texts themselves, which have been handed down with scrupulous accuracy by oral tradition, or to the composition of literary works on ancient models, but also to the language of everyday speech among the Brahmins, and in the royal courts with which they were always closely associated. This led to a growing divergence between the language of the educated classes and that of the people, which was subject to a fairly rapid alteration in the direction of Middle Indo-Aryan from an early period.
At the same time the language of the élite did not remain without change, in spite of all the influence of conscious conservatism. The classical language as fixed by Pāṇini (fourth cent. B.C.) is a noticeably younger form of language than that found in the Vedic texts, though much less altered from it than the spoken language of the masses, which is known slightly later from the inscriptions of Asoka. We have in fact up to this period two parallel developments of Indo-Aryan occurring side by side in different strata of the community, slow and gradual change in the dominant Brahman community restrained by education and a literary tradition, and beside it a rapid evolution among the mass of the population unhindered by education and tradition. With Pāṇini’s work Sanskrit in its external form became finally stabilised and no more change was allowed. From then on the history of Indo-Aryan is the history of Middle Indo-Aryan in its various phases (Pali, Prakrit, Apabhramṣa) and then of Modern Indo-Aryan. In this evolution Sanskrit took no part, but remained as it was fixed by Pāṇini at a period long antedating the bulk of the classical literature.

The differences between Vedic and Classical Sanskrit affect to a very small extent the phonetic structure of the language, and in this respect the contrast between Classical Sanskrit and Early Middle Indo-Aryan is most striking. They are more noticeable in the field of vocabulary and grammar, though here also they are comparatively restricted in scope.

Phonetically, apart from some dialectal phenomena such as \( \delta, \varphi \) for \( l, \lambda \), and the replacement of \( r \) by \( l \) in certain words, the differences are mainly concerned with innovations of Sandhi. This is noticeable for instance in the case of \(-iy\, -uv\) of the Veda which are normally replaced by \( y, u \). The rule has been applied to the accepted text of the Rgveda, so that for instance what is written \( tavan \) is, from the evidence of the metre, to be pronounced \( tanuva\). Among Vedic peculiarities of final Sandhi we may note that \( s \) is only inserted between final \( n \) and initial \( t \) when it is etymologically justified (\( sarvāṃs tān, \) but \( varṣman tasthau, maghavan tava, ajagmiran te \)), and that before vowels the terminations of the acc. pl. \(-ān, īn, ūn\) appear as \(-āh, īhr\) and \( īhr \) (\( sargāṁ iva, paridhiṁr ati \)). In such cases later Sanskrit has regularised the Sandhi by the analogical extension of a form that was originally justified only in a certain context (e.g. \(-ān, -īn, -ūn\) was the regular phonetic development before
voiced consonants and in final position, and from there its use was extended to cases where a vowel followed). Apart from such comparatively minor changes Classical Sanskrit preserves the basic phonetic structure of the Vedic language intact.

The tendency to change is a good deal more noticeable in the morphology, and in Classical Sanskrit the wealth of forms prevalent in the earlier language is considerably reduced.

Nominal stem-formation shows a reduction in variety in the classical language, and with the disuse of certain suffixes whole classes of words so formed tend to become obsolete. For instance, the suffix -yu is productive in the Vedic language producing not only primary derivatives (yājyu- 'pious') but also a number of secondary formations connected with denominative verbal stems (devayu- 'devoted to the gods', vājayu- 'eager to win'). After the early Vedic period it ceases to be productive, and in consequence most of the words so formed went out of use. Only those that were common enough to survive as individual words remained: manyu- 'anger', dasyu- 'robber', etc. Examples could be given of the same tendency over the whole field of nominal stem formation.

In nominal composition the Vedic type of governing compound seen in examples like bharādvāja- 'carrying off the prize', etc., became early obsolete. In other respects we see not a diminution in nominal composition, but a steady extension in its use. The members of a compound are rarely more than two in number in the Veda, and the conditions under which they may be formed are limited. As the language advances greater freedom is observed both as to the number of members in a compound, and as to the type of syntactical construction allowed to be so expressed. Finally the stage is reached where compounds of any length may be formed almost without restriction, the whole character of the literary language being thereby changed. In this respect the later classical language goes far beyond anything that would have been countenanced by Pāṇini.

There is considerable simplification and modernisation in nominal declension. Older forms of inflection in a-stems such as instr. sg. in -ā (vīryā beside vīryena) and nom. pl. nt. in -ā (bhūvanā beside bhūvanāni) are given up in favour of the new formations. At the same time some innovations of the Vedic language (nom. pl. m. -āsas, instr. pl. -ebhis beside -ās, -ais) are discarded. One type of inflection of i- and u- stems (āvyas,
krātvas) is abandoned, though one type of special neuter inflection is preserved (vārīnas, madhuninas) and a new type of feminine inflection is introduced from the ī- stems (gātyās, dhenvās). Of the two types of inflection of ī- stems, the vrkī type is abandoned in favour of the devī type with some influence of the former on the latter (nom. pl. devyās as opposed to devīs of the Vedic language), and some isolated survivals (nom. sg. lakṣmīs). The irregular vocatives in -s of the vaṇ- and vaṇt-stems (bhagavas, etc.) are abandoned. Endingless locatives of the type aksān are abandoned in favour of the fully inflected forms (aksāni or aksṇī). The Vedic locative formations from the personal pronouns in -ē (asme, etc.) disappear. In the dual the number of cases that can be formed from these pronouns is reduced from five to three by the elimination of the nominative and ablative forms (avām, yuvām; āvāt, yuvāt). In the conjugation of the verb the classical language simplifies considerably the complicated morphology of the earlier language. The alternative termination -māsi of the 1st pers. plural is abandoned, and likewise the long forms of the 2nd plural in -tana, -thanā. That form of conjugation in the middle which is characterised by the absence of t in the 3rd singular and the termination r in the 3rd plural (duḥē, duhrē, impf. āduha, āduhra) is abandoned. The old imperatives in -si disappear. The s- aorist is enlarged in the 2nd and 3rd singular to produce forms more easily recognisable (ānaiṣit for ānais). The root aorist is confined to roots in long ā and the root bhū. Pluperfect forms are eliminated. The most important loss in the verbal structure is that of the subjunctive. This mood is very common indeed in the Veda, and also later till the close of the Brāhmaṇa period, but by Pāṇini's time, apart from forms of the first person incorporated in the Imperative, it had fallen quite out of use. The use of the unaugmented forms classed as Injunctive is confined to constructions with the prohibitive mā. Modal forms outside the present system cease to be used, as also participles from aorist bases. In place of the great variety of infinitive forms in the Veda, only one, that in -tum is used in the classical language. Similarly old variant forms of the gerund (e.g. in -tvā, -tvāya) and gerundive (e.g. in -tva, -enya) disappear.

An important difference between the Vedic and the classical language lies in the treatment of the prepositional prefixes attached to verbal roots. In the classical language the prefix
stands immediately before the verbal form with which it is compounded. On the other hand in the Vedic language its position is quite free, and it may be separated from the verb by several words, or, on occasion, come after it. This freedom was characteristic of Indo-European, and elsewhere the tendency has generally been to associate the prefix more closely with the verb as time went on. There is the same difference in this respect between Homeric and classical Greek as between Vedic and classical Sanskrit.

Finally there are changes in vocabulary. This has already been noticed in connection with disuse of certain types of nominal stem formation, but it applies equally to the whole field of vocabulary. A number of old Indo-European words which are current in the Veda are no longer used in the classical period. Such are átkas- ‘garment’ (Av. aška-), ápás ‘work’ (Lat. opus), ánáhas ‘juice of soma plant’ (cf. Gk. ἄβος ‘flower’ ?), ámas- ‘strength’ (Av. ama-), árvantes- ‘steed’ (Av. áurvant- ‘swift’), avalá- ‘spring’ (Lett. avuots), ádhrás- ‘mean, lowly’ (Av. ádra-), ápí- ‘friend, ally’ (cf. Gk. ἰπός ‘kind’), īširā- ‘vigorous, strong’ (cf. Gk. ἵππος ‘sacred’), īrmás- ‘foreleg’ (Lat. armus, etc.), usít- ‘a kind of priest’ (Av. usig-), ōsvā- ‘high’ (Av. əśvāra-), krazis- ‘raw flesh’ (cf. Gk. κρέας), gātu- ‘way, course; abode’ (Av. gātu-), gnā ‘wife of god’ (Av. gñā ‘wife’, Gk. γυνή, etc.), cánas- ‘pleasure, satisfaction’ (Av. cána-), cyautnds- ‘deed, enterprise’ (Av. syaoθna-), jánas ‘race’ (Gk. γένος, Lat. genus), jāni- ‘woman’ (Av. jaini-), jénya- ‘under the care of, entrusted to’ (Sogd. zynyh, Khotanese yšinitya-, whence Central Asian Prakrit jhena ‘id’), jrdyas- ‘expansate, flat surface’ (Av. jrayah- ‘lake’), tītāiu- ‘sieve’ (for *tītānu-, cf. Gk. διατάω ‘sift’, etc.), tokā- ‘offspring’, tókmans- ‘offshoot’ (Av. taoxman- ‘seed’), twaks- ‘to be active, energetic’ (Av. ὀξωστός), dasmás- dasrá- ‘accomplished, clever’, dāmsas- ‘wonderful deed’ (cf. Av. dahnma- ‘instructed’, dāya- ‘accomplished’, dāyaha- ‘cleverness’, Gk. δεδω ‘taught’, δεδε ‘uninstructed’, δεδω ‘instructed’, etc.), dám ‘house’ (Lat. domus, etc.), dānu- ‘moisture’ (Av. dānu ‘stream’, Osset. don), dāsvas- ‘worshipper’, drapsa- ‘banner’ (Av. drapsa-), nákts- ‘night’ RV 7. 71, 1 (Lat. nox, etc.; adverbial naktam remains), nāhús- ‘neighbour’, nēma- ‘half’ (Av. naēma-), pan- ‘to praise, extol’, pastyā ‘habitation’, pitu- ‘nourishment, food’ (Av. pitu- ‘id’, Lith. pėtūs ‘midday

The existence of homonyms frequently results in the suppression of one of such pairs. The early Vedic language possessed *āsura*-1 'lord' (Av. *ahura*) and *āsura*-2 'demon'. Only the latter is in use from the later Vedic period onwards. Similarly of the pair *ari*-1 'devoted, trustworthy' (whence *ārya*, *ārya*-, cf. Hitt. *ara*- 'friend, ally', etc.) and *ari*-2 'enemy' (<*āli*-, cf. Lat. *alius*, etc.), only the latter is preserved. Vedic *kārū*-1 'singer' (*kṛ*- 'to celebrate', cf. Gk. *κρῆνε*), *kāpūc* 'herald') yields to classical *kāru*-2 'artisan' (*kr*- 'to do, make), and Vedic *rājas*1 'space' (*raja*- 'to stretch out', cf. Lat. *regiō*, etc.) is abandoned on account of the competition of *rājas*2 'dust, dirt'. Similarly of the pairs *paruṣā*-1 'light grey' (Av. *pauruṣa*-), cf. Engl. *fallow*, etc.) and *paruṣa*-2 'knotty, rough' (*pārus*-), *pārvan*- 'knot'), *pāyū*-1 'protector' and *pāyū*-2 'anus', *phalgu*-1 'reddish, pink', *phalgu*-2 'hollow, without substance', the homonym listed first ceases to be used in the later language.

Changes of meaning naturally occurred over so long a period. Many of these occurred in the natural growth of the language. For instance *vāhni*- in the Veda means simply 'carrier' and it is
applied to Agni in his capacity of carrying the oblations to the gods. Later it means 'fire' in general by a perfectly natural extension of meaning. The term ādasyu- is primarily ethnological, meaning the non-Aryan inhabitants of India; later it acquires the meaning 'robber, brigand'. Similarly ādásá- 'slave' was originally a tribal name (cf. the Dahae of Central Asia), and the same may apply to śūdrā- 'member of the fourth caste', since a tribe with this name is known to have existed in N.W. India from both Indian and Classical sources.

In other cases the change of meaning in the later language is due simply to a misunderstanding of the Vedic word. This is the case with krātu- 'sacrifice' as opposed to Vedic krātu- 'wisdom, insight'. Here there is no change of meaning, but simply a failure to understand properly the meaning of the Vedic texts. In classical Sanskrit mātariśvan- means 'wind'; originally it meant the divine being who discovered fire by the method of rubbing two sticks, and also Agni himself (from *mātariś- 'fire-stick', etymologically equivalent to Lat. matrix); the change of meaning can only be due to the fading of the old mythology in the popular mind. Vedic kīlāla- meant a certain milk preparation (cf. Khowar kīlāl 'a kind of cheese'); its use in classical Sanskrit to mean 'blood' is due to a misunderstanding of the old texts.

False popular etymology in the case of the old words dāsura- 'demon' and dāsīta- 'black' led to the creation of two new words. Since the initial a- in these words was falsely interpreted as the negative a-, sura- 'god' and sita- 'white' were created as their opposites.

The above examples show that the losses in vocabulary during this period of the history of the language were considerable. As elsewhere the Indo-European heritage of Indo-Aryan was steadily reduced with the passage of time. One result was that many of the old words of the Veda ceased to be understood in later times. The difficulties that ensued gave rise at an early period to a special school of interpretation (nirukta-) of the Veda. Collections of difficult vocables were made and attempts to explain them on an etymological basis were made. These labours were summed up in the work of Yāska, who may be roughly contemporary with Pāṇini. These attempts at interpretation were successful to only a limited degree, and it emerges quite clearly there existed no reliable tradition as to
the meaning of many Vedic words, with the result that the authors were frequently reduced to guessing. The same applies to the later commentatorial works culminating in the great Bhāṣya of Śaṅkara. In modern times the labours of scholars, equipped with greater resources than the ancients, have done much to reduce the field of uncertainty, but even now there remains over a considerable amount of material which defies certain interpretation.

In contrast to the losses of the old vocabulary, classical Sanskrit has acquired a large number of new words from various sources. These gains far more than counterbalance the losses, and the vocabulary of classical Sanskrit is one of the richest known. Of course there are many words which appear first in the later language and at the same time belong to the most ancient layer of Indo-Aryan. The absence of such words from the older texts is partly accidental, since, extensive though they are, the Vedic texts do not contain the whole linguistic material of pre-classical Sanskrit. Partly also it is a question of dialect; the widening of the horizon in the case of later as opposed to Vedic Sanskrit led to the inclusion of Old Indo-Aryan material which may not have been current in the dialects which underlay the early standard language. For instance the adverb parut 'last year' is not recorded before Pāṇini, but it is an ancient IE word as is shown by the Greek equivalent πέρυσιν. Similarly the related parāri 'year before last' is, we may be sure, absent from the early texts only by accident. 'There are many words which must be ancient because their formation is of an ancient type, e.g. vipula- 'abundant' from the root पूर्व- 'to fill'. In this case the preservation of IE l, elsewhere not found with this root, suggests that its absence from the early Vedic texts is a matter of dialect.

A large number of the new words are fresh formations based on the existing stock of roots and formatives. As long as the suffixes of derivation retained their living character, there was ample scope for the creation of new terms as occasion demanded. This was particularly so since it was combined with the facility of compounding verbal roots with prepositional prefixes, and in this way terms could be created at will for any conceivable need. From the root कर- 'to do' alone, by means of the suffixes of derivation, and with the help of some score of prepositional prefixes, many hundreds of words were manufactured, whose meanings cover every field of practical and theoretical expression.
The vocabulary was further enriched from outside Indo-Aryan itself. The pre-existing vernaculars made a sizeable contribution to the Sanskrit vocabulary. This influence is strongest, it seems, in the case of Dravidian words and that can be identified with certainty as Dravidian run into several hundred. Though a few are found already in the Vedic language, the majority do not become current before the classical language. A smaller proportion was provided by the Kolarian languages. Some words were introduced from outside India, e.g. from Iranian (vārabāna-, 'breast plate') or from Greek (hora 'hour'). See further Chapter VIII.

Even when all these new words have been accounted for there remains a considerable number of words in classical Sanskrit whose origin is unknown. Most were no doubt originally desi words in the Indian terminology, and since the linguistic complexity of pre-Aryan India must have been greater than anything that now appears, we should not be surprised to find so many words whose origin remains unexplained.

Such in brief are the main changes which took place in Sanskrit between the early Vedic and the classical period. In the pre-classical literature this evolution can be traced in its succeeding stages. This literature, which is devoted entirely to religion and ritual, falls into three main sections.

I. The Samhitās of the Rgveda, Sāmaveda, Yajurveda and Atharvaveda.

II. The Brāhmaṇas, prose texts devoted to the mystical interpretation of the ritual.

III. The Śūtras, containing detailed instructions for performing the ritual, of which the Śrautasūtras deal with the great public sacrifices, and the Gṛhyasūtras with household ritual.

The periods which are conventionally assumed for the composition of this literature are (1) Samhitās 1200-800 B.C., (2) Brāhmaṇas, 800-500 B.C., (3) Śūtras 600-300 B.C.

In the absence of any definite information, such chronology rests mainly on guess-work. On the other hand, the relative chronology of the succeeding strata can be established beyond all doubt by means of linguistic data contained in the texts themselves. The linguistic changes summarised above took place gradually and the language of the succeeding phases of the literature becomes steadily more and more similar to the classical norm. The gulf that separates the language of the
Ṛgveda from classical Sanskrit is very much greater than that separating the language of even the earliest prose texts from it. The later Samhitās can be shown on the basis of language to be later in date than the Ṛgveda, and within that work itself the tenth book is known to be the latest for the same reason. In the same way a chronological distinction can be made between earlier and later Brāhmanaṇaṣ.

Since the Brāhmanaṇaṣ are in prose, their language may be taken as reasonably representative of the spoken language of the upper classes in the later Vedic period. It still retains pre-classical features, such as the use of the old subjunctive, but already the majority of the old Vedic forms have fallen into disuse. By the time of the composition of the Sūtras the language has reached in all essentials the stage at which it was codified by Pāṇini. In all the Sūtras it is possible to find grammatical forms which do not conform strictly to the Pāṇinean rules. But in contrast to the earlier literature these forms are not as a rule archaïsms. The difference is rather that their usage is somewhat more lax and careless than that allowed by the strict formulation of the grammarians, and in this respect they accurately reflect the spoken usage of the period of Pāṇini himself and of the period immediately preceding. Their language is based, not like the later classical Sanskrit on an established and traditional grammatical system, but on that same spoken language of the educated Brahmins, which is the source of the grammatical system of Pāṇini. These texts are very important in linguistic history: they stand side by side with Pāṇini as an independent authority on the living Sanskrit language during the period immediately preceding its final codification. It is here, and not in the later literature, that we must look for a living illustration of the language that Pāṇini established in its final form.

§ 2. OLD INDO-ARYAN

The Sanskrit language, in its Vedic and Classical form, had, as already observed, a definite geographical location. In the very earliest period this lay in the Punjab, but the centre soon moved eastward to the countries of Kuru and Pañcāla, and there it remained during the whole later Vedic period. Certain dialectal divergencies between the language of the Ṛgveda and that of the later literature—notably the use of ɪ instead of Vedic
can be ascribed to this. In addition there existed dialect areas containing features which find no place in Sanskrit. Quite early in the Vedic period there were extensive settlements of Indo-Aryans to the East (Kosala, etc.) and to the South (Avanti, etc.). The spoken language outside the area which was the home of classical Sanskrit differed in certain respects from the spoken language of this area. The term Old Indo-Aryan is sometimes used as alternative to Sanskrit, but this is incorrect, since there were other dialects of Indo-Aryan in addition to those on which Sanskrit is founded. The term Old Indo-Aryan should be used for the whole body of Indo-Aryan during the early period, and Sanskrit is not co-extensive with this.

Of the non-Sanskritic dialects of Old Indo-Aryan no direct remains are preserved, and there would not be much to be said about it, if it were not for the fact that in the later Middle Indo-Aryan dialects a fair amount of material exists which cannot be explained out of Sanskrit, Vedic or Classical, but only out of equally ancient, but different forms of Indo-Aryan such as have been referred to above. A complete collection of such material has never been put together, but enough evidence is available to demonstrate the one-time existence of non-Sanskritic dialects of Old Indo-Aryan. The differences involved were not very great (as compared for instance with the early dialects of Iranian), but they are sufficient to be worth taking into account.

Among the phonetic features we may note primarily the change of final -as to -e in contrast to its treatment as -o in Sanskrit and the later Prakrit dialects of the central area. This was a distinguishing feature of Eastern Indo-Aryan, but examples are also found in the extreme North-West. In sūre duhitā 'daughter of the sun' one dialectal form of this type is preserved in the Rgveda. In place of Sanskrit kṣ Middle Indo-Aryan forms sometimes show jh-, jjh-, ggh in cases where Iranian has the sonant combination γ̄ (Pkt. jharaī 'flows', Pa. paggharati, Skt. kṣar-, Av. ṣvar-, etc.). There are dialectal variations in the treatment of ancient žh (r); OIA ur in place of Skt. īr is attested in some cases: Pkt. juna- 'old' (<*jürnā-: Skt. jūrṇā-), tūha- 'ford' (<*tūrthā-: Skt. tūrthā-). In some dialects ancient -ād- was replaced by -dd- instead of by single -d- with compensatory lengthening as in Sanskrit, e.g. Pa. niḍḍa-: Skt. niḍḍ- 'nest'. In Pa. idha 'here' a more ancient form of the word is preserved than in Skt. ihā, Pkt. sidhila-
‘slack’ (out of *śīthila-) and Skt. śīthirā- (‘la-’) are parallel independent developments from earlier * śythirā- (śrait- ‘to loosen’).

A number of grammatical differences can be observed, though the loss of so much of the old inflection in Middle Indo-Aryan has eliminated much of this. Forms of the third plural ātmanepada like Pa. vijjare ‘ are seen’ (> *vidyare) indicate that such r- endings were more extensively used in some Old Indo-Aryan dialects than in Sanskrit. Pa. jigucchati ‘ is disgusted’ (Skt. jūgupsate) shows i- reduplication of the desiderative in the case of roots containing the vowel -u- which is absent in Sanskrit but known to Old Iranian (Av. cixšnuma- ‘ desire to please’).

Pa. harāyati ‘ is angry’ continues an Old Indo-Aryan form bearing the same relation to Skt. ārṇīte as Vedic grbhadāti to grhnāti. In vihessi ‘ injures’, vihesā ‘ injury’ (< *viheśayati, *vihesā, √ hims-) Old Indo-Aryan forms unknown to Sanskrit are represented. In Pa. sabbadhi ‘ everywhere’ an old adverbial termination is preserved which has a parallel in Gk. -θο. Pa. kāhāmi ‘ I will do ’ represents an Old Indo-Aryan anīt future * karṣyāmi as opposed to Skt. karisyāmi. Pa. sāmaṁ ‘ oneself’, which is unknown to Sanskrit, is the equivalent of Av. hāmā-, O. Sl. samū. Participial forms like mukka- ‘ released’, rnnna- ‘ weeping’ continue old formations in -na, as opposed to the Skt. formations in -ta. The Ardha-Māgadhī participles in -mīna seem to represent an ancient Indo-Aryan variant of Skt. -māna. The participle dinna- ‘ given’ implies an old formation reduplicating with i as in Greek (*dīdāmi : Gk. dīdōmu). The participles in -tāvin (vijitāvin- ‘ who has conquered ’) are an ancient formation equivalent to the -tavant- participles of Sanskrit. In elase ‘ to go’ we have a Vedic type of infinitive not elsewhere found. The absolutives in -tūna (Pkt. *tūna), gantūna, etc., differ in apophony from the Vedic forms in -tvāna. Difference in apophony is frequently observable in stem formations: e.g. supina- ‘ dream’ = Gk. ἐνυόσ as opposed to Skt. svāpna- with guṇa ; garu- ‘ heavy’ has guṇa of the root as opposed to Skt. gurū-; compare in the same way turita- ‘ hastening’, thīṇa- ‘ slothful’ (< *stīna-) with Skt. tvarita-, styāna-. Nominal stem formations unrepresented in Sanskrit are not uncommon, e.g. Pa. nahnār- ‘ sinew’, theta- ‘ firm’, theva- ‘ drop’ (< *snāru-, *theta-, *stipa- (stip- ‘ to drip’); Pkt. māhaṇa- ‘ brahmin’ (lit. ‘ great one ’), cf. V. māhina- ‘ great’.

From evidence such as this we can form some idea, fragmentary though it is, of the dialectal variety of Old Indo-Aryan. It is necessary to bear this in mind so that the evolution of Sanskrit can be seen in its proper perspective. The formation of a standard language implies a rigorous process of selection and exclusion. In all spoken language there is continuous variation from area to area and from class to class. Sanskrit was based on the spoken language of the higher classes of Madhyadesa, influenced by the older sacred language of the Rgveda which had originated further West. This was the centre of propagation of Brahmin religion, in its orthodox form, and of a fixed standard language which was the property of the Brahmin community in whatever part of Aryavarta they resided. Pañini speaks occasionally of differences in speech between the Easterners and the Northerners. But these are always trivialities. Sanskrit as a spoken language was essentially the same over the whole of North India, and from an early period also in the Deccan. Under the surface there were dialectal differences which for the earliest period can be dimly perceived, and which come out into the light of day during the next stage of the language, Middle Indo-Aryan.

§ 3. The Grammarians

The importance of the grammarians in the history of Sanskrit is unequalled anywhere in the world. Also the accuracy of their linguistic analysis is unequalled until comparatively modern times. The whole of the classical literature of Sanskrit is written in a form of language which is regulated to the last detail by the work of Pañini and his successors.

Grammatical interest in India arose in the first place in connection with the necessity of preserving intact the sacred texts of the Veda. It was of the utmost ritual significance that every word used in the recitals at the sacrifices should be pronounced absolutely correctly. Among the means by which the correct
transmission of the Vedic texts was achieved was the *Pada-pātha*, in which each word of the text was repeated separately. To do this correctly, as it is done in the main, involved the beginning of grammatical analysis and, since it involved the resolution of Sandhi, phonetic analysis.

The phonetic teaching necessary for the correct recitation of the Vedas is embodied in the *Prātisākhya*. There are several of these attached to various Vedic schools, and they deal with the subject in great detail and with accuracy. They are a very important source for our knowledge of ancient pronunciation. It is disputed whether any of these texts in their present form are earlier than Pāṇini, but in some form or other instruction of this sort must be as old as the Vedic schools themselves. Later works dealing with phonetics are the *Śikṣās* which exist in large numbers and contain valuable observations.

Difficulties in the interpretation of the Vedic texts owing to the obsolescence of words led to the beginnings of lexicography. The earliest work of this kind, the *Nighaṇṭu* consists of lists of difficult Vedic words, of divinities, etc., drawn up for the use of teachers. The commentary on these by Yāska, who is probably not far removed from Pāṇini in time, contains the earliest systematic discussions on questions of grammar. Here we find the parts of speech already distinguished as *nāma* 'noun', *sarvanāma* 'pronoun', *ākhyāta* 'verb', *upasarga* 'preposition' and *nipāta* 'particle'. The derivation of nouns by means of *kṛt* and *taddhita* affixes has become a well established theory, and an interesting argument between Śākaṭāyana and Gārgya is reported as to whether all nouns can be derived in this way from verbal roots. The former maintained that they could, and in spite of the cogent arguments on the other side advanced by Gārgya, this was the theory that generally held the field in Sanskrit grammatical theory. It is a fact that a larger proportion of the Sanskrit vocabulary is capable of such analysis than is the case in most languages.

The date of Pāṇini is most commonly fixed in the fourth century B.C. which is in accordance with the native tradition which connects him with the Nanda king of Magadha. Nothing is known of his life except the fact that he was born in the extreme North-West of India at Śālātura. His *Aṣṭādhyāyī* which fixed the form of Sanskrit grammar once and for all, consists of some 4,000 aphorisms of the greatest brevity. This
brevity is achieved by the invention of an algebraical system of notation of a kind not found outside the grammatical schools. The system is so idiosyncratic that it could not possibly have been invented there and then by one man and imposed immediately on all his colleagues. It is clearly the growth of many centuries and Pāṇini is to be regarded as the final redactor of a traditional Vyākaraṇa who superseded all others on account of his superior comprehensiveness and accuracy. Many of the predecessors of Pāṇini are in fact cited in the text, but the merits of his own work condemned theirs to early oblivion.

The brevity which the Sūtra style aimed at and achieved was due to the fact that all instruction was still oral and dependent on memory. It implies also from the very beginning the existence of a commentary (vṛtti), also oral, in which the examples were contained. When this was first written down is not known, but the earliest existing commentary on Pāṇini, the Kāśikā, dates from a thousand years after his time (c. A.D. 700). A gaṇapāṭha containing lists of words referred to in the Sūtra by citation of the first word in them followed by -ādi, and a dhātu-pāṭha, containing a list of verbal roots, formed essential parts of his system.

The Sūtras of Pāṇini were supplemented and to some extent corrected by Kātyāyana at a date not long after the composition of the Aṣṭādhyāyī itself. These notes (Vārttika-) are of the same brevity as the original work, but were fortunately soon made the subject of an extensive commentary (Mahābhāṣya) by Patañjali. His date is fortunately known through contemporary references, notably to the Śunga king Pusyamitra and to an invasion of the Bactrian Greeks, which fix him definitely in the second century B.C.

Later grammatical works exist in abundance, and many diverse schools arose, but none of them have any independent authority, being completely derivative from Pāṇini. The earliest is the Kāṭāntra which arose about the Christian era, and whose author Sarvavarman is said by tradition to have been connected with the Sātavāhana dynasty of the Deccan. The work aimed at introducing the study of correct Sanskrit to a wider public than the educated Brahmins for whom Pāṇini and his immediate successors had written. Of later works mention may be made of the Grammar of Candra (A.D. sixth century) which achieved great popularity among the Buddhists, and the
Jainendra Vyākaraṇa (c. 678) which was composed on behalf of the Jains. Later the polymath Hemacandra produced also for the Jains the Haima Vyākaraṇa. In addition, a number of minor systems are known which were popular in various localities, but which have nothing original to contribute.

The object of all these later grammars was to present the material contained in Pāṇini in a form comparatively easy to assimilate, and in this respect they performed a service to very many who were not equal to the arduous task of mastering the original text itself. How useful they were is shown by their continuous popularity. They contain little that is original since for them there existed no other source from which they could draw except the work of their illustrious predecessor. To Pāṇini the main source of his work was the living speech of himself and his contemporaries. It is the merit of his grammatical system that by means of the Śūtra and commentary, and by such subsidiary compilations as Dhātupāṭha, Gana-pāṭha, etc., the vast bulk of the contemporary linguistic usage was incorporated, analysed and codified in the teachings transmitted from teacher to pupil in the schools of the Grammarians. The rapid process of linguistic change that took the vernaculars through the various stages of Middle Indo-Aryan enhanced progressively the value of this codification. It is characteristic of Ancient India that the founders of schools and doctrines should be exalted to semi-divine status and regarded as omniscient. In the case of Pāṇini this was more justified than in other cases since he had direct knowledge of the living Sanskrit language of the fourth century B.C. which is the source of all his statements. As a result of his labours and the labours of his school this form of language was accepted as a standard throughout the long period that remained of the classical civilisation of India. As the gap between this and the vernaculars grew continually wider, the usage of the speakers and writers of Sanskrit grew more dependent on Pāṇini, and his authority more absolute. Pāṇini’s grammar was based on the language of his contemporaries, and conversely the language of Kālidāsa and his successors is based on the grammar of Pāṇini. The Sanskrit of the classical literature was a living language in the sense that it was written and spoken by the educated in preference to any other, but at the same time it was a language that had to be learnt in schools by
means of an arduous discipline. It was a prerequisite for all men of letters of the period that they should know by heart the Aṣṭādhyāyī, and evidence of this dependence appears continuously in their works.

As time went on, the cultivation of classical Sanskrit also came to depend on the Kośas or lexica. Apart from the Vedic nighantus lexicography is a later growth in India than grammar. The extant lexica are mostly late and are compilations out of earlier works. Amarakośa, the earliest existing, has not been accurately dated, but it is put approximately in the period A.D. 600-800. Earlier works are known and sometimes quoted, but not preserved. These works are in metre and intended to be learnt by heart, a practice which in the traditional schools has continued to this day. When this first became an essential requirement of a literary education is not clearly known, but certainly for the later period of Sanskrit literature we may assume that the writers were so equipped.

In spite of their late date and, in general, unscientific method, the lexica are of considerable value, since they preserve a large number of words which are not recorded in available texts. At the same time careless copying and inaccurate transmission has created some ghost words, which careful comparison of the various lexica may remove.

§ 4. Epic Sanskrit

The bulk of the classical Sanskrit literature was composed at a period very much later than the fixing of the language by Pāṇini. An earlier period in literary and linguistic history is represented by the two great popular epics, the Mahābhārata and the Rāmāyaṇa. It does not seem that either of these two works reached its final form until well after the Christian era, but the tradition of epic recitation goes back into the Vedic age. The Mahābhārata in particular was a long time in forming, and a good deal of what is incorporated in the final recension may claim an earlier date.

We have therefore in the Epics extensive documents of Sanskrit belonging to a period nearer to Pāṇini than the classical literature in the narrow sense. They provide also evidence of the wide popularity of one type of Sanskrit literature among the masses of the people, since these works were reserved for no
special or cultivated audience, but intended for public recital to the population in general. Their popular character is evidenced by their language. This is Sanskrit definitely enough as opposed to the contemporary Middle Indo-Aryan, but it is a Sanskrit which frequently violates the rules which Pāṇini had laid down and which were always observed in the more orthodox literary circles. Among the common deviations of the Epic language a few characteristic types may be quoted. The distinction between the active and middle forms of the verb, which was still fully alive in Pāṇini’s time, and for which he caters in some detail, is beginning to be blurred in the Epic. Active forms are used for middle and vice-versa, and even the passive verb sometimes takes active endings (śṛūyanti ‘are heard’, etc.). There is some confusion between the gerunds in -tvā and -ya, and the rule of Pāṇini which restricts the former to un compounded and the latter to compounded verbs is not always observed. Unaugmented preterites occur, a characteristic which is also found in the Veda, as well as in early middle Indo-Aryan. Conversely the augmented forms are occasionally found with the prohibitive particle (mā . . . agamaḥ ‘do not go’). The particle mā is not used exclusively with the unaugmented aorist according to rule but indifferently with imperative (mā bhava) optative (mā brūyāḥ) future (mā drakṣyasi) and so on. The tenth class and causative verbs make a middle particle in -ayāna (codayāna- as opposed to correct codayamāna-) a usage to which metrical convenience has contributed. The careful rules of Pāṇini concerning the use of the alternative forms -ati and -anti in forming the feminine of present participles are not strictly observed. The distribution of set and anit forms frequently does not conform to rule.

These and other irregular forms correspond to what is found in early middle Indo-Aryan, indicating that Epic Sanskrit is a later form of Sanskrit than that of Pāṇini. No pre-Pāṇinean forms are found in the Epic, which means that although the epic tradition goes back to the Vedic period, and although the Mahabhārata story was familiar to people before Pāṇini’s time, even the earliest portions of the present text must be distinctly later than him. Since for centuries the transmission of the epic stories depended on oral tradition, and not a fixed oral tradition like that of the Vedic schools, it is not surprising that a circle of stories originating in the Vedic period should in their final form
appear in a language of a much later date with no archaic forms preserved.

The recitation and transmission of the Epic legends was not the business of the Brahmans, but of the Sūtas, a class of royal servants whose duties had originally included that of charioteer. It was natural that their language should be of a more popular nature than that of the educated classes par excellence, the Brāhmans. At the same time it is interesting that all along, in spite of the competition of Prakrit, Sanskrit was cultivated in much wider circles than in the priestly schools for whom Pāṇini's work was intended. Outside the brahmanical schools the knowledge of grammatical theory must have been elementary to say the least, and in the early period at least the knowledge of Sanskrit on the part of the epic reciters must have depended primarily on usage and not on formal instruction. From this arose the tendency to approximate the language to some extent to the prevailing type of Middle Indo-Aryan. Later when the gulf between the two became greater formal instruction in Sanskrit became a universal necessity, but by this period the epic style and the epic language had already established itself in its own right, and linguistic features such as those mentioned above were accepted and retained.

The language of the Epics served also as a model for the language of the Purāṇas, of which the earliest core dates to the same period. It is continued in the numerous later compilations, and further in a variety of sectarian āgamas, etc. Linguistically these compilations are not of great interest, except occasionally in the matter of vocabulary, and many, particularly the later ones, testify to the deficient education of their authors in grammar.

§ 5. THE SANSKRIT OF THE CLASSICAL LITERATURE

The special characteristics of classical Sanskrit arise from the fact that most of the literature dates from a period very much later than the period in which the form of the language was fixed. If Kālidāsa is to be dated c. A.D. 450 a period of no less than eight hundred years separates him from the grammarian Pāṇini. The work of Kālidāsa stands almost at the beginning of the body of classical literature which is preserved, and the greater part of this is separated by more than a millennium from the regulator of the language. This accounts largely for the
artificiality of style and language which is not absent from the best authors, and which in some is exaggerated beyond reason.

The literary gap in the period immediately preceding and succeeding the Christian era is due to the loss of the bulk of the pre-Kalidāsa literature, since it is known that kāvyā in all its forms was actively practised during all this time. The earliest Sanskrit inscriptions (e.g. of Rudradāman, A.D. 150) show the existence of a developed Sanskrit Kāvyā. Patañjali (c. 150 B.C.) quotes some kāvyā fragments and mentions by name a poet Vararuci. His own work is a valuable example of the prose style of the period, and it enables us to form a picture of early Pāṇinean Sanskrit at a time when it was still a fully living language. The works of Aśvaghoṣa who flourished under Kanishka (A.D. 78+) preserved in Nepal (and fragmentarily in Central Asia), though long forgotten in India, have survived by fortunate chance, as the sole examples of Sanskrit kāvyā literature in its earlier phase.

The gap, only partially to be filled, between Pāṇini and the classical literature, is responsible for certain changes in style and usage, which have affected the language of the latter, in spite of strict adherence to the rules of grammar. These changes comprise certain losses and also a number of innovations. Of the losses the most important was that of the old system of accentuation. This was still in full force in the time of Patañjali and it must have continued in being for some time after that, but by the time the bulk of the classical literature was composed it had certainly disappeared from ordinary use. Certain of Pāṇini’s grammatical forms though recognised were not in practice used. Already Patañjali remarks that forms of the second plural of the perfect like ūṣa, tēra, cakra are no longer in use, their place being taken by the participial forms usitāh, īṛnāh, kṛlavantāh. Later a good deal else was tacitly ignored. There are many constructions and idioms taught by Pāṇini which are not recorded in the later literature (anuvāje- or upāje- ‘to strengthen’, nivacane-kr ‘to be silent’, etc.), and many others which have obviously been employed by the later authors as evidence of their grammatical learning (e.g. in Naiṣadhacarita, darśayitāhe, first person of the periphrastic future middle). There are losses in vocabulary and such words as anuvāvasarga- ‘allowing one his own way’, niravasita- ‘excommunicated’ and abhreṣa- ‘fitness, propriety’ are no longer
used. In particular the *Ganapātha* contains numerous terms which are found nowhere else, and since this text was handed down without meanings for a long time, it is often impossible now to discover the meaning of such words. The old distinction in meaning between the three past tenses (Imperfect, Aorist, Perfect) was not normally observed. The Aorist, though cultivated by the learned, seems to have gone out of common use. The middle perfect participles in *-āna* are entirely disused, and the active participles in *-vas* appear only rarely.

The innovations of the later classical Sanskrit affect mainly syntax and vocabulary. The most striking syntactical development is the increasing tendency to use compound words and the increasing length and complexity of the compounds used. In the earliest Sanskrit the use of compounds is not noticeably more predominant than in the Greek of Homer. In the language of Pāṇini’s day there were still strict rules and limitations in the formation of compound words, as is clearly evident from his own statements and examples. In the later language they are formed without restriction (e.g. any adjective may be so construed with any noun, as opposed to the original arrangement by which this could only be done when the term had a special significance, *krṣnasarpa*- ‘cobra’, etc.), and not infrequently in direct contradiction to Pāṇini’s rules (e.g. *jagatkartr*- ‘world-creator’ against P. 2. 2. 15-16). But the main thing is that there ceases to be any limitation to the number of members a compound may contain, since compound words treated as units may be compounded with further words, and by a process of accumulation long complexes are built up in which the syntactical relation of the members is expressed without recourse to inflection. This practice is not only at variance with the earlier usage and with Indo-European usage in general, but is also obviously incompatible with any form of popular speech which can have prevailed in India during the period. This linguistic development is a purely literary development, and it is a sign of the growing artificiality of the Sanskrit language as the difference between it and the vernacular Middle Indo-Aryan grew wider.

1 The hero of the drama *Pādmaprābhṛtiaka* (c. second or third cent. A.D.) asks a grammarian who speaks pedantically to use ordinary Sanskrit (*vyāvahārikā bhāṣā*). The pedantry which is illustrated consists in the liberal use of aorists and desideratives.
Another syntactical development affects the verb, but this is based on popular usage. Of the past tenses the aorist, with the amalgamation of some imperfect forms, survived in Early Middle Indo-Aryan, but by the time of the later Prakrit all traces of the old preterites have disappeared. Their place was taken by passive constructions with the past participle passive, and it is from this usage that the preterites of modern Indo-Aryan derive. The tendency is also reflected in Sanskrit literature, and the passive construction becomes gradually more predominant. It had obviously the advantage of simplicity, since the complicated verbal inflection of Sanskrit could be dispensed with, and in works of deliberately simple style like the Hitopadesha it is evidently chosen for this purpose. For active use the participle in -avant is adapted to serve as an alternative to the past tense: kṛtavān 'he did'. The nominal phrase in which the meaning is expressed by the juxtaposition of subject and predicate, without any verb becomes increasingly popular. This is particularly so in the philosophic literature, and since that language also favours long compounds, we may find long passages of exposition in which the only grammar consists of a few case inflections of abstract nouns.

The vocabulary of Sanskrit was on the whole remarkably stable. Nevertheless it is possible to collect from the later literature a considerable body of words which do not appear in the earlier period. In some cases it may be an accident that they are not recorded earlier, but even making this allowance, there must remain a fair number of new words. Increases in vocabulary derive from the following sources:

1) They could be created, when required, on the basis of existing Sanskrit roots, prefixes and suffixes, and by the formation of new compounds with special senses.

2) In the course of time some Prakrit words were adopted into Sanskrit, though proportionally the number is never very large. No certain examples of this kind appear in the Vedic language, but they begin to appear in small numbers in the Epic and classical period. Words of this type are bhaṭṭa-, bhaṭṭāra-bhaṭṭāraka- 'master, lord' (Skt. bharīyar), nāṭa- 'actor' (Skt. nṛt- 'to dance') and dohada-, dohala- 'morbid desire of a pregnant woman' which occur (more commonly) beside the regular Sanskrit daurhrda-. Skt. uḍu- 'star' derives from a Prakrit uḍuvai- 'moon' misinterpreted as meaning 'lord of
the stars' though it is actually derived from a Skt. rājupati-
'lord of the seasons'. In the medical texts kośtha- 'a form of
leprosy' occurs beside kuṣṭha- 'leprosy' of which it is a Prakrit
development. Among other words originating in Prakrit we
may mention kola- 'breast, lap' beside the original kroda- 'id',
khudāka- 'small' beside kṣudraka-, vaiyāvṛtya- with Prakritic
-v-, more commonly used than the original vaiyāpṛtya- 'busi-
ness or commission entrusted to one', vicchitti- 'carelessness in
dress or decoration' which probably derives from vikṣipti-, and
ojā- 'odd (of numbers)' which in later texts tends to replace the
original ayujā-. In the case of some words taken over from
Prakrit there are no Sanskrit originals, e.g. avahittha- 'dis-
simulation', chaṭā 'heap, mass' (Pkt. chaṭā) etc. Some words
are disguised by false Sanskritisation; e.g. karpaṭa- 'ragged
cloth' is taken from Pkt. kappāḍa- which itself represents
*kat-paṭa- 'inferior cloth'. Likewise Pkt. ludda- 'hunter'
(ultimately identical with the name of the god Rudrā-) is Sans-
kritised as lubḍhaka- as if derived from lubh- 'to be greedy',
and Pkt. pāradḍhi- 'hunting' (from rabh- 'to attack') is Sans-
kritised as pāparaddhi- meaning literally 'evil gain'.

(3) The Greek and Iranian invasions of India from the North-
West resulted in a limited number of loanwords from these
sources being admitted into Sanskrit. These are dealt with in
Chapter VIII.

(4) Sanskrit received a considerable number of words from
the substrate languages, Austro-Asiatic and Dravidian, particu-
larly from the latter. These are also dealt with in Chapter VIII.

(5) The term desī is applied to those words in Prakrit which
are derived from no Sanskrit equivalent. The number of such
words which can be explained out of Dravidian or some other
source is comparatively small and will probably always remain
so. They become still more abundant in the Modern Indo-
Aryan period and present a philological problem which is not
easy to solve. On the whole classical Sanskrit avoids such
words, but a number are incorporated, and in particular the
Jain writers have adopted a fair number.

§ 6. SANSKRIT AND PRAKRIT

During the whole period of its existence Classical Sanskrit
had beside it as competitor Middle Indo-Aryan in its various
forms, not only as a spoken language but also as a language of
literature. In the early period this competition was much more important than it was later; though it appears paradoxical at first sight, the Sanskrit language only reached its full development as a language of culture and administration at a time when it had ceased to be a mother tongue.

The rise of Middle Indo-Aryan as a literary language coincided with the foundation of the new religions of Buddhism and Jainism round about 500 B.C. The founders of these religions deliberately chose the vernacular—the dialect of Magadha in the first instance—as the vehicle of their teaching. In the third century B.C. Asoka had his inscriptions engraved in various local dialects and ignored Sanskrit. It follows that the language of administration of the Mauryan empire was also in Middle Indo-Aryan, and not as universally the case later, in Sanskrit. If this process had not been reversed Sanskrit might have yielded place to the younger language, but quite the reverse happened and from the end of the Maurya period a steady process set in which resulted in Sanskrit becoming the predominant language of literature, culture and administration.

The epigraphical tradition established by Asoka continued for some centuries. Until after the Christian era the vernacular language alone was used for epigraphical purposes, and this means that business and administrative documents—all of which were written on perishable materials and have not survived—were composed in the same language. After the Christian era Sanskrit too begins to appear in inscriptions, at first in competition with Prakrit, and finally in exclusive use. The inscription of Rudradāman (A.D. 150) marks the victory of Sanskrit in one part of India. In the South Prakrit remained in use longer and was not finally ousted by Sanskrit until the fourth or fifth century A.D. Eventually the use of Prakrit was discontinued entirely and from the Gupta period to the Mahommedan invasions Sanskrit—admittedly often incorrect Sanskrit—remained in exclusive use.

The linguistic revolution in epigraphy is paralleled in other fields. The early Buddhist scriptures were exclusively in Middle Indo-Aryan. Towards the beginning of the Christian era a change took place, and the northern Buddhists adopted Sanskrit instead. Āsvaghoṣa (c. A.D. 100) is a master of polished Sanskrit, and that he should choose this language as a vehicle of propaganda is an indication of the ascendancy which San-
Sanskrit had achieved at this time. Here also we may observe that Sanskrit established its ascendancy first in the north. The Theravādins of South India and Ceylon remained faithful to Pāli.

The Jains were slower in making a change than the Buddhists. They were the most conservative of Indian sects and up to the time of the final constitution of the present canon of the Śvetāmbaras (at the council of Valabhi in A.D. 526) they used Prakrit exclusively. But even they turned to the use of Sanskrit in the succeeding period. At the same time they continued to cultivate Prakrit seriously, beside Sanskrit, at a time when in other literary circles the traditional Prakrit was being employed as little more than a literary exercise.

In these fields we may observe the transition which led to the predominance of Sanskrit. Elsewhere lack of material makes a clear picture more difficult. In poetic literature there was under the Sātavāhanas and their successors an active tradition of lyrical poetry in Mahāraṣṭrī of which fragments are preserved in the anthology of Hāla. At the same time the major poetic works of the early period were in Sanskrit. The Mahābhārata and the Rāmāyaṇa have an importance in the literary history of India which nothing in Prakrit could even remotely approach, and they were the productions of a period when to judge by inscriptions Prakrit had almost superseded Sanskrit in everyday use. Thus it is obvious that the inscriptive evidence gives a very one-sided picture of contemporary linguistic conditions. Outside the sectarian religions Sanskrit was always, even when the use of Prakrit was most flourishing, the primary literary language of India.

The growing predominance of Sanskrit as opposed to Prakrit in the period succeeding the Christian era can be attributed to two reasons, one ideological and one practical. In the Maurya period the heterodox religions of Buddhism and Jainism had attained such influence as to threaten the existence of the old Brahmanical order. In the succeeding period, beginning with the usurpation of Puṣyamitra (c. 188 B.C.), a reaction set in and there began a gradual decline of these systems in the face of victorious orthodoxy. This change in the religious atmosphere was reflected in language, and Sanskrit, associated with the traditional Vedic religion gained ground at the expense of Prakrit, whose cultivation was mainly due to the activities of the unorthodox sects.
The practical reason was that Sanskrit offered a united language for the whole of India. In the early Middle Indian period the differences between the various local vernaculars were not so great as to preclude mutual understanding, but even at this period Asoka found it necessary to engrave his edicts in three different dialects. With the progress of time the differences between the local dialects grew greater, so that Sanskrit became a necessary bond for the cultural unity of India. Furthermore the Prakrits were unstable and subject to continual change through the centuries. Any literary language established on the basis of a vernacular rapidly became obsolete. The traditional Prakrits in the later period were as artificial as Sanskrit, and did not have the advantage of its universal appeal and utility. For such reasons alone Sanskrit was the only form of language which could serve as a national language in Ancient India, whose cultural unity, far more influential and important than its political disunity, rendered such a language essential. The relation between Sanskrit and Prakrit in the classical period is admirably illustrated by the Sanskrit Drama. Here it is the convention that certain characters speak Sanskrit and others speak Prakrit, and the usage of the drama no doubt accurately represents the actual practice at the time. The use of Sanskrit is fairly narrowly limited to the highest classes of society, namely kings, ministers, learned Brahmans and so on. Women, with few exceptions, speak Prakrit, and also children, showing that it was everybody’s first language. Furthermore, Prakrit is spoken not only by all the lower classes, but also predominantly by the wealthy and influential class of merchants and bankers. The comic figure of the vidūṣaka, an unlearned Prakrit-speaking Brahman, shows that not all members of this class were capable of mastering the strenuous discipline necessary for the acquisition of Sanskrit.

Only the earliest dramas, of which *Mṛcchkaṇḍa* is the best surviving example, reflect living usage in this way. In the greater number of extant dramas which belong to a later period (A.D. 500-1000), the composition is according to tradition, and the Prakrit becomes merely a transmogrified Sanskrit composed according to the rules of the grammarians learned by rote. In this period the vernacular had advanced much further on the road to Modern Indo-Aryan.
§ 7. **The Sanskrit of the Buddhists and Jains**

The adoption of Sanskrit by the Buddhists, and later the Jains, widened the field of Sanskrit literature, and the Sanskrit language which was thus adapted to new needs did not remain unaltered in the hands of these authors. The Sanskritisation of Buddhist literature is particularly complicated since it took place gradually and beginning by a compromise between Sanskrit and the Middle-Indian dialects of early Buddhism ended in the adoption of pure classical Sanskrit. We may distinguish between the following types of Buddhist Sanskrit:

1. **Mixed Sanskrit.** This language was used by the Mahāsaṅghika school. In it the original Prakrit appears half Sanskritised, the words being in the main restored to their Sanskrit phonetic form while the Prakrit grammar is largely retained. For instance *Pa. bhikkhussa*, gen. sg. of *bhikkhu* 'monk' (Skt. *bhikṣu*) is not replaced by a regular Sanskrit *bhikṣos*, but is mechanically changed to *bhikṣusya*. It may be assumed that for a period, in certain circles, such a hybrid language was actually employed by those who wished to employ the superior Sanskrit language but were not able to master its grammar.

2. The Sarvastivādins of the north-west adopted proper Sanskrit from an early period. The old canonical works were translated into Sanskrit, and fragments of them are preserved in this form. The language of these works has of necessity incorporated wholesale the vocabulary and syntax of the original Māgadhī, but allowing for this, and for some false Sanskritisations which are to be expected, it is free from the barbarisms of (1).

3. We must distinguish from (2) works of the same school which were not translations but which were independently composed at a period much later than the canonical literature. The stories which were inserted to enliven the matter of the Vinaya-pitaka, and which are collected in the Divyāvadāna, Illustrate best this type of Sanskrit. Though it fails often enough to satisfy the canons of Pāñinean grammar, the style is admirably clear and lucid and not an unwelcome change to the laboured artificiality of some of the classical prose. The vocabulary is characterised by the use of many vernacular and provincial words, many of which turn up again in Modern Indo-Aryan (e.g. *lardaya* 'to load': Hi. *lādnā*), and which are not found in the older types of Buddhist language (e.g. Pali).
(4) The use of pure classical Sanskrit, associated with all the characteristics of the Kāvyā style, is seen in the works of Aśvaghoṣa and his successors. Such works are distinguished from other works of classical Sanskrit literature only by the use of Buddhist technical terms. Likewise the works of the logicians and philosophers follows the style of similar orthodox works in Sanskrit, with the addition of the terminology peculiar to the Buddhists.

The Jains resisted longest the use of Sanskrit, and only began to take to it in the second half of the first millennium A.D. During this period Prakrit only gradually gives way to Sanskrit, but in the end Sanskrit establishes itself here as elsewhere. The Sanskrit of the Jains is influenced by the language of the earlier Prakrit literature in the same way as the Sanskrit of the Buddhists. In vocabulary it draws more extensively than contemporary classical Sanskrit on vernacular sources, and words familiar later in Modern Indo-Aryan are often first recorded here.

§ 8. Sanskrit in Greater India

The expansion of Indo-Aryan was halted in South India by the native Dravidian languages (Tamil, Telugu, Kanarese) which in course of time established themselves as literary languages. Nevertheless the influence of Indo-Aryan in this region was at all times powerful, and it is evident in the vocabulary of these languages from the earliest records. They were earliest influenced by Prakrit, which was the administrative language of the Sātavāhanas and their immediate successors. Inscriptions extending as far south as Kāṇṭi show that all the Telugu-Kanarese area was governed by Aryan dynasties whose mother tongue was Prakrit. The intruding Indo-Aryans were not numerous enough to impose Indo-Aryan as the spoken language of the area and after about A.D. 400 the Prakrit inscriptions cease. Sanskrit replaced Prakrit, as elsewhere, for purposes of administration and culture, and as a spoken language it was replaced by the native Dravidian. At the same time the native Dravidian began to be cultivated, Kanarese from c. A.D. 450 and Telugu from c. A.D. 650. The Prakrit influence in these languages, dating from the earlier period, is rapidly overlaid by extensive borrowings from the Sanskrit vocabulary. In their early classical form these languages draw on Sanskrit wholesale, and the process was continued in the succeeding periods. At
the present time a considerable and essential part of the vocabulary of these languages is Sanskrit.

In the Tamil country of the extreme South Indo-Aryan influence was weakest. Tamil was the earliest Dravidian language to be used for literary purposes, and it was to begin with comparatively free from Aryan influence. In the later period the influence of Sanskrit increases, but never on the scale that is found in its two northern neighbours.

Ceylon received its Aryan language through colonisation from Northern India. In addition Buddhism established Pāli as a literary language. At a later period still the cultivation of Sanskrit was introduced, at some periods on quite an extensive scale.

The spread of Buddhism was responsible for the introduction of Indo-Aryan linguistic influence into large regions of Central Asia. At one time a form of Prakrit served as the administrative language of the kingdom of Kroraina in Chinese Turkestan. Buddhist Sanskrit texts were current over a wide area, and works long lost in India have been recovered in recent years in Central Asia. Under Buddhist influence the native languages of this area began to be cultivated, notably the Iranian Khotanese, and the two closely related Indo-European languages which go by the name of Tocharian. The vocabulary of these draws abundantly on Sanskrit or Prakrit sources. On the other hand Tibetan which became Buddhist from the seventh century onwards resisted foreign linguistic influence, and by what must have been a considerable tour de force, the whole Buddhist vocabulary was rendered into native Tibetan. This had been done at an earlier period by the Chinese where differences of script and language rendered any other course impracticable.

The influence of Sanskrit was equally extensive in countries to the East and South-East. In Burma there is early evidence of the influence of Sanskrit Buddhism. This was replaced (A.D. eleventh cent.) by a religious reformation which established Theravāda Buddhism as the official religion and with it Pāli as the language of religion. Further East there were Hindu colonies in South Siam (Dvāravatī), Cambodia (Kambuja) and Annam (Campā). Abundant Sanskrit inscriptions dating from the third century A.D. onwards remain to show the importance of Sanskrit in these areas, and its influence was felt on the native languages when they came to be cultivated. Even
today Siamese is drawing on Sanskrit for its technical vocabulary. At the same time Hindu culture spread to Indonesia and in Java, Sumatra and Bali Sanskrit literature was cultivated.

The native languages came strongly under the influence of Sanskrit and Sanskrit culture-words remain widely current in the area today. The classical language of Java abounds in Sanskrit words, just as its literature draws its inspiration from Sanskrit models. The Mahommedan conquest of Java (A.D. sixteenth cent.) put an end to Hindu dominion in the area, but the influence of the preceding centuries was too deep to be eradicated.

§ 9. WRITING IN INDIA

The art of writing was late in making its appearance in Aryan India. It had existed before the Aryan invasion in the Indus civilisation, but it perished along with this civilisation. During the period when the Vedic civilisation was being built up no form of writing was employed in India, and in its absence the technique was evolved of preserving intact the Vedic literature by means of oral tradition. Even when writing was introduced this oral tradition persisted in the various departments of knowledge and it continued as a basic feature of Indian education and culture down to modern times.

It is not known when the alphabet was first introduced into India. So far as preserved records go it is only attested from the third century B.C. when the two alphabets, Kharoṣṭhī and Brāhmi, appear fully developed in the Asokan inscriptions. The Kharoṣṭhī alphabet, which is written from right to left, is confined to the extreme North-West of India, to that part of the country which in preceding centuries had been part of the Persian dominions. It is an adaptation of the Aramaic alphabet which was employed in this region in the Achaemenid period, and it was probably evolved towards the close of this period. It continued in use in the same area, and in some adjoining parts of central Asia, down to the fourth century A.D., after which records in it cease.

The Brāhmi alphabet, which differs from Kharoṣṭhī in being written from left to right, is the source of all later Indian alphabets, as well as of those in countries abroad which formed part of the area of Indian cultural expansion (Burmese, Siamese, Javanese, etc.). It is also derived from some form of the
Semitic alphabet, but the exact source from which it is adapted and also the period remain uncertain. It is suggested that it may have been introduced from the South Semitic area by means of the trade routes to the ports of Western India, and the period most commonly assumed is about 500 B.C.

The work of adaptation was considerable since it involved not only the addition of vowel signs, but also the changes and additions necessary to express adequately the Indian consonantal system. The perfection with which the task was accomplished was consequent on the labours of the ancient Indian phoneticians whose achievements have already been mentioned. In spite of this, use of writing was only slowly adopted in the Brahmin schools, and in the early period its function lay primarily in business and administration and only secondarily as an instrument of literature. For this reason all the earliest records preserved are in Prakrit, and Sanskrit documents only appear later. It is unlikely that much literature existed in manuscript form before the second century B.C.

The early Brāhmī alphabet was comparatively uniform and served for the whole of India outside the small area where Kharoṣṭhī was in use. After the Christian era local variations were intensified and Brāhmī developed into a variety of regional alphabets differing from each other as much as they had changed from the original form. The structural principles of the alphabets always remained the same but the individual shapes of the letters were subject to endless variation. In North India the alphabet gradually evolved into what is now known as Devanāgarī. With the introduction of printing this alphabet was adopted generally for Sanskrit, but before this period Sanskrit manuscripts were written in the various regional alphabets of the localities where they were produced, e.g. Śāradā in Kashmir, Bengali, Oriya, Telugu-Kanarese, Malayalam and, in the Tamil country, Grantha.

The commonest material used for writing in India was palm-leaf. The exclusive use of this prevailed in South India down to modern times. The characters were incised on this material by means of a stylus and the ink rubbed in afterwards. In the North, particularly in Kashmir, the inner bark of the birch was used on which the letters were written in ink. This method was also used in the North for palm-leaf manuscripts, and the differences between the Northern and Southern alphabets is largely
occasioned by different methods of writing. As a result of the perishable nature of these materials really ancient Indian manuscripts are rare. The oldest are those that have been discovered, in a more or less fragmentary condition, in the dry soil of Central Asia. The bulk of Sanskrit literature is preserved only in manuscripts belonging to the last few centuries.
CHAPTER III

PHONOLOGY

§ 1. INDO-EUROPEAN CONSONANT SYSTEM

The comparative study of the phonetic systems of the existing IE languages makes it possible to reconstruct, with a reasonable degree of certainty, the phonetics of the parent language. On this basis a systematic historical account of the Sanskrit phonetic system can be provided in which the various stages of development in the prehistoric period can be distinguished in respect of their relative chronology. Developments may be severally characterised as: (1) Changes in the Indo-European period; (2) Changes common to Indo-Aryan and Iranian only; (3) Changes peculiar to Indo-Aryan, which have occurred after its separation from Iranian. In sketching the phonetic development of Sanskrit we shall indicate, as far as possible to which of these three periods the various changes belong.

The following reconstruction of the IE consonantal system has been generally adopted by comparative philologists:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Occlusives</th>
<th>Surd</th>
<th>Aspirate</th>
<th>Sonant</th>
<th>Aspirate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Labio-velar</td>
<td>$k^w$</td>
<td>$k^w_h$</td>
<td>$g^w$</td>
<td>$g^w_h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Velar</td>
<td>$k$</td>
<td>$kh$</td>
<td>$g$</td>
<td>$gh$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palatal</td>
<td>$k$</td>
<td>$kh$</td>
<td>$g$</td>
<td>$gh$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dental</td>
<td>$t$</td>
<td>$th$</td>
<td>$d$</td>
<td>$dh$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labial</td>
<td>$p$</td>
<td>$ph$</td>
<td>$b$</td>
<td>$bh$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nasals: $m, n, ñ$; Liquids: $l, r$; Semivowels: $y, v$; Sibilants: $s, z$; Doubtful $p’, d’$.

The reconstructions are of two kinds. In the first and commonest case the phoneme postulated for Indo-European occurs in a number of the existing languages in which it has continued unchanged; in the second and rarer case the phoneme assumed for Indo-European is nowhere preserved as such, but it is deduced by comparison of the forms derived from it. Naturally
there is the greatest certainty in the case of the first class, but even the pure reconstructions of the second class are, with few exceptions, established beyond reasonable doubt.

In the following cases an Indo-European consonant is preserved unchanged in Sanskrit and in other languages:

\[ p : \text{pá\texthua{a}ca}'5' : \text{Gk. p\texthua{e}v\texthua{c}e} ; \text{pátati} 'flies' : \text{Gk. p\texthua{e}t\texthua{e}t\texthua{a}} ; \text{áp\texthua{a}} 'away, from' : \text{Gk. áp\texthua{o}} : \text{sárp\texthua{a}ti} 'crawls' : \text{Gk. ép\texthua{p}e} \text{Lat. serp\texthua{i}}. \]

\[ t : \text{ta\texthua{u}t} 'thin', \text{Gk. t\texthua{a}nu} ; \text{tr\texthua{a}yas}'3' : \text{Gk. tr\texthua{e}t\texthua{t}t\texthua{a}t} ; \text{va\texthua{r}t\texthua{e}t} 'turns' ; \text{Lat. vero}. \]

\[ d : \text{da\texthua{a}sa } 'to' : \text{Gk. d\texthua{e}k\texthua{a}} ; \text{Lat. dec\texthua{e}m} ; \text{d\texthua{i}r\texthua{g}\texthua{a}ht} 'long' ; \text{Gk. d\texthua{e}l\texthua{\textaccent{c}}k\texthua{a}s\texthua{t} ; \text{O. Sl. d\texthua{e}l\texthua{\textaccent{c}}t\texthua{u} ; v\texthua{e}\texthua{d}a} 'I know' ; \text{Gk. o\texthua{t}d\texthua{a} ; Lat. video}. \]

\[ k : \text{k\texthua{r}t\texthua{a}t\texthua{t} 'raw flesh' : \text{Gk. k\texthua{r}e\texthua{a}s} ; \text{k\texthua{a}k\texthua{a}s\texthua{t} 'armpit', cf. \text{Lat. coxa}. \]

\[ g : \text{yu\texthua{g}\texthua{d}m 'yoke' : \text{Gk. x\texthua{y}y\texthua{v}\texthua{o}} ; \text{Lat. in\texthua{g}u\texthua{m} ; s\texthua{t}h\texthua{g} 'to cover', \text{Gk. st\texthua{e}y\texthua{o}}. \]

\[ n : \text{n\texthua{a}m\texthua{a} 'name' : \text{Lat. n\texthua{o}m\texthua{e}n} ; \text{n\texthua{a}v\texthua{a} 'new' : \text{Gk. v\texthua{e}o\texthua{s}} ; \text{Lat. nov\texthua{u}m} ; \text{n\texthua{a}b\texthua{a}t\texthua{a} 'cloud', \text{Gk. v\texthua{e}f\texthua{p}o\texthua{s} ; d\texthua{a}n\texthua{a}m 'gift', \text{Lat. d\texthua{o}n\texthua{u}m, O. Sl. d\texthua{a}n\texthua{u}\text{t}. \]

\[ m : \text{m\texthua{a}t\texthua{a}r 'mother' : \text{Lat. m\texthua{a}t\texthua{e}r ; m\texthua{a} 'me' ; \text{Lat. m\texthua{e} ; m\texthua{\textaccent{u}\textaccent{a}s 'mouse' : \text{Lat. m\texthua{u}s, O. Sl. m\texthua{y}\texthua{\textaccent{a}} ; d\texthua{a}m\texthua{a}\text{m 'house', \text{Gk. d\texthua{o}m\texthua{u}\text{t}, \text{Lat. d\texthua{o}m\texthua{t}us. \]

\[ l : \text{lub\texthua{h}, l\texthua{u}b\texthua{h}y\texthua{t}i 'desire, covet', \text{Lat. lub\texthua{t}, Goth. liufs, O. Sl. lj\texthua{u}b\texthua{u} 'dear', \text{la\texthua{g}\texthua{h}\texthua{t} 'light, swift', \text{Gk. el\texthua{a}x\texthua{u}s, Lat. levis. \]

\[ r : \text{rud\texthua{h}\texthua{r\textaccent{a} 'red, blood', \text{Gk. \texthua{e}p\texthua{u}t\texthua{p}\texthua{o\textaccent{t}} ; \text{Lat. rub\texthua{r} ; \text{r\textaccent{a}j\textaccent{a} ; r\textaccent{a}j\textaccent{a}n 'king', \text{Lat. \textaccent{r}\textaccent{e}x, Gallic r\textaccent{e}x, \text{\textaccent{b}\textaccent{h}\textaccent{a}r\textaccent{a}t\textaccent{e} 'bears', \text{Gk. f\textaccent{e}r\textaccent{o\textaccent{w}, \text{Lat. f\textaccent{e}r\textaccent{o, Goth. b\textaccent{a}t\textaccent{r. \]

\[ y : \text{yu\textaccent{v}\textaccent{a}n 'young man', \text{Lat. iu\textaccent{v}e\textaccent{n\textaccent{e}; y\textaccent{a}k\textaccent{r 'liver', \text{Lat. i\textaccent{e}c\textaccent{u}r; y\textaccent{u}s 'broth, soup', \text{Lat. i\textaccent{u}s, O. Sl. j\textaccent{u}c\textaccent{h}a. \]

\[ w (v) : \text{v\textaccent{a}c 'speech', \text{Lat. v\textaccent{o}x ; v\textaccent{a}\textaccent{h}a\textaccent{t 'carries', \text{Lat. veh\textaccent{i}t ; n\textaccent{a}v\textaccent{a} 'new', \text{Lat. nov\textaccent{u}m ; á\textaccent{v}i 'sheep', \text{Lat. o\textaccent{u}s. \]

\[ s : \text{s\textaccent{a}n\textaccent{a} 'old', \text{Lat. senex, Fr. sen; s\textaccent{a}nt 'they are', \text{Lat. sunt ; s\textaccent{u}n\textaccent{u} 'son', \text{Lith. s\textaccent{u}n\textaccent{u}s, Goth. sun\textaccent{u}s ; ámsa 'shoulder', \text{Goth. ams ; á\textaccent{t\textaccent{h}i 'bone', \text{Gk. d\textaccent{e}t\textaccent{e}\textaccent{o\textaccent{v, Lat. os, ossis}. \]

In cases like the above the reconstruction of the IE forms presents a minimum of problems; reconstruction in the full sense is not necessary since the phonemes in question are widely preserved. They are not preserved in all languages (e.g. Engl. \textaccent{t\textaccent{h}in : Lat. t\textaccent{e}n\textaccent{u}\textaccent{s; Welsh \textaccent{h}en, Fr. \textaccent{c}en\textaccent{e}), but a study of all the available evidence leaves little doubt as to which languages
preserve the original sound. In other cases change has been more widespread. There are instances where the original IE sound is preserved only in one language, others in which the sound, which theory demands for the parent language, is preserved nowhere at all. Even in these cases it is possible to fix the original sound with reasonable certainty.

§ 2. THE SONANT ASPIRATES

The sonant aspirates which it is normally believed Indo-European possessed are preserved as a class by Sanskrit alone. Elsewhere they are changed in various ways; in Iranian, Slavonic, etc., the aspiration is lost; in Greek they are changed into the corresponding surd aspirates, in Latin (and the other Italic dialects) into fricatives. Examples of this series are as follows:

\[ bh: \text{Skt. } bhṛū- \text{ 'brow'}, \text{Gk. } ὀφρῶς, \text{O. Sl. } brūvt; bhṛātā \text{'brother'}, \text{Gk. } φράτηρ \text{ 'member of a phratry'}, \text{Lat. } frater, \text{O. Sl. } brātrū, \text{O. Ir. } brāthir; bhārati \text{'bears'}, \text{Av. } baraiti, \text{Gk. } φέρω, \text{Lat. } fero, \text{Arm. } berem, \text{O. Sl. } bērō, \text{Goth. } batra, \text{O. Ir. } berim; nābhas \text{ 'cloud, sky'}, \text{Gk. } νεφός, \text{O. Sl. } nebo, \text{Hitt. } nēpiš. \]

\[ dh: \text{dhā-, dādhāti \text{ 'to place'}, Av. } daśāiti, \text{Gk. } τιθημι, \text{Lith. } dėti; dhūmā- \text{'smoke'}, \text{O. Sl. } dytnū, \text{Lat. } fūmus; mādhū \text{'honey, mead'}, \text{Av. } maṣu, \text{Gk. } μέθυ, \text{O. Sl. } medū, \text{A.S. } medu, \text{O. Ir. } mid; vidhāvā \text{'widow'}, \text{cf. Gk. } ἱθεος \text{'young (unmarried) man'}, \text{O. Sl. } vidova \text{ 'widow'}, \text{Lat. } vidua, \text{O. Ir. } fedb. \]

\[ gh: \text{stīgh- \text{ 'to stride'}, Gk. } στῆξω, \text{Goth. } steiga; meghā- \text{'cloud'}, \text{cf. Gk. } ὑμίχλη, \text{O. Sl. } migla, \text{Alb. } mjégule. \text{ In the case of the guttural series the sonant aspirates have undergone changes in Sanskrit in common with the other members of the series. These will be detailed below.} \]

Although the sonant aspirates are preserved in Indo-Aryan alone among the IE languages, there is little doubt that they should be attributed to the parent language, since no other type of phoneme can account so simply for the various developments that appear. The theory, prevalent in some quarters, that in these cases we are dealing with a series of original IE fricatives, has nothing to recommend it.

Although Sanskrit preserves the sonant aspirates as a class, it does not preserve them all unchanged. The special develop-
ments of the sonant aspirates belonging to the two guttural series will be treated below. The dental and labial sonant aspirates are normally preserved as in the examples given above, but in some cases, even in the earliest period $dh$ and $bh$ are weakened to $h$, an anticipation of their later fate in Middle Indo-Aryan.

$dh$: *hitá- 'placed' ($dhält$), also *dhita- in the Veda; -hi, termination of the 2 sg. impv., also *dzi, Av. -di; the verbal terminations of the 1st dual and plural ātmanepada, -vahe, -vahi, -vahai; -mahe, -mahi, -mahai, cf. Av. -maide, -maidī; ihá 'here', Pa. idha, Av. iḍa; sahá 'with'; Vedic also sadha- in cpds., Av. haḍa; lóhita-, róhita- 'red', cf. rudhirá-; róhati 'climbs', Vedic also ródhati; nah- to bind', cf. ppt. naddhá-; snuḥ- 'to drip', cf. Av. snaod-.

$bh$: graḥ- 'to seize', Vedic also grabh-; kakuhá- 'high' beside kakuvhá- 'id', kakuvh- 'peak'.

An aspirate was not allowed to remain in Sanskrit when an aspirate followed. The effect of this rule in grammar is seen in reduplication where the corresponding unaspirated sonant is used—*dhält, dadhai, bhá, babhai, han: jahána. The same rule is observable in Greek (θῆικος: τεῦκοκα); it is not however an Indo-European feature inherited in common, but a phenomenon that has occurred independently in each language. In Greek this de-aspiration did not take place until the sonant aspirates had been turned into surds, and consequently the unaspirated surd is the result. We find therefore in these cases an initial surd of Greek corresponding to an initial sonant of Sanskrit. Thus the IE root bheidh- 'to perceive' produces on the one hand Gk. πειθομαι (through *φευθ-) and on the other hand Skt. budh-. The same correspondence is seen between Gk. τείχος 'wall' and Skt. dih- 'smear, cement with earth', dehi 'rampart'; similarly Gk. πενθερός 'father-in-law': cf. Skt. bandhu- 'relation', bandh- 'to bind', Gk. πένθυς 'arm': Skt. bähú-, Gk. πυθων 'bottom': Skt. budhiná-. In other Indo-European languages no dissimilation of this kind took place, and whatever phoneme corresponds regularly to an IE sonant aspirate appears also in this position: e.g. from IE *dheigh- (Skt. dih-) Goth. deigan 'knead', Lat. fingo, Osc. feihuss 'muros'.

When a sonant aspirate came immediately before final $s$ or $t$ the aspiration was lost at an early period, e.g. in Skt. dáhok, 2 and 3 sg. impf. of duḥ- 'to milk' for earlier *ádhokṣ, *adhokt,
ádhāk, 3 sg. s-aor. of dah- 'to burn', for *adhākṣi; likewise in the nom. sg. of root stems ḍhuk 'milking', ḍhruk 'injuring' from ḍhukṣ, ḍhrukṣ. In their earlier form these roots had two aspirates, *ḍhugh-, *ḍhagh-, *ḍhrugh-. In the above combinations the second aspirate was lost before the rule of aspirate dissimilation set in, and consequently the aspiration of the initial consonant was preserved in these cases. An exactly parallel development took place in Greek: θρή 'hair', pl. τρίξες, τρέφω 'I nourish', fut. θρέφω. From the standpoint of the individual languages it appears that in such cases the aspirate of the final is thrown back, but it becomes clear from comparative study that there were originally two aspirates of which the first was preserved from dissimilation in these circumstances.

The treatment of internal combinations of sonant aspirate + t or s was different, and will be described below (§14, 16). Here we may note only that the aspiration in class. ḍhipsati, etc., as opposed to Ved. dipsati is an innovation due to analogy.

§3. THE SURD ASPIRATES

The surd aspirates appear only in Indo-Iranian with any frequency, and even there they are much less common than the corresponding sonants. Of these very few indeed can be established as Indo-European by direct comparison. Such comparisons are available only in Greek where there appear a few aspirates corresponding to the surd aspirates of Sanskrit, and in Armenian. Elsewhere, apart from a few traces in Latin (e.g. funda 'sling': Gk. σφενδόνη) this series has been confounded with that of the unaspirated surds.

The following examples will serve for illustration:

ph: Skt. sphūrī-, Gk. σφαραγέομαι; sphyā- 'wooden ladle', cf. Gk. ὕφι; phāla- 'ploughshare', Pers. supār; sphurāti 'throbs, quivers', Lith. spiriū, Gk. σπαίρω, Lat. sperno, cf. also Gk. σφαῖρα 'ball'; phēna- 'foam', Osset. žing, O. Sl. žena, O. Pruss. spoayno; šaphā- 'hoof', Av. safā-

th: vēttha 'thou knowest', Gk. ὁθω; sthā- 'stand', Gk. topmu; sthag- 'to cover', Gk. στέγω; ráthā- 'chariot', Av. ratha-, cf. Lat. rota 'wheel'; prthū- 'broad', Av. pṛṣṭhu-, Gk. πλατύς, without aspiration, but cf. πάθανος 'flat board for making cakes'; prthuka- 'young animal', Arm. orth 'calf', Gk. πώρις, πόρταξ 'heifer', without aspiration, but cf. παρθένος 'maiden' with aspiration.
PHONOLOGY

\( kh : \) śaṅkhā- ‘shell’, Gk. κόγχος; śākhā ‘branch’, Arm. çač; Lith. šakà; khā- ‘well’, Av. xā.

In contradistinction to the sonant aspirates which constitute an ancient and primary element of the IE phonetic system, the surd aspirates are a late creation, and recent advances in IE theory have made it possible to show how they came into existence. Apart from some possible cases of spontaneous aspiration in combinations with s (Skt. sthag-, etc.), their origin can be attributed to a combination of IE ʰ with a preceding unaspirated surd. The nature of this ʰ which has lately figured largely in IE studies will be examined below. For the present it will be sufficient to remark that it has disappeared in all IE languages except Hittite, but when immediately preceded by ʃ, ʈ, ʂ, it has had the effect of aspirating these consonants. Thus the aspiration which in Skt. sthā- ‘stand’ (IE stā, i.e. stāh-, i.e. steH₃) arises in the first instance from the reduced form of the root, IE sth₁- (Skt. tiṣṭha<tiṭi-stēti), and is generalised from there. In Greek on the other hand (ίστημι) the unaspirated t proper to the strong form of the root has prevailed. In Sanskrit path- ‘road’ (Instr. pathā, etc.) <patuh-, ʰ is a suffix which appears in its guṇa grade as ā (<aH) in nom. s. pāṇthās. In the latter case th appears only by analogy from the weak cases, as is confirmed by the Av. form pāntā (original alternation pāntah-patih). The root prath- ‘to extend’ and its derivatives (prthū- ‘broad’, etc.) contains two incorporated suffixes (IE pḷ-ēt-ʰ-), the combination producing the surd aspirate in Sanskrit. This ʰ-suffix, without the intervening t-suffix appears in Hitt. pahlīš ‘broad’, and in Lat. plānus. In Gk. πλατύς, no ʰ-suffix is present, and there is therefore no aspiration. In Skt. rāṭha- ‘chariot’ we have a nominalised adjective (*rat̄h-ā ‘wheeled’ with a common change of accent) based on the ā (-aH) stem which appears in Lat. rola ‘wheel’ (rotāH).

A corresponding aspiration of sonants by ʰ is possibly a factor to be considered, but not many examples have been found. Such an instance may appear in Skt. sīndhu- ‘river’ as compared with the root syand- ‘to flow’, where the form of the noun may be easily explained by the presence of an ʰ-suffix before the final u-suffix.

It is believed that one type of IE ʰ (H₃) affected a preceding surd differently, by voicing it, in Skt. pibati = O. Ir. ibid
‘drinks’ (♂ро-, i.e. ἰης, pres. *ῥη-πης-ετί), but this appears to be the only example. Incidentally it may be observed that ἰ, apart from a case like this, or as an allophone of ὅ (Skt. utpabdā-: cf. pad- ‘foot’, etc.) was of extreme rarity, if not altogether absent in Indo-European.

§ 4. The First Palatalisation

When we come to the so-called guttural series (Labio-velar, Velar, Palatal, see above), we find that these sounds have been very considerably altered in Sanskrit. To begin with the Palatal series, the treatment is illustrated by the following equations:


It will be observed that ultimate Indo-Aryan and Iranian developments differ from each other (Skt. ś, ḷ, h = Av. s, z, z). This is because the changes that have occurred have taken place in two phases: (1) a previous common Indo-Iranian development ś, ḷ, šh, (2) the change of these to the actual forms in Indo-Aryan and Iranian after the separation of the two groups. The first change is common to Indo-Iranian and the languages of the satəm group (see Chapter I) and took place within the Indo-European period. Later there were various special developments in other languages too, which in the case of Slavonic happen to be identical with those of Iranian.

The intermediate forms ś, ḷ, šh will explain most of the Indo-Iranian developments, as they will the Balto-Slavonic, but it is likely that before complete assimilation there was an affricate stage. Evidence of this is preserved in the Kafiri dialects, which occupy an intermediate position between Indian and Iranian. The treatment that occurs in Kati duć '10' and čuš 'empty' for instance (Skt. dāśa, śūnyā-) seems clearly to reflect a form more ancient than that of Sanskrit. We may therefore postulate an earlier Indo-Iranian (and the same will apply to the satəm languages generally) series č, j, šh (or t', d', d'h to be distinguished from č, j, šh of the second palatalisation). This being so it becomes possible that (1) Skt. j of this series, with its affricate pronunciation, has developed directly out of j, through confusion with the other affricate j; without a sibilant stage ḷ, and (2) that Old Persian θ, d which appear in place of s, z in the rest of Iranian (θard- 'year', Av. sarad-, Skt. sarad-; dauštar- 'friend', Av. zaoša- 'enjoyment', Skt. jōṣa-, jōṣṭar-; dastə- 'hand', Av. zasta-, Skt. hāsta-) have developed directly out of such affricates and that there is therefore no common Iranian treatment.

§ 5. TREATMENT OF THE LABIO-VELARS

The languages of the satəm group all agree in another feature, namely in the loss of the labial element in the IE series kʷ, gʷ, gʷh. In the centum languages the series was to begin with preserved, but later subject to various developments, of which the commonest is the substitution of pure labial occlusives. Leaving aside cases which have been affected by the second palatalisation, the treatment of the labio-velars may be illustrated by the following examples:


As can be seen from these examples the satem languages have uniformly abandoned all trace of the labial element in these constants, and this, in conjunction with their sharing in the first palatalisation, provides strong evidence that they are derived from a single dialect group within Indo-European. Both changes belong to the late Indo-European period and not to the separate evolution of the various languages of this group.

The element “ which is attached to these velars differs from full IE w in that it is not convertible to the vowel u when the succeeding vowel is elided: e.g. Skt. hánti ‘slays’; ghánánti ‘they slay’ from IE gʷhenti: gʷhonti; similarly Gk. ἐπεφνόν, etc., as opposed to usual treatment of w as seen in such cases as svátpna– ‘sleep’; suptá– ‘asleep’. It is possible, however, that this applies only to the late Indo-European stage. There exist some survivals, particularly in Hittite, in which this element is seen to be vocalised, after the manner of w proper. Corresponding to the Sanskrit verbal forms above Hittite has 3 s. kwenzi: 3 pl. kunanzi and corresponding to Skt. nakt–, Gk. νῆξ, Lat. nox ‘night’ (IE *nokʷit) it has nekuz mehur ‘night time’. Other instances of this treatment are seen in Toch. A. kuryār
§ 6. The Pure Velar Series

This series has been invented to account for those cases in which $k$, $g$, etc., of the centum-languages are not palatalised in the satem-languages, and they are devoid of the labial element whose influence is so marked in the case of the labio-velars. Examples quoted are such as the following:

$k$: Skt. $k$ákṣa- 'armpit', cf. Lat. coxa, OHG. hahsa; Skt. $k$ravīš- 'raw flesh', Lith. kraūjas, O. Sl. kravč 'blood', Gk. κρέας, Lat. crōver; Skt. $k$ṛṇatāti 'cuts' ($\sqrt{kr-}$), Gk. κέρω; $k$arkaṭa- 'crab', Gk. καρκίνος, Lat. cancer; $k$ṛṇāti 'spins', cf. Gk. κρόβω 'spin', Lat. colūs 'distaff'; anākā- 'bending, lap', cf. Lat. unicus, Gk. ὀγκός; 'kulva- 'bald', Lat. calvus; $k$avī- 'a wise man', Gk. κοῖω 'take notice of', Lat. caveo.

$g$: Skt. $g$ṭhag- 'to cover', Gk. στέγω, Lat. tego; tigmā- 'sharp', Gk. στεγμή 'puncture'; ἀγας- 'guilt', Gk. ἄγος; ugrī- 'strong', Av. aogara; 'strength', Lat. augoe, augustus.

$gh$: stīgh- 'to stride', Gk. στέιχω Goth. steiga; dīrghā- 'long', O. Sl. długū, Gk. δολιχός, Hitt. dalugaš; meghā- 'cloud', Lith. miglā, Gk. ὁμίχλη.

The difficulty that arises from postulating a third series in the parent language, is that no more than two series (Lat. quis: canis, Skt. kās: śvan-) are found in any of the existing languages. In view of this it is exceedingly doubtful whether three distinct series existed in Indo-European. The assumption of the third series has been a convenience for the theoreticians, but it is unlikely to correspond to historical fact. Furthermore, on examination, this assumption does not turn out to be as convenient as would be wished. While it accounts in a way for correspondences like the above which otherwise would appear irregular, it still leaves over a considerable number of forms in the satem-languages which do not fit into the framework. Such are Skt. $k$łam- 'to be tired' beside $śr$am- 'id.', cf. Gk. κλαμάρως 'weak, slack', and $r$uc-$r$uk- 'to shine' beside $ru$śánt 'bright', cf. Gk. λευκός 'white', etc. Examples of this kind
are particularly common in the Balto-Slavonic languages: Lith. akmā 'stone', Skt. áśman-, cf. Gk. ἄκμον; klausyti 'to hear', cf. Skt. śrósamāna-, Toch. A. klyos-; Lith. pėkus, O. Pruss. pęku, Skt. pāśu 'domestic animal', Lat. pecu; O. Sl. svekrů 'father-in-law', Skt. svásura-, Lat. socer; O. Sl. čeđa 'collection, herd', Skt. śārdha-; Lith. smakrā 'chin', Alb. mjekre, Skt. śmāśru- 'beard', Ir. smech 'chin'. Clearly a theory which leaves almost as many irregularities as it clears away is not very soundly established, and since these cases have to be explained as examples of dialect mixture in early Indo-European, it would appear simplest to apply the same theory to the rest. The case for this is particularly strong when we remember that when false etymologies are removed, when allowance is made for suffix alternation, and when the possibility of loss of labialisation in the vicinity of the vowel u is considered (e.g. kravis-, ugrd-), not many examples remain for the foundation of the theory.

§ 7. The Second Palatalisation

After the completion of the changes characteristic of the satem-languages the parent dialect of Indo-Iranian possessed the two series k, g, gh and š, ž, žh (or č, j, jh). The latter remained essentially unchanged till the end of the Indo-Iranian period. The former underwent the following alternation. Before the vowels ě (later changed to ā in Indo-Iranian) and ľ and before the semivowel y, k, g and gh developed respectively into the affricates č, j and jh, of which the last was later altered into Iranian j and Sanskrit h respectively.

k : Skt. ca 'and', Gk. τε, Lat. que; catuaras 'four', O. Sl. četyre, Lith. keturi, Gk. τέσσαρε, Lat. quattuor; sácate 'associates with', Av. hačaiti, Gk. ἕπεται 'follows', Lat. sequitur, Ir. sechthir; päńca 'five', Lith. penkti, Gk. πέντε, Lat. quinque; pácati 'cooks', O. Sl. pečetí, but 1 sg. peko; cakrá- 'wheel', A.S. hweohl, cf. Gk. κύκλος, Toch. A. kukāl; cáru- 'a particular vessel', A.S. hwer 'kettle', cf. O. Ir. coire, Welsh pair 'id.'

g : Skt. jivā- 'alive, life', jivati 'lives', Av. ľvati, O. Sl. živů 'alive', Lat. vīvus, Gk. βίος; jyá 'bowstring', Lith. gižá

1 For instance Skt. kāla- 'black' is from Dravidian and not connected with Lat. cāligō, etc.; the Aryan root kan- (Skt. kanyā 'girl', etc.) cannot be connected with Gk. kauós 'new', because its primary meaning is quite certainly 'little' and not 'new'.
PHONOLOGY

'thread', Gk. βίος 'bow'; jātu 'gum, lac', A.S. cewdū, cf. Lat. bitūmen; 'jāni- 'wife', Goth. qēns; rajant 'night', Gk. ἔρεμυς, ἔρεβνων 'dark'.

 gh : Skt. hánti 'slays', Av. fainti, as opposed to Skt. jaghāna 'slew', O. Ir. gequin, Hitt. kuenzi 'slays'; ārhati 'is worth', Av. arṣafaiti, as opposed to Skt. arghā- 'price', Lith. algà 'reward', Gk. ἀλφάω; háras- 'heat', Gk. θέρος 'summer' (gharma-, etc. above); ādhati 'burns', Av. dažaiti : nīdāghā- 'heat of summer', Lith. degū 'I burn'.

The second palatalisation took place fairly early in the development of Indo-Iranian, before the change of ē to a which distinguishes this branch from the rest of Indo-European. Similar changes appear in some other languages of the satem group, e.g. Slavonic (četyre '4', živū 'alive') and Armenian ( jer 'warm') but these appear to have occurred independently and later.

§ 8. THE TWO PALATAL SERIES IN INDO-ARYAN

In Indo-Aryan the distinction between the two palatal series, which is fully preserved in Iranian (s, z, ţ : ɛ, ţ, ʃ) is retained only in the case of the surds (š : c). On the other hand the sonants, both unaspirated and aspirated, are confused with each other as j (= ź and f) and h (= źh and fh) respectively. But the distinction between the two remains effective in many ways in the grammatical system, because according to their origin both j and h are treated in two different ways in various contexts. In declension and inflection the rules of sandhi operate differently according to the different origins of j and h. This may be illustrated from the formation of the participle in -ta from the two types of root respectively.

 j : (a) yaj- 'sacrifice' (Av. yaz-) : īštā-, srj- 'to let go' (Av. maroz-) : srštā-, mṛj- 'to wipe' (Av. märroz-) : mṛštā.
(b) nij- 'to wash' (Av. naē-): niktā-; bhaj- 'to distribute' (Av. baj-): bhaktā-; yuj- 'to join' (Av. yaof-): yuktā.

 h : (a) vah- 'to carry' (Av. vaz-): uḍhā-, lih- 'to lick' (Av. raē-): līdhā-; sah- 'to overcome' (Av. has-): sāḍhā-, soḍhā.
(b) dah- 'to burn' (Ir. daf-, Av. dažaiti): dāḍhā-, druh- 'to injure, betray' (Av. druf-): druḍhā-. In this, as in many other respects the distinction between the two series remains active in Sanskrit grammar.

In the case of the second palatalisation, as opposed to the
first which operated in all conditions, there exists an alternation in the roots affected between palatalised and non-palatalised forms, depending on whether the vowel following was originally ē or ō. This is seen in perfects like jaghāna ‘slew’ and jīgāya ‘conquered’, as contrasted with the present tense forms hānti and jāyati. Similar alternation is not permissible in the case of roots whose j and h belong to the first palatal series, e.g. jājāna ‘begat’ (jān-: Av. zan-) and jukhāva ‘called’ (hū: Av. zav-).

To begin with the distribution of palatalised and non-palatalised forms must have depended entirely on the nature of the succeeding vowel, and consequently an alternation between the two must have been active in the paradigms of noun and verb. In the parallel palatalisation of Slavonic such alternation exists, e.g. between vlūkā ‘wolf’ nom. s. and vlūče voc. s., and between peko ‘I cook’ and pečetū ‘he cooks’. Since the natural tendency of linguistic evolution is to smooth out such irregularities (as is done later in Russian, etc.) it is likely that the Slavonic palatalisation did not long precede the beginning of the literary tradition. On the other hand in the case of Indo-Iranian the change had taken place early enough for the working of analogy to become widely effective. Variation in the paradigms of noun and verb after the Slavonic style has been eliminated, except as between vocalic and consonantal suffixes (loc. s. vāci, loc. pl. vāksi). On the other hand the alternation remains active between different nominal derivatives (bhoga-: bhoja-, etc.). At the beginning of a root alternation between palatal and guttural remains active only in the case of a few roots as those quoted above. Mostly it is eliminated, and in this respect Sanskrit shows a greater tendency to innovation than Old Iranian; cf. Skt. akar 3rd sg. root aor., Av. ēroj (early Aryan aćart<ekert), and agamat, a-aor. Av. ğimaJ. In the latter case the proper name Jamadagni- (‘who goes to the fire’) preserves the earlier, pre-Vedic form. In the reduplication of the perfect, etc., the alternation always remains, based on the fact that the vowel of the reduplicating syllable was originally e (jagāma<geg*ome, etc.).

There are a few instances in Sanskrit where j of the older palatal series alternates with g in the formation of nominal derivatives, e.g. sārga- ‘emission’ (srj-, Av. haroz-) yāga- ‘sacrifice’ (yaj-, Av. yaz-). The guttural here cannot be
original, and it is due to the analogy of the palatals of the later series operating after the two had fallen together in pronunciation.

§ 9. DEVELOPMENTS OF s IN INDO-IRANIAN AND SLAVONIC

In Sanskrit it is the rule that the dental sibilant must be replaced by the cerebral after k, r, i and u. By a similar rule in Iranian s (>Ir. h) is replaced by š. Further in the Slavonic languages s is usually replaced by ch in these conditions, and this ch represents an earlier š. In Lithuanian a similar change is found, but only after r. Examples are:

After k: (Skt. ks, Ir. xš, Slav. ch<kx<kš) Skt. vakṣyāmi. Av. vaxšyāḥ; Skt. kṣudrā- ‘small’, cf. O. Sl. chudū ‘id’; Skt. dārikṣam, s-aor. of ric- ‘to leave’ (IE leikʷ-), Gk. ἐλεύθα; cf. O. Sl. těchū, s-aor. of tekō ‘I run’.

After k: Skt. š: (Skt. ks, Ir. š, Slav. s), Skt. ákṣa- ‘axle’, Av. aša-, O. Sl. osi, Lith. ašis, Gk. ἀξιὸν, Lat. axis; Skt. ádḍa-śa- ‘right (hand)’, Av. dāśina-, O. Sl. desinū, Lith. desinė, Gk. δεξιός, Lat. dexter, etc.; Skt. takṣ- ‘to construct in wood (as a carpenter), Av. iaś-, O. Sl. tesati, Lith. tašyti, Gk. τέχνη ‘art’ (*téksnā), τέκτων ‘carpenter’ (*tékstōn), Hitt. takš- ‘to join’, Lat. texo ‘weave’; Skt. maksi ‘quickly’, Av. mošu, Lat. mox.


As can be seen, the parallelism between Indo-Iranian and Slavonic is not absolutely complete, because they differ in the treatment of that s which follows IE k (>Skt. š, Slav. s). But in all other respects they agree, and the correspondence is too
close for such changes to have taken place independently. In Lithuanian the same kind of development is observed, but only in connection with r, which points to a remoter contact than was the case between Indo-Iranian and Slavonic.

Cerebralisation of s does not take place in Sanskrit when r or r immediately follows: e.g. visra- 'bad-smelling (meat)', cf. viṣa-, etc., Av. vaēśa- 'corruption'; tirsās, tisphēs, tisphām, from tri- 'three'; gen. s. usrās from uṣar- 'dawn', sisrate from sar- 'to go'. In Avestan there is no such restriction, e.g. tiśrō, nom. pl. fem. cf. ८३- 'three'.

§ 10. THE SO-CALLED MOBILE s

Indo-European s when it formed the first member of an initial consonant group, was an unstable sound, and liable to disappear under conditions which it has not been possible accurately to define. Forms with and without s are found side by side in the various languages, as illustrated by the following examples:

Skt. tāṇya’ti ‘thunders’, Lat. tonāre: Skt. stanayitmū- ‘thunder’, cf. Gk. στενόω, O. Sl. stenjo, etc.; Skt. tāyu- ‘thief’, O. Sl. tatū ‘id’, Gk. τυτάω, Hitt. tāya- ‘steal’: Skt. stenā- ‘thief’, stāyu-, stāyānt-, etc.; Skt. tṛ-, tārā ‘star’: Skt. stṛ-, Av. star-, Gk. ὀστήρ, etc. ‘id’; Skt. tij- ‘to sharpen’, tigmā- ‘sharp’: Gk. στιξω, στυγμή, etc.; Skt. tud- ‘to push’, Lat. tundo: Goth. stariant ‘id’; Skt. phēna- ‘foam’, O. Sl. pēna: O. Pruss. spoaynno, with variant suffix Lat. spūma: Engl. foam; Skt. plīhān- ‘spleen’: Av. spṛvās-, Gk. σπλήν, etc.; Skt. pāṣyati ‘sees’: spās- ‘spy’, Lat. specio; Skt. khaṇj- ‘to be lame’: Gk. οκάζω; Skt. phālā- ‘plough-share’: Pers. supār; Pers. fih ‘oar’: Skt. sphyū- ‘wooden ladle’; Av. (vī-) xad- ‘to break up (earth)’: Skt. skhād- ‘to smash to pieces’, cf. Gk. σκέδαννυμι; Skt. nava- ‘sneeze’: Germ. niesen: Engl. sneeze (neu-s-: sneu-s-); Skt. lavanā- ‘salty, salt’: cf. Lat. sal, nihākā ‘fog’, nihāra- ‘mist, dew’: snih- ‘to be moist’, etc. There is no perfectly satisfactory theory to account for this variation which affects all Indo-European languages. Most probably it is the result of some kind of external sandhi affecting initial s- in the Indo-European period. It seems fairly clear that the phenomenon is due to loss of initial s, and if this is so the theory that would regard the s as the remains of some kind of prefix is out of the question.
§ II. The Reconstructions \( p \), \( ph \), \( dh \)

In a certain number of words etymologically connected, chiefly between Indo-Aryan and Greek, an \( s \) (§) in the former appears to correspond to \( r \) or \( θ \) in the latter. The commonest examples of this interchange, which has caused considerable difficulty, are the following: Skt. \( tákṣaṇ \) ‘carpenter’; Gk. \( τέκτων \); Skt. \( ṇkṣa- \) ‘bear’, Lat. \( ursus \); Gk. \( ἄρκτος \), Ir. \( art \); Skt. \( kṣa- \) ‘to wound’; Gk. \( κτείνω \) ‘kill’; Skt. \( kṣi- \) ‘to dwell’, Av. \( षy- \); Gk. \( κτίζω, κτίμενος \); \( kṣi- \) ‘to possess’: Gk. \( κτάομαι \); \( ῥακ- \) ‘to injure’; Gk. \( ἐρέχθω \); \( kṣam- \) ‘earth’: Gk. \( χθών \); \( kṣar- \) ‘flow’: Gk. \( φθείρω \) ‘perish’; \( kṣi- \) ‘to destroy’: Gk. \( φθίνω \). It has been customary to assume a set of IE fricatives to account for these correspondences, namely \( p \), \( ph \), \( dh \), but it is certain that these creations are without serious foundation, since in the case of some of them Hittite evidence has shown that a quite different kind of explanation is necessary, and in view of this the rest are naturally suspect. Corresponding to the Greek and Sanskrit words for ‘earth’ Hittite has \( tēka-\) and Toch. \( t\)̣\( k\)̣\( a\)\( s\), from which it may be deduced that the original form of this word was \( *dheghom- \), or, with elision of the radical vowel, \( *dēghom- \). In Greek there has been metathesis of the initial consonant group; elsewhere we find elision of the first member of the group: Lat. \( humus \), OIr. \( zam-\), etc. Likewise for ‘bear’ Hittite has (in all probability) \( h\)\( a\)\( r\)\( t\)\( a\)\( g\)\( a\)\( s\), from which it can be seen that there has been the same transposition in Gk. \( ἄρκτος \). The Sanskrit forms of these words have developed from original unmetathesised form changed according to the rules of Sanskrit historical phonology. An original \( ῥήκός \) ‘bear’, with loss of \( ῥ \); \( ῥ\)\( k\)\( o\)\( s\), develops through the stages \( ῥi\)\( s\)\( a\)- > \( ῥi\)\( sa\)- to \( ḷkṣa\)-. The development of the word for ‘earth’, though more complicated as containing a voiced aspirated group, follows the same line in principal: \( dēghom-\) > \( dz\)\( h\)\( a\)\( m-\) > \( dz\)\( h\)\( a\)\( m-\) \( ṯ\)\( s\)\( a\)- > \( k\)\( s\)\( a\)-. In the case of Skt. \( kṣi \), Gk. \( φθίνω \) the original root \( dh\)\( g\)\( h\)\( i\)\( -\) produced Indo-Iranian \( dž\)\( hi\)- which was modified to \( dž\)\( hi\)- and then treated as the initial group of the word for ‘earth’. In the case of some words Sanskrit has elided the first member in such groups, so that an original \( *dēghy\)\( e\)\( s\) ‘yesterday’ (cf. Gk. \( χθές \), transposed) appears as \( hy\)\( as\) (< \( ὡ\)\( y\)\( e\)\( s\)). The correspondence of Skt. \( ṛyena- \) ‘hawk’ and Gk. \( ἵκτινος \) is of the same nature.
Not all the examples are to be accounted for in this way. In some cases there is suffix variation. Skt. डक्षि ‘eye’ contains original -s- which is not to be compared with Gk. τ in ὀκταλλός on the assumption of original ἦ. Suffix variation should probably also be seen in Gk. τέκτων ‘carpenter’ (*teks-tōn) as opposed to Skt. डक्षण-.

§ 12. Treatment of r and l

In Iranian IE r and l appear indiscriminately as r.¹ In the language of the Rgveda this is predominantly the case. In Classical Sanskrit both l and r are found, but their distribution does not correspond exactly with that of Indo-European. In certain Eastern dialects of Indo-Aryan (notably in the inscriptions of Asoka and in the Māgadhī of the Drama) only l is found. The treatment of IE l in Sanskrit is illustrated by the following examples:


In comparing the Vedic with the Classical language we notice:
(i) that in a number of words the latter has l where the former has r, and this normally in cases where l appears in other IE languages, e.g. laghu- ‘light’ v. raghū-, Gk. ἔλαχις, Lat. levis; plu- ‘to float’, v. pru-, Gk. πλέω; lip- ‘to smear’, v. rip-, Gk. ἀλείφω; lih- ‘to lick’, v. rih-, Gk. λειχω; (ii) that a considerable proportion of the classical words which preserve IE l

¹ There are a few exceptions in Modern Persian and occasionally elsewhere: Pers. lištan ‘to lick’, Skt. rīh-, lih, Gk. λειχω; laśin ‘soft’, Skt. śalaka-; lab ‘lip’: Lat. labium; Oss. said ‘cold’: Lith. šaltas.
are not found in the text of the Ṛgveda, either by accident, or because their meaning was of such a nature that they were not likely to appear in a text of sacred hymns (e.g. plūṣi- 'flea': Arm. lu, Alb. pl'ešt, cf. Lith. blusā); (iii) that some derivatives which have become isolated from their roots preserve IE l even when it is normally replaced by r in the corresponding roots: ślōka- 'verse' (śru-), vipula- 'great, extensive' (pṛ-, pīpasti 'fill').

The explanation of this apparently complicated treatment is fairly simple. The dialect at the basis of the Ṛgvedic language lay to the north-west, while the classical language was formed in Madhyadeśa. The original division must have been such that the Western dialect turned l into r in the same way as Iranian (being contiguous to Iranian, and at the same time probably representing a later wave of invasion), while the more easterly dialect retained the original distinction. It was in this latter area that Classical Sanskrit was elaborated, but it was not evolved as a separate literary language, distinct from that of the Veda; on the contrary it developed as a modification of the old sacred language of the Vedic hymns. The latter was always the foundation of the literary language, but since after the earliest period (and this excludes most of the later tenth book of the Ṛgveda), the centre of its cultivation shifted eastward to Madhyadeśa, in its further development it was subject to the continuous influence of the dialectal forms of this region. So in the case of the distribution of r and l many of the basic words of the vocabulary retain always the form established by the Vedic literature, but in other cases l-forms based on the dialect of Madhyadeśa replace them. In cases where the word in question is not found in the Vedic text, and where therefore there existed no established literary tradition, the Eastern form with original l almost universally appears.

The treatment of IE r is different in that in the vast majority of cases it continues to be represented by r in all periods of the language, e.g. rudhirā- 'red, blood', Gk. ἱερόν; jāranti- 'old', Gk. ἅρπων 'old man'; rāj- 'property', Lat. rēs, pārī 'round', Gk. πετά; vāriāte 'turns', Lat. vertitur, pārdate 'breaks wind', Gk. περιπετα; pārșni- 'heel', Gk. περπαν, Goth. færzna; sru- 'to flow', Gk. ἰέω; nāras n. pl. 'men', Gk. ἄνερες, ἄνερες; sárparthi 'crawls', Gk. ἑρπω, Lat. sērīō; rāj-, rājan- 'king', Lat. rēx; rāṭha- 'chariot', Lith. rātas
PHONOLOGY

wheel’, Lat. *rota ‘id’; vīrā- ‘man, hero’, Lith. vyras, Lat. vir, etc.

On the other hand instances of l in place of IE r are comparatively rare: lōhita- ‘red’ (also rōhita-, Av. ravisita-, cf. rudhirā-); ālam ‘suitable, enough’, v. āram, cf. Gk. ἀπαξίονω; pālāyate ‘flees’ (parā with i- ‘to go’). The number of such examples is too small to justify the assumption of an I-dialect to account for them. Such an l-dialect does in fact occur later in the Magadhan Prakrit, but it was limited to a small area, and this Prakrit cannot account for forms with l out of r which occur in the latter Vedic literature. It is also to be noted that in some cases where a change l>r has been assumed (e.g. lup-compared with Lat. rumpo) it is more likely that l is original.

§13. INDO-EUROPEAN H

Of late a new phonetic element has entered into accounts of Indo-European as a result of the discovery of Hittite. In this language there appears a sound ḫ which was unaccounted for in the normally prevailing conception of IE phonetics. It is found in basic IE words and must therefore be attributed to Indo-European. Since it is absent in the corresponding words in all the other languages, they must be presumed to share a common change by which it has been lost, and to represent, in this respect, a more advanced state of Indo-European than that preserved in Hittite. Common examples of ḫ are: Hitt. əşḥar ‘blood’: Skt. āṣrk, Lat. aser, Gk. ἄσπρος, Toch. A. əṣhr; ḫaštai+κ-solid bone’: Skt. āṣṭhi, Gk. ὀστέον, Lat. os; ḫant- ‘front’: Skt., antt- ‘(in front of), near’, Gk. ἀντί, Lat. ante; ḫarki- ‘white’: aŋk Toch. ārkī, Gk. ὀξύς, Skt. āṛjuna-, etc.; ḫahuɾ ‘fire’: Gk. ἀὔθημα, πυρ; ḫaḥ- ‘to protect’: cf. Skt. pā- ‘id’, etc.; ḫhai-, ḫhiya- ‘bind’: Skt. syāti ‘binds’; nevahh- ‘renew’: Lat. novāre; ḫalhiš ‘broad’: cf. Lat. plānus, etc. For Indo-European the symbol ḫ, used by H. Pedersen is the most convenient (IE *pelh- etc.).

In some instances ḫ disappears without trace (āṣrk ‘blood’) but in others its effects survive. It is clear that the long vowel in Lat. novāre results from the combination of a short vowel + ḫ, a combination which remains in Hittite, and the same can be assumed in the case of Lat. plānus (plai-, varying in apophony from Hitt. paḥ-) . Skt. syāti ‘binds’, from the Hittite evidence, stands for *shyāti, of which shi- is the root in its weak form, and
the suffix of the fourth class. The simple root with guna appears in the aorist (āsāt) showing the same development of \( aH \) to \( ā \). Hitt. \( pahšš- \) 'to protect' is enlarged by an \( s- \) suffix, and when this is removed we see the same correspondence \( aH : ā \) between this and Sanskrit \( pā- \). Since the nominal and verbal suffixes \( ā \) are identical, the same development \( aH > ā \) (as in novāre) is to be assumed in the case of the feminine suffix \( ā \) (Lat. nova, Gk. νέα, Skt. नावा), and this implies a similar development in the case of the long vowels \( āi \) and \( āu \) in nominal and verbal derivation, since the compound suffixes \( yā \) and \( vā \) must in the same way be derived from \( i + aH \) and \( u + aH \), and the corresponding weak grades are for \( i-H \) and \( u-H \).

Another effect of \( H \), observable in languages other than Sanskrit, is the coloration of a succeeding vowel by \( H \), producing notably a change from \( e \) to \( a \). For instance the root which appears in Sanskrit as \( kri- \) 'to buy' is to be set up for Indo-European as \( kwe rèH- \), and in Greek an original aorist form \( ekwe rèH- \) to appear as \( ἐμπιάρο \), the original presence of \( H \) being indicated by the \( a \) instead of \( e \) of the termination. Similarly from the root \( kruH- \) (Skt. \( kru- \) in \( krūrd- \), etc.) an original \( es/os \) stem \( *kreuHos \) appears in Greek as an \( -as- \) stem, \( ἁπεασ \). The confusion of the vowel qualities has eliminated such variation in Sanskrit, but there remain a number of other circumstances in which the presence of \( H \) can be detected, notably

(1) The older theory assumed a vocalic \( r \) and \( l \) (written \( r', l' \) and in other ways) before a following vowel in certain cases to account for correspondences like Gk. \( βαπύς \) 'heavy', Skt. \( gurū- \), Goth. \( kaurus \) 'id'. But there was no clear reason why the rule that these phonemes appear as vowels in interconsonantal position, but as consonants before and after vowels, should not be valid in this case. A restoration \( g"rHú- \) showing that the \( r \) originally occupied an interconsonantal position, accounts for all these developments. In most IE languages where \( r \) develops into a vowel (varying from language to language) + \( r \), this combination remains before a vowel when \( H \) disappears, and similarly in the case of \( l \). In Sanskrit the process is somewhat different, since here vocalic \( r \) normally remains, but when the loss of \( H \) would leave it before a vowel, its place is taken by the combinations \( ir \) and \( ur \). Iranian, which is usually so close to Indo-Aryan, differs markedly on this point, showing \( ar \) where Sanskrit has \( ir \) or \( ur \). Examples of such words
are Skt. tirás ‘across’: Av. tarō; síras- ‘head’, Av. sarah-, cf. Gk. κάρα, κάρηνος; purás ‘in front’, Av. parō, Gk. πάρος; purás n. pl. ‘cities’, cf. Lith. pilis ‘fort’ (guna in Gk. πόλις); purú- ‘much’, Av. puru- (Ir. paru-); hiranyā- ‘gold’, Av. zaranyā-; giri- ‘mountain’, Av. gairi-, cf. Lith. giriα ‘forest’ (guna in O. Sl. gora ‘mountain’); girāti, gilāti ‘swallows’, tirāti ‘crosses, overcomes’, kirdti ‘scatters’, etc. The variation between i and u in these cases depends on the preceding consonant; preceded by a labial, or in some cases by an old labio-velar, u appears, elsewhere i is normal.

(2) The combination rH also gave rise to a special development when followed by a consonant. In this case ĭr, ĭr appears in Sanskrit, but in Iranian predominantly ar. So we have širṣān- ‘head’ beside šstras (krHsen- : krHes-), tirṇā- and kīrnā-beside tirāti, kirdti, etc., and with ū, pūrnā- ‘full’ (after labial). Other words with ĭr, ĭr of this origin are: ĭrmā- ‘arm, foreleg’, Av. arama-, O. Pruss. irno, Lat. armus, Eng!. arm; urdhvā- ‘upright, high’, Av. ur̥̃dwa-, Lat. arduus; ūrṇā ‘wool’, Av. varṇā, Lith. vilna; ūrmī- ‘wave’, Av. varṇmī-, A.S. wielm; urvarā ‘cultivated land’, Av. urvarā ‘cultivated plant’ < *yvarā, cf. Lat. arāre ‘plough’, Gk. ἀπούπα ‘ploughed field’, etc.; dīrghā- ‘long’, Av. dār̥ya-, O. Sl. dlugū; pūrvā- ‘former’, Av. paurva-, O. Sl. prūvū; bhūṛ̥ja- ‘birch’ (Lith. bėr̥̆sas, etc., with different grade). To account for these developments original long sonant liquids were set up (ɾ, ū), and these could have conceivably existed at an intermediate stage (rH>ɾ>īr, ĭr), the development being parallel to that of in, ūn to ĭ, ū.

In the same fashion the long sonant nasals which were postulated may be replaced by ūH and ūH. From the root san(H) ‘to win’ the Skt. participle sātā- develops regularly through *saHto- from sṃtu-, with regular weak form of root. In the case of ūH the nasalisation is preserved (or reintroduced), but the original presence of H is clearly enough indicated by the long vowel: dāntā- ‘tamed’, sāntā- ‘appeased’, from dam(H)-, śam(H)-.

(3) In the Vedic language -ya- after a light syllable is pronounced as one syllable if it is simply a combination of Y + a: ávya- ‘belonging to a sheep’, kavyā- ‘wise’, ványa- ‘of the forest’, havyā- ‘oblation’. When on the other hand it goes back to -iH (a suffix parallel to -ira, -iṣa, etc.) ya is pronounced -iya: dāmiya- ‘belonging to the house’, rāthiya- ‘relating to a
chariot', jāniya- 'relating to the people', udanīya- 'watery.' The two types are of course confused in the later language, and the difference revealed by the Vedic metre, is simply explained when it is realised that there are two different suffixes, (1) $i + a$, (2) $i + H + a$. The declension of the stems in $i$ and $u$ ($<ih, uh$) where the suffix always retains its syllabic value before a vocalic ending (gen. s. vṛkiyas, tanīvas $<ihas, uhas$) confirms this quite clearly, since the corresponding genitives of ávi- 'sheep' and mādhu 'honey' (ávyas, mādhvas) show always the consonantal value of $y$ and $v$.

(4) Most significant of all, traces of the original nature of $H$ are preserved in Sanskrit in cases where it was immediately preceded by an occlusive. Here the combination occlusive $+ H$ may produce an aspirated occlusive. As already stated, it was in this way that the whole category of surd aspirates arose in late Indo-European. Examples of this have already been given. Examples of sonant aspirates arising in this way are seen when an aspirate in Sanskrit appears to correspond to a non-aspirate in other languages, or when a final non-aspirated occlusive of a root appears with aspiration in a derivative. In these cases original suffixal $H$ is responsible for the aspiration; e.g. máhā- 'great': Gk. μέγας. Here the root is followed by the suffix a$H (>ā)$, which appears in its weak form (-$H-$) in the gen. sg., and this $H$ being in immediate contact with the preceding $g$ causes aspiration (meg-$H$-és $>meghēs >mahēs$), and from such forms the aspiration is extended to the whole declension. The same thing has taken place in duhitār- 'daughter' (dhu$g$-$H$-itār-): Gk. θυγάτηρ, ahām 'I' (eg$H$-ōm): Gk. ἔγώ (egō$H$), sadhāṣṭha- 'seat, abode' (sed-$H$-es-): sad- 'to sit', sindhu- 'river': sya$H$- 'to flow'.

Before the discovery of Hittite there existed in Indo-European studies a 'Laryngeal Theory', which, since it received partial confirmation from the new Hittite evidence, has come to be generally adopted in recent years. Briefly stated in its most popular form the theory maintains that there existed three laryngeals, which in this notation would be represented by $H_1$, $H_2$, $H_3$. The original long vowels of Indo-European (as opposed to those long by vrddhi), result from a combination of a single guna vowel $e$ with the several laryngeals, so that from $eH_1$, $eH_2$ and $eH_3$, $ē$ (e.g. dhē- 'to put'), ā (e.g. stā 'to stand') and ṭ (e.g. dō 'to give') are respectively derived (i.e. the roots
are originally $dheh_1$, $steH_2$, $deH_3$). The theory further maintains that when preceded by these three laryngeals this same guna vowel takes the form $e$, $a$ and $o$ respectively ($es$- 'to be': $H_1es$-; $anti$ 'in front': $H_2enti$; $ost(h)ti$- 'bone': $H_3esti$).

Hittite provides some positive evidence in support of this theory, but it is incomplete, and in certain respects contradictory. We have already quoted instances showing the development of the guna vowel $+H$ to $a$ and of the change of $e$ to $a$ when preceded by $H$. On the other hand there are difficulties: although $H$ appears where the theory demands it in $hant$: Gk. $\alpha\nu\tau\tau\varsigma$ it is absent in $appa$: Gk. $\alpha\nu\tau\tau\omicron$ where the theory equally demands it. In Hittite there is only one $H$ and it is a long way from this three or even four demanded by the theory. It is not therefore surprising that the theoreticians differ considerably in the details of their exposition. For the purposes of Sanskrit grammar the question of the plurality of $H$ is fortunately of little significance, because the variation of vowel quality ($a$, $e$, $o$), with which it is bound up, has ceased to exist in Sanskrit. For all practical purposes it is possible to operate with a single, undifferentiated $H$, and that will usually prove sufficient.

Another aspect of the Laryngeal theory should be briefly mentioned. From the beginning it has been involved in the theory of Indo-European 'Shwa' (3). In the Laryngeal theory it is replaced by a vocalic version of the laryngeals ($H$ with three varieties). As a result of this the laryngeals themselves commonly receive the notation $\omega_1$, $\omega_2$, $\omega_3$. It will be pointed out below that the hypothesis of an Indo-European $H$ is without justification either in the framework of the laryngeal theory or of any other. Indo-European $H$ is not capable of vocalic function and when left in interconsonantal position through loss of the associated guna vowel it is in Sanskrit elided: e.g. Skt. $dadma\varsigma$, $dadha\varsigma$ from $d\dot{a}$, $d\dot{h}a$.

§ 14. COMBINATIONS OF OCCLUSIVES

The following changes in combination are inherited from Indo-European:

(1) A sonant is changed into a surd when immediately followed by a surd: $yukt\acute{a}$- 'joined': $yuj$- 'to join', $yug\acute{a}m$ 'yoke', cf. Gk. $\zeta\nu\nu\tau\acute{o}s$: $\zeta\nu\gamma\nu\mu\nu$; $pat\acute{u}$, loc. pl. of $p\acute{u}d$- 'foot', cf. Gk. $p\nu\nu\sigma\acute{i}$, $p\nu\sigma\acute{i}$. Conversely a surd becomes sonant when fol-
PHONOLOGY

owed by a sonant: Skt. upabda- 'trampling on': pad- 'foot', cf. Av. frabda- 'fore part of the foot', Gk. enipbdaa 'day after a festival'; dadhis instr. pl. of dant-, dat- 'tooth'; abjit- 'conquering the water': dp- 'water'.

(2) In the case of the combination sonant aspirate followed by -t- the whole group is voiced and the aspiration attached to the second consonant; thus from dabh- 'to burn' (from dagh- by the second palatalisation), budh- 'to understand' and labh- 'to receive', the participles in -ta are dagdha-, buddha- and labdha-. In the older Avestan language a similar development is observed, though the aspiration as always in Iranian has been lost: aogadā 'said' from *augdha, i.e. Aryan augh- (Av. aog-) + ta, cf. Gk. εὐχερα; uddaena- 'woven' from Aryan vabh-. The later Avestan substitutes combinations of type (r) above even in the case of the original sonant aspirates: aoxita 'said', druxtına- 'betrayed' (draog-: Skt. druh-) daptā- 'deceived' (dab-: Skt. dabh-). In the same way in Sanskrit dhattē 'places' has been substituted for *dadhē (= Av. dazđē) which would be the regular combination of dadh-+te. Elsewhere in Indo-European innovating forms of this type have completely replaced the old type of combination: e.g. Gk. ἐκτός: ἐκω; πνότις, cf. Av. apaitibusti 'not noticing', as opposed to Sanskrit buddhi-.

(3) Dental combinations in Sanskrit normally conform to the above rules: vētti 'he knows' from vi-, ruddhā- 'obstructed' from rudh-+tā, etc. On the other hand Iranian substitutes the sibilant s or z in these positions: vōistā 'thou knowest': Skt. vēttha; hastra- 'session': Skt. sattrā-; ni-uruzda- 'locked up': Skt. ruddhā-. The Greek treatment agrees with Iranian: oloθa 'thou knowest', πνότις 'information', cf. Av. apaitibusti: Skt. buddhi-. In the Western IE language -ss- results from the combination: Lat. ob-sessus (sedeoL, O. Ic. sess 'seat'. A tendency to modify the dental combinations is therefore wide-spread. It is assumed that in Indo-European a sibilant was inserted in these cases (ts, th, dzd, dzd). Since all interconsonantal sibilants are elided in Sanskrit an IE voitstha would produce Skt. vēttha, and at the same time it accounts for the Iranian and Greek forms. In the case of the voiced combination we find two kinds of treatment in Sanskrit, on the one hand the usual type ruddhā-, vṛddha-, etc., and on the other hand some ancient
forms testifying to the existence of \( z \) instead of \( d \) as in Iranian: \( deh \) impv. ‘give’ beside \( daddh \), cf. Av. \( dazd \), and \( dheh \) ‘put’, both with \( e \) out of earlier \( az \) according to the rule below. Either this is a case of dialectal divergence, or the type \( deh \) (<\( dazd \)) represents the regular phonetical treatment which has been re­placed in the majority of cases by new analogical formations.

§ 15. Combinations Involving the Palatal Series

The second palatal series is simple in the matter of consonant combination, since all that is involved is the retention of the original guttural before a consonant, which then combines according to the rules given above: \( vac \) ‘to speak’; \( ukt \), \( yuj \) ‘to join’; \( yukt \), \( yokसय \), \( dah \) ‘to burn’: \( dagh \).

Combinations of the old palatal series are much more com­plicated. In the early Indo-Iranian period \( s \), \( z \) and \( \tilde{z} \) were changed to \( s \) and \( \tilde{z} \) before dental occlusives (with aspiration and voicing of the occlusive in the case of \( \tilde{z} \) according to the rule given above for \( dagdh \), etc.): the resulting sibilants were identical with those that arose from Indo-European \( s \), \( z \) after \( i \), \( u \), etc., and their subsequent history is the same. In Sanskrit \( s \) became cerebral \( s \) and cerebralised the following dental and \( z \), after undergoing the same process, was elided leaving cerebral \( d \): e.g. \( vaś \) ‘he wishes’ (\( vaś \)-) Av. \( vaśti \), Hitt. \( \text{wekzi} \), cf. Gk. \( \text{	extepsilon\textk}\) \( \text{vō} \) ptc. ‘will ing’; \( aśt \) ‘8’ (cf. \( aśt\)- ‘80 ’), Av. \( aśt \), Lat. \( \\\\text{octo} \), etc.; Skt. \( mṛśk \) ‘pardon’, Av. \( mṛś\text{kā}\)- (\( mṛg \)-, cf. Skt. \( mṛj \)- ‘to wipe away’ and Pers. \( āmṛ \) ‘to wipe away’ and Pers. \( āmṛ \) ‘to wipe away’) and \( mṛ\) ‘to wipe away’ and Pers. \( āmṛ \) ‘to wipe away’ and Pers. \( āmṛ \) ‘to wipe away’); Skt. \( u\text{ḍh} \) ‘carried’ for *\( u\text{ḍha}\)\(<\text{u\text{ḍha}}\) (\( vah\)- ‘to carry’ from \( va\text{zh}\)\(<\text{IE vęgh} \)); Av. \( goro\text{ḍd} \) ‘complained’, 3 sg. aor. mid. from \( gar\text{oz} \)=Skt. \( g\text{arh} \); Skt. \( lé\text{ḍhi} \) ‘licks’ (\( lih \)-), etc.

The same change was liable to take place in contact with other consonants: cf. Av. \( f\text{s\textuu\textnt} \) ‘possessing flocks’ (\( pasu\)-, Skt. \( p\text{s\textu} \); Av. \( f\text{ra\textśn} \) ‘question’, Skt. \( p\text{ra\textśn} \); Av. \( v\text{i\textź\textby\textd} \), Skt. \( vi\text{ḍbh\textyās} \) (\( vi\text{s\texti} \). In these combinations there is not complete agreement between Indo-Aryan and Iranian, but in the case of the latter example at any rate an Aryan *\( vi\text{žbh\texty\texta}s \) is attested. The Sanskrit development through \( vi\text{žbh\texty\texta}s \) to \( vi\text{žbh\texty\texta}s \) is exactly the same as that seen when \( z \) (\( \tilde{z} \)) was out of IE \( s \), e.g. in \( viprū\text{žbh\texty\texta}s \) for *\( viprū\text{žbh\texty\texta}s \) (\( viprū\text{s\texti} \) ‘drop’).

When immediately followed by \( s \) these palata ls appear as \( k \) in Sanskrit in intervocalic position; and the treatment is there-
fore the same as that of the second palatal series: vākṣi ‘you wish’ (vaś-) like vaksyāmi ‘I will speak’ (vac-). This is not a case of preservation of IE k (cf. Hitt. wek- ‘wish’) but of its restoration. This is known for the following reasons:

(1) Iranian continues to distinguish the two types of combination derived from IE guttural + s and from IE palatal + s:
   (a) vaksyāmi, Av. vaxṣyā (wekw-); kṣatrā- ‘sovereignty’: Av. xšaṭra-; kṣap- ‘night’: Av. xṣap-, cf. Gk. ἴψας; bhaks- ‘partake of, eat’: Av. baxš- ‘distribute’; tvaks- ‘to be active’: Av. ὀwaxš-.

(2) The evidence from Iranian that there were two combinations in early Indo-Iranian both represented in Sanskrit by kṣ is further confirmed by evidence provided by Sanskrit itself. In cases where the group is followed by t it gives k or ś according to its origin: (a) ḍbhaktā 3 sg. mid. s-aor. of bhaj-, cf. 1 sg. ḍbhaks-i; cf. also bhaktā- ‘food’: bhaks- ‘to eat’; (b) 3 sg. tāṣti, caṣte from takṣ-, caks-; niraṣṭa- ‘castrated’ from niraks-, etc. When the group is final the sibilant is elided according to the general rule. When the k goes back to the guttural series it invariably remains: vāk nom. s. from *vākṣ, cf. Av. vāxš. When on the other hand the old palatal series is involved, although there are some instances of k (‘drk, ʿsprk, nom. sg. to ʿdrṣ-, ʿsprṣ-) the normal and regular treatment is -t: vīt ‘settlement’: viṣ-; vipāṭ ‘the river Beas’: vipāṣ-; spāṭ ‘spy’: spāṣ-; rāṭ ‘king’: rāj-, cf. Lat. rex; ʿvāṭ ‘carrying’: vah- ‘to carry’, etc. Here the anomaly of the k-forms is explained by the dissipilatory influence of ṛ in the vicinity.

It is clear from this evidence that, where Sanskrit has a single combination kṣ, there were originally two different combinations. What immediately preceded kṣ in the prehistoric period of Indo-Aryan where the palatal series is involved is made clear by the forms of the nom. sg. quoted above. Just as nom. sg. vāk is derived from earlier *vākṣ by regular loss of the final sibilant, in the same way vīṭ is derived from *vītṣ. At a period which probably did not very long precede the beginning of the re-
corded tradition this $t$ was changed into $k$ and thus confounded with original $k$. The change is seen in the loc. pl. *vikṣu* (later supplanted by an analogical *vitsu*) as opposed to the nom. *vit(s)*. Since the simplification of final consonant groups preceded this change, the cerebral, that is to say half the original combination, is preserved in the nom. sg.

It is necessary also to go beyond this $t$ since even from the point of view of Sanskrit this will not explain *cašte*, etc. (*cašte* would have resulted). In this connection the sandhi of two sibilants should be compared. There are instances of $s + s$ becoming $t$, e.g. *vatsyāmi*, *dvātīt* from *vas-‘to dwell’, and of $s + s$ becoming $k$: *dvēkṣi‘you hate’ from *dvīṣ-. Here again forms of the nom. sg.—*dvīt* viprul—show that there was an intermediate stage $t$ (which is obviously what would be expected in the case of this combination).

In both cases $t$ ($>k$) may be derived from $s$ (Aryan $ś$). The treatment of the palatals before $s$ is on the lines of their treatment before dental occlusives. Just as palatal $ś$ + dental $t$ produce the cerebral group $śt$, so palatal $ś$ + dental $s$ produced $ss$ which then, in precisely the same way as the original sibilant combinations, became $t$ and finally $k$.

In Iranian the development was somewhat different. Here $s + s$ out of Aryan $ś + s$ result in single $ś$. This is in accordance with another rule for the sandhi of sibilants by which one can stand for two when they come together: cf. Skt. *āsi* for *as + sī*.

When palatal $c$ is preceded by $s$ the latter is changed to the palatal sibilant $ś$: e.g. *saścati* 3 pl. reduplicated present of *sac-‘to associate with ’. When $s$ is followed by $ś$ the two lose their identity and are merged as $c ś$: *ducchūnā‘misfortune’ from *dus + śunā‘prosperity’*. Since the same sandhi results when $ś$ is preceded by a dental ($pacchās$ from $pad-‘foot’+suffix -śas) we may see here the same tendency to occlusion as in the other sibilant combinations noted above. In *tuccha-‘empty’ (for *tusya-, cf. Khot. *tuśśa-<*tusya- and *kacchāpā-‘tortoise’ (cf. the proper name *Kaśyapa-) we have the same development of a group -śś- which has resulted from an early ‘prakritic’ assimilation.

From the standpoint of Indo-European Skt. *ch* ($c ś$) results from an original combination *sk* ($skh$); and in these cases Iranian has $s$: *chād-‘to eut’, Av. *saèd-, Gk. *oxiژω, Lat. *sciendo; chāyā‘shade’, Pers. *sāyah, Gk. *oξια; gācchati ‘goes’, Av.
jasaiti, Gk. βάσκω; ἰροχάτι 'asks', Av. प्रसाईति, Lat. poscit. We must assume that in these cases Aryan s and ś were assimilated to šś which was then treated as above. It should be noted that Skt. ch is different from the other consonants among which it is classified in that it is always a long or double consonant. It is a matter of indifference whether ch or cch is written, though it is customary to use the former at the beginning of a word and the latter in the middle.

§ 16. Combinations Involving Sibilants

Indo-European s became z when followed by a sonant occlusive. This z became ḷ in primitive Indo-Iranian under the same conditions that s became ś (Skt. ś). In Iranian ḷ and ḷ are preserved: Av. hazdyā́θ 'would sit down' (sad-, Ir. had-), mīžda- 'reward', Goth. mizdō. In Sanskrit they are eliminated in the following ways:

(a) Before unlike consonants z and ḷ (Aryan ḷ) are replaced by d and ḷ respectively: ḷdāga- 'branch': Pahl. azg; madgū- 'a water bird', maja- 'to dive' (*madj-<*mazj-): Lith. mazgōti 'dive'; instr. pl. usāḏbhis, māḏbhis from usās- 'dawn', mās- 'month'; viprūḏbhis, instr. pl. of viprūś- 'drop'.

(b) Followed by dental d, dh, z is elided and a preceding vowel a is changed to e: edhi 2 sg. impv. 'be': Av. zdi (as-); sedūr for *sazdur 3 pl. perf. of sad- 'to sit': cf. Av. hazdyāθ; nedištha- 'nearest': Av. nazdištā-; medhā 'wisdom': cf. Av. mazdā 'wise'; mityēdha- 'food offered to the gods': Av. myayzda-; ādhvam 'sit' 2 pl. impv. from āṣ-; sāṣādhi from sāṣ- etc. This applies also to cases where z developed from original d: cf. dehi, dhehi above. A different treatment is seen in addhā adv. 'certainly': Av. O. Pers. azdā.

(c) Before d, dh, z (which may be derived from IE s or from the old palatals, § 15) is elided with cerebralisation of the following consonant, and compensatory lengthening of a short vowel: niḏā- 'nest', Lat. nidus, Engl. nest (*nizdo- from ni + sed-); mūḏhā- 'reward', Av. mīzda-, O. Sl. mīzda, Gk. μυθός, Goth. mizdō; dūḏbha- 'difficult to deceive' (dus + dabh-, Vedic ḷ for ḷ); piḏ- 'to press' (cf. pis- 'to pound'), hīd- 'to injure' (cf. hims- 'id') krīd- 'to play' (cf. ON hrīsta 'shake') for piṣa-, hīṣ-, krīṣ-; astōḥvam 2 pl. mid. s-aor. of stu- 'to praise'; mṛṣkā- 'mercy' (first syllable metrically
long in the Veda): Av. mṛṇoḍāka-; uḍhā- ‘carried’: vah- (<uṛṣṭha-, i.e. uṣṭha + ta), lēḍhi ‘licks’ (<leṣṭhi, i.e. leṣṭha + ti). A preceding short a may be either lengthened (taḍhī < taḍhī for taks + dhi, ṣāḍhī- : sah-), turned into o (vōḍhum ‘to carry’: vah-; ṣōḍhā ‘sixfold’ : sās) or turned into e : ṭrṇēḍhī ‘shatters’ from the present base ṭrṇah- of ṭrh-.

Occasionally z is represented by ḍ even in this position: didiḍḍhi, mimiḍḍhi, riḍḍhī from diś- ‘to point’, mih- ‘to urinate’, rih- ‘to lick’; ṣaḍḍhā beside ṣōḍhā. The same variation is seen in Pa. nīḍḍa-, kīḍḍā which reflect a different dialectal treatment in Qld Indo-Aryan.

Between consonants z disappeared without trace: jagdhā- ‘eaten’ <* jagzdha- (ja-ghs-ta-), as also did s (cf. ābhakta above).

The combination sonant aspirate + s was in the Indo-Iranian period treated in the same way as the combinations of sonant aspirate + t noted above. That is to say, in intervocalic position gh + s gave gzh, and so on. Avestan preserves such voiced combinations though the aspiration as elsewhere is dropped: aogyā ‘you said’ (<augīha, i.e. augh + sa), diwāṣādyāi ‘to injure’ (<dibēha-, i.e. di(d)bhi + sa). Sanskrit has the surd combinations ks, ts, ps in these cases, but these have replaced original gzh, ḍzh, bzh. The absence of aspiration in Vedic adukṣat ‘milked’, dīpsati ‘desires to injure’, coming under the general rule (§ 2) of the dissimilation of aspirates, presupposes forms like dhugzha-, dhībhāha- where the rule could operate. On the other hand in final position, where these groups were surd and de-aspirated from the beginning (Aryan ḍhukṣ nom.sg.), there is never any loss of aspiration in Sanskrit.

Furthermore there are a few cases in Sanskrit where jh, jjh appear instead of ks where such a voiced combination is involved: jājjhat- ‘laughing’ (reduplicated formation from has-), nirjhara- ‘waterfall’, containing the root which normally appears as kṣar- (= Av. yṣar-). These are Prakritisms, and further examples are quotable from Middle Indo-Aryan: Pa. Pkt. jhāma- ‘emaciated’: Skt. kṣāmā-; jhāy- ‘to burn’: Skt. kṣāy-; jhīna- ‘exhausted’: Skt. kṣīnā-. Pali has also jagghati ‘laughs’ with ggh instead of the more usual treatment -jjh-. In all these cases voiced combinations of the type preserved in Av. yṣar-, etc., are to be assumed, and the difference between these forms and the normal ks of Sanskrit is indicative of dialect variation in Old Indo-Aryan.
Something has already been said about combinations of sibilant + sibilant. There are three types involved which differ in respect of the date of their operation:

1. By an old IE rule $s+s$ could be represented by a single $s$: $\ddot{a}si$ 'you are', Av. $ahi$, Gk. $el$ (IE $esi$ out of $es+si$); $\ddot{a}mhasu$ loc. plur., Av. $azahu$ ($\ddot{a}mhas$ 'distress' + $su$).

2. By a rule specific to Indo-Aryan, but one whose operation lay mainly in the prehistoric period, $s+s$ became $t$s and $s+s$ became $k\ddot{s}$ (through *$t\ddot{s}$): $vatsyditi$, $dv\ddot{a}tsit$ from $vas$- 'to dwell'; $jighatsu$- 'hungry' from $ghas$- 'to eat'; $\ddot{a}vek\ddot{si}$ 'you hate' from $\ddot{a}vis$ 'to hate'. When these combinations are final only the first element remains, and in the case of the cerebral combinations, since the loss of the final sibilant took place during the stage *$t\ddot{s}$, this appears as $t$: nom. sg. $u\ddot{k}h\ddot{a}srat$ 'dropping from the pot' ($srams$-), $p\ddot{a}r\ddot{n}ad\ddot{h}vat$ 'shedding leaves' ($d\ddot{h}va(\ddot{m})s$-); °$d\dot{v}it$ 'hating', $vip\dot{r}it$ 'drop'.

3. Neuter nouns in -as, -is, -us make their loc. pl. in -ahsu, -ihsu, -uhsu (optionally -assu, -issu, -ussu). This is the latest type, and it is patently imitated from the external sandhi of the nom. sg., as has happened also in the bh- cases ($m\ddot{a}nobh\ddot{i}s$, $havirb\ddot{h}i$s, etc.).

§17. The Cerebrals

In the cerebral series ($t$, $th$, $d$, $\ddot{d}h$, $n$, $s$) Indo-Aryan presents an innovation as opposed to the rest of Indo-European. This somewhat infelicitous name, a mistranslation of Skt. $m\ddot{u}r\ddot{d}hanya$-, dates from the very earliest days of Indo-Aryan philology, and has stuck through long habit. Phonetically 'retroflex' or 'retroverted' more adequately describes these sounds which are distinguished from the dentals in that the tip of the tongue is turned back to the roof of the mouth. They are characteristically Indian sounds, and were certainly acquired by the Indo-Aryans after their entry into India. At the same time their use spread to the more easterly of the Iranian languages, those bordering on the Indo-Aryan area (Paštô, Khotanese, etc.). Cerebrals are also found abundantly in Dravidian, and they are certainly ancient in that family. They are also found prevalently in the Munda languages, but since they appear to be absent in Savara, a member of the family less affected by external influences than any other, they may not be original in that family. Since it is only in India and
the immediate vicinity that an Indo-European language has
developed such sounds, and since it may be safely assumed that
an early form of Dravidian possessing such sounds was spoken
over large portions of India prior to the advent of the Aryans,
the influence of Dravidian may be held to be responsible to
some extent for their emergence. At the same time, in native
Indo-Aryan words they are explicable entirely out of the com-
binatory changes that affected certain consonant groups.

Most of these have been mentioned and can be classified
quite simply: (1) Originally dental $t$, $th$ became cerebral when
preceded by $s$ (Aryan $ ś$) which in this position may either rep­
resent IE $s$ (§ 9), or be a modification of Aryan palatals ś, زة
(§Skt. $j$: IE $k$, $g$) : $vṛṣṭi$ - 'rain' ($vṛṣ$: cf. Gk. ēρος, ἑρος
$weκζι$), $āstrā$ ‘goad’ (aj- ‘to drive’: Lat. ago, etc.); (2) Originally
dental $d$, $dh$, became cerebral when preceded by $s$ (Aryan $z$
of the same twofold origin as $ś$) ; since in this case the sibilant
was elided the resulting cerebrals $d$, $dh$ (f, $lh$ in the $Ṛgveda$) came
to stand alone in intervocalic position: exx. $niḍā$, $ūḍhā$, etc.,
see above ; (3) The occlusion of the first part of the group $ss$
(which may be for $ś + s$ or $ś + s$) produced $śś$ ; finally the $t$
came to stand alone, the simplification of the consonant group in this
position ($dvṛ$, $vṛt$, above), while intervocally the group de­
developed further to $kś$; (4) Originally dental $n$ became cerebral
$n$ under wider conditions, namely when preceded in the same
word by $ś$, $r$ or $r$, except when a palatal or dental intervened :
$kāraṇa$ - ‘cause’, etc.

In addition to these rules by which cerebrals developed there
are others which have been more controversial, but which can
now be regarded as established. A notable case is the change of
IE $l$ followed by dental to cerebral, commonly referred to as
Fortunatov’s law. Though long opposed, this rule is to be
accepted. Examples of this phonetic change are as follows:
$pārdah$, OSlav. $p-latino$ ‘linen cloth’, etc.; $pātala$ - ‘fold, layer,
the IE root $pel$ - ‘to fold’ in Gk. ἐπλόσ ‘twofold’, Lat. $duplus$,
$duplex$, Eng. fold, etc.; $sphāṭika$ - ‘crystal’, $sphuṭa$- ‘clear’ : cf.
the IE root $sp(h)el$ - ‘to be bright’ appearing in Sanskrit
also in $sphu[/sphur$ - ‘to glitter’, $sphulinga$ - ‘spark’; $hāṭaka$-
‘gold’: OSl. $zlato$, Russ. $zoloto$; $jaṭhāra$ - ‘belly’: Goth.
kilpei 'womb'; kuṭhāra- 'axe'; cf. kūliṣa- 'id' and Lat. culter 'knife', etc.; jada- 'cold, stiff, numb, dull' <*jalda-: cf. Lat. gelidus, etc.; ādhyā- 'rich'; cf. rdh- 'to prosper', a root which originally had l (Gk. ἀλθομαί etc.); paṇa- 'stake, stipulation, hire, wages': Lith. peiṇas 'gain, profit, earnings'; kuni- 'lame in the arm' <*kulni-: cf. Gk. κυλλός (<kulos); paśana- 'stone, rock': Germ Fels, etc.; bhas- 'to bark', bhās- 'to speak': Lith. balsas 'voice', Germ. bellan, etc.\(^1\)

In addition to these types of combinatory change, there has also been a considerable amount of spontaneous cerebralisation in Sanskrit, and it is possible to list a fair number of words in which a cerebral represents an original dental without any combinatory change being involved. Some instances of this kind have long been recognised, particularly where later Sanskrit has cerebral as opposed to dental in the Veda: e.g. at- 'to wander', dī- 'to fly', nadā- 'reed', as opposed to Vedic at-, dī-, nadā-. Other cases such as maṇi- 'jewel' (Lat. monile) and sthāna- 'column' were also early recognised, and the cerebral was put down to Prakritic influence. Recently, however, it has become clear that this process has occurred in Sanskrit to a much greater extent than previously admitted, and that it is in most cases a genuine Sanskrit and not a Prakrit phenomenon. The following further examples illustrate the spontaneous change to cerebral: avatā- 'hole in the ground' as opposed to Vedic avatā- 'well'; kuṇṭha- 'blunt': NPers. kund, Bal. kunt; pinda- 'lump, mass': Arm. (<Ir.) pind 'compact'; pāndita- 'wise', pāndā- 'wisdom': NPers. pānd 'good advice'; kūta- 'hammer' from *kūta-, cf. the root in Engl. hew, Lith. kūnu 'strike', OSl. kovati 'forge, hammer', etc.; koṭi- 'tip, point': Lat. cautès, caulis 'sharp, jagged rock'; kaṭevara- (>kalevara-) 'corpse': Lat. cadaver.

A small number of Sanskrit cerebrals are of Prakrit origin, e.g. bhaṭa- 'soldier' (<bhṛta-), naṭa- 'actor', cf. nṛt- 'to dance', bhaṭṭāraka- 'lord', cf. bhṛty-, and atani- 'tip of bow' beside earlier ārṇi. There are some which occur in Dravidian loanwords: eda- 'goat', kudi- 'hut, house', kathina- 'hard', guḍa- 'ball', for which see Chapter VIII. In late Sanskrit some words with initial cerebral appear, which cannot be explained out of either Indo-Aryan or Dravidian: such are

\(^1\) The change did not take place in words in which l was changed to r: e.g. ārṇā 'wool' (Lilt vlina, ch.), jartu- 'womb' as opposed to jāthāra- etc.
§ 18. MISCELLANEOUS CHANGES

The phonetic changes undergone by a language are for the most part subject to general laws, but when all has been done to elucidate these some exceptions will remain. For instance one can hardly doubt that Skt. kéśa- 'hair' is the equivalent of Av. gaésa- 'id', since an associated u- stem is available in both cases (Av. gaésa- : cf. Skt. keśa-a-). Contamination with kesara- 'mane' (cf. I. a. caesaries) may explain the change in Sanskrit. Such sporadic changes are found more abundantly in the case of certain consonant combinations. The combination pl normally remains when l does not become r (plu- 'swim, float') but it is changed to kl in klóman- 'lung' as opposed to Gk. πλέομων, Lat. pulmō 'id' (the original meaning was 'swimmer, that which floats'), and in viklava- 'distressed' as opposed to viplava-, vipluta-. In the case of trp- 'to steal' IE klep (Gk. κλέπτω, Goth. hlifan, etc.) has been altered to tlep: a confusion of the groups kl and tl is common the world over. A similar change of the occlusive, also sporadic, is found in the case of the group -tn-. It remains normally (ráina-, pátñi) but in the feminines of certain adjectives in -ita it appears changed to -kn-: ásikñi, pālikñi (ásita- 'black', pālitá- 'grey-haired') Later examples of this tendency are seen in Pkt. savakki (beside savatti) 'co-wife', Panj. saukkan, and in Panj. arak 'elbow' (aratñi-).

The sibilants are liable to certain changes when in proximity to one another. Initial s was changed to ṣ in Sanskrit when ṣ followed in the next syllable: śvásura- 'father-in-law': Av. x'asura-, Gk. ἕκυρος, Lat. socer; śmásru- 'beard'; cf. Litl. smakrá, Ir. smech 'chin'. The same assimilation in the reverse order is seen in śasā- 'hare' for *śasa- : cf. Khotanese saha-, Germ. Hase, Engl. hare. On the other hand s is preserved in the roots sās- and ġas- because the change was impossible in forms like śásti, sástá- (but cf. śasana- for śásana- in the N.W. Prakrit). There is also a change of s to ṣ when s follows: śūśka- 'dry': Av. ḫuṣka-, śakṣṇā- 'soft', Pers. laśin, cf. Gk. λαγ νός, λαγαφός, Lat. laxus, Engl. slack; ślis- 'to adhere', śleśmán- 'phlegm', cf. Engl. slime, etc.

Since in cases where a final ṣ has disappeared an initial s is re-
placed by ś, e.g. śaṭ ‘six’ (*śaṭs<*śaṭs) and virā-śāṭ ‘overcoming men’, it is likely that śūṣka-, etc., are the result of secondary dissimilation of an intermediate *śūṣka-. This rule does not apply where the system of related forms is strong enough to prevent it, e.g. vāṣu-, vāṣīyas-, vāṣīṭha-, though even here isolated forms with ś are handed down.

In Vedic kṣumānt = Av. fṣumānt- (*spaśu-) we have an isolated example of a change which has parallels in Iranian (cf. Khot. kṣārma- ‘shame’ = fṣārma-).

More or less isolated cases of the reduction of three consonant groups in Sanskrit appear in stāna- ‘breast’: Av. fštāna-, Pers. pštan Toch. B pēscane; hraddā ‘lake’: cf. Av. γζràd- to flow; and tuvštār- ‘n. of the divine architect’ = Av. thvōrštār-.

From the Indo-European period there was a certain instability about r, v, y as the second members of initial consonant groups. This accounts for equations like Skt. bhanj- ‘to break’, Ir. bongaim, Skt. bhuj- ‘to enjoy’, Lat. fungor on the one hand and Lat. frango, fruor on the other. Similarly in the case of v Skt. ṣaṣ, Lat. sex, etc., are opposed Av. xśvaṣ, etc., and Skt. kṣip- ‘throw’ to Av. xśvaṃ-.

§ 19. Final Consonants

In final position consonants and consonant groups receive in many respects special treatment. This was true also in the prehistoric period; for instance the aspiration in nom. sg. oḍhuk as opposed to its absence in aduksata is due to the fact that at an early period the combination gh+s became -kš in final position, whereas intervocally it became gzh. But the tendency to special development in final position has become much stronger by the historical period, and its features anticipate in some respects the later Prakritic developments of Indo-Aryan.

Of the occlusives only the unvoiced series p, t, ṭ, k are allowed to stand in absolutely final position, and in their place the corresponding voiced series b, d, ḍ, g are substituted before voiced consonants and vowels. The sonantisation before initial vowel is a special characteristic of Sanskrit, and it anticipates the voicing of all intervocalic surds in later times.

Consonant groups were drastically reduced during the period immediately preceding the historical record, and in this respect Vedic contrasts remarkably with early Iranian. Here too the
same general tendency was at work which later resulted in the assimilation of all consonant groups. With few exceptions (e.g. nom. sg. ārk from ārj- 'vitality') not more than one consonant may stand at the end of a word, however many were there to begin with. This had serious results in some aspects of the morphology, and led to some grammatical innovations. Thus the terminations are lost in the case of the second and third persons singular of the root and s-aorists, and the s of the s-aorist suffers the same fate in these persons when preceded by a consonant, so that the formations lose their grammatical clarity. On account of this the root aorist comes to be abandoned in Classical Sanskrit except in the case of roots in long ā, and new extended formations are provided in the case of the s-aorist (ānaisīt for ānais).

The weakest of the final consonants was s. In final position this is weakened to the breathing h (visarga). In sandhi the same change occurs before k, p and the sibilants. Preceded by ā it is elided before voiced consonants and vowels. The same thing happens when it is preceded by a, but here the -as is in most contexts replaced by o. In the non-Sanskritic dialects of Old Indo-Aryan there was an alternative development of -as to -e. An example of this is found even in the Rgveda (sūre duhita 'daughter of the sun'); later it is a characteristic of the Eastern (Māgadhī) Prakrits, and examples are also found in some of the Kharoṣṭhī inscriptions of the North-West. These developments of final -as began in the Indo-Iranian period, and in Avestan likewise -ō is the common representative of final -as, beside which there is a dialectal variant -ē corresponding to the -e of Māgadhī, etc. Final s is preserved only before t, th, while before c, ch it exists in the modified form ś.

When preceded by i, u, s became originally ś (§ 9) which would normally become Sanskrit ś. In place of this ś, before voiced consonants and vowels r is substituted. The intermediate stage was presumably z and in this case there is complete difference of treatment of a phoneme at the end of a word from its treatment internally. This external sandhi was extended to the sandhi of compounds (durdama-, etc.) but old forms like dūlābha- (dūd°-<duz°-) and kārūlaṭī show that this is not original but analogical. Likewise the sandhi of neuter s-stems in declension (havīrbhis, havīṣu; mānobhis, manahṣu) is in imitation of the external sandhi.
Final \( r \) was weakened in much the same way as \( s \). Finally it is represented by visarga (\textit{punah}), but it is retained when preceded by \( a \) and followed by a vowel (\textit{punar āgacchati}). Elsewhere it behaves in sandhi exactly like \( s \). It even becomes \( s \) before \( t \) (\textit{punas tam}) a development which is certainly analogical rather than phonetic. In the case of uninflected forms with final \( r \) preceded by \( i \) or \( u \) it is impossible to tell from any sandhi context whether the word originally ended in \( s \) or \( r \); thus though we may conclude that the original form of the adverb meaning ‘outside’ was \textit{bahīr} because of Pa. Pkt. \textit{bāhira– external} (\textit{Skt. bāhya-}) derived from it, its form cannot be phonetically determined from Sanskrit itself, and the stem is usually given as \textit{bahiś}. This weakening of final \( r \) had no doubt a good deal to do with the abandonment of a large number of the old neuters in \( r \). They were already in decline, but the phonetic weakness of final \( r \) no doubt hastened the process (the stem \textit{ūdhas} ‘udder’ beside \textit{ūdhar} is due to the tendency to confuse \( s \) and \( r \) in final position).

**VOWELS**

§ 20. Correspondences

The correspondences between the vowels of Sanskrit and those of other IE languages may be gathered from the following table, in which the examples are quoted after the presumed IE original vowel:


lord', Gk. πός, Lat. potis 'able'; ἀπας- 'work', Lat. opus; ἄνας- 'wagon', Lat. onus 'burden'; ἀσθή 'bone', Gk. ὀστεον, Lat. os; δάμα- 'house', Gk. δώμος, Lat. domus, O. Sl. domū; dadárśa 'saw', Gk. δεδορκε; νύκας nom. sg. 'wolf', Gk. λύκος.

ā: mātār- 'mother', Lat. māter; bhṛtar- 'brother', Lat. frater; svādū- 'sweet', Gk. ἀδός, ἄδος, Lat. sūvis; āsthi 'stood', Gk. ἀττά, [aTT]; bahāt- 'ann', Gk. ἀττώς; sāhū- 'to bathe', Lat. nāre; āśvā 'mare', Lat. equā.

e: Skt. rāj-, rājan- 'king', Lat. rēx; mās- 'month', Gk. μῆ, Lat. mensis; sāmi- 'half-', Gk. ἕμη-, Lat. sēmi-; mā 'not' (prohibitive), Gk. μὴ, Arm. mi; pitā 'father', Gk. πατήρ.

ō: ās- 'mouth', Lat. ōs; vāk nom. sg. 'speech', Av. vāxš, Lat. νῶς; āśū- 'swift', Gk. ὁκύς, Lat. octior 'swifter'; pā- 'to drink', Gk. πῶς, Lat. pōtus; nāpāt 'grandson', Lat. nepōs; pāt nom. sg. 'foot', Gk. (Dor.) πός; νύκας nom. pl. 'wolves', Goth. wulfōs.

i: Skt. imās 'we go', Gk. έμεν; vidmā 'we know', Gk. έμεν; cf. Lat. video; tiṣṭhamī 'I stand', Gk. ἑτημί; divī 'in heaven', Gk. Διφ; riṇcānti 'they leave', Lat. linguunt.

ī: Skt. jīvā- 'alive', Lat. vivus; virā- 'man, hero', Lith. vyras; pīvan- 'fat', Gk. πυγ.

u: Skt. śrutā- 'heard', Gk. κλυτός; rudhirā- 'red', Gk. ῥοῦθός, Lat. ruber; snuṣā 'daughter-in-law', O. Sl. snůcha, Gk. νῦς, Lat. nurus; udān- 'water', Gk. ὅδωρ, ὀτός, Lat. unda 'wave'.

ū: Skt. dhūmā- 'smoke', O. Sl. dymū, Lat. fūmus; bhṛ- 'brow', Gk. φῦς, AS. brū; pu- 'to be rotten', pūti- 'putrefaction', Gk. πῦθω, Lat. pūs, pūteo, Goth. fūls.\

ai: Skt. ēdhas 'fuel', Av. aēsma-, Gk. αἴθω 'burn', devār- 'brother-in-law', Gk. δαῖρω (<δατφύρ), Arm. taigr, Lat. lēvir.

ei: Skt. ēti 'he goes', Lith. ėti, Gk. εἴοι; hēmān 'in winter', hemanta- 'winter', Gk. χείμων, Alb. dimen; devā- 'god', Lith. dēvas, Lat. dīvus, Osc. deīvai 'divae'; dehi 'embankment', (like) wall', Gk. τεῖχος, Osc. feihūs 'muris'.

oi: Skt. vēdā 'I know', Av. vaṣa, Gk. οἶδα, Goth. wait; te 'those', Gk. τοῖ; bhāres 'you should bear', Gk. φέρως.

au: Skt. ojas- 'strength', Av. aogarā 'id', cf. Lat. augustus; šoṣa- 'drying up', Lith. sausas 'dry', Gk. ἄνος 'id', AS. sēar.

eu: Skt. bōdhāmi 'I observe', Gk. πεύκωμα 'find out, learn'; oṣati 'burns', Gk. ἔμω 'burn, singe', Lat. uro; jōsati 'enjoys', Gk. γεύομαι 'taste', Goth. kiusan 'choose'.

ći: Skt. phano 'peace', Gk. πᾶς, Lat. pasus; dāma- 'house', Gk. δόμος, Lat. domus, O. Sl. domū; dadarśa 'saw', Gk. δεδορκε; vīkas nom. sg. 'wolf', Gk. λύκος; ā: mātār- 'mother', Lat. māter; bhṛtar- 'brother', Lat. frater; svādū- 'sweet', Gk. ἀδός, ἄδος, Lat. sūvis; āsthi 'stood', Gk. ἀττά, [aTT]; bahāt- 'ann', Gk. ἀττώς; sāhū- 'to bathe', Lat. nāre; āśvā 'mare', Lat. equā.
ou: Skt. loká- ‘space, room, world’, Lith. laūkas ‘plain’, ṭṛṅa-, ṭṛṅa-
Lat. lūcus ‘grove’; bodháyati ‘he awakes’ (trans.), Lith. pa-si-baudyti ‘to awake oneself’, O. Sl. buditi ‘to wake, rouse’; sūnós gen. sg. of sūnū- ‘son’, Goth. sunaús, Lith. sūnaús.

āī: Skt. dat. sg. fem. sēnāyai, devyai, Gk. χωρα, Lat. equae, etc.


ōi: Skt. instr. pl. vykais, etc., Av. daēvaiš, Gk. λύκος; dat. sg. tāsmai ‘to him’, Av. aēlāhmai, cf. Gk. ἐπισ, etc.


Sonant Liquids and Nasals:


η: Skt. matā- ‘thought, considered’, mati- ‘thought, idea’ (man-), Gk. αὐτόματος ‘of one’s own accord’, Lat. commentus, mens, mentio, etc.; ἡτα- ‘slain’ (han-), Gk. φατός (: φῶς, etc.); asī- ‘sword’, Lat. ensis; nāma ‘name’, Gk. ὄνομα, Lat. nōmen, Hitt. lāman; a- ‘not’ in ἀγνατα- ‘unknown’, Gk. ἀγνωρος, Lat. ignōtus, O. Ir. ingnad.


§ 21. Notes on the Vowels

The most characteristic distinguishing feature of Indo-Iranian as opposed to the remaining IE languages is the possession of only a single vowel a corresponding to the three vowels a, e, o elsewhere, and likewise in the case of the long vowels, ā corresponding to ā, ē, ō. It is clear that this uniformity is due to a special Indo-Iranian development, since the other languages
are in substantial agreement with each other in the distribution of the vowels $a$, $e$, $o$. Furthermore the palatalisation of the velar series which occurs in Indo-Iranian before $a$ only when it corresponds to $e$ in the other languages ($ca = \text{Lat. que}$, etc.) testifies to its existence in these positions in the prehistoric period of Indo-Iranian. The confusion of $a$ and $o$ is found also outside Indo-Iranian, in Germanic, Slavonic and Hittite. \textbf{It is not possible to say for certain whether we have here independent parallel development in the various language groups, or whether this fusion of $o$ and $a$ is an ancient dialectal feature of Indo-European.} Certainly in the case of Indo-Iranian and Slavonic, which show other signs of special affinity, the possibility of an ancient common change is deserving of consideration. The change $e$ to $a$ on the other hand is found only in Indo-Iranian, and it is one of the most characteristic features distinguishing this family from the rest of Indo-European.

The Indo-Iranian development of the sonant nasals (to $a$) is the same as that of Greek, and it is one of the several features that links these two branches. Sonant nasals as such are found nowhere, but have been reconstructed for Indo-European from theoretical considerations. The sonant liquids have in the same way been replaced in most languages by combinations of vowel $+ r$ or $l$. Only Indo-Iranian preserved the vocalic $r$, which represents also original vocalic $l$. In Sanskrit there exists only one case of vocalic $l$, namely the root $k\text{lip}^2$ 'to arrange'. Because of Vedic $k\text{lip}^2$, Av. $k\text{ahlp}^2$ 'form, body', which are usually compared with Lat. corpus it is generally considered that this $l$ is of secondary origin, but this is not altogether certain. Nevertheless as a general rule Sanskrit is much more consistent in turning $l$ into $r$ in its vocalic form than in its consonantal form. On the basis of sonant $r$ (which is attested in Indo-Iranian) and $l$ the sonant nasals can be safely reconstructed. They occur in the same conditions, that is to say by the suppression of the associated guṇa vowel which leaves them to function as vowels, and their treatment in various languages is similar. Thus we have for $r$ in Gk. $\alpha p(\rho a)$, in Balto-Slavonic $ir$ and in Germanic $ur$ similarly for $\eta$ Gk. $\alpha$, B. Sl. $in$, Germ. $un$. It is clear that the assumption of original sonant nasals is as much necessary to account for the variation in the associated vowel in the various languages as it is by the principles of apophony which are briefly noted below.
Among the vowels of Primitive Indo-European it has been customary to postulate the so-called 'shwa' (ə). This is based on such comparisons as Skt. *pitār- 'father': Gk. πατήρ, etc. Skt. *sthitā- 'stood': Gk. στάτος, etc. In such cases the ə was considered to represent the reduced grade of the original long vowels, corresponding to the zero grade of the short vowels e, a, o. It was supposed to have become i in Indo-Iranian, and a in all the other IE languages. I have shown elsewhere ¹ that this reconstruction is without justification, and that it was due to a faulty analysis of the Sanskrit words concerned. In these words the i is IE i and it is part of the suffix, not part of the root. Skt. *sthitā- should be analysed sth-itā and its formation therefore differs from that of the related words, so that the phonetic reconstructions based on these comparisons become void. The same analysis is to be adopted in all the relevant forms: sth-itī- 'standing' (cf. sniṭh-itī-) sth-irā- 'firm' (cf. sthēyān, sthēman, Pa. theta-), aor. 3 sg. āsth-ītā 'stood' (cf. avād-ī-rān, etc.), perf. 1 pl. ād-imā (contrast pres. dadmās), stan-ī-hī 'roar' (cf. stanayitnū-, etc.), s-ītā-'bound' (cf. sinātī, sīgāya, etc.), s-ītā- 'sharp' (cf. Ved. sīṣayā-, Av. saēni, etc.), kṛav-īs- 'raw flesh' (cf. rōc-īs-, etc., and Lith. kraūjas, etc.). It is also clear, and established by many examples in Sanskrit that in the zero grade the original long vowels are completely elided: e.g. in the present tense of dā and dhā, dadvās, dadmās, dattē, datsē, dadhvās, dadhmās, dhatse, dhatsva, etc. (likewise in Iranian. Av. đāدامahi, dasā, dasē, dāzde, dadhmaide, etc.); the same elision is found in the participles dattā 'given' and 'tta (devātta- 'given by the gods', etc.) and in Av. pṭar- 'father' beside pṭitār.

If this ə had been confined to the comparatively few words in which Sanskrit i appeared to correspond to a in the other languages, it would never have acquired very great importance in Indo-European theory. It was due to its becoming a basic element in the early theories of apophony that it acquired such importance in the traditional theory of Indo-European. In the comparative dictionaries this ə, so insecurely founded, appears in the utmost profusion in IE reconstructions, particularly in the case of the so-called disyllabic roots. Skt. i is also suffixal when it appears after such roots and the H which constituted the final element of the root is elided (tāritum < *tārH-itum). The

¹ TPS. 1949, pp. 22–61.
theory of apophony was further complicated by the invention of original long diphthongs, possessing a weak grade \( \mathcal{a} \) which was held to have developed into \( i \) (sometimes into -ay-), but there is nothing in the facts to justify the assumption of such long diphthongs or of the weak grades which are supposed to be derived from them. In addition a second 'shwa', supposed to be a reduced grade of the short vowels was introduced by certain authorities. As a result the theory of apophony, which, as will be seen below, is really of the utmost simplicity, became extraordinarily complicated. With the discovery of Hittite \( h \), and the subsequent rise to popularity of the laryngeal theory, the main features of the old theory were transferred to the new. IE \( h \) was identified with the old shwa \( (\mathcal{a}) \), and it was believed that all its varieties could function in a vocalic as well as a consonantal function like the liquids and nasals. It has even been common to use the sign \( \mathcal{a} \) to indicate IE \( h \) in its consonantal function \( (\mathcal{a}_1, \mathcal{a}_2, \mathcal{a}_3) \), and the whole presentation of the laryngeal theory has continued to be vitiated by the original error of the invention of 'shwa'. Needless to say the objections that apply to 'shwa' in the old form of the theory apply to it with equal force in the new. There is no satisfactory evidence to show that \( h \) in any of its varieties could function as a vowel and it is certainly never represented in Sanskrit by \( i \).

The effects of IE \( h \) on the vowels have already been noticed. By the restoration of \( h \) a very considerable simplification of the vowel system is achieved.

(i) The long vowels \( \mathcal{a}, \mathcal{e}, \mathcal{u} \) (\( \rightarrow \text{Skt. } \mathcal{a} \)) may be long through \( vrddhi \), in which case they have developed out of the short vowels \( a, e, o \). But there is another series of long vowels which are long by nature, e.g. the \( \mathcal{a}, \mathcal{e}, \mathcal{u} \) in \( stā- \) 'to stand', \( dhē- \) 'to place' and \( dū- \) 'to give' (Skt. \( sīhā-, dhā-, dā- \)). In such cases the laryngeal theory analyses the long vowel into short vowel + several varieties of \( h \) \( (dheH_a, stēH_a, deH_a) \) the quality of the vowel being determined by the following laryngeal. Thus in all cases long vowels are of secondary origin.

(ii) The varieties of guna vowel are partly due to qualitative alternation in Indo-European. This was particularly so in the case of the alternation \( e/ο \) \( (φέρω : φόρος) \). But some cases of \( o \) are left over which have been considered to be original \( (οντέον 'bone') and \( a \) can only rarely be put down to vocalic alternation (Lat. \( quater \), etc.). Cases of 'original' \( a \), and \( o \) according to
the laryngeal theory go back to $h_2$ and $h_3$ followed by the guṇa vowel which was in itself undifferentiated ($h_1$ent- ‘front’, Hitt. $h_1$ant- , Gk. ἀντί, etc., $h_2$est- ‘bone’, Hitt. ḫaštai, Gk. ὀστέον, etc.). Thus we are reduced to a single original guṇa vowel, conventionally written $e$, which is the state of affairs to which Indo-Iranian again returned at a later period as a result of special developments of its own.

A few words of caution should be added in illustration of the fact that the laryngeal theory has not yet acquired a completely satisfactory form. It is never possible to be certain for instance that the vowel $o$ is original, since alternating $e$- forms may be missing by accident. Furthermore there exist some $o/a$ alternations which the theory does not altogether account for. As regards original $a$ the absence of any $h$ in forms like Hitt. $appa$ ‘away’ can only be explained away by making the theory uncomfortably complicated. It must be admitted in such a case that the actual evidence available does not allow us to go any further than IE apo.

(iii) IE $i$, $\ddot{u}$ have in all cases developed out of $iW$, $uW$. The special developments of $r$, $l$, $n$, $m$ followed by $h$ have already been outlined. In this way the old reconstructions of long sonant liquids and nasals can be dispensed with.

These simplifications effected, the IE vowel system is reduced to very few primitive elements. There is only one purely vocalic element to begin with, which may be written $e$. The development of three varieties ($e$, $a$, $o$) and of the corresponding long vowels can be explained on the basis of the effect of laryngeals and of vocalic alternation. In addition there are six elements which may under certain conditions (between consonants, initially before, and finally after consonants) function as vowels—$i$, $u$, $r$, $l$, $n$, $m$—but elsewhere (between vowels, etc.) function as consonants—$y$, $v$, $r$, $l$, $n$, $m$. As regards diphthongs it should be noted that the second element is consonantal, and that from the point of view of Indo-European it would be more consistent to write $éyti$ ‘goes’, $gews$– ‘taste’, etc.

§ 22. Quantitative Alternation: Apophony

The purely vocalic element (Skt. $a$, IE $a$, $e$, $o$) was subject to a quantitative gradation of the following type. It could be elided in any syllable, radical or suffixal, or alternatively it could be
lengthened. In other words any syllable may appear in the normal grade (a), the strengthened grade (ā), or the zero grade. This gradation is of fundamental importance in Sanskrit grammar, and its importance was fully recognised by the Indian grammarians. They gave the name vrddhi to the strengthened grade and guṇa to the normal grade. The weak or zero grade they did not name because they constructed their grammatical system in such a way that they started from the zero grade as the basic grade and from this they derived the guṇa and vrddhi grades by two successive processes of strengthening. The comparative philologists differ from the Indian grammarians in that they regard the guṇa as the normal grade and from it derive the vrddhi and zero grades by the opposite processes of strengthening and weakening.

The operation of this gradation may be illustrated by a few examples:

1. Normal grade: sādās 'seat', sācate 'associates with', pādās, gen. sg. of pād- 'foot', ghas- 'to eat', dabhōti 'injures', hāsati 'laughs'.

2. Extended grade: sādāyati 'causes to sit', rātisācas nom. pl. 'associating with liberality', pādam acc. sg. 'foot', ghasā- 'fodder', ādābhya- 'that cannot be injured', hāsa- 'laughter'.


The same three grades apply to all suffixal elements. Thus in the case of the n-suffix we normal grade (guṇa) in voc. rājan, loc. rājani, zero grade in gen. sg. rājñas, extended grade in acc. sg. rājānam from the stem rājan- 'king'. The same gradation applies to all suffixal elements.

Fundamentally this alternation a/ā/zero is all there is to the system of apophony. Some complications are caused by the combinations of a with semivowels, etc., and by some phonetic changes. These may be briefly summarised as follows:

1. When a is lost the semivowels (y, v) assume their vocalic form in the appropriate phonetic context: yājati 'sacrifices'; iyā 'sacrifice'; vāpati 'sows'; upālā- 'sown'. When the semivocalic element comes second, i.e. in the diphthongs, the
original Indo-Iranian alternation āi, ai, āu, au, u is modified in Sanskrit to ai, e, i; au, o, u of which e and o ceased to be diphthongs in pronunciation. The guṇa and vrddhi grades acquire the alternate forms ai, au, e, o/āy, āv, ay, au according as a consonant or vowel follows.

Exx. Normal grade: jētum 'to conquer', jāyati 'conquers', śrōtum 'to hear', śrāvana- 'hearing'.

Strengthened grade: ājāśam 'I conquered' (s.aor.), jīgāya 'he conquered' (perf.), āśrauśam 'I heard', śuśrāva 'he heard'.

Zero grade: jītā- 'conquered', śrutā- 'heard'.

(2) The liquids r, l were vocalised under the same conditions. Though l has been mostly merged with r Indo-Iranian preserves the original sonant pronunciation, so the apophony remains simple. Guṇa: kārta- 'to do'; Vṛddhi: caκāra 'did'; Zero: kṛtā- 'done' /caκrē 3 sg. perf. atm. 'did'.

(3) The nasals were likewise capable of functioning as vowels, but here the situation is complicated by the change, in Indo-Iranian as in Greek, of the sonant nasals to a. The series is therefore (1) an, am, (2) ān, ām, (3) a/∪, a/m, e.g. (1) gāmana- 'going', hānti 'slays', (2) jāgāma 'went', jāghāna 'slew', (3) (a) hatā- 'slain', gatā- 'gone', (b) ghnānti 'they slay', jagnūr 'they went'.

(4) Long ā is sometimes original, that is to say it appears in the guṇa position, e.g. in the roots dhā 'to place', dā 'to give', and sthā 'to stand'. It is elided in the zero grade like the ordinary guṇa vowel, e.g. dadhmās, dadmās. We have seen that this ā is for aH (or in the IE system e, ā, o are for eH1, eH2, eH3). Thus we are dealing with the ordinary guṇa vowel in this apophony, and ġ which cannot function as a vowel but is elided in such positions.

(5) The combinations īH, uH resulted in ī, ū, while in combination with corresponding diphthongs (-eiH-, -euH-) the H disappeared without trace. So there arises an apophony e/i, o/ū, etc., beside the normal diphthongal apophony: (1) nētum 'to lead' /nāyati 'leads'; hōman 'invocation' /hāvana- 'id'.

(2) anaśam 'I led' /nāyaka- 'leader'; juhāva 'called'.

(3) nītā- 'lead', hūlā- 'called'.

(6) Sonant ġ followed by ġ resulted in ār, ār, while in the corresponding guṇa grades it disappeared. In these cases we have the weak grade ār, ār in apophony with ar, ār: (1) tārta-
'to cross', *pipārti* 'fills'; (2) *tārayati* 'causes to cross'; (3) *tīrṇā* - 'crossed', *pūrṇā*- 'filled'.

(7) When *u* and *m* were followed by *ṅ* the result in Sanskrit is in the first case *ā*, in the second case *-ān-* (examples occur only before *t*). Hence the apophony *sanōti*: *sātā*; *dāmyati*, *damāyati*, *dāntā*.

(8) There are some deceptive cases where no real apophony is involved. An example is *pā-tum* 'to drink': *p-ītā* 'drunk'. Here the *i* of the second form is suffixal and therefore cannot be in apophonic relationship to the radical *ā* of the first form.

(9) Roots consisting of more than two consonants admit of two types of guna grade: (1) *vārāte* 'turns', etc., (2) *trāsati* 'is afraid', etc. Usually roots belong to one or the other type and keep to this in the guna grade (and in vṛddhi which follows the guna in this respect) but double forms occur in some cases, e.g. from *ārā* - 'to see' we have the series: Weak grade *ārātā*, guna 1 *darśayati*, guna 2 *ārakṣyāmi*, vṛddhi 1 *dārśanika*-, vṛddhi 2 *ādrakṣam*.

(10) Final vṛddhi forms terminating in semivowel, liquid or nasal may lose this final element: *sākhā* 'friend' (acc. *sākhāyam*, stem *sākhi*), *āśmā* 'stone' (acc. *āśmānam*, stem *āśman-*)*, dātā* 'giver' (acc. *dātāram*, voc. *dālar*, dat. *dātē*, etc.). The tendency is found elsewhere in Indo-European (Lat. *sermō*, etc.) but nowhere as consistently as in Sanskrit (e.g. Gk. *παρήπ*, Lat. *pater* beside Skt. *pītā*).

This vocalic gradation was connected with the Indo-European accent. In Sanskrit the connection between alternation of grade and alternation of accent is clear from many examples: *ēmi* 'I go': *inās* 'we go'; *śrōtum* 'to hear': *śrūtā* 'heard'; *āsti* 'is': *sānti* 'are' (Lat. *est, sunt*); *hānti* 'slays': *ghnānti* 'they slay' (Hitt. *kuenza* : kunanzi); *ātti* 'eats' (ād-ti): *dānti* 'tooth' ('eater'). From such examples it is clear that the zero grade is due to the unaccented position of the syllable, and that the guna grade is properly the grade of the accented syllable. There are of course many examples in Sanskrit, as in other languages where accent and apophony do not agree, e.g. Skt. *vṛka*- 'wolf', *ṛkṣa*- 'bear', *ṛṣṇa*- 'grass', *ṛṇa*- 'sage, brahmin'. These however create no difficulty since it is known that in many cases the position of the accent has changed in course of time. This is obviously the case in the examples quoted since they are all in origin adjectival formations (e.g.
tynae- (*tynae-) is 'what pierces', cf. trnáti) and it was the rule that such formations were suffixally accentuated. It is also very common in Sanskrit for nominalised adjectives to throw back the accent on to the first syllable.

The application of the above accent rule in its full rigidity would allow only one guṇa syllable in any word. The words quoted are of that type, but the majority of Indo-European words, in any language, are not so. This is mainly due to two reasons. Firstly, when inconvenient or grammatically less clear forms would result, the elimination of the unaccented guṇa vowel was resisted, or if eliminated it was quickly restored. So we have as the gen. sg. of pad- ‘foot’ not *bdás which would have resulted from the rule, but padás with guṇa vowel in unaccented position. The existence of dánt- ‘tooth’ (‘eater’, cf. sánt- ‘being’: as-) beside adánt- ‘eating’ gives us one clear case where a guṇa vowel in unaccented position has been restored by analogy. Secondly the nature of the Indo-European accent underwent a change during the later Indo-European period. It had the power to reduce neighbouring unaccented syllables for a certain period of time, and then, in later Indo-European it ceased to have this effect. Consequently forms like those quoted above which show the full effects of apophony must be considered as belonging to the most ancient stratum of Indo-European. But after the accent ceased to have the effect of reducing adjacent syllables, Indo-European was creating new formations in abundance, a faculty retained by the individual languages particularly in their early stages. The very numerous formations of the type yajatá- ‘adorable’, darśatá- ‘worth seeing’, devásya ‘of the god’, etc., etc., had their origin in this later period when the accent had ceased to have the power to influence the vocalism of the surrounding syllables.

§23. Qualitative Alternation: Metaphony

There existed in Indo-European also a qualitative alternation of the guṇa vowel, and this is well preserved in most branches of the family: e.g. Gk. λέγω ‘I say’; λόγος ‘word’; Lat. tego ‘I cover’; toga ‘gown’; Russ. vezú ‘I carry’; voz ‘cart, load’; Engl. sing: sang. The alternation affects both the guṇa vowel, as in the examples above and its vṛddhied extension (Gk. ἄφνηρ: ἀφ’νηρ ‘giver’). In Indo-Iranian this alternation has entirely disappeared owing to the confusion of
the vowel qualities $a$, $e$, $o$ in $a$. Consequently this Indo-European alternation has no significance for Sanskrit grammar, and it deserves brief mention only because the student of the comparative grammar of Sanskrit will meet it in the material cited from the related languages.

This alternation, like the quantitative alternation is clearly connected with the Indo-European accent. This is evident from the juxtaposition of such forms as Gk. δαίμων, δαίμονος on the one hand and πομή, πομένος on the other. The rule is clear that $e$ is the normal grade of a syllable which bears the accent and has always borne the accent (Gk. ἔστι, ἔπος, νέος, etc.). Accental changes and the workings of analogy have to some extent contrived to obscure the picture but this central fact remains beyond doubt. An example of the working of analogy may be mentioned: the termination of the genitive singular appears in some languages in a form that represents IE -es, in others in a form that represents IE -os. Since this termination was sometimes accented and sometimes unaccented, we may reasonably assume that the two forms were originally differentiated according to accent. Later in the individual languages one form was generalised, sometimes the -es form and sometimes the -os form being chosen.

The fact that the IE accent should have two quite different effects is bound up with what has been said above about the accent. The elision of the guṇa vowel was frequently resisted for morphological reasons, or if eliminated it was restored. Such retained or restored guṇa vowels were then, possibly at a later period, affected in a different way by the accent, so that $o$ appears in place of $e$. Or again the main accent of a word may have changed with the result that the vocalism of the syllable which lost the accent was altered. For instance the numerous words of the type represented by Gk. δαίμων belong to a class (agent-nouns) which was originally suffixally accented. The type of formative -τωρ, -μων, etc., beside older -τήρ, -μήν seems to have come into existence as the result of such an accent shift.

§ 24. Sanskrit and Indo-European Accent

The last two sections illustrate the importance of the part played by accent in Indo-European. In dealing with the morphology the accent is an indispensable element, without
which no proper grammatical analysis can be made. For this reason the accent will be continually under discussion during the succeeding chapters. Here a few general remarks will suffice.

The full technical details of the Vedic and early classical accent of Sanskrit, and of the various methods used to denote them, are somewhat complicated but the main principles are as follows. Each word had normally one accent whose position varies from word to word. Any syllable from the first to the last may bear the accent (e.g. ḍpaciti 'retribution', ḍhūrāyati 'holds', namasyati 'respects' and aparāhṇa- 'afternoon' are accented on the first, second, third and last syllable respectively). No simple set of rules can be given to determine on which syllable of a word the accent will fall.

Certain words were enclitic by nature and never bore the accent. These are such particles and pronominal forms as ca and ', mā 'me', me 'of me', etc. Elsewhere the accent might be dropped in certain circumstances. (1) In the vocative a noun lost its accent except at the beginning of a sentence, when it was accented on the first syllable regardless of its natural accent. (2) The finite verb in the main clause of a sentence is unaccented unless it appears at the beginning of a sentence, in which case it retains its natural accent. In dependent clauses it retained its accent whatever its position. In this case a verbal preposition is most commonly compounded with the verb and loses its accent, e.g. pra gacchati 'he goes forward', yadi pragacchati 'if he goes forward'.

The accent so indicated is termed by Pānini udātta- 'raised' and the rise was one of pitch or musical tone. The main accent affected also the pronunciation of the following syllable, since the return of the voice to the normal level was effected during the enunciation of this syllable. The accent of the syllable immediately following the udātta is termed svarita- and it is described by Pānini as a combination (samāhāra-) of udātta and anudātta. That is to say it begins at the high pitch of udātta and descends in the process of utterance. There exists also an independent svarita which arises secondarily out of the contraction of āya to yā, etc., in which case the main accent of the word is the svarita. This is a post-Vedic development since the metre of the earlier texts shows that the contraction had not yet taken place.
The main accent affected the pronunciation of the preceding syllable. This was pronounced lower than normal and it is termed by Pāṇini *sannatara*. The remaining unaccented syllables were termed *anudātta*. Thus out of one main accent of a word there arose four different varieties of pitch: *udātta*, *anudātta*, *svarita*, *sannatara*. Since however all this variation is dependent entirely on the main accent, only that needs to be noted, as above. A separate notation is needed for the independent *svarita* (*vrkiyas, tanvās*, etc.) but even that may be dispensed with for the Veda if the words are transcribed according to the pronunciation (*vrkiyas, tanivās*).

The complications of the accent detailed above were responsible for an unnecessarily complicated system of notation adopted by the Vedic schools. According to the usual system, that adopted in the *Rgveda* for instance, the principle is to mark the syllable preceding the *udātta*, the *sannatara*, with a subscript line, and the dependent *svarita* following the *udātta* by a vertical stroke above. The *udātta* itself is left unmarked. This achieves the same purpose in a less convenient manner than the method adopted in modern transcription, and by some Vedic schools. The modern recitation of the *Rgveda* follows the notational system to the extent of pronouncing the *sannatara* lowest and the *svarita* highest musically of syllables and ignoring the *udātta* altogether. This is a secondary development although it may be old, and at variance with the teachings of Pāṇini which are in complete agreement with the findings of comparative philology.

The system of accentuation described above has for centuries been totally extinct in spoken Sanskrit as it has in all forms of Indo-Aryan derived from it. When exactly the accent died out in ordinary spoken use it is impossible to say with certainty. It was certainly a living thing in the time of Patanjali and even later than Patanjali, Śāntanava treated of the subject in his *Phīṭṣūtra*. According to the author of the *Kāśikā* commentary (c. A.D. 700) the use of accentuation was optional in the spoken language, which probably means that in practice it was no longer used at this time. On the whole it is unlikely that the use of accentuation survived long after the Christian era. In Middle Indo-Aryan we may take it that the change occurred much earlier, at the very beginning of anything that could be called Middle Indo-Aryan.
The old Indo-European accent was lost, at some time or other in most Indo-European languages just as in Indo-Aryan. Accentual systems derived directly from Indo-European are found only in Greek and Balto-Slavonic. They may also be deduced from the phonetic developments classified as Verner's law for an early stage of Germanic. The existence of accurate information about the accentuation of two of the oldest members of the family, Sanskrit and Greek, is of the utmost value for the understanding of Indo-European.

A comparison of the accentuation in those languages in which it is preserved reveals basic agreement, though to a greater or lesser extent all languages have innovated in detail. The position of the accent in Indo-European for instance is frequently established by the correspondence of Sanskrit and Greek: e.g. *bhárati* 'bears': Gk. *φέρει*; *śruti* 'heard': Gk. *κλατός*; *gurū* 'heavy': Gk. *βαρύς*; *vācas* 'word': Gk. *ἐπος*, etc., etc. In other cases they differ showing innovation on one side or the other: *mātār* 'mother': Gk. *μητήρ*; *bāhū* 'arm': Gk. *πηχός*, etc. The tendency to innovate is also evident from the frequent disagreements between accent and apophony, whether in individual languages (Gk. *ὁμοίω* 'we know' as opposed to the more original accentuation of Skt. *vidma*) or in all (Skt. *vāka*-, Gk. *λόκος*, etc.). In the latter case the innovation is of the Indo-European period. By means of comparison of the individual languages, by the study of apophony so intimately bound up with accent, and by the proper understanding of the part played by accent in the morphology, it is possible to form a clear and accurate idea of the Indo-European accent. The details are part of the morphology and will be found in the chapters concerned.

The nature of the old accent in Sanskrit and Greek is known from the technical descriptions handed down and partly in the case of Sanskrit from the traditional recitation of the Veda. It was in both languages predominantly musical, and not a matter of stress. This is confirmed by the fact that in both languages metre is completely independent of accent, depending solely on the length of syllables. From this agreement it is deduced that the same kind of accent prevailed in late Indo-European. But, as we have already seen, there must have been a change between early and late Indo-European in this respect. Earlier the accent had the power to reduce the neighbouring syllables,
indicating a strong stress element. In the later period this power was certainly lost and this agrees with what is known about the accent of Sanskrit and Greek.

Beside the normal acute accent Indo-European possessed under certain circumstances a circumflex accent. This is clear from the agreement between Greek and Lithuanian, e.g. circumflex accent in gen. sg. fem. Gk. θεᾶς, Lith. gerōs, gen. pl. masc. Gk. θεῶν, Lith. gerū, instr. pl. masc. Gk. θεοῖς, Lith. vilkais, as opposed to acute accent in nom. sg. fem. Gk. θεά, Lith. gerō-ji (gerā). In such cases Sanskrit has the ordinary udātta accent as elsewhere, and it does not, as Indo-European did, distinguish between the two types of accent. The independent svarita which came to exist in Sanskrit as a separate type of main accent is, as we have seen, a post-Vedic creation and unconnected with differences of accent type in Indo-European.

Nevertheless traces of the old circumflex have revealed themselves in the Veda from a study of the metre. In certain cases the metre makes it clear that a long ā is to be pronounced disyllabically, e.g. gām, dyām as gaam, dyaaam, and the termination of the genitive plural -ām as -aam. In such cases the corresponding Greek forms frequently have the circumflex accent, and this gives reason to believe that metrical peculiarity of the Veda is the effect of the circumflex accent of Indo-European.
CHAPTER IV

THE FORMATION OF NOUNS

§1. GENERAL REMARKS

The Sanskrit nominal stem may coincide with the root, as happens in a minority of cases, but usually it is derived from it by the addition of a suffix. These suffixes are very numerous and are inherited from Indo-European. They are not, as occurs in some languages (e.g. Engl. man-ly, man-hood) derived from what were originally independent words, but are in every case analysable into their component parts, that is to say the individual consonants or semivowels of which they are composed. These primary elements include nearly all the available phonemes, but the ones most commonly used are r, n, s, t, y/i, v/u, m, h and k. They may appear either with guna, i.e. preceded by the thematic vowel (-ar, -an, -as, IE er-, en-, es-, etc.) or in their weak form (-r, -n, -s). The thematic vowel itself may appear as a suffix but naturally, since elsewhere it is always a question of the guna grade of a consonantal suffix, only in final position (bha\'-an-a-, udr-\', etc.). The IE primary suffixes could be added either to roots or to words already ending in another suffix: e.g. the suffix -as is added to the root in v\dacas- 'speech', to a base having the suffix n in r\eknas- 'inheritance, property', the suffix t in sr\ortas- 'stream' and the suffix v in p\ivas- 'fat'. Since the root itself could originally function freely as a noun, that is to say was a word in the full sense, there is no difference in principle between primary and secondary derivation of this kind. A suffix could be added to any word, whether it already had a suffix or not, and the nature of the process was precisely the same. The result was that owing to the very large number of possible combinations of the primary elements, the number of these compound suffixes in all IE languages is very large, and the complexity of nominal stem formation in Sanskrit and the allied languages is entirely a matter of the multifarious combination of a comparatively small number of primitive elements.
In the descriptive and synchronistic grammar of Sanskrit the various suffixal combinations are treated as units, which is what they have in fact become in the course of the development of the language. For the historical and comparative treatment of the subject a more radical approach is needed. Here it is necessary, as is done in the following pages, to start from the single, primitive elements, and in the exposition to build up the whole suffixal system from them in the way that it had developed in the prehistory of the language.

Between the original simple suffixes, as so analysed, no discernible distinction of meaning or function can be found. In some ways they have no meaning. Thus an ancient IE word *wet 'year' appears in Hittite as such (also in Sanskrit reduced to *-ul in *parul 'last year'); in Greek it appears with the suffix *-os as ἐρός, without anything being added to the meaning. Likewise in Sanskrit neuter action nouns with suffixes (-as, etc.) do not differ fundamentally in meaning from roots used in the same sense: *dvās- 'hatred': dvēśas 'id.', etc. Of course when several words derived from the same root with different suffixes appear side by side, differences of meaning between these words usually develop, but this is a matter of idiom and nothing to do with the ultimate nature of the suffixes as such. What applies to the simple suffixes applies equally to the compound suffixes. In the examples quoted above the suffixes -tas, -nas and -vas are used in precisely the same way as the simple suffix -as. Hittite has a series of suffixes -sar, -tar, -mar, -var (with variant n-stems) making neuter action nouns of exactly the same nature, and this accurately reflects Indo-European usage.

In the course of time specialisation of usage in the case of various suffixes has developed in all languages, but this is secondary and it is possible in some cases to show how it has come about. The most important distinction in nominal derivation in early Indo-European was not between the different suffixes simple or compound, but in a difference of accentuation according to which a word formed with the same suffix functioned either as an action noun or agent noun/adjective. Accented on the root it was an action noun and neuter, accented on the suffix it was an agent noun or adjective and originally of the so-called 'common gender'. The system is preserved to some extent in Sanskrit and is exemplified by such doublets as brāhma n.

1 E.g. in the case of the comparative suffix -tarā, see p. 149.
prayer': brahmā m. 'priest', yāsas n. 'glory': yāsās- m. 'glorious'. The Sanskrit examples are not very numerous, and are only found in the case of a small number of suffixes; they are in fact the last remnants of a system dying out. In earlier Indo-European on the other hand the system was of very great extension and importance, and it is fundamental to the understanding not only of the formation of nouns but also of their declension.

The thematic vowel stands apart from the other suffixes in many ways. Its original function seems to have been to produce agent nouns or adjectives from the various primitive neuter nouns, e.g. udr-ā 'otter': Gk. ὕδωρ 'water'. It was in fact an alternative method to the above in the formation of such nouns. This is its normal use in Hittite, which indeed ignores the method indicated above. The numerous neuter thematic stems which are only enlargements of simple consonantal stems (Skt. aṇjana- n.: Lat. ungaen, etc.) appear to be a later development and are ignored by Hittite.

In the descriptive grammar of Sanskrit nominal derivatives are divided into two major classes, primary and secondary, in the terminology of the Indian grammarians kṛt and taddhita. The former comprises all those formations which are derived directly from a root by means of a suffix (e.g. vācas 'speech' from vac-) and the second those which are derived from the basis of nouns already made (e.g. āśvavant- 'possessing horses' from āśva- 'horse'). Convenient as this twofold classification is from the point of view of Sanskrit itself, it has no fundamental or ancient significance from the point of view of Indo-European. For one thing the same suffix is found functioning in both ways, and when a suffix is found to function predominantly or even exclusively in secondary derivation, it is historically a case of secondary specialisation. The suffix -vant is normally a secondary suffix in Sanskrit, but it is primary in such examples as ārvant- 'steed', yahvant- 'young', also in Av. bōzvant- 'abundant', varzvant- 'straight', and in Hitt. daššuwant- 'strong'. It was as a primary suffix that this, like other suffixes which have become predominantly secondary in Sanskrit, first came into being. A historical account of nominal stem formation must therefore be arranged entirely according to the external form of the suffixes concerned.

Secondly many formations which from the point of view of
Sanskrit are primary, are in origin secondary formation. Thus \( \text{udr-á} \) 'otter' which counts as a primary derivative (\( \text{ud-rd-} \)) is clearly in origin a secondary derivative meaning 'connected with water, water-animal' (\( \text{udr-á}, \) cf. Gk. \( \text{i} \delta \omega \text{p} \) n. 'water', etc.). In origin all types of such thematic adjectival derivation are secondary, but owing to the obsolescence of the old neuter action nouns on which they were based they acquired the nature of primary derivatives. In so far as such suffixes remained living suffixes, they were employed as units in the later period in a primary way. Not all formations in \( -\text{rā} \) have the same history as \( \text{udr-ā} \), etc., but the type of derivation came into existence in this way.

Again in the old IE dichotomy of the types \( \text{brāhma} : \text{brahmā} \) we have in the second of these pairs a type of secondary derivation. Logically and presumably historically the neuter action noun precedes the agent noun. The form \( \text{brahmā} \) 'one connected with \( \text{brāhma} \)' presupposes by its meaning the existence of the more primitive neuter. In the Sanskrit system such agent noun formations count as primary formations, and this is what the majority have become owing to the disappearance of the corresponding neuter types. This is illustrated very well by the agent nouns in \( -\text{tār} \) (\( \text{dātār} \) 'giver', etc.). Hittite has nouns in \( -\text{tār} \) but only neuter action nouns. It is clear that the relation between the two types is the same as that between \( \text{brāhma} \) and \( \text{brahmā} \) and that \( \text{dātār} \) was originally 'one connected with giving' corresponding to an obsolete \( \text{*dātar} \) n. 'giving'. When the neuter type went out of use it became a primary formation connected directly to the verbal root.

In the development of the system of nominal stem formation in the prehistoric period, certain general tendencies will be observed, notably:

1. The decline of the neuters. Whole categories of neuter nouns with ancient IE suffixes such as \( -\text{er} \) and \( -\text{el} \) have become almost extinct in most IE languages except Hittite; but the letters \( r \) and \( l \) play a great part in IE nominal derivation, so that although the original types have disappeared, they have left great masses of further derivatives which cannot be explained without them. In other cases the old neuter nouns have not disappeared, but have been transferred bodily to the masculine and feminine classes. This is particularly the case with stems in \( i \) and \( u \), and the action nouns in \( -\text{ā} \), but it occurs frequently elsewhere.
The growth of grammatical gender. In the earliest period the threefold classification did not exist. There was no feminine and nouns were divided into two types, ‘neuters’ and ‘common gender’, the latter so called because the masculine and feminine developed out of it. This is the state of affairs actually found in Hittite, and it is further confirmed by many survivals in other languages (Lat. *ferens* masc. and fem., Skt. *suvāsās* nom. sg. m. and fem., etc., etc.). The feminine gender arose in the later period of Indo-European, and strictly speaking only then is it possible to speak of gender in the proper sense of the term.

The great variety of possible suffixes that could arise from the various combinations of the primitive suffixal elements led necessarily to a process of selection, so that many combinations which are known to have existed have not survived to the Vedic period. Thus out of a series of suffixes forming neuter nouns, and based on the primitive suffixes -er, namely IE -er/ι, -mer/μη, -wer/ωρ, -yer/υρ, -ter/τέρ, -ser/σέρ, -men/mηn, -nen/ιν, -ten/τέν, -sen/σέν, only -men/men remains as a ‘living suffix in Vedic in the formation of neuter nouns. The others are better represented in agent-noun and adjectival derivatives which is in accordance with what has been said above about the decline of the neuter formations.

Another feature of great importance is the growing use and extension of the thematic vowel (Skt. *a*, IE *e/o*) as a final suffix. It has been said above that the original use of this vowel as a suffix was probably to form adjectival derivatives, in which case it was accented. Later its use spread as an extension of consonantal stems. This tendency is well known in the further development of Indo-Aryan (Class. Skt. *pāda*- ‘foot’ replacing *pād-*/pād-, etc.), but it had been actively at work for long in the prehistoric period. Thus Skt. *āṅjana*- n. ‘ointment’ replaces an older consonantal stem which is preserved in Lat. *unguēn*. As a result of this development thematic stems became by far the most numerous type both in Sanskrit,1 and in other languages which reflect the late IE stage. In Hittite, on the other hand, which reflects an earlier stage of Indo-European there is not such a great preponderance of *a*-stems.

1 In the *Rgveda* 45 per cent of all nominal stems end in -*a*. 
§ 2. Root Nouns

Root nouns are an ancient type very much in decline in the earliest recorded Indo-European languages. In Sanskrit they are preserved better, on the whole, than elsewhere. Such are pád- ‘foot’: Lat. pés, pedis, vác- ‘speech’: Lat. vóx, rāj- ‘king’: Lat. rēx. They are usually either masculine or feminine, but in the case of verbal roots functioning as action nouns they are normally feminine (āyūt- ‘brilliance’, etc.). The old neuter type of root noun (cf. Lat. mel, fel, etc.) is practically extinct. Of the few examples mention may be made of ṣāṁ ‘welfare’ which is indeclinable, vān- ‘wood, tree’ which is probably neuter (like its extension vāna- n.) and ās ‘mouth’: Lat. ōs.

This type of stem was originally subject to the laws of apophony: Vṛddhi or Guna in the Nom. Sg., Guna in Acc. Sg. and Nom. Pl. and the weakened form of the root in the other cases. This system is partially preserved in the case of some common nouns (n. sg. pát, gen. sg. padás) but the general tendency is for it to be levelled out. In this levelling out any of the three grades may come to function throughout the declension, the weak form of the stem being normal in the case of verbal roots used as nouns: (1) vác- ‘speech’, gen. sg. vācás, (2) spās- ‘spy’, nom. sg. spāt, (3) ḍc- ‘hymn’, nom. sg. ḍk, gen. sg. ḍcás.

Roots functioning as nouns may be used either as action or agent nouns (in the latter case they are feminine): drūḥ- (1) ‘injuring, injurer’, (2) ‘injury’; ādīṣ (1) ‘hatred’, (2) ‘enemy’; bhūj- (1) ‘enjoyment’, (2) ‘enjoyer’. When used as the second member of compounds they have the latter function only.

This type which has a moderate extension in the Vedic language, becomes more restricted later in accordance with the pre-existing tendency. That is to say with one exception—when such stems are used as the last member of compounds. In this case both in the Vedic and Classical language roots may be freely used as nominal stems. They are also used more widely in the Vedic language as infinitives of the type āyúśe ‘to see’ than otherwise independently. Elsewhere as we shall see the Vedic infinitive tends to preserve old nominal stems which have otherwise become extinct.

Roots ending in short -u, -i, -r cannot function as nominal
§ 3. **Thematic Stems based on the Root**

Stems with the thematic suffix -\(a\) can be formed on the basis of stems ending in all the other suffixes, and these are best treated in connection with the various types of stem to which the thematic suffix is added. The most simple type of thematic stem is that formed directly from the root. These stems may be divided into two classes according to the usual scheme: action nouns and the like with accent on the root, and agent nouns, etc., with accent on the suffix, final accented -\(a\) having here as elsewhere an adjectival function. Certain pairs are quotable where both types occur in connection with the same root:

\[\text{e}d\text{a-} \text{e}d\text{a-} \text{speed} \quad \text{e}d\text{a-} \text{speed-} \text{ing} \quad \text{vár\text{á}-} \text{vár\text{á}-} \text{suitor} \quad \text{ś}\text{ōk\text{ā}-} \text{ś}\text{ōk\text{ā}-} \text{glowing} \]

The same type of alternation is familiar also in Greek, \(\text{rō}\text{μ\text{o}s} \text{a cut} \quad \text{rō}\text{μ\text{o}s} \text{cutting} \), etc.

In Greek and in other languages which distinguish the vowels \(o\) and \(e\) the vowel of both root and suffix is \(o\). Original \(o\) is attested by Sanskrit in some cases where a guttural has not been palatalised: \(\text{kēt\text{ā}-} \text{intention} \quad \text{gāy\text{ā}-} \text{property} \quad \text{ghan\text{ā}-} \text{striker, solid} \). Such an arrangement can hardly be original since normally \(e\) would be expected in the accented and \(o\) in the unaccented syllable. It is likely therefore that we have here a phonetic compromise between the nominal and adjectival types. In Sanskrit there are distinct traces of a variation \(o/e\) between the two types in the suffixal vowel in the case of roots ending originally in gutturals. The final guttural in these cases is usually preserved in the case of action nouns with radical accent and palatalised in the other type: e.g. \(\text{bhō\text{g\text{a}-} \text{enjoyment}} \quad \text{bhōj\text{ā}-} \text{bountiful} \quad \text{rōga-} \text{disease} \quad \text{ruj\text{ā}-} \text{breaking, destroying} \quad \text{śōka-} \text{glow, heat; grief} \quad \text{śuc\text{ā}-} \text{bright} \quad \text{yōga-} \text{union} \quad \text{a-yuj\text{ā}-} \text{without an associate} \quad \text{ārgha-} \text{value} \quad \text{arha-} \text{worth, valuable} \) (accent not quoted). The distinction is found in some cases where the accent is on the suffix in both types: \(\text{ark\text{ā}-} \text{ray} \quad \text{arc\text{ā}-} \text{brilliant} \quad \text{rok\text{ā}-} \text{lustre} \quad \text{roc\text{ā}-} \text{radiant} \). Here the accent of the action nouns has been secondarily transferred to the suffix. The variation
between the palatalised and non-palatalised form indicates an original variation in the quality of the suffixal vowel according to the position of the accent.

In action nouns the radical syllable commonly has guna-in agreement with the related languages: dāma- 'house', Gk. δόμος, Lat. domus, Russ. dom (IE dem- 'to build'). Nouns of this type are āya- 'going, course', hāva- 'invocation', tāra- 'crossing', vēda- 'knowledge', jōṣa- 'enjoyment' and so forth. There is however another type, for which it is difficult to find parallels outside Indo-Iranian, with vrddhi of root and, paradoxically, usually having the accent on the suffix. These appear to have been formed on the basis of the vrddhied nom. sg. of root nouns, just as later Vedic pāt nom. sg. 'foot' is extended to pāda-. Typical instances are: bhāra- 'burden' (cf. the vrddhi in Gk. φῦπ 'thief'), dāvā- 'fire', lārā- 'crossing', sādā- 'sitting', sāvā- 'libation', vāsā- 'residence'; with radical accent, vāra- 'choice', māna- 'opinion'.

Irregular accent is found in the whole class of such nouns which are formed from verbal roots combined with a prefix: samgamā- 'coming together, union', abhidrohā- 'injury', etc.; and in a minority of cases elsewhere: bhogā- 'bend', jayā- 'victory', javā- 'speed'. These irregularities show that a tendency to confuse the two types was beginning; jayā- and javā- for instance also mean 'victorious' and 'speeding' which is their original significance, but at a time when the importance of the old distinction was diminishing, they came to be used indiscriminately in both functions. Here, as elsewhere throughout the formation of nouns, the Vedic accent is not original, but in spite of such exceptions the old system remains predominant enough for its principles to be clearly seen.

The oldest type of apophony among agent noun/adjectives of this class is that which has the weak grade of the root due to the accented suffix: vrđhā- 'increaser' (: vārdha- 'increase'), budhā- 'intelligent' (: bōdha- 'understanding'), śucā- 'bright', (śoka- 'glow'), tūrā- 'victorious' (tāra-, tāra- 'crossing'), priyā- 'dear', kṛṣā- 'thin', rucā- 'brilliant', etc. More frequently the restored guna vowel appears: arcā- 'shining', dṛavā- 'running', yodhā- 'fighter', nāda- 'roarer', vadhā- 'slayer', etc. Like the action nouns they may also appear with vrddhi, and this is connected with the vrddhi of the nom. sg. of the corresponding root stems: vāhā- 'beast of burden' (cf
THE FORMATION OF NOUNS


The agent nouns of this type are on the decline, and as happens elsewhere in the same circumstances, many such stems are no longer used as independent nouns, but only as the last members of compounds: e.g. °add- ‘eater’ (annādā- ‘eater of food’), °gamā- ‘going’ (dūramgamā- ‘going far’), °garā- ‘swallower’ (ajagard-.. ‘goat swallower’, i.e. python), °ghnd- ‘slaying’ (goghnd- ‘slayer of cows’). This is because the formation which came to be normally used in making agent nouns was that in -tār, and this tended to oust other formations in ordinary free use. In contrast the tār- formations were not capable of being used in composition, so there is a dichotomy of the type annasya- atā: annādā- ‘eater of food’. In a small number of nouns of this type the accent has been secondarily transferred to the root. Such are ṛṣka- ‘wolf’, ṛṣa- ‘server’. Such transference is common in nominalised adjectives throughout the system.

The adjectives sāna- ‘old’ and nāva- ‘new’ can be fitted into neither of the above classes. From the corresponding forms in other languages (Gk. νέος ‘new’, Lith. sēnas ‘old’, etc.) it can be seen that they are distinguished from other thematic stems by having the radical e-grade and from the adjectival type by having radical accentuation. This is because they are based on old root stems new-, sen-, which were adjectives by meaning from the beginning, and consequently the thematic vowel here is merely an extension of the stem, as in the action nouns, and not meaningful as in the usual oxytone thematic adjectival type. In Latin the root stem sen- is still used outside the nom. sg. (senex, senem, senis).

Both types of the above nouns are masculines. Feminine agent nouns such as are found in Greek (ἡ ὁδός ‘way’, ἡ τροφός ‘nurse’) are non-existent in Sanskrit, which in this respect is less archaic than Greek. The masculine gender of these action-nouns is in contrast to the neuter gender of the various thematic action nouns derived by extension from the various neuter suffixes to be mentioned later. This is because the root nouns, at least those ending in occlusives developed early the distinction between nom. and acc. and used -i in the nom. sg. That is to say they were ‘common gender’, and the thematic derivatives based on them automatically acquired the same gender.
Later they were specialised as masculines owing to their external form. In contradistinction there are a couple of neuter nouns vāna- 'forest' and tāna- 'offspring' which are extensions of root stems (vān-, tān-) which had retained their neuter gender.

Old neuter formations are found in yugām 'yoke' (: Gk. ζυγόν, Lat. tūgum) and ṁadām 'step' (: Gk. πέδον, Hitt. ṁēdā). These are old formations, among the very few simple thematic neuters that can be traced to Indo-European. They will be discussed in connection with the suffix m (p. 172 ff.).

§ 4. NEUTER FORMATIONS WITH ALTERNATING r/n SUFFIX

The suffixes r (which in Sanskrit may also represent IE l) and n must be studied together since they early became associated in a common paradigm in which the nom. acc. was formed by the r-stem, while the oblique cases were formed on the basis of an n-stem. This ancient type of neuter noun is tending to obsolescence in the earliest Sanskrit, as it is in Greek and most of the other languages. In Hittite on the other hand, which presents here, as so often, a more archaic stage of Indo-European, the system is unimpaired. The system as found in Hittite contains simple r/n stems with this alternation, e.g. ēšhar 'blood', gen. sg. ēśnaš, also a series of compound suffixes formed by the addition of these suffixes to stems in u, m, s, t, namely -war, -mar, -sar, tar. Examples are partawar 'wing', gen. sg. ārtawaš, tārnammar 'letting go, to let go', gen. sg. tārnammas (mn<mn), hānnešar 'law, law suit', gen. sg. hānnešnaš, paprälar 'uncleanness', gen. sg. paprannaš (nn<tn). This early system of neuter nouns exists only in fragments in other IE languages, but an abundance of suffixes containing r and n have these primitive neuter types as their ultimate source.

There are a few simple neuter stems in r with alternating n-stem in Sanskrit. Such are āhar 'day', gen. sg. āhnaś (Av. azan- 'id'), ūdhar 'udder' gen. sg. ādhaśaś (Gk. ὀδηρ, ὀδηρός, Engl. udder, etc.); there also appears to be in the Veda a second ūdhar 'cold' = Av. aodar- 'id.'). In these the suffix has the guṇa grade, but it may also appear in the weak grade, in which case it is strengthened by a further suffix. This is usually t: yōkṛt 'liver', gen. sg. yōknaś (Av. yākara-, Lat. iecur, Gk. ἰππαρ, all without any t), śākṛt 'dung', gen. sg. śaṅkaś, with a
variant -th in ká próth- 'penis'. This additional t may be compared with additional t which in Greek strengthens the alternating n-suffix in these nouns: oúbaros compared with Skt. údhnas, etc. We may also compare the fact that final radical -r is avoided and -t added in lokákýt, etc. A suffix j (<g) is found in ásýk 'blood' (nom. sg., stem ásýj-), gen. sg. asnás (: Hitt. ešhar, ešnaš, Toch. ysár, Gk. éap, Lat. assir). This g also appears in Lat. san-g-uis 'blood' which like saniés 'gore' is derived from the n-stem of this word with loss of initial vowel through apophony.

Since this type is becoming obsolete we have occasionally defective nouns like vádhar 'weapon' (Av. vadar-) not used outside nom. acc. sg. The old alternating n-stem appears in the extension vadháná fem. 'id'. Some stems even more obsolescent occur only as the first members of compounds: úsar- (úsarbidh- 'waking at dawn'), anar- (anarvis- 'seated on a chariot'), vasar- (vasarhán- 'smiting in the morning'), vanar- (vanargú- 'going in the woods', cf. the deriv. vánara- 'monkey'; n-stem in vánan-val), sabar- (sabardhúk: for savar-, cf: sávana 'milked at the soma-pressing'). The stems máhar 'greatness' and bhúvar 'abundance' appear only in liturgical formulas and in the compounds maharloka- and buvarloka-, but the instrumentals of the corresponding n-stems, mahá (cf. Av. mazan-n.) and bhúna are common in the Rgveda. The n-stem gâmbhan 'depth' appears only as endingless loc. sg., but a corresponding r-stem *gâmbhar is implied by the extension gambhára- n. 'id'. Corresponding to Vedic loc. sg. rájáni 'under the direction of' Avestan has nom. acc. sg. rázar 'rule, regulation'. The instr. dáná implies an old nom. sg. *dár 'gift', and from these alternating stems the two extensions Gk. dépov, O. Sl. darú and Lat. dénum, Skt. dánam are derived. These instrumental forms, and also ásná 'with a stone' (Av. asán-) and prená 'with affection' being isolated, have come to function as the instrumentals of the corresponding man- stems.

The adverb avár 'down, downwards' has the same formation as the above neuter nouns, but differs in its accent which corresponds to that in the endingless loc. sg. The same adverbial accent is found in prátár, etc. below. Such adverbs also resemble the locatives without ending in that they may optionally add the termination -i: Just as we have aksáni 'in the eye' beside aksán, so we have Skt. upári 'above' beside Gk. úpep
and Av. adairi 'below' beside the *adhar adv. which is implied by the adjectival derivative adhara- 'lower'.

Neuter stems in -ar not otherwise preserved form the basis of a small class of denominative verbs in the Vedic language; ratharyáti 'rides in a chariot', śratharyáti 'becomes loose', implying *rāhar nt. 'riding in a chariot' and *śrathar nt. 'looseness'; cf. vadharyáti 'smites with a weapon' beside vàdhar. There are parallel denominative verbs from the corresponding n-stems: vipanyá- 'to be wise, inspired' (cf. also vipanyá, vipanyú-, and with -r- vipra- 'inspired, wise'), bhuranyá- 'be turbulent, agitated' (r-stem in Lat. furor), etc. There are various secondary formations testifying to the existence of old neuter r-stems. The curious formations dhaurila- n. 'horse's trot' and ādhoraṇa- m. 'elephant driver', which turn up in later Sanskrit can be explained as denominative formations on the basis of an old neuter noun *dhāvar 'running'. The Vedic υṛddhied derivative jāmarya- 'earthly' is based on a *jāmar 'earth' corresponding to Av. zambar- 'id.' (j- as in jmā, jmās, etc.). A neuter *śvetar 'whiteness, white spot' is implied by the derivatives svattari 'having an (auspicious) white mark' (a cow) and śvetra- nt. 'white leprosy', and the alternating n-stem appears in the extension śvetanā fem. 'dawn'.

Since Skt. r represents both r and l of Indo-European, IE stems in -l, which functioned precisely as r-stems, cannot be distinguished from r-stems in Sanskrit, except by comparison with other languages. Such a stem is found in svār (sūvar) 'sun', gen. sg. sāras (cf. Lat. sōl, Goth. sauí, etc.). The heteroclitic declension which is absent in Sanskrit appears in other languages (Av. xvĕng < *svans, gen. sg., etc.). Some of the r-stems mentioned above appear by comparison with other languages to have been originally l-stems: māhar-: Gk. μεγαλό-; Av. zambar-: cf. Gk. χθαμαλός, Lat. humilis, etc.; Av. rāzar: Lat. régula. The denominative verb saparyáti 'serves, honours, worships' is like Latin sepelio 'bury' ('honour with funeral rites') derived from an old IE neuter *sepel 'honouring, worshipping' derived from the root sep-, Skt. sap- 'honour, serve.'

The t-extension to the suffix n, which appears in Greek (oúbaros), etc., is absent in Sanskrit (ādhnas, etc.), but in some derivative forms an additional t-suffix is found which may be connected with the extension t of the Greek neuters: vasantā- 'spring', cf. vasantō, vešantā- 'pond' (√vis-), bhuvanti
THE FORMATION OF NOUNS

'causing abundance', cf. bhūvar, bhūnā. Another example is simánta- 'parting of the hair' as opposed to simán- 'id', and the lexica give a word aśmanta- 'fireplace' which is related in the same way to aśman- 'stone'. Compare also the pair sakuní- and sakuntí- 'bord'. The t-extension appears regularly in the participles in -ant which will be discussed later.

§ 5. COMPOUND NEUTER SUFFIXES IN r/n

By adding the simple suffixes r and n to stems in u, m, s and t the suffixes -war/n, mar/n, etc., which were so productive in Hittite in the formation of neuter nouns, were produced. In addition they could be added to i-stems, and this ancient neuter type is preserved in the Latin passive infinitives, ʊlitor, scribier, etc. Outside Hittite the compound neuter r-stems have become comparatively rare, the corresponding n-stems are better represented, and have tended to replace the r-formations in the nom. acc. sg.

A neuter suffix -wer, -war is found outside Hittite in such examples as Gk. εἰδἀρ 'food' (*εἰδἀρ), δελεὰρ 'bait', Lat. cadáver 'corpse', Toch. B malkwær 'milk' and the like. They are not uncommon in Avestan: snāwar- 'sinew', banwar- 'bow', karšwar- 'region of the earth', daswar- 'health', sāxwar- 'design, plan', vazdvar- 'firmness'. The Iranian evidence shows that they had survived in reasonable abundance to the Indo-Iranian period, but in Indo-Aryan they had already become extinct by the earliest period. This was because the n-stem was generalised in all cases: nom. acc. sg. snáva 'sinew', etc. Only the adverb sasvár 'secretly, stealthily' preserves the suffix in this form, with the usual adverbial (=locatival) shift of accent. It implies a neuter noun *sásvar which we may compare with Hitt. šesuwar 'sleep' (šeshi 'sleeps', Skt. sásti), the original meaning being 'while people sleep'. In its weak form the suffix is preserved in the adverb mühur- 'suddenly, in a moment' (whence mühurtá- 'moment'); also mihu with simple u-suffix, for *mṛhu-, cf. Av. mōru- 'short (of life)', Gk. βραχύς). Neuter nouns in -van are 1 dhānvan 'bow', 2 dhānvan 'desert', snāvan- 'sinew', pārvan- 'joint' (cf. Av. ōpourvainya- 'linked'), sākvan- 'corner of the mouth', and some sporadic occurrences in the Rigveda, pātvan- 'flight', sanitvan- 'acquisition' and vivāsvan- 'illumination'. In addition a small number of dative infinitives
are formed with this suffix: dāvānē ‘to give’ (Gk. δοφενα, δοφεναι) tūrvānē ‘to overcome’, dhūrvānē ‘to injure’; similarly in Av. vidvanōi ‘to know’.

A suffix compounded of i and r appears only in the adverb bāhir ‘outside’. A few defective in-stems appear in the Rgveda in the instrum. sg., namely prathinā, mahinā, varinā. These forms, in origin old neuter in-stems, have been attracted to the paradigm of the masc. man-stems prathimān- ‘width’, mahi­mān- ‘greatness’ and varimān- ‘width’, and so preserved. The neuter suffix -in further compounded with v appears in sfkvin- nt. ‘corner of the mouth’.

The compound suffixes m-er, m-en alternated in the same way, but outside Hittite, mer (mēr) is rare and obsolescent. A fair number of examples can be collected from Greek (λύμαρ, λυμαρος ‘impurity’, etc.) but they exist only as survivals. No examples are found in Sanskrit but their one time existence in Indo-Iranian is shown by adjectival derivatives like admar-ā ‘gluttonous’ based on an old *ādmar ‘eating, food’. Such forms have been entirely replaced by the extension of the man­stem to the nom. acc. sg.

The neuter suffix man is the only one of the r/n suffixes that remained fully productive in languages other than Hittite. Examples are: (nom. acc. sg.) ājma ‘career, march’ (: Lat. agmen), kārma ‘deed’, cārma ‘skin’, pākṣma ‘eyelash’, pātma ‘flight’, brāhma ‘prayer’, bharma ‘maintaining, supporting; load’ (: O. Sl. bremę ‘burden’, Gk. φέμα), vāsma ‘garment’ (: Gk. έφα ‘id’, Lesb. Férm), lōma, rōma ‘hair’ (<√lā: cf. lava- ‘fleece, wool, hair’), mānma ‘thought’ (: O. Ir. menme ‘mind, understanding’), vārma ‘protective armour’, vārma ‘course, way’ (O. Sl. vremę ‘time’), sādma ‘seat’, syūma ‘thong, rein’, svādma ‘sweetness’.

A small number of dative infinitives are formed on the basis of this suffix: trāманe ‘to protect’, dāманe ‘to give’, dhār­mane ‘to support’, bhārmane ‘to maintain’, vidmānē ‘to know’. In Greek infinitives are also made with this suffix, much more abundantly, and including an archaic type without termination; ἵμεν ‘to go’, δόμεν ‘to give’; ἕδμεναι ‘to eat’, ἵμεναι ‘to go’, δόμεναι ‘to give’, etc.

The nouns of this class are primarily verbal abstracts (action nouns), but they show a strong tendency to acquire concrete meanings, as happens with other neuter abstracts: e.g. hānma
weapon as well as 'blow', tárđma 'hole', márđma 'a mortal place, vital organ', cárdma 'skin', vášma 'garment', etc.

Like other neuter suffixes in -n this suffix is extended by t in Greek (gen. sg. sóyvaros, etc.). A case of such extension is found in Skt. varimáti- 'breadth' (inst. sg. varimátá RV. i. 108. 2).

The neuter suffix -t-er alternating with -t-en, which is so well represented in Hittite, has become exceedingly rare in other IE languages. Only isolated examples such as Lat. iter, Toch. yíár 'way' are quotable. In Sanskrit a solitary example of this kind appears to be preserved in RV. 6. 49. 6.: jágatah stháitar jágad à kṛṇudhvam, 'may ye bring stability to the moving world'. Misunderstood by the redactors the form has been handed down without accent as if vocative of stháitar- 'stander', and the passage has been rendered unintelligible. A restoration stháitar n. 'stability' gives meaning to the line. Apart from this the neuter suffix -t-er- appears in a small number of locative infinitives, e.g. dhartári 'to hold', vidhartári 'to bestow'. In Avestan some dative infinitives are made with the same suffix: vidōthre 'to look at' barōbre 'to support'. These forms are interesting as showing that the neuter r-stems were capable to some extent of being inflected throughout the declension instead of being replaced by n-stems. Under what precise conditions this happened originally it is not now possible to say.

Some adverbs appear with this suffix, having the usual change of accent: antár 'inside' (: Lat. inter), práśár 'early' (: Osc. pruter), sanutár 'aside, apart' (cf. Engl. a-sunder). These imply old neuter nouns *dáśar 'the interior', etc. This type of adverb became very productive in Latin, alitér 'otherwise' (cf. anyátr-a), brevítér, levítér, etc. With additional suffix -á we get adverbs in -trá, e.g. šayutrá 'in bed, abed', and this suffix may, and normally does later, appear with a short vowel, anyátra 'elsewhere', átra 'here', etc. Among the adverbs the Veda has some interesting collective formations: devát rá 'among the gods', purúsátrá 'among men'. They may be explained by comparing Hittite forms like antumášatar 'the population, mankind' (antumášas 'man'). Similar neuter collectives *devátar, etc., lie behind these adverbial forms.

A neuter suffix -tan is found only in naktán- 'night' (instr. pl. naktábhis). Alternating -r appears in Gk. nókróp 'by night' and Lat. nocturnus. This neuter suffix is found sporadically
elsewhere (Lat. gluten 'glue', etc.) and in Old Persian it is used to make dative infinitives (čartanaiy 'to do', etc.).

The compound suffix *sar/sn, which is very common in Hittite, is more or less obsolete elsewhere. It is an extension of the neuter s-stems, and in Hittite the -ar/n has been added so consistently that the simple s-stems have practically disappeared. In other languages the simple s-stems are well preserved so that it is unlikely that the *sar/sn formation ever had the same extension elsewhere as appears in Hittite. Nevertheless there are considerable traces of it. Adjectival derivatives of the type matsar-á 'exhilarated' are based on such formations, and the coexistence of mandasäná- 'id.' shows that there was the old r/n alternation. Similarly pūşaryá- 'well-nourished' implies *pūšar nt. 'fatness, prosperity', equivalent to Gk. πῦρ 'beest milk', and the alternative n-stem is used in the masc. derivative Pūṣán- 'nourisher (name of a god)'.

A few neuter stems in -sn- are preserved in the oblique cases of nouns which appear in the nom. sg. as simple s-stems, e.g., gen. sg. śirṣnás, doṣnás, nom. acc. sg. śiras 'head', doṣ 'arm'. A small class of locative infinitives is made on the basis of neuter stems in -san-: nesáñi 'to lead', parśáñi 'to pass', gruñáñi 'to sing', isáñi 'to emit' (for iš-śani with the old sandhi, p. 95). In Greek also this suffix forms infinitives. The common type φερεῖν is best explained in this way (*φερεσεῖν, *bheresen, the simple base without ending being used as in ἰδμεῖν, etc.).

§ 6. ACTION NOUNS TRANSFERRED TO THE MASCULINE

It has been remarked above that the major distinction in Indo-European was between neuter action nouns accented on the root and masculine, originally common gender, agent nouns accented on the suffix. But in Sanskrit as in other languages not all nouns fit into this simple classification; among the n-stems for instance with which we are dealing there are quite a number of masculine formations which cannot be classed as agent nouns, and which from the point of view of their meaning go rather with the neuter action nouns of the above type. Such

1 Originally *py-ūsar (√pt) as is seen by comparing πῦρ and Skt. pīyūṣa-. Similarly pus- 'to thrive, prosper' is for *pyus-, originally a denominative formation like urusydti, etc. (*pyusydti).
are: (-an-) mūrādhān- ‘head’ (AS. molda), ĺīhān- ‘spleen’ (Av. spōrzan- m., Gk. ὤπην m.),¹ majjān- ‘marrow’ (cf. O. Pruss. musgēw); (-van-) ādhāvan- ‘way’ (Av. ādvan-), grāvan- ‘pressing stone’ (O. Ir. brō, Welsh breuan); (-man-) ūsmān- ‘breath, vapour’, ojmān- ‘strength’ (Lith. augmū), omān- ‘favour, assistance’, takmān- ‘a particular disease’, ātmān- ‘soul, self’, pājmān- ‘sin’ (also adj. ‘wicked’), pājmān- ‘scabies’, premān- ‘love’, bhūmān- ‘abundance’, raśmān- ‘rein’, reśmān- ‘whirlwind’, simān- ‘parting of the hair’, svādāmān- ‘sweetness’; (-iman-) jarimān- ‘old age’, mahimān- ‘greatness’, harimān- ‘yellow colour’ etc. The question naturally arises as to why such words should have a form which is properly a characteristic of agent nouns. There is no apparent reason why words meaning liver’ and udder’ should be neuter and words meaning ‘marrow’ and ‘spleen’ masculine; nor is there any immediately apparent cause why verbal abstracts like omān- ‘assistance’ should differ in formation from the normal neutrals in -man.

In the case of a few of such words we may be dealing with disguised agent nouns. A good example of this kind is seen in Skt. klimān- Gk. πλεύμων ‘lung’, so named because it floats on water (‘swimmer, floater’). Likewise we may interpret raśmān- as ‘that which binds, binder’ and reśmān- as ‘destroyer’.

When these have been explained away there still remain a number of pure action nouns or abstracts constructed after the manner of agent nouns. In these cases we have to do with a transfer of action nouns from the neuter to the masculine class. The following facts speak for this: (1) A number of words appear in both classes in Sanskrit, varṣmān- n., varṣmān- m. ‘height, top, surface’, svādāmān- n., svādāmān- m. ‘sweetness’, dāmān- nt. ‘giving’ (inf.), dāmān- m. ‘gift, liberality’. Here the neuter may be taken to be the older formation as conforming to old rule. In the case of dhāvan- nt. and dhāvan- masc. ‘desert’ the latter is unknown to the earlier language. (2) The same alternation is found as between different languages: Skt. ojmān-, Lith. augmuō : Lat. augmentum nt. (with extension augmentum); Skt. syūman- nt. ‘thread, suture’: Gk. ύμην.

¹ This word appears in the different languages with a varying arrangement of suffixes in each case: Skt. pithān- : (s)p-l-i-n-gh-ēn-; Av. spōrzan- : spl-gh-en-; Ol. Sl. slesena : (s)p-el-gh-en-ā; Gk. ὤπην : spl-ēn, cf. σπλάγχνον; spl-n-gh-no-; Lat. liēn : (s)p-l-i-ēn or (s)p-l-i-ēn), O.Ir. seig : (s)p-el-gh-ā.
(3) The two adjectival forms *pamar-* and *paman-* ‘affected with scabies’ show that there was an old neuter r/n stem which has given way to the masc. *pamän-* and *āsmari* ‘gall stone’ attests an old neuter *āsmar* as opposed to the masculine n-stem which is always found elsewhere (Skt. *āsm-,* Lith. *akmuo*; Gk. *akmuou* ‘anvil ’). The same relationship exists between the Gk. adjective *μερός* ‘gentle, tame’ and Skt. *sāman- ‘quiet’.

The general tendency of the neuter to decline, and with it the decline of the old antithesis marked by accent and gender between action noun and agent noun made it easy for a type of masculine (and feminine) action noun to develop. To a certain extent also personification is responsible for the gender. Terms like *dāmān-* ‘liberality’, *omān-* ‘favour (of the gods)’ and *bhūmān-* ‘abundance’ are regarded in the Vedic hymns as divine powers in their own right. Disease (*takmān-*) and sin (*dhvasmān-, *pāmān-*) are likewise regarded as active evil powers. At the same time there are some more mechanical transfers. The abstract formations in *-imān-* (prathimān- ‘width’, *varimān* ‘id’, etc.) take the masculine gender as a class, and there is probably a rhythmical reason behind this because the formations in *-man-* preceded by long i remain neuter (*vārimān-* ‘width’, *hāvimān-* ‘call’, etc.).

Masculine action nouns of the same type are common in Greek: *τέρμα* ‘boundary’, beside *τέρμα* nt. ‘id’ (Lat. *termen*), *χείμα* ‘winter’ beside *χείμα* nt., *θημώ* ‘heap’ beside *θήμα* nt. (Skt. *dhāman- *nt. with different sense), *λεμώ* ‘meadow’, *λήμν* ‘harbour’, *ἀόη* ‘gland’ (Lat. *ingen* nt.). In Latin there are both masculine (*ordō, sermo*) and feminine (*margo, legio, cupidō*) n-stems of this type.

Owing to their early obsolescence the neuter r-stems have not undergone this transference with the exception of a single example. The defective stem *usar-* (*usr-*) ‘dawn’ is feminine (acc. pl. *usrds*) but was originally a neuter r-stem (cf. *usarbūdh* § 4).

§ 7. **The Formation of Nouns**

The original function of the thematic suffix was adjectival and in this case it was accented: *karan-* ‘doing’, etc. This conclusion is indicated by Hittite which possesses such stems (*veštaras* ‘herdsman’, etc.) but no thematic neuters like the
other languages. When we compare the thematic type of 
neuter, e.g. Skt. sánara- ‘acquisition’, kárvara- ‘act’ with the 
non-thematic stems in -ar, -var, etc., illustrated above, it is 
clear that the thematic suffix here has no grammatical function. 
This, coupled with the absence of such formations in Hittite is 
an argument for the secondary origin of this type; clearly as 
between Lat. unguen and Skt. añjana- the former is the older 
formation. It is not difficult to see how such forms arose. 
There were agent nouns of the type brahmán- beside bráhman-
nt. but also from the earliest period another type of agent 
noun/adjective made by the addition of the accented thematic 
vowel (Gk. ῥαρῷς beside ῥαρή, Hitt. veštaraš beside Av. 
vâstar-). It was then natural and easy to create a neuter 
theematic type balancing the thematic adjectival type (kárana-
nnt. after karaná-, etc.).

Thematic neuter stems corresponding to the various r- and 
n-stems listed above may appear either with the guna of this 
suffix (kárvara- ‘deed’) or with the reduced grade (dhárra-
‘support’). Both types occur from simple r-stems: (1) sánara-
gain’, táśara- ‘shuttle’, pañjara- ‘cage’; framework of the 
ribs (cf. pajař- adj. ‘fixed, firm’, Lat. pango, etc.), gambahra-
‘depth’, udára- ‘belly’. It will be noticed, here and below, 
that there is a certain fluctuation in the accent of the tri-
syllabic forms. Final accentuation, the characteristic of adject-
tives, is avoided, but the accent may fall on the penultimate 
syllable instead of on the root. (2) ágra- ‘point’, rándhra-
‘hole’, śvibhra- ‘pit’. There are a few substantives with final 
accentuation but these are adjectival in origin, e.g. kṛcchra- 
nt. ‘difficulty’, but also kṛcchra- adj. ‘difficult’, riptra-nt. ‘defile-
áρπος ‘foam’ masc. (nt. ámbhas- ‘moisture’ beside which 
there must have been *ámbhar, cf. Lat. imber), kśirá- nt. 
‘milk’ of uncertain etymology but from its accent of adjectival 
origin.

In sth-dla- ‘place, ground’ there is a thematic neuter forma-
tion involving the l-suffix.

A few old neuters in -var have been extended by the thematic 
vowel: kárvara- ‘deed’, replacing earlier *kárvar, gálvara- 
‘hiding place’, phárvara- ‘sowing, sowed field’ (*s)phar- : 
(Gk. σπέιπω), catvara- ‘quadrangle, cross-roads’ (from a neuter 
*catvar on which the adjectival catvāras ‘four’ is based).
With the tar-suffix we have a neuter formation in -tara in srastara- 'bed of grass' (ʃrəms-) and a fairly abundant series of neuters in -tra: átra- 'food' (: atrá- m. 'eater'), kátra- 'spell', kśéttra- 'field' (: Av. śōitra- 'habitation'), vástra- 'garment', śrōtra- 'hearing, ear' (: AS. hēopor 'noise'), sātra- 'thread' (cf. the Lat. agent noun sūtor). In addition to such words which can be explained quite simply out of primitive neuter tar-stems, there is another series of neuters with the suffix -tra less easy to explain since they have paradoxically accent on the final syllable. Such are antrá-, antrá- (: Gk. ἄντρα pl.), astrá-, deśträ- 'direction', netrá- 'guidance', rāṣṭrá- 'rule, kingdom', śastra- 'invocation', satrā- 'sacrificial session', śāstrā- 'command', stotrá- 'praise, hymn of praise', sthāstrā- 'station', hotrā- 'office of hōtar-, oblation', potrā- 'office of pōtar-', neṣṭrā- 'office or vessel of nēṣtar-'. A few of these forms may be explained as originally adjectival, e.g. antrá- 'what is inside', astrá- 'what is thrown', but the majority clearly cannot be explained in this way. They must be explained from a different point of view. There is a series of agent nouns in -tar denoting holders of professions and priestly offices, e.g. sāmstar- 'reciter' hōtar- 'sacrificial priest', pōtar- 'purifier' and closely associated the neṣṭar- (prob. 'sifter', cf. Gk. νεκτήρ λυκμητήρ Hes.). Such nouns as a class have the nominal accent, i.e. on the root. The above neuters, hotrā- 'office of hōtar-', etc., have become, as far as their meaning is concerned, secondary derivatives from these agent nouns, thus reversing the position originally prevailing between neutrers and agent nouns. In ordinary taddhita derivation there is a special rule in Sanskrit whereby the taddhita derivative is accentuated on the final -a if the primary formation from which it is derived is accentuated on a previous syllable: nairhastā- 'handlessness', ātithyā- 'hospitality', saumanasā- 'friendliness' from nīrhaṣṭā-, ātīthi-, sumānas- (and vice versa, ṁlītyā- from palitā- 'grey-haired'). There are also examples from non-vṛddhied formations, e.g. sakhya- 'friendship' from sākhi-. This is a new way of using accent in derivation which Sanskrit has developed, and it is this system which accounts for the final accentuation in hotrā-, etc. These formations are however not from the beginning taddhitas, but a subdivision of the old simple neutrers in -tra which have been adapted for a special purpose and have had their accent altered accordingly.
There are a fair number of neuters with the gradation -atra, e.g. nakṣatra-'lunar mansion' (nakṣ-'to reach'), pātatra-'wing', vādhatra-'weapon'; with penultimate accentuation, kṛntātra-'piece cut off', d-ātra-'gift'; with taddhita accent, kṣatrā-'sovereignty'; post-Vedic kalātra-'wife'.

A thematic extension of an old neuter sar-stem appears in tāmisra- 'darkness' (cf. Av. tātra-); with l pātsala- 'way' Un.

In Hittite there is a neuter suffix in -an (not alternating with -ar) making primary verbal abstracts, henkan 'death', etc. The same suffix appears in the Greek infinitives in -en and sporadically elsewhere (Lat. ungan). In Sanskrit the thematic extension of this suffix has become exceedingly productive in the formation of neuter action nouns from verbal roots. They frequently stand in opposition to agent nouns having the same suffix but accented on the last syllable: kārana- nt. 'deed', karanda- masc. 'doing'. Examples with radical accent are dājana-' anointing, ointment', cājana-'heaping up', dārśana- 'vision', pātana- 'fall', bhūjana- 'enjoyment', sādana- 'seat', etc., etc.; from a non-verbal root, sāmana- 'assembly'. Such words sometimes appear with weak form of root, e.g. bhuvana- 'world', and, when the root-vowel is a, sometimes with vrddhi bhājana- 'vessel'. There is a tendency in the later language to associate these latter formations with the causative of the verb, e.g. tāraṇa- 'crossing', tāraṇa- 'getting (somebody) across, delivering'. Penultimate accent is sometimes found : vṛjāna- 'enclosure, settlement' (also vṛjana-), kṛpāna- 'misery' (: kṛpandā- 'miserable'), dāmsāna- 'wondrous deed', veṣāna- 'service', dh-āna- 'wealth', r-āna- 'battle' (cf. Av. aruna- 'id').

Similar neuter formations are found occasionally from the compound n-stems : vavuṇa- 'delimitation, appointed time' (: velā 'limit, time, etc.'), karuṇa- 'deed'; drāvina- 'property', vājina- 'race, contest'; vētana- 'wage' (\/ vī), r-ātana- 'treasure' (rā- 'to bestow'); mātasana- 'lung'.

The neuter suffix men/mn could be extended by the suffix -t (Gk. σώματος gen. sg., etc., cf. the Hittite infinitive forms in -manzi, -wanzi). This complex could also receive the thematic extension, Lat. augmentum, strāmentum, etc. There is one such example in Sanskrit, śrōmata- nt. 'fame' (-mat-<*-mpt-), cf. OHG hliumunt, Germ. Leumund.
§ 8. **Masculine Formations of the Type**

*brahmán*—from *r*- and *n*-stems

The essential feature of this type is the suffixal accent as opposed to the radical accent of the neuters, and *vrddhi* in the nominative singular. There is some evidence that originally they were themselves capable of being used as adjectives without any change of form. Examples of this are found in many languages, e.g. Gk. *μάκαρ* 'blessed', *μάρτυρ* 'witness', Lat. *über* in the sense of 'rich', Hitt. *kurur* meaning both 'enmity' and 'imical, enemy'. In Sanskrit there are two formations which may be compared with Gk. *μάρτυρ*, although they have accent on the suffix, namely *aptúr*—'active in holy works' and *yantúr*—'controller'. With the suffix *-uṣ* we have forms like *náhuṣ*—'neighbour' and *mánuṣ*—'man' which are not in any way distinguished from the corresponding neuter types. Such formations are, however, very much in the minority, because Indo-European early developed this method of indicating the adjectival function of a stem by switching the accent.

In some cases in Sanskrit the two types exist side by side, notably in the case of the suffixes *-man*—and *-as*—, but more often the old system has broken down. This is mainly due to the elimination of the old neuter types, which has left important classes of masculine agent nouns standing isolated. In Sanskrit there is an abundant class of agent nouns in *-tár, kartár*—'doer', etc. The nature of this formation only became clear with the discovery in Hittite of an archaic class of neuters in *-tar*. We have seen above that this, like similar formations, has left many traces in other languages and therefore must at one time have been widely prevalent. This means that the two types *kártar* nt. 'doing, action' and *kartár*—masc. 'doer, agent' must at one time have existed side by side, and this being so it becomes immediately clear that the relationship of the two types is exactly the same as that between *bráhman*—and *brahmán*—Skt. *kartár* 'doer' is one connected with *kártar* 'doing' and *sthátár*—'one who stands' is similarly related to that *sthátar* nt. which, as we have seen, is preserved in a somewhat disguised form in one passage of the *Ṛgveda*.

Since this is one of the commonest formations in Sanskrit the citation of further examples may be dispensed with. A few words are necessary about the accent. Suffixal accent is proper
to this type and occurs most frequently in Sanskrit, but there is also a type with retracted accent associated with a curious syntactic distinction: *dātā vāśūnāṁ* but *dātā vasūmi*. It has been noticed above that specialist words with this suffix (*hātār-, etc.*) have also as a rule accent on the root. In Greek also there are two sets of forms, with suffixal accent, *δοτήρ* 'giver', *βατήρ* 'goer', *θετήρ* 'establisher', and with radical accent, *δώτωρ* 'giver', etc. The first of these preserves the most ancient form, with reduction of the root consequent on the accentuation of the suffix. In Sanskrit the suffixal accent is preserved to a large extent, but apart from very few exceptions, e.g. *dṛṇhitār-‘ one who makes firm’, guṇa is universal in the agent nouns. Its maintenance or reintroduction in spite of the basic law of apophony may be ascribed to the influence of the related neuters.

This suffix is prominent in the formation of nouns of family relationship: *pītār- ‘father’ (cf. Lat. *pater*, etc.), duḥhitār- ‘daughter’ (cf. Gk. *θυγάτηρ*, etc.), mātār- ‘mother’ (Gk. *μήτηρ*, Dor. *μήτηρ*, OHG *muoter*, etc.); bhrātār- ‘brother’ (Gk. *φράτωρ*, *φράτηρ*, *φράτηρ* member of a phratry’, Goth. *brōpar*, OHG *bruoder*, etc.), *jāmātār- ‘son-in-law’ (Av. *zāmātār-, Alb. *sēnder*), *yātār- ‘wife of husband’s brother’ (Gk. *eivarépes*, Lat. *ianitricēs* plur., O. Sl. *jény*, Lith. *jėntė*); *nāptār- ‘grandson’ (secondary substitute for *nāpāt=Lat. *nepōs*). Of these it is probable that the word for ‘father’ is an old agent noun (*p-i-tār- ‘protector’ from *pā-(y)- ‘to protect’), but in the majority of cases the etymology is too obscure for it to be possible to say much with certainty. Its gradation is of the old type (cf. Gk. *δοτήρ*, etc.) as is to be expected in such a word. Only *duḥhitār- agrees with *pītār- in accent and apophony; the rest have both accent and guṇa of root with the exception of *mātār-, and even here Greek has radical accent, which may easily be original in spite of the agreement between Sanskrit and Germanic. It is not unlikely that these contain some old neuters (*māter*, etc.: Lat. *māteriēs* would be an extension of such a neuter) which were adapted when the gender-system developed. There is also the possibility of the analogical extension of the suffix. This has certainly happened in Skt. *nāptār- and probably in the unusually formed *jāmātār- (cf. Gk. *γαμβρός son-in-law’ differently formed.

The defective noun *stār- (instr. pl. *stṛbhis), tār- (nom. pl. *
The formation of nouns

141

Gk. ἄροπ is formed with this masculine suffix; the word has become so reduced that in the latter form only the suffix is left.

The suffix -tar is the only one of the r-suffixes that has become prolific in the formation of agent nouns. But both the simple r-suffix and the various compound suffixes which have been enumerated were capable of being used in this way and a small number of examples have survived.

An example with the simple r-suffix is seen in nár- 'man, warrior' (Gk. ἀνήρ, Umbrian ner-, etc.). A corresponding neuter *dner is deduced from certain derivatives (Gk. ἰνοπήν, εἰνήρωπ, etc.).

The suffix -var is so used in catvāras masc. pl. 'four'. The corresponding neuter *cātvar 'square' is not preserved, but there is a thematic extension of it in catvara- nt. 'quadrangle, cross-roads'. Another example is devār- 'husband's brother', cf. Gk. δᾶηρ (for σαληρ), Lat. lēvir, etc. There is no example of such a formation with the mar-suffix, but it will be noted below that karmāra- 'smith' implies an earlier karmā(r).

The suffix -sar appears in this class in the word svāsar- 'sister' (sva- 'one's own') with retracted accent, and in the numerals tisrās, cātāras 'three, four' (fem.). Here the accusative form has come to be used for the nominative; the old nominatives *tisores, κυτεσόρες are represented in Celtic (O. Ir. tēoir, cethoir). Lat. uxōr 'wife' is a noun of this class, being based on an r-extension of the s-stem which appears in Skt. okaš- nt. 'home'. There seems to have been a tendency for this suffix, when used adjectivally, to be specialised in the formation of feminine nouns, and with the above we may compare the thematic derivative in Hittite išhaššaraš 'lady' (išhaš 'lord').

Similarly agent nouns and adjectives are formed with the accented n-suffixes, related in the same way to the neuter n-stems: tāksan- 'carpenter' (: Hitt. takšan nt. 'joining'), rājan- 'king' (: rājāni nt. 'under the guidance of', alternating r-stem in Av. rāsār- nt.), prātīdvān- 'opponent at play', vibhvān-, vibhvān- 'powerful'. There are a few old masculines of this formation no longer referable to verbal roots, yūvan- 'young man' (cf. Lat. iuvenis, etc.; yo-š-š 'young woman, woman'), śvān- 'dog' (Gk. κόνων). Examples from other languages are Av. spasan- 'scout, spy', vindan- 'one who acquires', Gk. πευθύν 'spy', ἀρηγών 'helper', Lat. edō 'one
THE FORMATION OF NOUNS

given to eating', etc. In addition this formation has provided in Greek the nom. sg. of active participles of the thematic type (φέρων, λιπών, alternating with -οντα- in other cases, as opposed to δίδοσ, etc.) and in Germanic it forms the basis of an adjectival declension. The accent is generally retracted in Sanskrit. It has already been remarked that this is usual in the case of words of adjectival origin which have become completely nominalised (e.g. rājan-).

The accent is likewise retracted in the adjectival formations in -van, but here the weak grade of the root shows that this is not original. Examples are ἐκβάν- 'worshipping, praising' (: Hitt. arkuwar nt. 'prayer'), ὑδείβαν- 'injurious', ὕδείβαν- 'fighting', συβίων- 'beautiful', συβίων- 'praising', πάτβαν- 'flying' (: nt. πάτον- 'flight'), μάδβαν- 'exhilarating, exhilarated', ἰάσβαν- 'famished'. Suffixal accentuation appears only in μεσίβαν- 'thief'. Roots ending in ἰ, ὦ, ῥ take the additional suffix t before this suffix: κτβαν- 'active', σύτβαν- 'pressing', σφβαν- 'moving'. That these are based on an old set of neuters with alternating r/n stem is shown by the feminine. This is based on the r-stem of the neuters, e.g. πιβαρί fem. 'fat' is derived directly from the neuter stem which appears in Greek as πιαρο, whereas the masculines are derived from the associated n-stem. Exactly the same distinction between masculine and feminine is found in Greek: πιον masc., πιειπα fem. 'fat'. Similar feminine formations in Sanskrit are ἱάβαρι 'pious', σάρβιρ 'night', ὦσίवαρ 'lying', ὦγαρ 'going', ὦδάβαρ 'giving' (e.g. Godāvāri 'cow-giving', name of the river). The suffix forms both primary derivatives, as above, and secondary derivatives. Such are ἱδβαν- 'righteous', σατβαν- 'truthful', μαγβαν- 'bountiful', and svadhβαν- 'powerful'. A fair proportion of the secondary formations retain the adjectival accent: ἀμπαβάν- 'indigent', ἀρατβάν- 'hostile', ῥπαβάν- 'indebted', ῥστιβάν- 'obedient'. Their feminine is likewise in -βαρι (rtβαρι, etc.), indicating that there existed at one time also secondary neuter formations in var/n of the type *ṛtβαρ 'righteousness'.

In the case of the suffix -man a number of pairs are found in the Vedic language with varying accent and meaning illustrating the general principle of noun-formation in Indo-European: brāhmaṇ-: brahman-; sādman- 'sitting, seat': sadmāṇ- 'sitter'; dhārman- 'ordinance': dharmāṇ- 'ordainer';
**The Formation of Nouns**

**dāman-** 'gift': dāmān- 'giver'. Other masculine agent nouns of this type are dārman- 'breaker', bhujmān- 'fertile', somān- 'soma-presser'. There is one secondary formation in -mān, aryamān- 'friendly, allied'. In Avestan there is the same antithesis between neuter and masculine man-stems in cīnman- nt. 'care': cīnman- masc. 'caring for'; zaēman- nt. 'wakefulness': zaēman- masc. 'wakeful'. Formations of this masculine type in Greek are ὧμων 'one who knows' (= ἰδμεν- au inf.), ἀδήμων 'enduring', Ἥγεμον 'leader', etc.; in Latin an alimōnes nom. pl. (> alimōnia) is quoted.

Masculines with the suffix -san- are very few: Pūṣān-, name of a god (cf. pūṣaryā- above, § 5), vyṣan- 'male', uksān- 'ox' (Engl. ox, oxen, Welsh ych, pl. ychen, Toch. okso). The last two involve extended roots with incorporated s-suffix (vakṣ-, vṛṣ-) and from that point of view may be classed as an-stems. A feminine san-stem appears in yōsan- 'woman'.

Masculine tan-stems are not found in Sanskrit, but appear occasionally in other languages: Av. marotan- 'mortal', aiywiṃaetan- 'dweller, occupier', Gk. τέκτων, γείτων 'neighbour'.

The compound suffix -in- is one of the most productive adjectival suffixes in the language. It may appear in primary formations, arctn- 'shining', but it is used much more frequently in secondary formations with a possessive sense, aśvin- 'possessing horses', dhanin- 'wealthy', pākṣin- 'winged', etc., etc. Such adjectives may be formed in any number from stems in -a and -ā, in which case the final vowel of the stem is replaced by -in-, and less frequently from other stems, e.g. śwanin- 'keeping dogs', śavasin- 'strong'. The suffix has invariably the accent, which is proper to these adjectival types, but it is invariably in the weak grade, which cannot be original, and this is associated with the formation of a new analogical form of nom. sg. in ī. Originally there must have been vṛddhi in the nom. sg. and vṛddhied forms of this formation are found in other languages (Gk. oὔπαρκων, etc.). In Latin there are some feminine action nouns which use the same formation (just as bhūmān- 'abundance', etc., have taken on the form proper to action nouns, see above, § 6), legiō, legiōnis, etc. These have likewise generalised the strong form. The original system with alternation of strong form in nom. sg. and weak form in gen. sg., etc., is preserved in Oscan which uses a weak form of the stem.
in the oblique cases: dat. sg. leginei, etc. The use of this suffix in a specifically possessive sense is found also in Iranian, e.g. Av. parmin- 'having wings', but examples are comparatively few.

A fair number of adjectives are formed with the accented suffix -vin: sragvīn- 'wearing a garland', tapasvīn- 'heated', tejasvīn- 'brilliant', etc. This complicated suffix which is unknown outside Indo-Aryan, seems to be a contamination of the suffixes -van- and -in-. Beside it there is a rarer suffix -min (like -mant beside -vant), e.g. vāgmīn- 'eloquent', gomīn- 'possessing cows', svāmin- 'owner, master' (sva- 'one's own').

§ 9. Adjectival Formations in -nt-

It has been noted above that -n as a neuter suffix could in Indo-European take the extension -t. This appears regularly in Greek (ōdor, ὀδόρος etc.), and elsewhere there are traces of it, though not many (Skt. várimat-, etc.). The -t could also be added to the adjectival n-suffix, and the compound suffix so produced has proved more productive than the neuter -nt-. In Sanskrit it appears in the suffixes -ant, -vant and -mant, all of which are highly productive.

The suffix -ant- appears in a small number of adjectives, namely brhant- 'great', mahánt- 'great', phánt- 'small', pṛṣant- 'speckled' and rūṣant- 'bright', to which may be added the pronominal adjectives iyant- 'so much' and kiyaṁt- 'how much'. The first three have the proper adjectival accent, and in pṛṣant-, rūṣant- the apophony shows that the radical accent is unoriginal. Similar adjectives in Iranian are seen in bārozanant- 'high' and mazant- 'big'. These are related to neuters in the usual way (Av. bārozan- 'height', mazan- 'greatness') but in this case the adjectival forms have received the t extension whereas the neuters have not.

These adjectives are sometimes referred to as being of participial origin. This is obviously not so, since the specialisation of this suffix in participial use, though ancient, is nevertheless a secondary development. The common usage of the suffix in active participles had not been fixed at the time of the separation of Hittite, because there the participles in -ant have a passive sense as opposed to the active sense which prevails in the rest of Indo-European: kunant- 'slain' as opposed to Skt. ghnánt- 'slaying'. Both are specialisations out of a more
general sense ‘one connected with slaying’. Such a general meaning is all that is inherent to begin with in any adjectival formation, and it is by adaptation that the special functions of the various suffixes arise.

The non-thematic participles and those from thematic verbs which are accentuated on the suffix keep the suffixal accent: adánt- ‘eating’, tudánt- ‘pushing’, etc. Elsewhere it conforms to the regular accentuation of the verbal stem: bhárant- ‘bearing’, jighámsant- ‘desiring to slay’, etc. This accent is shifted to the suffix in the weakest cases, an ancient feature which has often been levelled out, and the same applies to the suffixally accented adjectives: gen. sg. adátás, brhatás. In the nom. sg. the stems in -ant differ from the adjectival types in simple -n in that the case is denoted by the termination s and not by vṛddhi. This is so also in Hittite and it seems that from the earliest period of Indo-European that can be reached the nom. sg. was normally expressed in this way in the case of stems ending in occlusives.

The suffix -vant occurs in a number of primary formations which illustrate its origin from the compounding of simpler suffixes. Primary formations are: vivasvant- also vivásvant- ‘brilliant’ (: simple n-stem in vivásvan- nt. ‘brilliance’ and in the Av. derivative Vivayhana-), śásvant- ‘numerous, all’ (cf. śáśiyas- ‘more numerous’ and śaśayá- ‘abundant’), árvant- ‘swift, steed’ (: árvan- ‘id’), fkvant- ‘hymning, worshipping’ (: fkvan- ‘id’), satvdnt- ‘name of a tribe of warriors’ (: satvan- ‘warrior’), yahvant ‘young, youngest’ (: yahu- ‘id’), vivakvant- ‘eloquent’. The existence of pairs like fkvan- : fkvant; árvan- : arvánt illustrates the fact that this suffix is a t-extension of a simpler van-stem. In yahu : yahvánt the analysis goes further and a simple u-stem is left. In Avestan we find drgovant- ‘wicked’, as opposed to Skt. drúhvan- ‘id’, and an interesting treble series, orožu-, orozvan-, orozvant- ‘straight’ which shows how the compound suffix is built up step by step. Av. bozvant- ‘abundant’ bears the same relation to Skt. bahú-, as Skt. yahvánt- to yahu-. Such pairs are found also in Hittite: daššu- : daššuvant- ‘strong, healthy’.

It is as a secondary suffix that -vant is most frequently used in Sanskrit: ásvavan- ‘possessing horses’, kêsavant- ‘hairy’, putravant ‘having a son’ and so on in unlimited number. The usage also occurs widely in Iranian, Av. zastavant- ‘having
hands', *amavant-* 'strong', etc., and, outside Indo-Iranian, in Greek: *χαρίεις, χαρίεντα* (for °*Feis, °Fehta*) 'having grace, graceful', *ἰχθύοεις* 'abounding in fish', etc.

In the *Rgveda* there are occasional examples of non-adjectival formations in *-vant*; for instance *āsuvant-* sometimes appears not as an adjective, but as an abstract-collective noun, e.g. 1. 83. 1, *āsuvātī prathamō gōṣu gacchati* 'he goes first in (the possession of) horses and cows', where the singular collective corresponds to the plural gōṣu. Such traces are valuable in that there was originally an old class of neuters in *-vant* related to the adjectives in *-vant* according to the usual principle. Secondary formations with the neuter suffixes are known in Hittite (*antuḫšatar* 'mankind', from *antuḫšas-, 'man', etc.), and such are to be ascribed to Indo-European. We may construct on these lines a neuter *āsuvavar* 'collectivity of horses, property in horses' alternating in the way usual in the case of neuters with *āsuvavan-*, or with extension *āsuvavant-*, on the basis of which *āsuvavānt* 'possessor of horses would be derived in the usual way. Another piece of evidence is got by comparing Av. *karśivant-* 'cultivator' with Skt. *kṛśivala-* and *kārśīvana-* 'id'. The alternation of suffix between the last two words can only be explained by the existence of an old alternating neuter *kārśivar/n, and from this Av. *karśivant-* has been derived in the same way as *āsuvavant-*. According to the usual system one would expect the original accent of the adjectives in *-vant* to have been on the suffix. In the secondary formations in Sanskrit this accentuation appears in *nṛvānt- 'manly', pādvānt- 'having feet' and nāsvānt- 'having a nose', where the primitive stems are monosyllabic, and in some cases where the primitive stem is accented on the suffix (but never when this stem ends in *-a* or *-ā*), *agnivānt- 'having a fire', *āsānvānt- 'having a mouth', etc. The primary formations have the accent only in a minority of cases. The same tendency to throw back the accent was observed in the adjectives in *-van*.

The suffix *-m.ant* appears in very few primary derivatives, namely *virukmant-* 'shining', *dyumánt- 'bright' (cf. *dyumnānt* nt. 'brightness', *susumánt- 'kind' (cf. *susumnā- nt. 'kind, ness'), *dasmánt-* 'glorious' (only *dasmāt* nt. sg. used adverbially). The relation of *āsūmānt- 'swift' (*āsumāt adv.) to *āsū- recalls that of *yahvānt- to yahū-, etc. Elsewhere it is used as a
secondary suffix in exactly the same sense as -vant. Occasionally the two suffixes are used after the same word, e.g. agnimánti—beside agnivánti—and usually one only of the two suffixes is used in connection with each word. There are no absolute rules to say when each suffix will be used, except that -mant is regularly employed after stems in -u, paśumánti—'possessing cattle', etc. (frequently also to avoid repetition of v, yávamant—'rich in barley', etc.). This rule is interesting because much the same kind of rule is found in Hittite both in the case of suffixes related to this (Inf. arnummar 'to bring', Supine wahnumanzi 'to turn (trans.)' as opposed to esuwar, asuwanzi from eš—'to be', etc.), and in the 1st person plur. of the verb (arnummeni 'we bring' as opposed to epweni 'we hold', etc.). The accent of the adjectives in -mant follows the same rules that apply to the formations in -vant.

§ 10. THEMATIC ADJECTIVAL FORMATIONS FROM $r$- AND $n$- STEMS

There was an alternative way in Indo-European of making adjectives and agent nouns from the primitive neuter formations, and it was equally commonly used. This was the addition of the accented thematic vowel. These derivatives have the same meaning as those just described, and the two types of formation often exist side by side, e.g. Skt. aṭrā—'eater': aṭār—'id'; Hitt. vešтарaš 'herdsman': Av. vāstar—'id'; Gk. ῥαφός, ἱατὴρ 'physician'; Gk. ἐπτρός 'executioner': Skt. yālār—'avenger, punisher' (cf. yātanā 'punishment, torment' with $-n$—indicating an old alternating neuter). The accent is normally on the suffix, but it is occasionally transferred to the radical syllable: dāmśtra—'fang'. The type has prospered, and with the dying out of the bulk of the old neuter types, the suffixes -rá, etc., have come to have the appearance of primary suffixes. Formations of this kind are made on the basis both of the simple neuter suffixes $-(a)r$, $-(a)n$ and of the compound suffixes.

(i) Examples of formations in -rá are: ugrá—'powerful' (: Av. aogar—'strength'), usrá—'matutinal, shining like dawn' (vasar°, usar—'dawn'), udrá—'water-animal, otter' (Gk. ὀσῷρ, etc.), a-vaḍhrá—'not injuring' (vaḍhar 'smiting; weapon'), kṣudrá—'small', kṣi prá—'swift', vakrá—'crooked', hasrá—'laughing', etc. An old neuter alternating $r/n$ stem is often
THE FORMATION OF NOUNS

indicated by the existence of derivatives from the n-stem side by side with these formations in -rā, e.g. beside vīpra- 'inspired' (with retracted accent), viṇyāyā, etc.; cf. also kṣiprā- 'quick': kṣēpnu-, kṣipanu-; grāhā- 'greedy': grāhmā- 'id'; dhvasrā- 'dusty': dhvasaṇi- 'sprinkler (a cloud)'; śvitrā- 'white': śvetanā 'dawn', etc. The accent is thrown back in only a minority of cases and these are mainly substantivised adjectives: śāra- 'strong man, hero' (Gk. ἀγὼν 'powerless'), ājra- 'field' (aj-; original accent in Gk. ὀγός; Gk. ἀγηπω 'gather, collect') is formed from a primary neuter *ager, cf. the type ratharyāti), vājra- 'club, thunderbolt' ('smasher, crusher', cf. Gk. ἀγηπω) vāpra- 'mound, earthwork' (Av. vafra- 'snow'), tumra- 'humped', of the Indian bull (cf. Lat. tumeō, tumör, etc.).

In this, the oldest type, the thematic vowel preceding the r is eliminated on account of the following accent. There are also a smaller number of adjectives in which the -d is added without any such reduction: dravarā- 'running', paturā- 'flying', nyūcara- 'suitable, agreeable', āvara- 'lower' (: avār), īpura- 'nearer'; with vrddhi, vānara- 'monkey' (vanarō 'forest'), vāsarā- 'matutinal' (vasarō 'early morning'). The same type with full vowel before the r appears also in other languages, Av. ādara- 'lower', urvāsara- 'fugitive' (urvaēs-), Gk. ἐλευθερός 'free', etc. Such forms must have originated at a time when the accent had ceased to have the effect of reducing unaccented syllables.

A parallel series in -lō was formed in Indo-European. In the Vedic language this suffix would also appear as -rā. Instances of -lō occur in Sanskrit, e.g. śuklá- 'white' (also śukrā-), sthūlā- 'thick' (also sthūrā-), gopālā- 'cowherd', but it is never possible to be sure about the origin of l in Sanskrit.

(ii) From the base -var/ur: With strong form of suffix, bhāsvarā- 'brilliant' (*bhāsvar nt. 'brilliance'), īśvarā- 'lord', sākvarā- 'strong', adhvarā- 'sacrifice' (of adjectival origin from its accent; cf. adhvān- 'way'), sthāvarā- 'stable' (also sthāvanā- showing old alternating neuter), nasvarā- 'perishable', vyadvarā- 'a gnawing animal' (: Gk. ἐλκερ nt.), niṣadvarā- 'mud'; with t-suffix inserted, itvarā- 'going', sṛtvarā- 'id', jitvarā- 'victorious'. The variant -vala appears in vidvalā 'clever' (cf. Gk. εὐδολίς 'id'), palvalā- 'pond' (cf. Lat. palūs 'marsh'), and in a number of secondary formations, kṛṣivala-
'cultivator' (: kārśivāna- 'id'), īrjasvala- 'strong', pariṣadvala- 'having a pariṣad, king', āsūtiṣivāla- 'priest who presses soma'. A vṛddhied formation is seen in bhārvarā- 'impetuous' (cf. bhurvāni- 'id.' and Lat. fervor, etc.). These formations often exist side by side with adjectives in -van : īśvarā- 'lord' : Av. īśvan- ; īlvarā- 'going' ; ıśvan- ; sīhārā- 'standing, stable', sasthāvan- 'standing together'; īśvarā- 'fat' : īśvan- 'id': This relationship is based on old alternating neuters, *īśvar yan 'authority', etc.

The weak form of the suffix appears in bhāsura- 'shining', chidurā- 'tearing', bhāṅgurā- 'breaking', bhidurā- 'splitting', viādurā- 'wise', medurā- 'fat', ānkuṭra- 'bud, shoot ; swelling tumour' (: Gk. ὄγκωλος 'swollen, proud'), kṣurā- 'razor' (Gk. ἀντων nt., cf. O. Sl. česati 'to comb', etc.). In the nominalised śudāsura- the accent is retracted, as commonly ; the accent of Gk. ἀντῶν is more original. Beside pāmsurā- 'dusty', and madhurā- 'sweet' forms with l appear, pāmsulā-, madhulā-, without it being possible to say which is original. Beside śmasrula- 'bearded' there is śmasṛūṇā-. The weak form of the suffix appears as -vr- in ītvrā- 'intense'.

(iii) A parallel suffix -ird appears in rudhira- 'red' (as opposed to simple -ra- suffix in Gk. ἐρυθρός, etc.), badhira- 'deaf' (≠ ba(n)dh- 'to bind, obstruct'), madhirā- 'intoxicating', īśirā- 'vigorous' (: Gk. ἀπός from simple r-stem), śithirā- 'loose', rathirā- 'charioteer', médhira- 'wise' (with retracted accent), sth-irā- 'firm', sṛh-irā- 'fat', rucira- 'bright'; more rarely -ila, trādilā- 'porous', sātīlā- 'flowing', nt. 'water' beside sarirā-, śithilā- 'loose' beside śithirā-; with guna of suffix (like -vā-, valā) sāmuṣyalā- 'cohabiting' (sam + vas-).

(iv) From the neuter suffix -mar there are a few such derivatives : admara- 'gluttonous' (implying *admar nt. 'eating'), ḍhasmarā 'id', srmard- 'a swift moving animal' (cf. Gk. ὀπροίων, denom. vb. from n-stem), pāmara- 'scabby; miserable' (also pāmanā- from n-stem), asmard- 'stony' (cf. asmān above, § 6); with weak form of suffix dhūmrā- 'grey'; with l pakṣmalā- 'having (long) eyelashes' (pakṣman- nt. 'eyelash'), ślesmalā- alternating with ślesmaṇā- 'afflicted with phlegm' (ślesmān- masc. 'phlegm'), bhimālā- 'fearful'.

It was observed in dealing with the simple r-neuters that they might either appear with guna (ūdhār) or by the weak form of the suffix followed by the extension t (yākt). Forms of the
latter type can be deduced from certain derivatives of mar-
stems: karmātha- 'workman' from *karmrthā- (*karmṛt(h)- 'work' + ā; aspiration as in kāprth-), likewise narmātha- 'jester' and harmuṭa 'tortoise' (*harmṛt-ā- 'an animal possessing a *harmṛt, i.e. 'roof or shell', cf. harmyā 'roof').

(v) A few such adjectives are formed from sar-stems: sapsard- 'attending on' (√sap-), matsard- 'exhilarating; exhilarated' (cf. mandasānā- from the corresponding san-stem), ṛkṣarā- 'hurting; thorn' (related to arṣasānā- 'injuring' in the same way as matsarā- to mandasānā-), samvatsarā- 'year', dhūsara- 'grey', kṛsara- 'a confection of sesamum, rice, etc.', kṛcchṛā- 'painful, difficult' (if for *kṛpsṛā-), usṛā- 'bull' (for *uṛṛā-, i.e. *uṛṛā-, -sr- alternating with the san of vyṛṣan-).

(vi) Based on the old neuters in tār there are adjectival form­
ations in -tāra and -trāra. By a secondary development the suffix
-tara has come to be specialised in the formation of comparatives,
but there are a few old formations where this is not so, and where
the original, more general function of the suffix is apparent.
For instance aśvatarā- 'mule' is an animal which partakes of
the nature of a horse (*aśvatar nt.) and in the same way Iranian
kapautara- 'pigeon' (Mod. Pers. kabǔtār) is a bird characterised
by bluish-grey colour (*kapautar nt.). In kārotarā 'filter,
sieve' there is a vṛddhied formation based on neuter action
noun *karotar 'sifting'. This root most commonly appears
with i- extension (Gk. ḫπίνω, etc., Ir. cṛiathar 'sieve') but a u-
extension, as here, is found in Goth. and-hruskan 'āvark 输出'.
Other examples of this type are vatsatarā- 'yearling calf', and
with retracted accent sānutara- 'clandestine' (: sanutār adv.)
and divātara- 'diurnal'. The adjective anṭara- 'interior' is
derived from antār 'inside (Lat. inter, etc.) and this in its turn
from IE en 'in' + the neuter suffix -ter. In the same way Skt.
pratārā- (only in the adv. pratāraṁ), Av. fratara- 'being in the
front', Gk. πρότερος 'former' are derived from pró- through an
intermediate *prōter 'the front' (adv. *prōter). In this way
there arises a class of adjectives based on prepositions, such as
Skt. avatārā- 'lower' (only in the adv. avatārām), uṭṭara-'
upper', Av. niṣṭara- 'being outside', Gk. πρότερος 'former',
vṛṭṭṛtṛpos 'higher', etc. These prepositional formations have
a comparative meaning ('higher, lower', etc.) but this does not
come from the suffix but from the nature of the base to which it
is attached. On the basis of these formations, and from similar cases like Lat. *dexter*, Gk. δεξιότης 'right, being on the right' there was evolved for this suffix a special comparative meaning, with which it is added as a secondary suffix to adjectives in Indo-Iranian and Greek (rarely elsewhere: O. Ir. *libiríther*, comp. of *lebor* 'long'): *ámátera- 'rawer', *cárutara- 'dearer', *tavásłara- 'stronger', etc.: Gk. ὁμότερος 'rawer', *koufóteros* 'lighter', etc. The fact that it is not widespread in Indo-European shows that this use of the suffix is comparatively late.

There are a few adjectives and nouns of adjectival origin in *-trä*: *atrá- 'eater' (for at-trä- from ad-), *vträ- 'enemy'; n. of a demon', *mitrá- 'friend'; n. of a god', *putrá- 'son' (cf. Oscan *puklüm* 'puerum', Paelignian *puclus*, with -*kl-<*-suffix; Lat. *puer* with simpler *r*-suffix); with retracted accent, *dámśtra- 'fang', *tärutra- 'victorious', *vihtrtra- 'who is carried about (Agni)', *johūtra- 'calling aloud', *uśtra- 'draught-animal, camel' (apparently from *vah*- with irregular sandhi, cf. Av. *vaśtar- 'drought animal' = *voḍhár*); with *vṛddhi*, *jaitra- 'victorious'; with gradation *-atra, ámatra- 'violent', *yája-tra- 'worthy of worship'.

(vii) With *-nd-* there are a number of nouns and adjectives, e.g. *stená- 'thief', *yajñá- 'sacrifice' (Gk. ἁγιός 'holy, pure'), *ghršá- 'heat', *nagná- 'naked', *usña- 'hot'; with radical accent *śvītra- 'white'. The most common use of the suffix is to make participles from certain verbal roots (about seventy): *bhinná- 'broken', *bhugná- 'bent', *pūrṇá- 'full', *mlāná- 'withered', etc.

With the gradation *-aná* there are formed a certain number of agent nouns: *karaṇá- 'active', *tvaraṇá- 'hastening', *krośaná- 'shouting', *vacaná- 'speaking', *svapana- 'sleeping', etc. These are distinguished by their accent in the usual way from the corresponding class of neuter action nouns: cf. *karaṇá- ' deed', *vācana- ' word'. In Germanic and Slavonic this formation makes passive participles (O. Sl. *nesenú ' carried', Goth. *fulgins ' hidden'). The contrast in accent between *karaṇa- nt. and *karaṇa- masc. is also found in Germanic, where the infinitive is the equivalent of this neuter type: Goth. *filhan* 'to hide', *fulgins 'hidden'.

Though the old type of accentuation is preserved frequently in these adjectives (as above), the system was breaking down, and radically accented forms occur, particularly from verbs of the
first class with fixed radical accent: *jávana- ‘hastening’ (jávati), *dyóltana- ‘shining’ (*dyótate), etc.

(viii) Corresponding to -vará and -urá thematic adjectival stems are made on the basis of the neuter van- suffix, with two gradations, -vana and -una. (a) vagvaná- ‘talkative’, *suśukvaná- ‘shining’, satvaná- ‘warrior’; from prepositional bases pra-vaná- ‘sloping forward, inclined’, udváná- ‘elevated’. (b) mi-thúná- ‘paired’ (Av. miḍwara- from alternating r-stem), šakuná- ‘bird’ (० śak, as prophesying the future), aruná- ‘red’, dāruṇá- ‘terrible’, with radical accent ārjuna- ‘white’ (Gk. ἀργυρός ‘silver’ from r-stem; cf. also Skt. ṛjrá- from uncompounded r-stem), piśuna- ‘slanderous, treacherous’ (cf. Gk. ἠπίπτως ‘bitter, inimical’, from simple r-stem), táruna- ‘tender’ (cf. Gk. τερή with uncompounded n-stem, τέρπε, uncompounded u-stem), viśuna- ‘various’; with penultimate accent, dharuna- ‘holding’, yatuna- ‘energetic’.

Fuller types of gradation are found in occasional forms: -avana in śrávana- ‘lame’ (Lat. cl-au-dus, etc.), lavaná ‘salty’; nt. salt (*slavana- : Lat. sal); -ona in śroṇā-, śloṇā- ‘lame’, syonā- ‘soft, agreeable’, duroṇa- ‘house’.

(ix) The suffix -iná parallel to -uná appears in a few words: vṛjiná- ‘crooked’, hariná ‘yellowish: deer’, aminá- ‘overpowering’, āśiná- ‘old’ (० aś-), sākiná- ‘strong’; with radical accent, dākṣina- ‘right’. With guna of the first element the combination appears as ena only in the feminine sāmidhené (ṛk) ‘connected with lighting the fire’. In Iranian the combination -aina is common: Av. izaena- ‘made of leather’, drvaena- ‘wooden’, etc. In Sanskrit there are certain further derivatives from such a suffix, namely the gerundives in -enya: vārenya- ‘desirable’, ikṣenya- ‘worthy to behold’, etc. The gradation -yana (cf. -vaná, etc.) is not found in Sanskrit, but it appears in Av. airyana- ‘Aryan’. The full grade of both suffixes (-ayana) is not found but certain patronymics with double vrddhi (Dākṣayana-, etc.) appear to be based on such a formation. The corresponding forms in Avestan (e.g. Vānjudālayana-) are without vrddhi.

(x) Adjectival formations from neuter man-stems are rare: nimnā- ‘low’; nt. depth’. The neuters nrmná- ‘manliness’, sumná- ‘kindness’ and dyumná- ‘brightness’ appear from their accentuation to be of adjectival origin. Formations of this type are commoner in other languages, e.g. Lat. alumnus
‘nursling’ (cf. *alimōnes, alimōnia*), Gk. ςτέρκευνος ‘hard’, the Avestan middle participles in -mna, yazmna-, etc., and the corresponding Greek participles with guṇa (φερόμενος, etc.). The two types differ in the same way as -vana/-una, -vara/-ura, etc. The corresponding Sanskrit participles with vṛddhi will be treated below.

(xii) There are a few thematic adjectives based on the suffix -san: kvśṇa- ‘black’ (: O. Pruss. kirsna-, O. Sl. črūnī), slakšṇa- ‘smooth’, akšṇa- ‘oblique’ (adv. akšṇayā), tikšṇa- ‘sharp’, kṛtśṇa- ‘all’; also a few substantives of adjectival origin: ṣyukšṇa- ‘covering for a bow’, ḍhālikṣṇa- ‘a kind of animal; a particular part of the intestines’, mṛtśṇa- masc. nt. ‘dust, powder’, ḍeṣṇa- nt. ‘gift’ (‘what is given’). With different gradations of suffix karāśṇa- ‘arm’, vadhāśṇa- masc. or nt. ‘deadly weapon’; Pūṣaṇa- beside Pūṣān. (cf. satvāṇa- and sātvan-), duvasaṇa- ‘going far (or the like)’.

(xi) Apart from cyauṭna- ‘stirring’, nt. ‘exploit’ (: Av. šyaostna-) the suffixes -tna and -tana are specialised in connection with adverbs of time (cf. the similar use of -tara in dtvātara-): nūtana-, nūṭa- ‘belonging to the present time’, pratā- ‘old’, saṅtāna- ‘eternal’, adyataṇa ‘of today’, hyastāna ‘of yesterday’, etc.

In the above examples we have a series of adjectives all formed in the same way by the addition of the accented thematic vowel to the various r- and n- suffixes. It has been pointed out that these suffixes were capable of taking the extension -t, and there are a few adjectival forms which are based on such an extension. An example from an r-stem is muhūrtā- ‘moment’ from muhur (: Av. mṛṣju- ‘short’, of time). Reference has already been made to certain formations showing Prakritic tendencies, karmaṭha-, harmuṭa. From the n-suffix extended by i there are a number of thematic formations which to judge by their accent were originally adjectival, vasanta- ‘spring’ (cf. vasaṛ), veṣantā- ‘pond’ (√ viś ‘where rainwater settles’) and with weak grade of suffix avatā- ‘well’. Based on the man- suffix there are hemantā- ‘winter’, sīmānta- ‘parting of the hair’ (: sīman- ‘id. boundary’) and aṣmanta- ‘fireplace’; on van/un, ṣakūnta- ‘bird’ beside ṣakūna- (also ṣakūni-, ṣakūnti- with i-suffix, cf. sākvan-, etc.). In pārvata- ‘mountain’, which we may compare with Hitt. peruna-, perunant- ‘rock’, there is another variant of the weak form of
this suffix (-\textit{wtt}t-), and, as often elsewhere, retraction of the accent. These formations are not very common and some of them from quite an early period were misunderstood as if they were compounds with \textit{anta}- ‘end’ as second member. For this reason the variant forms, \textit{vesānta}-, \textit{simānta}- occur. It is not unlikely that some other apparent compounds of this type, e.g. \textit{karmānta}- ‘work, business’ (Pa. \textit{kammanta}-), which only occur in the latter form, are corruptions of this type.

§ II. THEMATIC FORMATIONS WITH V\textit{RDDDHI} OF SUFFIX

We have seen above that there exist two quite distinct ways of making adjectives and agent nouns on the basis of the primitive neuter suffixes. In addition there is a series of formations which must be classified by themselves, since they participate in the characteristics of both the above types. They are thematic formations, frequently accented on the final syllable, but at the same time the suffix to which the thematic vowel is attached, has \textit{vrdhdi}, like the agent nouns of the type \textit{brahmān}- in the nom. sg. In this respect they represent a cross between the two systems, and they appear to be thematic extensions of formations of the \textit{brahmān}- type, based on the nom. sg. For instance we may explain Vedic \textit{karmāra}- ‘smith’ as follows. From the evidence of Hittite and Greek it is clear, as shown above, that the neuter \textit{man} - stems were originally alternating stems with nom. acc. sg. in -\textit{mar}. We have also seen that on the basis of all these neuter suffixes in \textit{r} and \textit{n}, simple and compound, adjectives and agent nouns could be made by the method illustrated by \textit{brahmān}-. Instances in connection with most of the suffixes were quoted. On this analogy we might expect on the basis of \textit{*kārmar} nt. (obl. base \textit{kārman}-) an agent noun \textit{*karmār}. Vedic \textit{karmāra}- is a thematic extension of such a form, and it has been already pointed out above that this tendency to thematisation, which is familiar from the later history of Indo-Aryan, had already been operating in the prehistoric period. Another formation of this type appears to be \textit{mārjārā- ‘cat’}, but they are exceedingly rare from \textit{r}-stems. On the other hand such formations are common in the case of the \textit{n}-suffixes, and in particular they have given rise to a series of middle participles in Sanskrit to which nothing exactly corresponds in the other languages.
From the simple \( n \)-suffix we have the suffix \(-\text{\'ná} \) which is used in the formation of middle participles of the type \textit{ad\'ná}-'eating', \textit{duh\'ná}-'milking', etc. Skt. \textit{ad\'ná}- is a thematic formation corresponding to the non-thematic Lat. \textit{edo-\'nîs}. A formation of exactly the same kind is Lat. \textit{colónus}, but such are exceedingly rare. There is final accent in the above examples, and in the perfect participles, \textit{bubudh\'ná}-'waking', etc.; but in the reduplicating presents and in the desiderative, initial accent.

Other formations of this type are rare: \textit{sam\'ná}-'same, common', a thematic extension of a masculine \( n \)-stem such as appears in Goth. \textit{sama} (as \textit{sámana}- nt. is an extension of a corresponding neuter \( n \)-stem) and \textit{\'pur\'ná}-'ancient'.

On the basis of the \textit{man} -suffix there are middle participles in -\textit{am\'ná}, \textit{y\'jam\'ná}-'sacrificing', etc. It is based on that form of the neuter \textit{men} -stem which is attached to the root with the thematic vowel: Gk. \textit{φέρεμεν} inf., etc. The \textit{\'vrddhi}ed masculine corresponding to this type are represented by such forms as Gk. \textit{\'Greek leader', \textit{κρ\'δεμων 'one who cares for'}. Thematic extension of such a type produces the Skt. type \textit{y\'jam\'ná}-. In the thematic conjugations to which this type of participle is attached, the stable verbal accent prevails. This type of participial formation is peculiar to Sanskrit, since the most closely related types of participle (Av. \textit{ya\'st\'mna}-, Gk. \textit{φερό\'μενος} are differently formed, in the manner indicated above. As has happened in other cases it was by adaptation that such formations acquired the status of middle participles, and this adaptation seems to have been comparatively late, since such participles are known from only a small section of Indo-European.

There is a parallel series of formations in -\textit{as\'ná}, most of which have the character of pseudo-participles. Such are: \textit{jr\'ayas\'ná}-'far-extending', \textit{n\'amas\'ná}-'rendering homage', \textit{bhiy\'s\'ná}-'fearing', \textit{m\'andas\'ná}-'rejoicing', \textit{\'vrdhas\'ná}-'growing', \textit{\'sv\'vas\'ná}-'strong', \textit{ar\'s\'\'as\'ná}-'injuring', \textit{sahas\'\'\'as\'ná}-'overpowering'. In many cases there exists a neuter -\textit{as}- stem beside these formations (\textit{jr\'yas\'-, n\'amas\'-, \'sv\'vas\'-, sahas\'-}). We have seen that the neuter \textit{as}-stems were capable of taking the extension \( \textit{\'n} \). On the basis of the \textit{san}-stem produced by such an extension (*\textit{n\'amas\'-}, etc.) these adjectives have been produced by the combined method of \textit{\'vrddhi} of the suffix and addition of the accented thematic vowel. It will also be observed that they bear
the same relation to the infinitives in -sen (Gk. φερευ, i.e. *φεροευ, *θηρεσεν) as exists between bhāramāna- and φερεμεν. To some extent they have acquired the character of participles, but the process of adaptation is incomplete. Unlike the participles in -māna they are not integrated with any tense stem, and the practice of classifying them with the participles of the s-aorist was more of an emergency measure than a serious attempt at their analysis.

In ārdhasānā- 'erect' we find -sānā used purely as an adjectival suffix. In Pa. rakshitanānasāna- 'whose mind is guarded', a formation of this type is used to provide an adjectival termination for a bahuvrīhi compound.

Suffixes of the same type are made on the basis of the other compound n-suffixes: -avāna- in bhṛgavāna- 'shining', vāsavāna- 'possessing riches', and in the proper names Āpnavāna- and Pṛthavāna-; -ayāna- in tūrvayāna- 'victorious' and Hārayāna- n. pr. Here belong the middle participles in -ayāna-, made in the Epic language from tenth class and causative verbs: cintayāna-, pālayāna-, etc. Though not used in the Vedic language, nor allowed in the Classical, this formation could be an ancient dialectal feature.

§ 12. VARIOUS EXTENSIONS OF THE r AND n SUFFIXES

The suffix -ā is regularly used to make the feminine of the thematic adjectives classified above. In addition it appears in a number of independent formations. In yōṣanā (once yōṣanā) 'woman' and kanyānā 'girl' it appears as an extension of feminizing n-stems (yōṣan- 'woman', Av. kainīn- 'girl'). The formation kanyālā which is also found shows that the fem. *kanyan- on which kanyānā is based was originally an alternating neuter. There are also words which may be of adjectival type though no corresponding masculine occurs, e.g. āśṭrā 'goad ('driver'). In addition there are a number in which -ā is simply an extension of old neutral r and n stems, adding nothing to the meaning, e.g. mātrā 'measure' (*mātar + ā). Others are sūrā 'intoxicating liquor', dhārā 'cutting edge', urvārā 'cultivated land' (Av. urvarā 'crop': an old r/n neut. of Indo-European is attested by Ir. arbor, nom. acc. pl. arban), vāgurā 'net', tāmīrā 'darkness', hōtrā 'oblation'. The same type is formed on the basis of the n-suffix: tīṣṇā 'thirst',
THE FORMATION OF NOUNS

sēnā 'army', sthūnā 'post', dhēnā 'milk-cow'. The gradation -anā is common, the words being accented either on the last syllable or the penultimate (for accent of ā-stems see below, p. 191): arhānā 'worth', barmānā 'might', vadhānā 'slaughter', vanānā 'desire'; asanā 'missile', jaranā 'old age', dyotanā 'brilliance', rašanā 'rein', hasanā. With these action nouns in -anā compare the Greek type θόνορ 'pleasure'.

There are a few such formations in -ī and -ū: rātrī- 'night', tandrī- 'sloth', nabhanā- 'spring'.

Stems are frequently made by the addition of i and u to the r and n suffixes.

(a) The suffix -i serves as an enlargement of r-stems in āngh-r-i masc. 'foot' (cf. O. Sl. noga 'foot' from different gradation of root) āhri- fem. 'hoe', āṣri- fem. 'edge, point', aṅgūri fem. 'finger'. Adjectives are arcātri- 'singing hymns', ātri- 'devouring', bhāri- 'abundant', śubhri- 'beautiful', jāsuri- 'exhausted', dāṣuri- 'pious', sahuri- 'mighty' (cf. Gk. ἔχυπσ, ἔχυπσ 'firm' with thematic suffix); nouns of adjectival origin, sūri- 'patron' (╯sū-, as the instigator of the sacrifice), vādhrī- 'a castrated animal' (: vadhar; Gk. ἔλπις 'id.').

The suffix -i is in the same way added to the n-suffix in (fem.) śrēni- 'row', śrōni- 'hip', sēni- (ṣrēni-) 'sickle', jūrni- 'heat', jyāni- 'loss', glāni- 'fading'; (masc.) ghīni- 'heat', yōni 'womb'. The suffix -ni is used to form a number of adjectives and nouns of adjectival origin. Such are asni- 'eating', vāhrni- 'carrying' (later 'fire'), tūrni- 'speeding', dharni- 'sustaining', preni- 'loving', pṛśni- 'speckled' (cf. Gk. περυκσ with thematic suffix); of adjectival origin, agni- 'fire'. With the gradation -ani there are such nouns as (fem.) dyotani- 'brilliance', varōni- 'track', arāni- 'firestick' (ar- 'to fit', alternating r in arari- 'door-leaf'). Adjectives are tarāni- 'swift', carāni- 'moving', etc. Similar formations from the compound n-suffixes are: hrādīnī- fem. 'hail', tuvīsvānī- 'powerful' (-vānī as secondary suffix), aratni- masc. 'elbow, cubit', īṣānī, epithet of Agni, turvānī- 'overcoming', bhurvānī- 'agitated', śusukvānī- 'shining', pārsānī- 'carrying across', sakṣānī- 'overcoming', carṣānī- 'active'; no longer of clear derivation, vrṣānī- 'ram', pāṛṣānī- fem. 'heel' (Gk. πτέρων, etc.).

(b) The u-suffix in combination with r produces occasional neuter nouns, āṣu 'tear' (Toch. A. ākār, plur. ākru-n), śmaṣru 'beard', and some adjectives, dhūrī 'suckling' (Gk. ἤλυς
THE FORMATION OF NOUNS


§ 13. THE SUFFIX s

The neuter suffix -as is better preserved than any of the other old neuter suffixes, and a larger number of words of this type have directly corresponding words in other IE languages than is the case with any other suffix. Such are: śrāvas- ‘fame’ (Gk. θῆκος, Ir. clú ‘id.’, O. Sl slovo ‘word’), jānas- ‘race’ (Gk. γένος, Lat. genus), mānas- ‘mind’ (Gk. μενός ‘spirit’), hāras- ‘heat’ (Gk. θῆρος ‘summer’), nābhas- ‘cloud, sky’ (O. Sl. nebo, Hitt. nepiš-), ārhas- ‘piles’ (Gk. ἢλκος, Lat. ulcus ‘ulcer’), vācas- ‘word’ (Gk. ἱές, ἡνθος), sādas- ‘seat’ (Gk. ἱός), pāsas- ‘male organ’ (Gk. νέος), ēdhas- ‘fuel’ (Gk. ἐλθος ‘burning’), sāhas- ‘strength’ (Goth. sigis ‘victory’), āpas- ‘work’ (Lat. opus), ānas- ‘wagon’ (Lat. onus ‘burden’), vānas- ‘charm, desire’ (Lat. venus). Other examples of this very frequent suffix are tāpas- ‘warmth’, prāyas- ‘pleasure’, tējas- ‘splendour’, dōhas- ‘milking’, hāras- ‘deed’, héas- ‘injury’ (hims-), etc.

The normal type has the regular radical accent of neuters, also guna of suffix. Accent shift in declension (type yākṛt, yaknās) has been abandoned, and the accent remains on the root throughout the declension. There are some variant types of gradation, namely (i) vṛddhi of root in āgas- ‘sin’ (Gk. ἁγος), āpas- ‘work’ (usually āpas-), vāsas- ‘garment’, vāhas- ‘offering’, pājas- ‘side, surface’; (ii) weak grade of root in ēuras- ‘breast’, śiras- ‘head’, jīvas- ‘speed’ (also jāvas-), mṛdhas- ‘contempt’, dūvas- ‘offering’; (iii) reduction of suffix in yōs- ‘welfare’ (Av. yaoś-, Lat. iūs), dōs- ‘arm’. These variants show that the working of apophony was at one time active in these formations, although in most cases it has been levelled out. The type with weakened grade of root is interesting since it can only be explained out of original terminational accent in
the oblique cases. There are rare examples of this switch of accent in declension, e.g. bhiyās- 'fear' (transfer to fem.) instr. sg. bhiṣā (beside bhiyāsā).

Some twenty-five dative infinitives are formed with this suffix. These are sometimes accented on the root, áyase 'to go', cákṣase 'to see', dhāyase 'to cherish', but much more commonly on the suffix, rcāse 'to praise', carāse 'to fare', jivāse 'to live', dohāse 'to milk', bhojāse 'to enjoy', sōbhāse 'to shine', spūrdhāse 'to strive', etc. The origin of this anomalous accentuation, which is in contrast both with usual fixed radical actent of as- stems and with the original termin­
tional accent of the oblique cases, is not at all clear. It may be noted that it recurs in other types of infinitive: dāvāne 'to give', vidmāne 'to know'. In a very few dative infinitives based on the s-suffix terminational accent is found with reduc­
tion both of root and suffix: jīṣe 'to conquer', stūṣe 'to praise'.

The normal locatival accent appears in upāsi 'in the lap' (only this form), cf. aksāṇi, etc. The related adverbial accent appears in purās 'in front', tirās 'across' and mithās 'mutually'; cf. avār, etc.

There are a few instances of transference of gender in the case of action nouns in -as. Such are, (masc.) tāvās- 'strength' (as well as 'strong' adj.), fem. jārās- 'old age', bhiyās- 'fear' and uṣās- 'dawn' (cf. Gk. ἡως). These appear mainly to be due to personification. The transference involves the adoption of the adjectival accent (as in bhūmān- 'abundance', etc., above).

This neuter suffix was capable from an early period of being extended by the addition of the neuter r- and n-suffixes. Examples of this (sīrṇās, doṣnās, gen. sg., etc.) have been given above, together with derivatives from such stems (malsarā-, mandasānā-, etc.). It could also be added to other suffixes, pro­
ducing a variety of compound suffixes, e.g.: -tas in rētas 'seed', srotas 'stream' (simple t-stem in sravat); -nas in rēkṇas- 'inheritance, property', āpṇas- 'wealth', ārṇas- 'flood', and, preceded by i and ī, drāvīnas- 'property', pārīnas- 'abundance'; -sas (repetition of the suffix) in dākṣas- 'ability, dexterity' (simple -as in daśas-yāti) and pākṣas- 'side' (simple -as in pājas); -vas in pīvas- 'fat', vārīvas- 'expanse'. This latter combination normally appears in the weak form -uṣ:
THE FORMATION OF NOUNS

árus- 'wound', áyus- 'length of life', tápus- 'heat', tárus- 'victory', yájus- 'sacrificial formula', vápus- 'beauty', párus- 'knot (of plants)', dhánus- 'bow'. An alternative n-extension appears in dhánvan- 'bow' and párvan- 'joint', and the simple u-stem áyu nt. appears as well as áyu-š- (cf. also aru- in arun-tuda-). In the same way s is added to the i-suffix to produce the compound suffix -iš. Of these neuter nouns jyótis- 'light', and vyáthis- 'perturbation' are accented on the root according to the general rule. In the rest the original accent system has been disturbed, and they appear with accent on the suffix: arcis- 'flame' (also transferred to feminine), chardis- 'protection, cover', barhís- 'bedding, straw' (Av. baraśiś-), rociš- 'light', var tíš- 'track', sócís- 'flame', sarpiš- 'butter' (Gk. ἕλπις with simple s-stem), haviš- 'oblation', kravís- 'raw flesh' (simple i-stem in ákravihasta- 'whose hands are not bloody', cf. also kravyā-, Lith. kraūjas, etc.).

The neuters in -as can be turned into adjectives and agent nouns by the usual process of suffixal accentuation associated with vṛddhi of the nom. sg. The neuter and adjectival types appear side by side in the case of apas- 'work': apás- 'active'; táras- 'energy, force': tarás- 'forceful'; yáśas- 'beauty, glory': yaśás- 'beautiful'; tyájas- 'leaving, something let go of': tyajás- 'offspring'; máhas- 'greatness': mahás- 'great'; ráksas- 'injury, damage': rakśás- 'demon'; dūvas- 'worship': dūvás- 'worshipping'. Other examples of the adjectival formation are tavás- 'strong', tosás- 'bestowing', dhvarás- 'deceiving', yajás- 'worshipping' and vesás- 'neighbour'. The same antithetic types appear in Greek: ψεῦδος 'falsehood': ἐψεῦδος 'false', etc.

From the compound suffix -vas there are some adjectival formations. The usual antithesis of the two types is seen by comparing várivas- nt. 'expanse' on the one hand, and okivás-masc. 'accustomed to, familiar' on the other. Formations of the same type are seen in mūdhvas- 'liberal', dāsvás- 'worshipping' and sāhvás- 'overcoming', which inflect like perfect participles. On the other hand in ṣbhrvas- 'skilful' and śīkvas- 'id.' are influenced in form and accentuation by the coexisting van-stems. There is a special connection between the adjectival suffixes -van and -vas in Sanskrit, because the latter is used to make the vocative singular of stems in the former (rīvāvas, vibhāvas, etc.; likewise of van-stems: rayivas, bhagavas,
In Avestan we find this suffix used to form the nom. sg. of vani-stems, amavād nom. sg. of amavant- 'strong'.

Apart from the above examples the adjectival -vās has been specialised in the formation of perfect participles: cakravās- 'having done', jigivās- 'having conquered', tāsthivās- 'having stood', babhūvās- 'having been', śuṣrūvās- 'having heard', etc. These stems show an ancient apophony in declension, even though the original terminational accent in the oblique cases which caused it has been given up (gen. sg. tāsthūsas for *tāsthūsās).

The adjectival vas-suffix was capable of taking the enlargement -u (cf. vagvanu- above, a parallel extension of -van). Examples are vibhāvasu- 'brilliant' and sacīvasu- 'powerful' based on the vas- stems which occur in the vocatives noted above. Compare also Pa. viddasu- 'wise' for *vidvāsau-.

The specialisation of the adjectival -vas in the formation of these participles has resulted in its being separated completely from the corresponding compound neuter suffix which, as we have seen, usually takes the form -uṣ. Consequently when adjectives are needed from these, it is done simply by adapting the neuters without change of form. As noted above (p. 138) this practice has parallels elsewhere and is old, although rare through the prevalence of the normal system. Examples are cākṣuṣ- 'eye; seeing', vāpuṣ- 'marvel; wondrous', tāpuṣ- 'heat; glowing'; without corresponding neuters, nāhuṣ- 'neighbour', mānuṣ- 'man', and with suffixal accent but not the corresponding gradation, vanuṣ- 'eager', jayuṣ- 'victorious' and dāksuṣ- 'flaming'.

There is an adjectival suffix -yās which likewise underwent early specialisation and became totally divorced from the neuter suffix -iṣ. This is used in Sanskrit, and in other languages for making comparative adjectives. Examples are: nāvyas- 'newer', pānyas- 'more wonderful', bhāvyas- 'more', rābhyaas- 'more violent', vāsyas- 'better', sāhyas- 'more powerful', sānyas- 'older', tāvyas- 'stronger'. Similarly Avestan has spanyāh- 'more holy', taṣṭyāh- 'stronger', āsyāh- 'swifter', etc. This formation is the regular one in Avestan, but in Sanskrit it is much less common than a formation in which the -yas- is added not directly to the root, but to the root plus suffix -i: kāniyās- 'younger' (cf. gen. pl. kani-n-ām), nāvīyas- 'newer', mrādiyās- 'softer', prādhiyās- 'broader', vārīyas- 'wider' (cf. vār-i-man
162 THE FORMATION OF NOUNS

'third'), tāriyas- 'very swift' (cf. tāri-śāni inf.), rāghiyas-
'swifter', māhīyas- 'greater', sthāvīyas- 'stouter' (cf. Av.
ranjyah-, mázyah-, staoyah-). In both accent and apophony all
these forms (excepting bhūyas- with weak grade of root) are
reminiscent more of the neuter types (cf. vārīma-, vāriyas-:
vārīyas). The reason for this is not clear, though it must have
some significance in the question of their origin.

Corresponding forms of the comparative exist in Italic and
Celtic: Lat. seniōr, O. Ir. siniu (IE *sényōs) 'older'. The e-
grade of the root and the o-grade of the suffix indicate an accent
identical with that of Sanskrit (sānyas-). In Greek the same
suffix appears in some cases: ἐλάσσων (*ἐλαχ-γος-ο-α) acc. sg.,
ἐλάσσους (*ἐλαχ-γος-ο-ες) nom. pl., but in other cases a -yon-
suffix with similar function appears: ἐλάσσων, ἐλάσσους, etc.
In Greek, as in Sanskrit, a suffixal i may be inserted before the
comparative suffix: ἐλάσσων 'sweeter'. In Germanic a compound
suffix -is-on- is utilised: Goth. batiza 'better', etc.

The weak form of the suffix (-is-) could make adverbs with
comparative sense, e.g. Lat. magis 'more'. It also forms the
basis of superlatives which are made by the addition of the
further suffix -tha (elsewhere -to): kāniṣṭha- 'smallest, young-
est', jāviṣṭha- 'most speedy', nēdiṣṭha- 'nearest' (Av. naz-
diśa-), āsiṣṭha- 'swiftest' (Av. āsiṣṭa-), ojīṣṭha- 'strongest' (Av.
āoṣṭa-), gāriṣṭha- 'heaviest', etc. As with the comparative the
accent of the superlatives is invariably on the root and the
apophony is according. Superlatives of the same formation are
found also in Greek (ἡορτος = svādiṣṭha- 'sweetest') and in Ger-
manic (Goth. frumists 'first', etc.).

As with the other neuter suffixes, adjectives and nouns of ad-
jectival type can be made by the addition of the accented
thematic vowel to the neuter s-suffix. These are of the usual two
types, an older type in -sā with reduction of the suffix on account
of the following accent, and a more recent type in -asā formed
from the neuter as-stems with guna of suffix. Unlike some other
suffixes of similar structure, -sā never became very productive or
developed independently to any extent.

sā: ruksā- 'shining' (rōcas- 'light'), dyukṣā- 'bright' (for
*dyutsā- after ruksā-; cf. also āvākṣam for āvātsam, etc.),
prkṣā- 'nourishment' (prkṣ- 'nourishment', a reduced s-stem
which has been adapted as a fem. root noun), ghrāmsā- 'heat of
the sun', vatsā- 'calf' (Gk. Fētōs 'year'), vyksā- 'tree'
(válsā- ‘foliage’), yakṣā- ‘supernatural being’ (yásas- ‘beauty’), śūṣā- ‘strong’ (śūvas- ‘strength’), pākṣā- ‘side’ (pājus- ‘side, surface’), rūkṣā- ‘rough, dry’ (śrūs-), árapsā- ‘banner’ (Av. drafśa-; cf. drāpi- ‘mantle’), drapsā- ‘drop’ (for *drabžha-, cf. Gk. τρέφω, etc.), grapsa- and glapsa- ‘bunch’ (*grabžha-, śrgrabḥ-), sakṣā- ‘overpowering’ (sáhas- ‘strength’), hamsā- ‘goose’ (Gk. χίβα, etc.). In a smaller number of words, chiefly substantives, the accent appears on the root, áṃsā- ‘shoulder’ (Lat. umerus with guna of suffix), útsa- ‘spring’ (Gk. υδός nt.), rksā- ‘star’ (arc- ‘to shine’), dākṣa- ‘clever’ (cf. daus-yādī), gītsa- ‘dexterous, able’.


Thematic extensions of neuter as-stems, such as are common in the case of the suffixes r and n, are rare if they exist at all. It is possible that yāvasa- (masc. and nt.) might be of this origin, but otherwise such neuter nouns in -asa as occur are oxytone, a fact which indicates their adjectival origin: aṅkasā- ‘flank’, avasā- ‘refreshment’, atasā- ‘bush’, parīnasā- ‘abundance’.

Adjectival derivations with vṛddhi are áyasā- ‘made of metal’, vāyasā- ‘bird’, mānasā- ‘belonging to the mind’ and so forth.

Similar adjectival formations from the is- and us- stems occur: taviṣā- ‘strong’, bhariṣā- ‘rapacious’, mahiṣā- ‘great; buffalo’; paruṣā- ‘knotty (as reed); rough’, paruṣā- ‘grey, speckled white’ (Av. paurusā-; cf. Engl. fallow, etc.), aruṇā- ‘red’; with vṛddhi, vāpuṣā- ‘wonderful’. The radical accent of nāhusā- ‘neighbour’, mānuṣa- ‘man’ and vápuṣa- ‘wondrous’ is connected with the fact that the corresponding us-stems are themselves used adjectivally without change of accent. Similar accent is found in táruṣa- ‘overcoming’ and pūruṣa-, puruṣa- ‘man’ (related to pūrī- ‘man; n. of a tribe’ as mānuṣa- is related to mānu-).

There are a few closely related formations in -iṣa and -uṣa (śrā + s + a), rjīṣā- epithet of Indra, aṅgūṣā- ‘hymn’ and the neuters pūrīṣa- ‘rubbish’, kāṛīṣa- ‘dry cow-dung’ and pīyūṣa- ‘beest milk’ (cf. pīpyūṣi and Gk. πῦος <*pyūsos).
There are a number of miscellaneous stems made by the addition of various suffixes to s-stems. Such are: bhāśā ‘fear’, maniṣā ‘understanding’, śavasi ‘strength’, tāviṣi ‘id’, sarasi- ‘lake’; pluṣī ‘flea’ (*plu-), dhāsi- ‘abode’, sānasi- ‘victorious’, dhārnasi- ‘strong’, atasi- ‘beggar’; dākṣu-, dhākṣu- ‘burning’; bhūjiṣyā- ‘free’; the rare infinitival forms avyathiṣyāi ‘not to tremble’ and rohiṣyāi; mastiṣka- ‘brain’; nariṣṭā ‘joking’; upāṣthā- ‘lap’ (cf. upāṣi), vaniṣṭhu- ‘entrails’ (cf. Germ. wanst; different suffix in Lat. venter). Enlargement with the suffix -ti appears in a fair number of examples: gābhasti- ‘hand’, palasti- ‘grey-haired’ (cf. palitā- ‘id’), pulasti- ‘having straight hair’ (cf. pulaka- ‘bristling of the hairs of the body’), Agāstī n. of a ṛṣi. This suffixal combination is well developed in Slavonic, where, however, it makes abstract nouns (O. Sl. dlūgosti ‘length’, etc.). It appears also in Hittite with the same function: dalugasti- ‘length’. On the other hand it appears occasionally in Latin in adjectival use, as in Sanskrit: agrestis ‘rural’, caelestis ‘celestial’. From is- and uṣ- stems there appear formations of the same kind: nāviṣṭi- ‘hymn of praise’, pāniṣṭi- ‘admiration’, tatanuṣṭi- ‘spreading out’.

§ 14. The Suffix t

The suffix t existed with functions like the above simple suffixes, but as an independent suffix it has become much rarer. It also very rarely provides neuters, since the tendency was from a very early period to incorporate the stems ending in occlusives into the common gender system. Its original function as one of the primary neuter suffixes is seen most clearly when it serves as an extension of the neuter r- and n- stems, e.g. in Skt. śākṣi, yākṣi and in Gk. χείμα, gen. sg. χείματος ‘winter’ (but the corresponding -nt- stem in Hittite, gimmanṭ- ‘winter’, is common gender). Similarly the primitive suffix t on which the suffix -t-ar has been built may be presumed to have been neuter. Apart from this there remain in the various languages a few sporadic instances of a neuter suffix t: Skt. pīṣat- ‘drop’, upatāpat- ‘fever’; Gk. μέλι (for *μελύτ), Hitt. milti ‘honey’; Gk. γάλα, γάλακτος, Lat. lac, lactis ‘milk’, Lat. caput ‘head’.

The use of the simple suffix t, in the common gender, to make action nouns and abstracts, is fairly well developed in Hittite, e.g. kartimmiatt- ‘anger’, duškaratt- ‘joy’. They are rare elsewhere, but where they occur such nouns have normally acquired
the feminine gender: Skt. nákt- ‘night’, Lat. nox, Gk. νύξ; Lat. quies, salús, etc. Gk. θέμος, χάπος.

The reason that such formations are so rare is that as a general rule they have been supplanted by extensions of the simple *t*-suffix, namely by *ti* in the case of action nouns, and by *tā* in the case of abstracts. In Skt. dasāt ‘decade’ beside dasātī- ‘id.’ we have an example of the unextended and extended form side by side. An isolated avtrat- ‘absence of heroes’ (avtrate dat. sg. RV. 7.1.19) represents a type that has otherwise been universally supplanted by the compound suffix *tā*.

A very small number of feminine nouns in -*t* appear in Sanskrit: sravāt-, vahāt-, both meaning ‘stream’, saścāt ‘obstacle’, vēhāt- ‘cow which miscarries’. Of these the last is presumably adjectival and the others could be. A masc. adjectival form appears in vāghāt- ‘worshipper’. This adjectival suffix appears elsewhere, cf. Lat. pedes ‘footman’, eques ‘horseman’.

In nāpāt- ‘grandson’ there is a formation with vrddhied suffix which may be compared with the similar formations analysed above. This stem is also interesting because it retains an ancient type of declensional apophony. A reduced grade appears in Skt. nādbhyaś dat. abl. pl., Av. naptō abl. sg., nafśu loc. pl. (with reduction of the three consonant groups). There are other examples of the vrddhied suffix in adjectival formations in other languages: Av. rāvas-çarāt- ‘moving in the open country’, Gk. ἀργής ‘shining’ (ἀργήτ- or ἀργετ- in the oblique cases, cf. the two types δοτηρα and πουμένα), πένης ‘poor’, γυμνής ‘lightly armed soldier’, Lat. ariēs ‘ram’ (gen.-ētis), AS. hæle ‘hero’ (χαλέβ). They differ from the vrddhied formations involving the other suffixes only in that they take the nominative -*s*, which is the normal practice with stems in occlusives. Skt. padāti- ‘foot soldier’ and pātti- ‘id.’ are both *i-* extensions of a *t*-stem; the two different forms derive from the declensional apophony of the primitive stem.

In one special case the suffix *t* remains a living formative in Sanskrit. It has been noted above (§ 2) that roots ending in the vowels *i*, *u* and *r* cannot, like other roots, function without any addition as nominal stems. Where other roots do so they invariably add the suffix *t*: stūt- ‘praise’, samīt- ‘battle’, niyūt- ‘team’, vṛt- ‘army, host’, rīt- ‘stream’, mit- ‘post’, hṛt- ‘treachery; foe’. These stems, like the root stems, may be used either as action nouns (in which case they are feminine) or
agent nouns; in the latter use they also appear most frequently as the latter members of compounds: *devastūt- ‘praising the gods’, *viśvajit- ‘all-conquering’, *jyotīśkīt- ‘making light’, etc., etc. Like the root stems they have generalised the weak grade in declension.

In this way the *t- formations have come to form one system with the root nouns, since they are used in identical circumstances and with exactly the same function as the root stems in the case of other roots. For this reason the Indian grammarians do not class the *t which appears here as an ordinary suffix (*pratyaya-), but consider it to be a special addition or augment (*āgama-). The suffix *t has acquired this character of augment in a number of other formations, notably in the gerunds in -ya (*jītya ‘having conquered’, etc., as opposed to *dṛśya ‘having seen’), and in the adjectival formations in *van (*kṛvan- ‘active’ as opposed to *vājvan- ‘worshipping’). In these cases too it appears to strengthen the roots ending in i, u and r. We shall see below that the same kind of development has taken place, and to a greater degree, with the suffix *i.

The compound suffix *-it appears in a few examples, *yoṣīt- ‘woman’, *divīt- ‘brilliance’ (whence *divīmatī - ‘brilliant’), *sarīt- ‘river’, *harīt- ‘green, yellow’, *rohīt- ‘red’. These are accentuated on the suffix, but this does not agree with the apophony; cf. the type *sociṣ-. The adjectives *harīt- and *rohīt-, which must originally have been accentuated on the root, were at one time stems which could be used indifferently as nouns or adjectives. Of these the adjectives *hārīta- and *rōhīta- are thematic extensions, and they preserve the original accent of the simpler forms, because they belong to that small class of adjectives which do not take the normal adjectival accent owing to the adjectival character of the stems on which they are based (cf. *vāpūṣ-, *vāpūsa- above).

A suffix *-ut appears in *Marūt- n. of the storm gods (*mar- ‘to shine’: cf. *mārīci- ‘ray’ and Gr. μαρμαίρω, ἀμαρόνω), also in *garmūt- fem. ‘a kind of grass’, and *garūt- which is found only in the derivative *garūmatī - ‘winged’. The gamma grade of this suffix *-vat is employed in the middle cases of the perfect participles (*vidvādhyas, etc.) and the nom. acc. sg. nt. (*vidvāt). In Greek it is used throughout the masculine (*eίδως, *eίδότος, etc.).

A few adverbs are made with this suffix: *sanat ‘of old’, *pradakṣinīt ‘moving to the right’, *cikitīt ‘carefully’. Simi-
larly Av. *paityaogot ‘backwards’, etc. An adverbial suffix -tas has been abstracted from the ablative singular of t-stems. Originally the type *dakṣinatās ‘from the right’ was to be analysed *dakṣinat-ās (cf. pra*dakṣiṇit for the t-suffix in connection with this word). With the growing obsolescence of the t-suffix, formations of this type came to be analysed *dakṣina-tās, etc., and the -tas thus abstracted became very productive in the formation of adverbs with ablative meaning: mukhataś ‘from the mouth’, agrataś ‘in front’, sarvātās ‘on all sides’, lātās ‘from there’, paritās ‘around’, etc.

Adjectives in -tā arose in the usual way from the addition of the accented thematic vowel to t-stems; so, pṛṣatā ‘speckled’ from pṛṣat- ‘spot, drop’. Since t-stems have mostly disappeared, such adjectives appear normally as independent formations. Some have the suffix in the form -ata, e.g. darśatā- ‘visible’ (Gk. ὄσκερος), yajatā- ‘to be adored’, bharatā, ‘(to be maintained), epith. of Agni, n. of a tribe’, rajaś- ‘silver’ (cf. Av. ṛjavata-), others in the form -tā, trṣatā- ‘rough’, śyetā- ‘white’, ānapta- ‘not wet’ (Av. napta- ‘wet’), dūtā- ‘messenger’, sūlā- ‘charioteer’, nāpita- ‘barber’ (for *smāpita-, cf. Pa. nahāpita-); in other cases it is preceded by some other suffix (i, u, etc.): tigitā- ‘sharp’, pālitā- ‘grey-haired’, amanyuta- ‘free from anger’, ādbhuta- ‘wonderful’, kapōta- ‘bluish-grey; pigeon’. Mention has already been made of its addition to the suffixes n and r (vasanta-, muhurtā-). The colour words śārita- and rōhita- have a radical accent due to the original use of the simple t-stems as adjectives. Radical accent appears in some other examples, āsita- ‘black’, ēla- ‘speckled’, mārta- ‘mortal’.

The colour adjectives either substitute an n-suffix in the feminine: ēnī, śyēnī, hārīnī, or add n with change of t to k: āsīknī, pāliṅknī. Here there are apparently traces of an old alternation corresponding to that of r- and n- stems.

Apart from these adjectives the suffix -tā is specialised in the formation of past passive participles, a function which appears also in the other IE languages. There is a reduction both of root and suffix before the final accented ā (bhrītā-, as opposed to bharatā-) which is characteristic of the most ancient formations. These participles are very numerous and are formed from all roots except a small number which take -nā: śrutā- ‘heard’ (Gk. κλύτος, Lat. in-clitus, Ir. cloth), srutā- ‘having flowed’ (Gk. ἱντός), tatā- ‘stretched’, (Gk. ταρός, Lat. lentic), hatā-
'slain' (Av. O. Pers. āta-), gatā- 'gone' (Gk. βατός 'that can be traversed'), niktā- 'washed' (Gk. ἀνυπτός 'unwashed'), usṭā- 'burnt' (Lat. ustus), vṛttā- 'turned' (Lat. versus), ṛṣṭā- 'seen' (AS. torht 'clear'), miṣṭa- savoury (of food) <miks-, cf. Lat. mixtus.

As elsewhere the specific function of this suffix is not inherent in it from the beginning but acquired by adaptation. The fundamental meaning of klutō- for instance, like that of any other adjectival form of the same type, is no more than 'one connected with hearing'. In Greek the specialisation of meaning has not gone so far, since beside a passive sense, an active sense is frequently found: δυνατός 'possible' and 'able', σαντός 'intelligible' and 'intelligent', etc. In Sanskrit an active sense is seen in sūtā- 'charioteer' ('driver', i.e. 'one connected with *sū-t- 'driving', from sū-, suvāti) and in nāpītā- 'barber'.

The reason for the rarity of the simple suffix -t is that it has normally been replaced by compound formations in which a further suffixal element is added to the t. The commonest of these, which makes verbal abstracts is -ti. This is the commonest of all the suffixes making verbal abstracts or action nouns, and words formed with this suffix show less tendency to develop a concrete sense than is the case with other suffixes. These words are feminine, in contradistinction to the action nouns formed with the suffixes previously discussed, which are neuter. In this respect they follow the simple t-stems which in most IE languages are feminine, and in Hittite common gender. The only traces of neuter ti-stems that can be found are the pronominal forms kāti 'how many', tāti 'so many', yāti 'as many' which are such in form though they function differently. It is clear that those stems were among the earliest to break away from the neuter system proper to action nouns as the gender system developed.

The process of the enlargement of t-stems by the addition of the suffix -i is seen in such pairs as samit-, sāmiti- 'assembly'; nākt-, nakti- 'night'; dasāt-, dasāti- 'decade'.

The accentuation of these action nouns is subject to no rule. It may appear on the root as in āddhi- 'prosperity', gāti- 'going', jūṣṭi- 'satisfaction', dhṛti- 'firmness', rāti- 'enjoyment', vṛddhi- 'growth', sākti- 'power', sānti- 'peace', or somewhat more frequently on the suffix: ुत- 'helping', ḫṣit- 'abode',...
THE FORMATION OF NOUNS

jūti- 'speed', dhūti- 'thought', puṣṭi- 'prosperity', bhakti- 'sharing', bhṛti- 'maintenance', mati- 'thought', stuti- 'praise'. This lack of rule in the accentuation is characteristic also of the simple -i stems, as will be noted below. In Greek the accent is normally on the root, but since the radical vowel in these formations, in Greek as in Sanskrit, appears always in the weak grade, it cannot have been there unchanged from the beginning. Compared with the general system—accent and guna of root for action nouns and vice versa for agent nouns—these formations present a striking anomaly, and it is not now possible to say what particular developments in early Indo-European were responsible for this state of affairs.

Examples of this formation are abundant also in Greek and a number of parallel forms can be quoted: ápaciti- 'retribution', Gk. ἀπόριστος 'id'; kṣiti- 'dwelling', Av. Śiti-, Gk. κρίως 'settlement'; kṣiti- 'destruction', Gk. φθίως; ā-huti- 'oblation', Gk. Χίως 'pouring out'; sruti- 'flowing', Gk. πός; pluti- 'floating', Gk. πλωσ; gāti- 'going', Gk. βάος, cf. Goth. ga-gumps; tāti- 'stretching, row', Gk. τάος. In Latin they have been replaced by a still further developed suffix -ti(m)-, made by adding the vrddhiedn-suffix to the -ti. These are feminines because the ti-abstracts on which they are based were feminine: mentio (Skt. mati-) iunctio (Skt. yukt- , Gk. γίνοσ), etc.

The gradation -ati appears in a number of examples: amhati- 'distress', ārṣati- 'appearance', mithati- 'conflict', vasati- 'abode', pakṣati- 'root of the wing'.

A few datives of ti-stems are classed as infinitives: ištāye 'to refresh', pūtāye 'to drink', vītāye 'to enjoy', sātāye 'to win', utāye 'to help'.

There are also a number of ti- stems functioning as agent nouns, mainly in the early language: jnāti- 'relation', (Lith. gentūs 'id'), patti-, padāti- 'footsoldier', addhāti 'sage', rāti- 'liberal', dhūti- 'shaker', sāpti- 'steed', dhṛṣṭi- 'bold', pūti- 'putrid', vāṣṭi- 'eager'; amati- 'poor', sthapāti 'governor; architect', vrkāti- 'robber', rámati- 'liking to stay', pāti- 'master'.

The position of the accent is subject to no rule, as is the case with the action nouns, and the two classes are not distinguished in the usual way.

1 From pā- 'to protect, govern'. That the i in this word is suffixal is evident from its absence in Gk. διον. Therefore pāti- is to ἡρα (nyapa-, etc.) as vykāti- to vyka-.
The adjectival formations are occasionally extended by the addition of suffixal *n, abhimātin*—"insidious" (*abhimāti*—"id"), *rātin*—"liberal" (*rāti*—"id"). Compare the similar extension in Latin in the action nouns.

A suffix *-tu* is produced in the same way by the addition of *u* to the simple *t*-suffix. These are less numerous than the *ti*-stems, and morphologically less altered from the ancient system. There are for instance still a number of neuters preserved: *dātu*—"division", *vāstu*—"abode" (Gk. *(F)ārav*—"city"), *vāstu*—"thing", *māstu*—"sour cream" (cf. Gallo-Lat. *mesga*, Ir. *medg* with different suffix). A neuter formation in *-tu* used adverbially appears in *jātu*—"at all, ever". These neutrals have the regular radical accent, associated with *guna*, which is the characteristic of neuter action nouns. The same accent and *guna* appears also in the following masculines (this is the gender which the non-neuter action nouns in *-tu* normally adopt; contrast the feminine *ti*-stems): *ōtu*—"weft", *tāntu*—"thread", *dhātu*—"element", *sāktu*—"groats", *sētu*—"bund, dam", *sōtu*—"libation". Occasionally suffixal accent appears: *gātu*—"way", *hetu*—(but with *guna* of root), *piṭu*—"nourishment". *Guna* of the first element of the suffix appears in *edhatu*—"welfare", *vahatu*—"wedding" and *kr-ātu*—"intelligence" (*kr*-—"to think, commemorate"). There are very few feminines: *vāstu*—"morning", *sātu*—"giving birth", *jivātu*—"life".

Agent nouns and adjectives are rare: *māntu*—"councillor" and *dhātu*—"suitable for sucking" do not have the proper adjectival accent, which contrasts with the formations in simple *-u*. Regular suffixal accent appears in *tapyatu*—"glowing" and *siṣāsatu*—"desirous of obtaining".

The suffix *-tu* is a rich source of infinitives. These are regularly accented on the root which normally takes *guna*. They appear in the accusative, dative and genitive.

(1) The accusative infinitive in *-tum* is the only one used in the classical language: *kārtum*—"to do", *gāntum*—"to go", *dātum*—"to give", *srōtum*—"to hear", *nētum*—"to lead", *mōktum*—"to release", etc., etc. In the Vedic language which is rich in other kinds of infinitives, this formation is exceedingly rare, appearing in some five examples in the *Ṛgveda*, and in five others in the *Atharvaveda*. It is equivalent in form to the Latin supine, *factum, itum*, etc.

(2) Over thirty dative infinitives formed with this suffix are
THE FORMATION OF NOUNS

found in the Vedic language. They are invariably accented on the root which takes guṇa (except suktave 'to bring forth' beside sāvite: ētave 'to go', kārta 'to do', dātave 'to give', māntave 'to think', yāṣṭave 'to sacrifice', etc.

(3) The ablatives occur less frequently: hāntos 'from being struck', ētos 'from going', etc. The formation appears occasionally also in a genitive sense, kārta 'doing' (with madhyā), dātos 'giving' (with iṣe).

In addition to these three types there also occurs occasionally in the Veda a type in -tava: ētava 'to go', hāntava 'to slay'. It has the anomaly of a double accent which has not been explained, and it is always followed by the particle -u. It appears to be based on a thematic extension of the guṇated tu-suffix (*ētava- nt.) with the old form of the dative singular (Av. -āi).

The neuter suffix -tvā which must in origin be a thematic formation based on the tu-suffix, is frequent, and is used exclusively in the formation of secondary abstract nouns: amṛtatvā 'immortality', devatvā 'divinity', sācitvā 'purity', śatrutvā 'enmity', etc. The accent of these secondary formations has nothing to do with the old system, but comes from the tendency to evolve a special taddhita accent for secondary neuters which has been noticed above. Avestan has such formations, though not abundantly (rātuṭva 'office of rātu', etc.), also a number of primary formations with this suffix, vāṭva 'herd', stāṭva 'prayer'. Primary formations with this suffix are represented in Sanskrit by only a few forms and these are confined to Vedic, namely pētva 'ram, wether', and a series of words in which -pītvā is combined with various prefixes. The commonest of these are prapītvā 'going forth, time of going forth, morning' and abhipītvā 'coming in, coming home in the evening, evening time'.

The further extended suffix -tvand appears in the Veda in the same sense: mahītvand 'greatness', sakhītvand 'friendship', etc. Though ignored by classical Sanskrit it turns up again in Middle Indo-Aryan (-ītana), and has been preserved even to the modern period (Hi. -ītan).

There are some thematic adjectives based on the suffix -tv which are used as gerundives in the Vedic language: kārtva 'to be done', jētva 'to be won', vāktva 'to be said', sānvātvā 'to be gained', hāntva 'to be slain'. Likewise in Avestan,
jaṭwa- ‘to be slain’. These are all accented on the root contrary to the general rule for adjectives. The classical type in -tavya (kariāvya-, alternatively karīvya- ‘to be done’, etc.) is made from the gunated tu-suffix with addition of the adjectival suffix -ya. In Greek yet another variant (-tewos) occurs, ποιητέος, etc.

By yet another enlargement of the -tu suffix the gerunds in -tva are provided which are used with uncompounded verbs. These appear with the root normally in its weakened form, and with the accent on the suffix: īśtvā ‘having sacrificed’, kṛtvā ‘having made’, gatvā ‘having gone’, tīrtvā ‘having crossed’, ḍṛṣṭvā ‘having seen’, pītvā ‘having drunk’, snātvā ‘having bathed’, etc., etc.

These formations have at first sight the appearance of being instrumentals of action nouns in -tu. As such their form would be in order, assuming they are ancient forms, since originally the accent was on the termination in the weak cases and this caused reduction of the root. The chief difficulty against such an explanation is the co-existence in the Veda of a gerund in -tvi. This formation is actually more frequent in the Rgveda than the gerund in -tva-: kṛtvā ‘having done’, gatvā ‘having gone’, bhūtvā ‘having become’, etc. The latter formation cannot be explained as an instrumental or any other case ending of a verbal noun in -tu. Since the explanation of both forms must run on parallel lines, it follows that the forms in -tva are also not case endings. The only explanation possible is that these are the suffixes ā and ī, and the fact that they function here in the same manner is in accordance with the close relation between them elsewhere. So we must have here two compound suffixes used adverbially with the final accent that usually appears in the adverbial use of nominal stems (prātār, etc.).

The suffix -tā, an extension with the ā-suffix of the simple t-suffix, is specialised in the making of abstract nouns from adjectives. As a primary suffix it is very rare, e.g. citā ‘layer’, more common in Greek, γενετή, etc. The usual type is represented in the Veda by such examples as devātā ‘divinity’, puruṣātā ‘humanity’, bandhūtā ‘relationship’, vasūtā ‘wealthiness’, etc. In classical Sanskrit they are made freely from all adjectival stems: kṛṣṇatā ‘blackness’, pūrnatā ‘fullness’, dirghatā ‘longness’, etc. The suffix appears with the same function in other IE languages: Russ. polnota ‘fullness’ O. Sl.
I

The Formation of Nouns

\[ \text{crinota} \] 'blackness', \[ \text{dlůgota} \] 'length', OHG. \[ \text{fullida} \] 'fullness', Goth. \[ \text{diupīpa} \] 'depth', Lat. \[ \text{iuventa} \] 'youth'.

This suffix could be strengthened by the further addition of suffixal \( t \), producing the suffix \(-tāt\). Examples (found only in the Rgveda) are \[ \text{uparātāt} \] 'proximity', \[ \text{devātāt} \] 'godliness', \[ \text{vrkātāt} \] 'wolfishness, murderousness', \[ \text{sarvātāt} \] 'completeness'. The same suffix appears in Avestan (\[ \text{haurvātāt} \] 'wholeness', etc.), Greek (\[ \text{βαρύτης} \] 'heaviness', etc.), where it completely replaces \(-tā\) as a secondary suffix, and Latin (\[ \text{civītās} \], etc.).

Just as the simple suffix \(-t\) could be extended by the addition of suffixal \(-i\) (\[ \text{daśāt}-, \text{daśātī}-\]), so the compound could be extended to \(-tāt\). Examples are \[ \text{jyeṣṭātātī} \] 'superiority', \[ \text{devātātī} \] 'divinity', \[ \text{sarvātātī} \] 'completeness', \[ \text{vasūtātī} \] 'wealth', \[ \text{satyātātī} \] 'truth', \[ \text{sāntātī} \] 'good fortune'. The last two may also be used as adjectives (like certain formations in \(-ti\)).

\section{§15. The Suffix \( m \)}

The suffix \( m \) plays an important part in nominal derivation in Sanskrit and the other IE languages. It has already appeared in the groups \(-mar, -man, -mant, -min\). It is also productive of thematic adjectives in \(-mā\), and occasionally appears in other formations. The problem with this suffix is that, in contradistinction to all the others, it is hardly ever found as a simple, uncompounded suffix, although the various compound suffixes mentioned must have been formed, like other compound suffixes, by additions to just such a simple suffix. The only surviving examples appear to be the numeral stems \[ \text{saptā} \] and \[ \text{dāśa} \], Lat. \[ \text{septem}, \text{decem} \], IE \*[\text{septī}] (earlier \*[\text{septī}] on account of apophony), \[ \text{dēkm} \]. Here the suffix appears in its weak form like the \( n \)-suffix in \[ \text{nāma} \] (Lat. \[ \text{nōmen} \], etc., and these numerals are of exactly the type as the primary neuter nouns.

The frequency of \( m \) in various derivative suffixes shows that it must have originally been common as a primary neuter suffix. The reason that it does not appear as such, is that it has been replaced by other formations, and this has come about in two ways. The first process is illustrated by the juxtaposition of \[ \text{yugām} \] nom. acc. sg. nt. 'yoke' and \[ \text{yugmā} \] 'paired'. Like other thematic adjectival suffixes \[ \text{yugmā} \] is to be analysed \[ \text{yugm-ā} \] and the consonantal \( m \)-stem on which it is based is none
other than the neuter *yugām*. The *m* in the neuter *yugām* was originally the *m*-suffix, but owing to similarity with the accusative singular of thematic stems (originally all adjectival and of common gender), it came, by an easy process of adaptation, to be treated as a termination, with the consequence that formations of this kind were turned into neuter thematic stems and declined accordingly. The neuter thematic type then became productive, particularly in forming extensions of neuter consonantal stems (*-ana, -atra*, etc., above).

The relation that exists between *yugām* and *yugmā* appears also between *bhayām* 'fear': *bhīmā*- 'fearful' and *mādhyamnt. middle: *madhyam-ā*- adj. 'being in the middle'. The adv. *sādam* can be explained as a neuter *m*-stem in view of the derivative *sādam-* 'seat'; likewise *āram, ālam* 'fittingly, suitably' from the IE root *ar-* 'to fit' by comparison with derivatives like Gk. ἀρμός.

Ancient thematic neuters in IE are very rare. Skt. *yugām* is shown to be ancient by the correspondence of Gk. ζυγός, Lat. *iugum*, etc. Another ancient word is Skt. *paddm* 'step', Gk. *peδov*, Hitt. *pedan*, which may be presumed to have originated in the same way, though direct evidence is lacking in this case. Gk. ζυγον 'work' with the same rare and no doubt ancient apophony as *peδov* is to be classed with it. It should be noted that such primitive thematic neuters, which according to this theory are transformed *m*-stems, are not only exceedingly rare, but they are the only class which provide certain word equations between different IE languages. Thus the thematic neuters of secondary origin, namely (1) extensions of neuter consonantal stems and (2) the still later though numerous taddhita formations, are of later origin. It would be difficult otherwise to explain the absence of detailed agreement among these formations between the various languages. In this connection also we must note the complete absence of the latter two formations in Hittite.

The rarity of the thematic neuter formations of the type *paddm, yugām* shows that, although this was one way by which the primitive *m*-stems were removed, and although it provides the only plausible explanation for the existence of neuter thematic stems at all, this was not the only, or indeed the main way by which this was done. The other process which operated and which accounted for many was the extension of *m*-stems
by the addition of the r- and n-suffixes. Just as in Hittite the primary s-stems were almost entirely replaced by formations of the type ḫannešar/-ešnaš, so over the whole of Indo-European with the exception of a few stems that were turned into a new type, the thematic neuters, the m-stems were replaced by the mar/man stems. Later in most languages the mar-stems were ousted by the man-stems. In Hittite the gen. sg. of neuter stems in -mar is in -mas (arnnummar 'bringing', gen. sg. arnummaš). It is usually said that there has been assimilation of mu in such genitives, but this cannot be proved, and the alternative theory is possible that such genitives are formed from the unextended m-stem. Here we may compare certain Vedic instrumentals, drāghmā, raśmā, (drāghmān- 'length', raśmān- 'rein') which in the same way may well be formed from the simple m-stem and not from the extended stem in -man.

Thematic derivatives from man-stems frequently appear without the final element of this suffix: priyādhāma- 'fond of home', viśvākarma- 'accomplishing all' containing the stems dhāman- and kārman-; cf. also dhārman- masc. 'law': dhārman- nt. 'id'; éma- 'way, course': éman- 'id'; tōkma- 'shoot, offspring': tōkman- 'id'; yākṣma- 'disease': yākṣman- 'id'; dārmā- 'destroyer': dārmān- 'id'. In these cases also there is no evidence to support the theory of a change mn to m, and the thematic type illustrated by these examples must have been based on the simple m-stem.

The suffix -ma makes a fair number of adjectives and nouns of adjectival origin: ajmā- 'career, march' (Gk. ἀγμός; man-stem in ájman-, Lat. agmen), idhmā- 'fuel', grīṣmā- 'summer' (grīṣ-mā-, cf. guru- 'heavy'), gharmā- 'heat' (originally adjectival, cf. Gk. ἑρμος, Lat. formus 'hot'), jihmā- 'athwart, oblique', tigmā- 'sharp' (Gk. ὑγμός 'puncture', n-stem in ὑγμα, nt.), dasmā- 'wonderful' (dasmánt- 'id'), dhūmā- 'smoke' (cf. mar-stem in dhūmra-), narmā- 'sport, pastime' (also nārman- nt. 'id'), yudhmā- 'fighter', rukmā- 'ornament', vāmā- 'charming' (vām-), sarma- 'beneficial', śyāmā- 'black' (śyāvā-, with alternative suffix), hima- 'cold, frost'. The adjectival ūma- 'helper' has anomalously the accent on the root, but the weak grade shows that this is not original. There are a number of thematic action nouns with the normal radical accent and masculine gender, presumably to avoid the repetition of m: dhārma- 'law', bhāma- 'illumination', kṣema- 're-
sidence; security', sárma- 'flowing', sóbha- 'the pressed out juice of the soma plant' (Av. haoma-), stóma- 'hymn of praise', hóma- 'offering'. The customary alternation of accent between substantive and adjective appears in sráma- 'lameness' and srámd- 'lame'.

The gradation -amá appears in dasamá- 'tenth' (i.e. dasam-á-, Lat. decimus; dása, decem), sapamá- 'seventh' (after which aṣtamá- 'eighth'), madhyamá- 'middlemost', adhamá- 'lowest' (Lat. infimus), parámá- 'furthest, highest'. From the ordinal sapamá- there is extracted tama which is applied to other numerals (vimśatitama-, etc.). This is identical with the superlative suffix -tama which presumably arose in the same way: ántama- 'nearest, most intimate' (Av. aníma-, Lat. intimus), uttamá- 'highest', ugrátama- 'strongest', mādhuṣtama- 'most gracious', mātj̄tama- 'most motherly', ratnadātama- 'most wealth-giving', etc., etc.

A compound suffix -ima appears rarely: agrimá- 'foremost', and in combination with other suffixes, kṛitrima- 'artificial', bhidelima- 'fragile', etc. Other combinations of suffixal m are -mi: (masc.) ñirmi- 'wave' (Av. varmi-, AS. wielm), raśmi- 'rein, ray'; (fem.) bhámi- 'earth'; -mí, (fem.) lakṣmí 'mark, sign', súrmi 'tube'; -má: hímá 'cold season', kṣumá 'flax'.

§ 16. THE SUFFIXES i AND u

These two suffixes, like the other suffixes, had in Indo-European a gunated form, ei, ey, and a weak form, i, u, depending on the position of the accent. They could also be vṛddhied under the same circumstances as the other suffixes, and in general they develop on the same lines. The neuters were the most primitive type, and on the basis of these, adjectives could be formed by accenting the suffix, old neuters may be transferred to the masc.-fem. class, a process which is very common in the case of these suffixes; there are neuter thematic extensions, and adjectives are formed by adding the accented thematic vowel. They combine with other suffixes in the usual way; of these combinations the suffixes -ira, -in, -ina, -ri, -ni, -var, -vara, -ura, -van, -vana, -una, -vānt, -ru, -nu, -iś, -us, -yas, -vas, -iṣa, -uṣa, -it, -ut, -vat, -ti, -tu, -ima, -mi have already been mentioned.

Neuter nouns in -i are rare; it is a type that early tended to become extinct, largely by the transference of such stems to the
The few that remain are mainly defective. Of these sāmi 'work' is indeclinable; āsthi 'bone', ākṣi 'eye', sākthi 'thigh' and dādhi 'curd' substitute an n-stem in declension (gen. sg. asthnās, akṣnās, sakthnās, dadhnās); vāri, 'water' adds n to the stem in the same circumstances (gen. sg. vārīnas, cf. the same thing with neuter u-stems, and occasionally elsewhere, e.g. śīras, śīrṣnās); hārdi 'heart' substitutes the root stem (gen. sg. hṛdās, etc.). There is one rare neuter with the compound suffix -vi, sṛkvi which inflects like vārī.

The neuters have not preserved an inflection in which the i-suffix is preserved throughout, in contradistinction to the neuter u-stems where such exists (mādhu, mādhvas). It can be traced however in the declension of ávī- 'sheep', gen. sg. ávyas. This type of inflection contrasts strongly with the adjectival inflection (agnēs, etc.; in the end this becomes the only inflection), and when the similar opposition in the u-stems is considered (mādhwas; sūnōs) it becomes clear that this first type of declension is that proper to the neuter nouns, as opposed to the adjectives. The difference is due to the different accentuation of the two types of stem, corresponding to that which we have found elsewhere. The declension of ávī- indicates that it was originally a neuter; it has been transferred, on account of natural gender, but has retained some of its old features in declension. Greek has the same inflection in this word, and retains the more ancient alternating accent: ās, oiōs.

There are occasional neuter i-stems which have come to be used as adverbs: sāci 'with', prāti 'against' (pr-ati, ti-stem).

Often original neuter i-stems have been replaced by various extensions: nābhya- 'nave' retains the old neuter gender of the i-stem which in nābhi- 'navel' has been replaced by the feminine gender. An old neuter *mādhi 'middle' (in Av. maiṣyārya- 'belonging to the middle of the year' for *madhiyārya-) is replaced by mādhyas- nt. (originally madhyam-, m-stem, cf. above); likewise krāvi 'raw flesh' (ākravihasta-) is enlarged to kravya- (kravyād-, cf. Lith. kraūjas), and alternatively by addition of the s-suffix to kravīs-. Similarly the neuters arcīs- 'flame', rocīs- 'light' and  sócīs- 'flame' are s-extensions of old neuters in -i, but the i-stems arcī- masc., sócī- fem., rūci-, rocī- fem. have been transferred from the neuter to masculine or feminine gender.

This and similar evidence makes it quite clear that neuter
action nouns in -i were originally common. Further evidence comes from another quarter. At a time when these formations were readily made, the whole category of i-neuters was incorporated in the verbal conjugation, and served to form passive aorists of the third person singular. As such they are well represented in Indo-Aryan and Iranian: tāri, jāni, darśi, pādi, sādi; with augment ḍkāṛi, etc. Similarly Av. srāvī 'is heard', etc. The accent is on the root as regularly in the case of neuter stems.

Neuter u-stems remain more common than neuter i-stems. They are regularly accented on the root and not uncommonly have viddhī: mādhuh 'honey' (Gk. μέθο, AS. medu), vāsu 'property', āyu- 'life' (RV. 1,89,9 and 3,49,2, restored from evidence of metre), jānu- 'knee' (Gk. γόν, Lat. genu, Hitt. genu), dāru 'wood' (Gk. δῶρο, Hitt. taru) sānu 'summit, top' (also masc.), dānu 'moisture' (also fem.), pāsu 'domestic animal' (RV. 3, 53, 23, Goth. fāhu, Lat. pecu; elsewhere transferred to the masculine and accented on the suffix), śmāṣru 'beard', āśru 'tear' (Toch. A. ākru-nt pl.), jātu 'gun' (AS. cewd), jātru 'collar-bone' (also jatru- masc.), ālu 'palate', trāpu 'tin', yāṣu 'sexual embrace', snāyu 'sinew', titāu 'sieve'.

The u-stem could serve throughout as the basis of inflection. This type of neuter inflection is seen in mādhuh 'honey', gen. sg. mādhvaṣ and vāsu 'wealth' gen. sg. vāsvaṣ. The same type appears in Gk. γονὼς, δούπος, with the more ancient terminational accent in the gen. sg. which Sanskrit has abandoned for the fixed radical accent as in other kinds of neuters (gen. sg. nāmnas, vācasas, etc.). The old terminational accent is seen in gen. sg. paśvaṣ but it has come to be associated with an altered type of stem. The old IE neuter pēkū (Lat. pecu, etc.) is preserved in one instance in the Ṛgveda (see above) as paśu, showing that the change is of recent origin. The change of gender in the usual paśu- is due to natural gender. The change of accent which has also occurred is due to the old terminational accent of paśvaṣ gen. sg., etc. Since the normal neuters have adopted the fixed radical accent, the only stems in which there is commonly alternation of accent from stem to suffix in declension are suffixally accentuated masculines with reduced grade of suffix in the weak cases: nom. sg. pītā, dat. sg. pītre, nom. sg. Pūṣā, gen. sg. Pūṣnās, etc. On this analogy it is easy to see how a suffixally accentuated paśvaṣ (after the style of the old neuters) still pre-
served at the time of the change of gender should bring about the suffixal accentuation of the new nom. sg. *pasūs*. In the same way we may judge *pitū- ‘food’, gen. sg. *pitvās*, which from being an action noun and from having the neuter type inflection, may also be regarded as a transferred neuter. The stem *krātu- ‘intelligence’, old neuter for the same reasons, has on the other hand established radical accentuation throughout.

Alternatively neuter *u*-stems operate in the weakest cases with an extended suffix *-un-*(cf. *vārīnas* gen. sg.): *gen. sg. mādhunas, vāsunas, ārūnas*; Loc. sg. *āyunī* (cf. Gk. αἴτεν, loc. without ending), *sānūni*; gen. loc. du. *jānunos* (cf. Toch. A. *kanwem* ‘knees’ with strong form of same suffix appearing in dual). Greek, when extending the suffix in these cases, has the extra *t*-suffix as with other neuter *n*-stems: *gen. sg. γαύναρος, δούπαρος*.

In addition the Veda has some forms from these stems in which the adjectival type of inflection is employed: *drōs, snōs, mādhas*. This is not surprising since the adjectival type of inflection has become universal in *i*- and *u*-stems by the classical period, and the process was already far advanced in the earliest period, only a few of the old type being left.


With the *i*-stems as with the *ti*-stems the old rules about accent and apophony have long been superseded. All possible types are represented (*jālpi-, sāntī, tviṣī-, krṣī-*) and the variations are of no grammatical significance. Obviously *rājī- ‘direction’, which has a connection in Lat. *regio* represents the oldest type. In *rayī-, gen. sg. rāyās* (for *rahī-, raḥyās*, earlier *rāḥī-, raḥyās*) we may recognise the same accent development as has taken place in *pasū, pasvās*. The differences in apophony
between dhvani- ‘noise’ and dhúni- ‘roaring’ are those that exist between action and agent nouns, but the accent position is reversed. Obviously very complicated changes, which cannot now be followed, have affected the i-stems to produce this complete lack of system. This is associated with the fact that in this type of stem the earliest mass transfers from the neuter of action nouns took place.

On the other hand the non-adjectival masculine and feminine u-stems have as a rule accent and gúna of root: masc. ásu- ‘life’ (as- ‘to be’: Av. áñhu-), sváru- ‘stake, post’, mánu- ‘man’, bándhu- ‘relation’; fem. jásu- ‘exhaustion’, dhánu- ‘sandbank’, párśu- ‘rib’, sáru- ‘dart’, hánu ‘jaw’ (Gk. γέρος, Toch. A. śanwem du.). The words ámsú- ‘filament, ray’ (Av. ásu- ‘shoot’), renú- ‘dust’ and śankú- ‘peg, stake’ have final accent, but at the same time gúna of root. The accent of bāhú- ‘arm’ disagrees with that of Gk. πήλος; the apophony shows the Greek to be original. The weak grade of the root in īṣu- masc. and fem. ‘arrow’ and śindhu- ‘river’ is exceptional; they are probably of adjectival origin with the shift of accent seen frequently in nominalised adjectives.

There is a small number of neuters in -ya to be classified as thematic extensions of i-stems: mādhyā- ‘middle’ (see above), kravya- ‘raw flesh’, nábhya- ‘nave’, ájya- ‘clarified butter’, drávyā- ‘substance’, rájya- ‘kingdom’ (Ir. ríge). The formation is not uncommon in tatpurúṣa compounds of the type havirádyā- ‘eating the oblation’, hotrúrya- ‘choosing a sacrificial priest’, brahmabhúya- ‘becoming Brahma’. In sákhya- ‘friendship’ as opposed to sákhi- the normal accentual relation is reversed because sákhyá- is a secondary neuter, just as in the case of hotrá- nt.: hótar- masc. (see above, p. 137). In hídāya- ‘heart’ the thematic extension is added to the gúnated suffix.

The neuter suffix -ya originating as a simple extension of -i has developed independently and on a very wide scale in the formation of secondary neuters, either with vrddhi, as usually in the later language, saubhiigya- ‘welfare’, etc., or in some cases without, dūtya- ‘embassy’, etc.

As with the other neuter suffixes adjectives and nouns of adjectival type could be made from neuter i and u stems by shifting the accent to the suffix. For instance we have, with the oldest type of apophony, the IE neuter pélu (Goth. filu ‘much’) and with accentuation of suffix and reduction of root
an adjectival stem *pleui- which appears in Gk. πλεός (for *πλέως). The system has undergone various modifications, and several different types of declension have emerged as a result.

(1) The first, and oldest type, is represented by sákhi-, nom. sg. sákha 'friend'. This is characterised by vṛddhi of the nom. sg., and in declension it follows the general lines of the declension of the agent nouns in r and n (nom. acc. dat. sg. sákha, sákhyam, sákhye; svásā, svásāram, svāsre). This rare type is found also in apratā RV. 8, 32, 16 (nā sōmo apratā pape 'soma is not drunk which gives not a return'), and in Av. kavā nom. sg. (kavi- title of kings, Skt. kavi 'wise man'). In Sanskrit this type has usually been replaced by that in which the nom. and acc. sg. terminate in -is and -im, but considerable traces remain to show that the formation was originally more widely used. The feminine derivatives Agndyi and Man̄dvi are based on the old vṛddhied nominative singulars *Agni(y) and *Manāv. An old vṛddhied nom. sg. forms the first member of the compounds Agndvi-ttu (d. matapitarau) and kaviisakha- 'he who enjoys the friendship of the wise'. Above all the usual form of the loco sg. of i- and u- stems (agnā, later agnai, sūnaī, etc.) can only be explained as a locative without ending equivalent to the old vṛddhied nom. sg. of adjectival stems.

(2) The few u-stems which have retained vṛddhi in the nom. sg. add the nominative s to this. The type is represented in Sanskrit nom. sg. dyaus 'sky, sky-god' (Gk. Zeús; the meaning 'sky-god' is the original one, and this accounts for the adjectival form of the word) and in gauṣ 'cow'. It is somewhat more frequent in Iranian, examples being O. Pers. dahyaus 'land' and Av. hidāus 'companion' and uzbāzaus 'with uplifted arms'. In Avestan a tendency to differentiate adjectival and nominal declension is seen in the contrast between uzbāzaus and bāzuṣ 'arm' in the nom. sg. and between đaragō-aršaēm and frādat-fšaom as opposed to arštim 'spear' and pasum 'domestic animal' in the acc. sg. In Greek this type has become productive, and a distinction has been developed between agent nouns of the type βασιλεύς 'king' γονεύς 'parent' (: Skt. janu-ṣ- nt.) and the adjectives of the type πολύς.

The Vedic nom. sg. vēṣ 'bird' is also of this type, but the guṇa instead of vṛddhi is unusual and unexplained. The corresponding Latin word avis conforms to the usual type of i-stems.
Gk. οὐς 'egg' *(<όδυος) is a thematic extension of an old neuter *όως 'egg' (with vṛddhi of root as frequently in i- and u- stems). Skt. vēs is therefore a formation of adjectival type ('one connected with eggs, egg-bearer') and the suffixal type which is proper to adjectives has brought about the reduction and disappearance of the radical vowel.

(3) The usual adjectival type forms the nom. and acc. singular in -is, -im, -us, -um. Adjectives in accented -u are very common and frequently have corresponding forms in other IE languages: τρισū- 'thirsty' (Goth. þāúrsus 'dry'), ῥιπū- 'treacherous, enemy' (Lith. liþūs 'sticky, slimy'), πρήθū- 'broad' (Av. ῥόρθū- 'id', Gk. πλαρός 'flat', Lith. πλατūs 'broad'), ῥαγκū-, ῥαγκū- 'swift, light' (Gk. ἀλείχες), γυρū- 'heavy' (Gk. βαρός Goth. kauīrs), βαηū- 'much' (Gk. παχύς 'thick'), γυρū-, γυρū- 'many' (Gk. πολύς; the corresponding neuter in Goth. filīj), ῥυū- 'broad' (Av. vourū-, Gk. εὐρός), τανū- 'thin' (Gk. ταῦτο), ᾿ασū- 'swift' (Av. āṣu-, Gk. ῥάος), σβαδū- 'sweet' (Gk. ἱδὺς), ᾿αμθū- 'narrow' (Goth. aggwūs, O. Sl. azū-kū), ταβυ- 'straight' (Av. ὰραὐ-), κράθū- 'shortened, mutilated', ᾿ιάυū- 'victorious', δάρū- 'destroying', ντυū- 'dancer', πιυū- 'spiteful', ναλιγū- 'handsome', νιδήˈu- 'solitary', σαγύū- 'lying', σάδηˈu- 'good'.

The accent in γυρūs nom. sg., etc., is what is expected for adjectives, but it is in complete contradiction to the weak grade of the suffix which appears in the nom. acc. sg. It follows clearly that such a form of adjective cannot have remained unaltered from the beginning. We have seen that an older type is represented in a few archaic examples and that evidence exists that this was once more widely spread. The forms in -us, -um may therefore be regarded as substitutes for this older type, but they are very ancient substitutes because they occur not only in the languages represented in the examples quoted above, but also in Hittite: nom. sg. ᾿ασσῦς 'good', ᾿πάρκυς 'high', etc.

The strong form of suffix which should go with the accent, but which has been replaced in the nom. acc. sg. appears in the case of these stems in the dat. and gen. sg. Here the adjectival declension (agnēs, γυρός) is differentiated from what remains of the old neuter declension (mādhvās) in a way that accords with the position of the accent in the two types. The reduction of the termination of the gen. sg. to -s in accordance with the old
rules of apophony shows that this form is very ancient. The same guṇa is found in Goth. sunaus, Lith. sūnaūs and, without reduction of the termination, in Gk. ὑδεός and Hitt. aššawas. The distinction between neuter declension and adjectival declension appears elsewhere: Hitt. genuwaš as opposed to aššawas, etc.

The extension of the guṇated suffix to the dat. and gen. sg. distinguishes these stems from the adjectival n- and r-stems. The latter are not normally distinguished in form in these cases from the neuter stems (yaknās, ukṣnās), because the adjectival stems retain the terminational accent. But outside Sanskrit there is some evidence that even these stems shared to some extent the tendency, notably in the case of Av. pitarś gen. sg. which is parallel in every way to agnēs and sūnōs. On the other hand we have seen that sākhā, dat. sākhye follows the type of the adjectival r- and n-stems, showing that two alternative types of inflection existed for adjectival stems. One became predominant in r- and n-stems, the other in i- and u-stems, but to a certain extent both are represented in each of the two classes of stem.

The root in these adjectives has usually the weak form in accordance with the accentuation. In the case of su- 'good' as opposed to Hitt. aššuš, Gk. ἐός the suffixal accent has resulted in the complete reduction of the radical vowel. Since the word has ceased to be used except in composition, there is no evidence as to its earlier inflection, but in Av. hao-sravah- the guṇated suffix which is in accordance with the adjectival accent is represented. The prefix ku- 'bad' appears to be of the same nature. The usual association of this with the interrogative pronoun can hardly be justified, so we may take it to be a u-adjective, similar in form and function to su.

There are a few instances where corresponding neuters exist beside adjectives in -u: āyu- 'length of life' (formed with simple u-suffix and vrddhi from the IE root ai- 'to apportion, give', i.e. 'one's allotted span'): āyu- 'alive, mortal'; Gk. πῶν 'herd, flock': Skt. pāyū- 'protector'. The plural jatrávas 'cartilages of the collar bones' differs in meaning from the radically accented neuter jatru- 'collar-bone' and is therefore likely to be an adjectival form. Earlier it may be presumed that such doublets were more regularly met with, and the interaction of the two types will account for radical guṇa or vrddhi appear-
ing in the suffixally accented adjectives. It is clear that the strong form of the radical element in ayū- derives from the neuter ayu where it is in accordance with the rules of apophony, and it may be assumed that similar mutual influence of the two contrasting types accounts for the form of such adjectives as āṣū- 'swift', etc. The Hitt. nt. aššu is used as a noun in the sense of 'goods, property' (like Skt. vāsu), and as such it must be regarded as continuing the primary neuter on which the adjective was built (ēsu : (e)seu-). From this source comes the guna in Hitt. aššus, Gk. ēos as opposed to the reduction of the root in Skt. su-. No doubt also the early prevalence of the form of the nom. acc. sg. in -ūs, -ūm, as opposed to the forms with strengthened suffix, was assisted by the coexistence of such neuters. Obviously an easy alternative for distinguishing the two types existed in the simple addition of the terminations -s, -m to the neuter stem in these cases. As a general rule this was done in conjunction with the retention of the adjectival accent. On the other hand radical accent appears in ānu- 'fine, small', mādhu- 'sweet' and vāsu- 'good'. The two latter stems occur more abundantly as neuter nouns, and their adaptation as adjectives with the minimum change of form appears to be comparatively late.

Adjectives and nouns of adjectival origin terminating in the i-suffix, and inflecting after the same pattern as the u-adjectives above, are fairly numerous: āgni- 'fire' (Lat. ignis, etc.), āpi 'friend' (Gk. ἱππος 'friendly, kind', thematic), kāpi- 'monkey' (originally adj. of colour, cf. kapilā-), kāvi- 'wise man' (older inflection in Avestan, cf. above), kāri- 'singer', kāhti- 'playing', jāmi- 'consanguineous, closely related' (cf. Lat. gemin-nus 'twin'), nādi- 'roarer', swari- 'noisy', etc.; with radical accent ḫi- 'seer', kāri- 'singing hymns', ḫībhi- 'containing', māni- 'sage', śuci- 'shining, pure', hāri- 'green', tārvi- 'overcoming', plūṣi- 'flea' (cf. Alb. plēst, Arm. lu, etc.; √ plu 'hop, jump').

As with the action nouns in -i there is complete absence of rule in the matter of accent and apophony. For this reason it is not always possible to decide to which class a noun originally belongs, e.g. asī- 'sword' (Lat. ensis), giri- 'mountain' (Av. gairi-), ṛhi- 'snake' (Gk. ἱχὺς, ὁφίς), manī- 'jewel', etc. The original system, however, has left its mark in declension (agnēs as opposed to āvyas; cf. Hitt. šallaiāš: halkiāš), in the same
way as in the $u$-declension. As with the $u$-stems the adjectival
declension has spread at the expense of the nominal, and to an
even greater extent.

As with the suffixes previously dealt with, thematic adjectives
could be made on the basis of $i$- and $u$-stems, and this served as
an alternative to the type with accented suffix. Thus Lat.
socius ‘ally’ bears the same relation to Skt. sákhī-, nom. sg.
sákha ‘friend’ (cf. the old neuter stem preserved as adverb,
sáci), as Hitt. veštaraš to Av. vāstar- or Gk. īāτp o to latýp.

The suffix -$ya$ is very frequent and at an early period in Indo­
European it developed widely as an independent suffix, so that
the connection with $i$-stems has for the most part ceased to
exist. The way the suffix originated is made clear by such
examples in Sanskrit as āṛmya- ‘undulating’, sīnya- ‘furnished
with a sickle’, kāvyā- ‘wise’, ávya- ‘coming from a sheep’,
kind, devoted, pious’, which have corresponding $i$-stems
(ārmi-, sīni-, kāvi-, āvi-, bhūmi-, yōni-, arī-). The suffix,
originating in this way, became widespread at an early period
producing adjectives meaning ‘belonging to . . . , connected
with’. In the case of thematic stems the suffix is substituted for
the thematic suffix. In the case of a word like ajrya- ‘belonging
to the plain’ (Gk. ávρoς ‘wild’) the derivative could have been
formed on the old neuter $r$-stem (ager) from which ājra- and
Gk. ávρoς are themselves derived. It is in some such way that
this type of substitution must have been evolved.

In the case of the derivative -$ya$ the accent in Sanskrit may
appear either on the suffix or on the root: (a) agryā-, agriyā-
‘foremost’, ādivyā- ‘heavenly’ (cf. Gk. δἰος), satyā- ‘true’,
gṛmyā- ‘of the village’, somyā- ‘relating to Soma’, rājyā-
‘regal’ (Lat. rēgius); (b) ángya- ‘of the limbs’, gāvyā-
‘bovine’, nārya- ‘manly’, jāmbhya- ‘an incisor tooth’ (Gk.
γόμφος), ksāmya- ‘terrestrial’ (Gk. χθόνος), pīrya- ‘paternal’
(Gk. πάτριος, Lat. patrius), sūrya- ‘sun’ (Gk. ἥλιος, ἥλιος),
vānyya- ‘belonging to the forest’, etc.

This suffix, associated with accented root, is commonly used
to produce adjectives from verbal roots which function as
gerundives: guhya ‘to be hidden’, īdya- ‘to be worshipped’,
yōdhya- ‘to be fought’, hávya- ‘to be invoked’, jāyya-, jēya-
‘to be conquered’, vācyā- ‘to be spoken’, etc.

Vṛddhied derivatives appear abundantly from the earliest
In the Sanskrit suffix -ya two suffixes have been confounded. These are distinguishable in the Veda by means of the metre which shows that there is a monosyllabic -ya appearing in such words as kavyā- 'wise', ávya- 'belonging to a sheep', ványa- 'of the forest', etc., and a disyllabic suffix -iya appearing in dámiya- 'belonging to the house', ráthiya- 'relating to a chariot', jániya- 'relating to the people', viśiya- 'belonging to the community', udániya- 'watery', etc. Of these -ya is the suffix discussed above, and it was formed on the basis of the suffix -i by the addition of the thematic vowel. On the other hand the suffix -iya represents earlier -iha and it was formed on the basis of the suffix -ihi>ī. These formations are therefore dealt with in the next section in connection with that suffix.

A small number of thematic formations have the i-suffix in the gUQA grade. Such are: sasayá- 'abundant, frequent' (cf. sāśiyas- 'more numerous' and sāśvant-), sūsmáya- 'strengthening', gavayá- 'Bos gavaeus', sánaya-, sanáya- 'old', tánaya- 'offspring, son', kúpaya- 'seething', dāśataya- 'tenfold' (: dašati- 'decade'); also a couple of double formations hiranyáya- 'golden', gaváya- 'bovine'. The same type of suffix is found in other IE languages: Gk. χρόσεος 'golden', Lat. aureus, igneus, etc.

Though the adjectival suffix -va is not uncommon, it never received anything like the extension of -ya, and its connection with the u-suffix, or other derivatives from it, remains in most cases evident. Examples with final accentuation are śvá- 'lofty' (Av. śvá- 'upright, exalted '), -ūrvā- 'enclosure' (vṛ- 'to surround, cover', originally adj. 'enclosed '), hrasvā- 'short', ārdhvā- 'erect' (Av. ārdhva-, Lat. arduus), takvā- 'speedy' (beside tāku-), yahvā- 'young, youngest' (Av. yezivī fem.; beside yahū- 'id'), ykvā- 'singing hymns' (beside ṭkvān-, ṭkvant- 'id'), dhruvā- 'firm' (Av. drva-., O. Pers. durvāva- 'sound, healthy'), malvā- 'foolish', śyāvā- 'dark' (Av. syāva-; beside śyāmā- with m-suffix), ranvā- 'joyful, enjoyable' (beside rámnvā-), jīvā- 'alive, living being' (O. Sl. ėívī, Lith. gývas, Lat. vivus, Osc. bivus nom. pl.), pākvā- 'cooked, ripe' (adapted as past participle), śavrā- n. of a deity (Av. saourva-, lit. 'one armed with a šaru-', 'dart '), srurvā- 'ladle', śikvā- 'skilful' (be-
side śīkvan- 'id'), kharvā- 'mutilated' (Av. kaurva- 'id'). In these, the most numerous examples, the original adjectival accent is preserved. A small number have radical accent: āśva- 'horse' (Lat. equus, Goth. aīva°, etc.; cf. āsī- 'swift'), sārva- 'all' (Av. haurva-, Gk. ὅλος, oόλος, etc.), pārva- 'former' (O. Sl. prūvū), pīva- 'fat' (beside pīvan- 'id'). The stem kulva- 'bald' (Lat. calvus) appears only in the cpd. atikulva-.

The u-suffix appears with guna in arṇavā- 'waving; flood, ocean', keśavā- 'long-haired' (cf. Av. gaēsav- 'hair'), pāvīrava- 'having a metallic share' (pāvīrī-), vidāvā 'widow' (Lat. vidua, etc.; cf. vidhū- 'solitary').

In some cases -va has acquired the character of a secondary suffix: aṅjivā- 'slippery', sāntivā- 'beneficial', śraddhivā- 'credible', rājivā- 'striped; streaked; blue lotus', sacivā- 'companion, minister'.

Stems in -u are occasionally enlarged by the addition of the suffix -i: ghṛśvi- 'lively, joyful' beside ghṛṣu- 'id'; other vi-stems are dhrūvi- 'firm', dārvi- 'ladle', jāgrvi- 'wakeful dādhṛvi- 'sustaining', dādhīvi- 'shining', sūṣīśvi- 'swelling or growing well (in the womb)', cf. śīśu- 'child'. This addition appears also in other IE languages, notably in Latin, where all the old adjectival u-stems are supplanted by vi-stems: levis 'light' (Skt. laghu-), mollis 'soft' (Skt. mrdū), brevis, gravis, etc.

Conversely -u is added to the suffix -i producing the compound suffix yu: yāyu- 'pious', śunḍhyu- 'pure', sāhyu- 'strong', manyu- masc. 'anger', mṛtyu masc. 'death' (Av. mṛ̥ṣṭhyu-), dāsyu- 'barbarian', bhujyu- 'wealthy'. In Sanskrit this has developed chiefly as a secondary suffix: dvasyu- 'worshipping', udanyu- 'irrigating', adhvaryu- 'a kind of priest'. It has come to be specially connected with the denominative verbal base, devayu- 'pious': devayāti 'he is pious', etc., and it tends to acquire a desiderative meaning, vasūyu- 'desiring wealth', etc. The formation is very productive in the Veda, but disappears almost completely in the later language.

§ 17. The Suffix i as Union-Vowel

It was noticed above that the suffix t acquired under certain circumstances the character of an augment or special insertion between root and suffix (kr-t-ya- 'to be done', etc.). The suffix t also functions in this way in Sanskrit on an extensive scale.
The use of \( i \) as a connecting link between root and suffix or between root and termination is particularly common in the verbal formation. The Indian grammarians call the \( i \) so used \( ii \), and according to their terminology the forms which take this \( i \) are called \( set \) (with \( ii \)) and those that do not are called \( anit \) (without \( ii \)). The two types of conjugation may be illustrated by the following examples:

I. Present, root-class, \( tsi\)e, \( ti\)dhe, \( ti\)re ; future, \( pati\)yati, \( bhavi\)yati, \( vardhi\)yati ; aorist, -\( i\), \( arocisam\), \( ajivi\)sam ; deservative, \( ji\)jivi\( a\)mi ; perfect, \( i\) pl. oct. \( bubudhim\), \( tenim\), \( 3\) pl. mid. \( bubudhir\), \( tenir\) ; pass. part. \( sa\)\( nkit\)-, \( lajjit\)- ; gerund. \( pativ\), \( yaciv\) ; infin. \( vardh\)\( t\)um, \( yacitum\).

II. Present, root-class, \( atsi\), \( vitse\), \( se\)e ; future, \( vaksyati\), \( chetsya\)ti ; aorist, -\( s\), \( dechailsam\), \( dhraks\)\( s\) ; deservative, \( dityksati\), \( vivitsati\) ; perfect \( i\) pl. act. \( cakrm\), \( jagrbhm\), \( 3\) pl. mid. \( yuyujre\), \( vividre\) ; pass. part. \( krt\)-, \( dr\)\( st\)- ; gerund, \( chittv\), \( krtv\) ; infin. \( krtt\)um, \( drast\)\( t\).

This \( i \) is also found in nominal derivatives other than the participial and infinitival forms illustrated above. In the agent nouns in -\( tar\) it appears mostly in agreement with the forms of the infinitive and gerund: \( yacit\)-, \( vardhit\)-, etc., as opposed to \( krt\)-, \( dhrak\)-, etc. Examples in the case of other suffixes are: \( prathim\)\( an\)- ‘breadth’, \( khanitra\)- ‘shovel’, \( roci\)\( sm\)\( u\)- ‘shining’, \( varivas\)- ‘wide space’, \( dithi\)- ‘guest’ (as opposed to Av. \( asti\)-), \( dravini\)- ‘running’, etc.

It is not possible to formulate any simple general rule governing the presence or absence of this \( i \) in the verbal conjugation and elsewhere, but a general tendency is observed to use the \( set\)-forms where inconvenient consonant groups would result (\( paptim\), etc.). The use of -\( i\) is more predominant in the later language than in the Veda. For instance the Vedic language has both -\( re\) and -\( ire\) in the 3 pl. mid. of the perfect, but the classical language knows only -\( ire\) ; in later Sanskrit the stems in -\( isya\) account for three-quarters of the futures, while in the earlier language the larger proportion (five-ninths) are still formed with simple -\( sya\). This continues a process which had been going on in pre-Vedic times. Old Iranian, close as it is to Sanskrit, shows very few formations of this nature, which makes it clear that in the main the great extension of the use of -\( i\) in the verbal conjugation is a special development of Indo-Aryan. Its adoption on such a large scale is clearly connected with
characteristic tendency of Indo-Aryan, observable from the very beginning, to get rid of consonant groups.

To begin with the \(i\) in verbal and nominal derivation must, in such cases where it existed, have had etymological justification, that is to say it must have been the suffix \(i\) compounded with other suffixes in the usual way. A number of such suffixes containing \(i\) have already been enumerated, \(-i\~s\), \(-\mathit{i}sa\), \(-\mathit{ira}\), etc., formed on the basis of the \(i\)-suffix in the same way as \(-u\~s\), \(-\mathit{usa}\), \(-\mathit{ura}\), etc., are formed on the basis of the \(u\)-suffix. The suffixes forming the verbal stem are the same as those of the corresponding nominal stems. For instance the stem of the \(-i\~s\) aorist \(\mathit{aro}ci\~sam\) appears also in the noun \(roc\~is\)- ‘light’. Since \(roc\~is\)- ‘light’ is an extension of the simpler \(i\)-stem in \(roc\~t\)-, \(ruci\~-\), the verbal stem also is originally built up from the \(i\)-stem. Similarly in the future the suffix \(sy\~i\) is formed from the \(s\)-stem with the addition of the denominative \(yd\), (the stems, \(vak\~sy\~a\-\), etc., differ only in apophony from denominatives of the type \(nams\~y\~at\~i\)). In the same way the future in \(-\mathit{i}y\~a\) was to begin with based on the \(\mathit{i}\)-stem. As regards the form of the stem \(bhavi\~y\~a\)-, etc., are exactly parallel to the denominatives in \(-\mathit{us\~y}a\) (\(uru\~ya\-\), \(vanu\~sy\~a\-\)), and in the \(\mathit{Rgveda}\) a number of such formations are clearly to be classed as denominatives. Such are \(avi\~y\~at\~i\), \(sani\~y\~at\~i\), which have beside them nominal forms (\(avi\~ya\-\), \(avi\~yu\-\), \(sani\~yu\-\)) which are commonly associated with the denominative but never with the future.

Those participles in \(-\mathit{ita}\) where the \(i\) may be considered to be original have incorporated an \(i\)-suffix which appears elsewhere in the inflection of the root. This is the case for instance in \(sit\~a\) ‘bound’ (\(s\~a\- ‘to bind’) where the suffix \(i\) is so frequently associated with the root that the simple root (aor. \(\mathit{as\~i}\)) has become comparatively rare; e.g. \(s\-y\~di\) ‘binds’, \(s\-e\-tave\) ‘to bind’, \(si\~si\~ya\) ‘bound’, etc. The \(-\mathit{ita}\) of the participles from other roots in \(-\mathring{\mathit{a}}\) (\(sit\~a\- ‘sharp’, \(dit\~a\- ‘bound’, \(sthit\~a\ ‘stood’, etc.) originates in the same way. The participle of causative and tenth class verbs (\(gam\~it\~a\- : \(gam\~yati\), etc.) includes the suffix which is used in the formation of the present, and comparative evidence shows that this practice is old (cf. Goth. \(gatarh\~ips\ : \(gatarh\~jan\ ; \(wasi\~ps\ : \(wasjan\), etc.). The same connection is seen between participles in \(-\mathit{ita}\) and presents of the fourth class (\(kup\~it\~a\ : \(kup\~yati\), cf. Lat. \(cup\~io\, cup\~itus\) or presents in athematic \(i\) (\(stan\~ita\- : \(stani\~hi\), cf. further \(stanayi\~t\~i\-, \(tanyat\~i\-\), O. Sl. \(sten\~je\,\)
etc., for the prevalence of the i-suffix in connection with this root). A similar incorporation of suffixal u is seen in āḍbhuta- and ānatidbhuta- from the root dabh- (pres. dabh-n-ó-ти).

In the same way we may account for -itar beside -tar in the agent nouns: marditar- 'forgiver', cf. mṛdāyati, mṛdayāku-, mṛdikā- (Av. mṛṣṭdika-), panițār- 'praiser', cf. pāṇyati, pāṇāyatī, pāṇiṣta, aor., pāṇayātī, pāṇiṣṭi-); likewise vardhitar-: vardhāya-, coditar- : codāya-, etc. The process is illustrated by a similar development occasionally in connection with the u-suffix. The agent nouns tarutār- 'conqueror', dhanutār- 'running swiftly' and sānītar- 'winning' incorporate the u-suffix which appears in the present tense (tarute, tūrvati ; dhanvati ; sanōti) and elsewhere (tārusa- etc.).

From these instances it is clear that the i in a fair number of verbal forms and nominal derivatives was etymologically justified, and the analysis in such cases does not differ from that of any other forms containing compound suffixes. What Indo-Aryan has done is, on the basis of a modest number of such forms to extend the use of i in the verbal derivation on a vast scale. The analogical i which then comes to be so abundantly used, ceases to be subject to the usual analysis and acquires the character of a union vowel or euphonic augment.

The i which appears in the alternative form of certain terminations (papt-imā beside cakr-mā, etc.) was also in origin suffixal. There are some non-thematic presents in -i (svāpiti, svāsiti, āniti, jākṣiti, etc.) with parallels elsewhere (Lat. cāpio, cāpis, cāpit, etc.). They are defective, and since they no longer form a complete present system, they have been attached to the root class, the i being treated as union vowel. There are also some scattered preterite forms (ajayit, bādhītās, atārima, avādiran, asth-ītās, asthiran, etc.) which have become attached to the iš-aorist. This type of conjugation is based on the i-stem, just as Vedic tarute is based on a u-stem, so that in origin the i here is not different from suffixal i elsewhere. But it came to have the character of an addition to the termination and this enabled this type of termination to be transferred to the perfect. The perfect stem is based only on the root, so the i in the perfect terminations can only be accounted for as a borrowing from the present and preterite forms of the above type where its presence is etymologically justified (bubudhimā, dadimā ; bubudhirē, dadhirē, etc., after atārima, išīre, etc.).
§18. The Suffixes \( \hat{a}, \hat{i}, \hat{u} \)

The suffix \(-\hat{a}\) has two functions. On the one hand it forms the feminine of adjectives in \(-\hat{a}\) (bāla- masc. ‘boy’, bālīa fem. ‘girl’), and on the other hand it appears as an independent suffix of derivation, producing action nouns, abstract nouns, and the like. In having the two functions, adjectival and non-adjectival, it resembles the suffixes previously discussed, but it differs from them in that its adjectival use is confined to the formation of feminines. This was the result of specialisation since the feminine gender was not present in the earliest Indo-European, and as a result of this development of adjectival \(-\hat{a}\), the action nouns too, which to begin with did not differ from the ordinary neuters (\(\hat{a}\), i.e. \(-\hat{a}h\), like \(-as\), \(-ar\), etc.), have acquired the feminine gender.

The following are examples of action nouns and the like terminating in the suffix \(-\hat{a}\) in Sanskrit: kriḍā ‘play’, dayā ‘pity’, nīndā ‘blame’, śāṅkā ‘doubt’, himsā ‘injury’, kṣamā ‘patience’, bhāṣā ‘speech’, sevā ‘service’, sṛphā ‘desire’, sākhā ‘branch’, stphā ‘whip’ (cf. Av. sīph- ‘to strike with a whip’), āsā ‘direction’, ukhā ‘pot’, ulkā ‘meteor’, venā ‘longing’, kṣapā ‘night’, chāyā ‘shadow’ (cf. Gk. okhā), jārā ‘old age’, doṣā ‘evening’, rāsā ‘moisture’ (O. Sl. rosa, Lith. rasa ‘dew’). There is no consistent rule about the accentuation of such words, but final accentuation is the commoner; in the corresponding forms in Greek (γόνη, etc.) final accentuation is the rule. The old general rule about the distribution of accent has obviously long ceased to have any relevance to this class.

The suffix \(-\hat{a}\) is added to the other primary suffixes in the usual manner, producing a series of compound suffixes:


The suffix \(-\hat{i}\) likewise is predominantly used for making feminines of adjectives, preferably from consonantal stems. In
addition there are a small number of primary action nouns and the like. Such are:

(a) Devi-declension: śācī 'power', śāmī 'holy work', táviṣī 'strength', āsandī 'stool'.


The suffix -ū is used for making feminines to stems in -u (alternatively -vi is used, or the unaltered stem functions as feminine), e.g. tanū- 'thin', phalgū- 'reddish', babhrū- 'brown', corresponding to masculines tanu-, phalgu-, babhru-. It also forms a small number of independent nouns, camū- 'dish', tanū- 'body', vadhū- 'bride', kadrū- 'soma-vessel', jatū- 'bat', dhanū- 'sandbank', nabhanū- 'well', śvaṣrū- 'mother-in-law' (O. Sl. svekry, Lat. soecrus).

Sanskrit -ā in this suffix resolves itself ultimately in Indo-European into the thematic vowel +H. Similarly ō and ū represent -i-H and -u-H. In this form the parallelism of these three suffixes to the three s-suffixes -as, -is, -us, becomes clear. The simple suffix is -aH, which like neuter -as appears with guna, and in the compound suffixes -iH and -uH, old neuter i- and u- stems are extended by suffixal -H, in the same way as they are extended by s in the compound suffixes -is and -us. Thus sāmī fem. is an extension of sāmī nt. (indecl.) (cf. the relation of arci- and arciś-, etc.) and dhanū fem. 'sandbank' along with dhānvan- nt. and dhanuś- nt. are alternative extensions of dhānu- 'id' (fem., originally nt.) The two compound suffixes sometimes appear with guna (vātyā 'whirlwind', jihvā 'tongue'), as is alternatively the case with other compound neuter suffixes, vārivas, etc. The close similarity in function between the H- and s-suffixes in making primary action nouns is seen from the frequent instances in which the two are found side by side in words of the same meaning: tánā, tánas 'offspring', jārā, jārās- 'old age', tanū, tānuś- 'body', dhanū-, dhānuś, etc. Like the other primary neuter suffixes this -ā has no specific meaning and stems in -ā frequently occur side by side with root nouns, the extension adding nothing to the meaning: kṣāp-,
ksapā 'night', tán-, tánā 'offspring', dis-, disā 'direction', etc.

The action nouns in -ā, ī, ē, are formed in precisely the same way as the neuter action nouns made with other suffixes, but differ from them in being feminine in gender. Since the feminine gender is a comparatively late development in Indo-European, it is to be expected that these stems were originally neuter. Direct evidence of this is provided by the neuter plurals of the type yugā. This -ā is the same as the ā-suffix, which was used (like some of the other neuter suffixes) as a collective, and eventually as a plural. In this use the suffix still retains the indifference to the distinction between nominative and accusative which characterises neuter stems. The reason for the feminine gender of these action nouns is that these suffixes in their adjectival use became specialised as feminines, and the action nouns on account of similarity of form eventually followed suit.

We have seen that the normal accent of neuter action nouns was on the root. Little trace of the general system remains in the formation of these stems. The accent of the ā-stems is variable, showing the same complete absence of rule which was observed in the ī-stems. The nouns in ī and ē have a regular accent; on the final. This accent is in complete contradiction to the general rule, but the apophony, with weak suffix, and usually guṇa of root (tanū-, deḥī) shows that this is not originally; only radical accentuation will account for such forms, IE tēnuh, etc. A parallel shift of accent was observed in the neuter stems in -īs, hāvis-, etc.

There is a tendency with the other neuter suffixes for the suffix n either to replace or to be added to the other suffixes. There are some traces of that system here. Corresponding to kanyā 'girl', Av. kainyā, there is in Avestan a genitive singular kaininō which is related to it in the same way as Skt. śīramā to śiras. In Sanskrit this form of the stem appears in the Vedic genitive plural kaininām. The -n- is normal in the genitive plural and the agreement between Sanskrit and Germanic (OHG. gebōno, ON. runōno), shows that its presence in ā-stems goes back to Indo-European. It appears that this -n- is the heteroclitic n-suffix, which has been generalised in the genitive plural, but abandoned elsewhere, though Av. kaininō shows that it could originally appear in other cases.
Stems in -ā are used to form a number of adverbs, in the same way as is done with the neuter suffixes above. Such are: sādā 'always', prā 'formerly', dvitā 'doubly so', mṛṣā 'falsely', sdcā 'with', devatā 'among the gods', sasvātā 'secretly'. In this class are the absolutes in -tvā and -tvī (see above, p. 171).

In their adjectival function these suffixes are principally used to make the feminine stem of adjectives, etc.: nāvā 'new', devī 'goddess', madhā 'sweet', etc. This is the result of specialisation in the later Indo-European period. Originally, it must be assumed, adjectival -ā, -ī, -ū were on a par with other suffixes used adjectivally, indifferent to gender, and having the usual relation to the corresponding action nouns. Traces of the more general use of ā-stems as agent nouns survive in a number of languages which still have some masculine agent nouns in -ā: Lat. scriba, agricola, nauta, Gk. ναύτης, πολίτης, O. Sl. sluga 'servant', etc. Stems of this kind have totally disappeared from Indo-Iranian, but there remain in the Vedic language a number of masculine stems in -ī, of which the commonest is rathī- 'charioteer' as well as two rare and obscure masculines in -ū (praśū-, krkadāśū-). These are the remnants of an older system in which adjectives and agent nouns of a general type could be made with these suffixes in the same way as with other suffixes.

Some evidence that there originally existed a formal distinction between the action nouns and adjectives of this class is provided by the existence of two types of declension of ā-stems in the Vedic language. One type is represented in the declension of rathī-, nom. sg. rathīs, gen. sg. rathīyas and the other in that of devī, nom. sg. devī, gen. sg. devyās. This distinction corresponds exactly to that between the two types of ā- and u-stems (gen. sg. ávyas, mādhyas: agnēs, bahōs). In the case of the ā- and u-stems there was evidence enough to show that one type was the declension proper to the neuter action nouns and that the other was the special adjectival declension. It is likely therefore that the same is the cause of the different declensions of the ā-stems. The bulk of the feminines formed from adjectives and agent nouns (devī 'goddess', prabhī 'broad', adāti 'eating', jagmiṣī 'having gone', nāvīyasī 'newer', avātī 'helper', dhenumātī 'possessing cows', āmavatī 'strong', saṃrājī 'sovereign', rtāvāri 'pious' and āpatihgnī 'not slaying her
husband', illustrate the various types) inflect in what according to this theory is the adjectival declension. The weak stem in the nom. acc. sg. is parallel to that of the i- and u-stems. The origin of the variation is not clear, but as with the i- and u-stems, it appears that a more original form of the adjectival stem is preserved in the gen. sg., etc.

Stems of the vrki type comprise both action nouns and agent nouns together with some miscellaneous feminines. The declension of this type (rathí-, gen. sg. rathiyas) and its accentuation is closely analogous to that of the adjectives in -in (balti, balinas). In the case of the latter type it was observed that the generalisation of the weak stem (from gen. sg., etc., which were originally suffixally accented) was secondary, and that comparative evidence indicated original vrddhied nominatives of the usual type. The same type of generalisation of the weak stem is likely to have happened in the case of rathí, vrki, etc., and in Avestan some traces of an older type of declension are preserved. The Avestan word for tongue is declined as follows: nom. sg. hizva, acc. sg. hizvam, instr. sg. hizvā, gen. sg. hizvō, loc. sg. hizvō, instr. pl. hizubiš. This is clearly the same type of declension as is found in dātā, dat. sg. dātré, sākhā, dat. sg. sākhye, uksān-, gen. sg. uksnās, etc., with weak form of suffix in the oblique cases. As remarked above there are two forms of adjectival declension, one with the weak cases having the same form as the neuters (dātré, etc.), and another with strong form of suffix and weak form of the gen. sg. termination in these cases (Av. pitarś, Skt. agnēs, etc.). Both types are found among i-stems (sākhye: agnāye) and among the i-stems they are represented by vrki- (gen. sg. vrkiyas) and devi (gen. sg. devyās) respectively. The oldest type of inflection is that which appears in the vāīā stem hizvāīā in Avestan. Leaving aside the heteroclitic -n- the same type of inflection appears in Av. kainya, gen. sg. kainīnō and in Skt. kanyā, gen. pl. kanyānām. Elsewhere the weak stem is generalised as in balti, balinas. Alternatively the strong form was generalised in which case there was a transfer to the ā- declension: jihvā, jihvāyās.

The adjective mahā 'great' remains in Sanskrit the only non-feminine adjectival ā-stem, and it is defective. Apart from compounds where it remains in use in classical Sanskrit, it appears only in the Veda in the acc. sg. masc. mahām. The gen. sg., etc., appear as mahās, etc. The other IE languages show g
in this root (Gk. μέγας) and the ḷ (<gh) of Sanskrit is due to a combination and the ḷ which originally belonged to the suffix. The original genitive was therefore megh-ēs with terminational accent and weakening of the suffix of the adjective (cf. ukṣṇās, etc.). This is the only place outside the thematic and other derivatives to be mentioned below, where the ā, i.e. aH of the suffix appears in its weak form. Elsewhere the strong form is generalised in both action nouns and adjectives, between which no formal differences exist. In the neuter sg. of this adjective a stem māhi with an extra suffix -ī is used (meg-H-ī, cf. Hitt. mekki-).

The thematic vowel and other vocalic suffixes could be added to the suffix -aH (ā) and the latter, being unaccented was weakened to H. This H remains in Sanskrit in the form of the aspiration of a preceding occlusive. Thus caturthā- ‘fourth’ may be explained as *caturtā (<ōaH) ‘fourness, group of four’ + adjectival -d, i.e. ‘one connected with four, fourness’. Similarly rāthā- ‘chariot’ is formed by the addition of the thematic suffix to *rotaH> Lat. rota ‘wheel’. Originally an adjective ‘wheeled’ it has had the accent thrown back on to the root, in common with many other nominalised adjectives (vṛka- ‘wolf’, etc.). The compound suffix -tha out of -t-H-a is not uncommon: ārtha- nt. ‘object, aim’, vārūthā- nt. ‘protection’; yajāthā- ‘worshipping’, vakṣāthā- m. ‘growth’, ṣapāthā- m. ‘curse’, sacāthā- m. ‘companionship’, svāthā- m. ‘flowing’, ucāthā- nt. ‘utterance’, vidāthā- nt. ‘worship’; with final accent, gāthā- m. ‘song’, bhrthā- ‘offering’; (neut.) ukthā- ‘utterance’, tīrthā- ‘ford’, yūthā- ‘herd’, rikthā- ‘inheritance’. Most of these forms seem to belong to the class of thematically extended action nouns formed in exactly the same way as nākṣatra-, pātatra-, vādhatra-, etc., above. Those finally accented are presumably adjectival in origin, e.g. rikthā- ‘that which is left’. The th in the suffixes -thi (ātithi- ‘guest’, etc.) and -thu (vepāthu- ‘quivering’, etc.) is in the same way a combination of the suffixes t and H; cf. -tri, -tru.

Other examples of aspirates concerning this suffix are: sākhi- ‘friend’ from sac- ‘to associate (simple aH> ā suffix in sacā ‘with’); makha- ‘happy, exulting’ from a *makaH to be compared with Gk. μάκαρ (old neuter adapted as adjective) with variant r-suffix; nakhā- ‘nail’, where ultimately both k and H are suffixal since other languages have a variant g (Lat. unguis, etc.), saṅkhā- ‘shell’, Gk. κόγχος (adjectival accent,
THE FORMATION OF NOUNS 197

original meaning 'curved, coiled', šaphā- 'hoof' ('striker', cf. Gk. κόπτω and Sl. копыто), sindhu- 'river' for sind-h-u-, cf. syand- 'to flow'; sādhis- 'seat, abode' for sad-h-is: sad- 'to sit'; aghā- 'wicked' perhaps from an *ágaH side by side with ágas, Gk. ἄγος 'sin'.

§ 19. OTHER SUFFIXES

Of the remaining suffixes the most important is the suffix -ka. In other IE languages the element k may appear as a non-thematic suffix: Lat. senex 'old man', Gk. μεινας 'lad, lass'. This state of affairs has disappeared in Sanskrit, which has corresponding to these forms the thematic stems sanakā- 'old' and maryakā- 'young man'. The suffix rarely appears in primary formations in Sanskrit; such cases are śūṣka- 'dry' (Av. huṣka-), śloka- 'call; fame; verse' (: śru- 'to hear') and ślka- 'garment' (Av. aḍka-). Normally it is added after vocalic suffixes, in particular after the thematic vowel. The latter type is rare in other IE languages but in Sanskrit it is exceedingly frequent. Examples are dūrakā- 'distant', vamrakā- 'ant', arbhakā- 'small', kumārakā- 'little boy', putrakā- 'little son'. It is often simply an extension which adds nothing to the meaning, but also it has in some cases a diminutive sense seen in the last two examples. More rarely it is used to form adjectives from nouns: ántaka- 'making an end', rūpakā- 'having an assumed form'. Other vocalic suffixes are likewise extended: avikā 'sheep' (O. Sl. ovica), mydikā- nt. 'grace', dhēnukā 'cow', ghātuka- 'killing', jatūkā 'bat'. It is more rarely added to consonantal suffixes: anīyaskā- 'thinner', mastikā- 'brain', vikṣinatka- 'destroying'. The feminine of the combination -ika is extended beyond its original field (avikā, etc.) and it comes to function as the feminine to masculines in -aka: kumārakā- 'little boy', kumārikā 'little girl', etc.

Suffixal k is followed by i and therefore palatalised in márīci- 'ray of light' and śvitīci- 'bright'. It is followed by -u in a few formations like pīḍāku- 'water-snake' and yuvāku- 'belonging to you two'.

The corresponding suffix in the centum-languages is k to which in Sanskrit š is the most frequent corresponding sound, but in the case of this suffix such ś appears only rarely, e.g. yuvaśa- 'young' (Lat. iuveneus), romaśā- 'hairy', babhruśa- 'brown', kapīśa- 'tawny'.
The voiced guttural, palatalised to $j$ appears in the following athematic formations: $\textit{dhr̥sāj-}$ 'bold', $\textit{sanāj-}$ 'old', $\textit{bhīṣāj-}$ 'physician' (cf. Av. 'biṣ, biṣaz-') $\textit{srāj-}$ 'garland' (cf. pratisara- and Lat. sēro), $\textit{ṭṛṣnāj-}$ 'thirsty', $\textit{āsvapnāj-}$ 'not sleeping'; (with weak form of suffix) $\textit{uṣīj-}$ 'a kind of priest' (Av. $\textit{usīg-}$), $\textit{vanīj-}$ 'merchant', $\textit{bhurīj-}$ 'shears', $\textit{sphīj-}$ 'hip' (cf. $\textit{sphya-}$ 'flat ladle'). In the nominal forms $\textit{ṭṛṣnāj-}$ and $\textit{āsvapnāj-}$ we have the same suffixal combination as is used in the formation of the seventh class of verbs.

A thematic $-\textit{ga}$ appears rarely, e.g. in $\textit{ṣīṇga-nt.}$ 'horn' (cf. Lat. corNU, etc.), $\textit{vāmsaga-}$ 'bull' (of uncertain etymology), $\textit{pataga}$, $\textit{pataṅgā-}$ 'bird'.

Suffixal $\textit{d}$ appears in a small number of athematic formations: $\textit{ṛṣād-}$ 'stone' (cf. Gk. $\textit{δεύπασ}$), $\textit{darad-}$ 'cliff, ravine' (themat. $\textit{darada-}$ 'Dard'), $\textit{śarād-}$ 'autumn' (cf. Av. $\textit{sarād-}$ 'year'), $\textit{bhaśād-}$ 'posterior, rump', $\textit{vanād-}$ 'desire', $\textit{kakūd-}$ 'summit' (cf. kaku-$\textit{bh-}$ with different suffix). It appears compounded with $\textit{n}$ in $\textit{ṣadāndi-}$ 'permanent' (cf. the $-\textit{nd-}$ of the Lat. gerundive).

The suffix $\textit{gh/h}$ is likewise extremely rare. It occurs in $\textit{dirghā}$ 'long' (cf. Gk. $\textit{δόλαχος}$, Hitt. $\textit{daluqas}$; note that it is preceded by three different suffixes in the three languages, Hitt. $\textit{u}$, Gk. $\textit{i}$, Skt. $\textit{n}$, i.e. $\textit{dīh-ghō-}$). The root appears without this suffix in O. Sl. $\textit{dlińa}$ 'length'. Other cases are $\textit{varāhā-}$ 'boar' (cf. Av. $\textit{varaža-}$; the root in Lat. $\textit{verrēs}$, etc.), $\textit{saraṅgh-}$ 'bee', and compounded with $\textit{r}$ it appears in $\textit{ṣighrā-}$ 'swift' (cf. $\textit{ṣibham}$ adv. 'quickly' with different suffix).

Suffixal $\textit{dh}$ appears in a number of combinations. The suffix $-\textit{dhra}$ appears in $\textit{varādra-}$ 'thong' (cf. $\textit{varatrā}$ 'id'); it is common in certain other IE languages. The combination $-\textit{dhya-}$ appears in infinitives like $\textit{gāmadhyaīi}$ 'to go', $\textit{bhāradhyaīi}$ 'to bear', $\textit{sāhadhyaīi}$ 'to overcome' and the like (some thirty-five instances).

A suffix $-\textit{pa}$ appears in a few rare instances like $\textit{yūpa-}$ 'sacrificial post' (cf. $\textit{yu-}$ 'to attach, join'), cf. $\textit{yūthā-}$ 'herd' for $\textit{ū}$) and $\textit{stūpa-}$ 'top-knot' (cf. $\textit{ṣtu}$ and $\textit{stukā}$ 'id').

Non-thematic $-\textit{bh}$ appears in $\textit{kakubh-}$ 'summit' (cf. $\textit{kaku-d}$ above), and thematic $-\textit{bha}$ in a small number of nouns, mostly animal names: $\textit{vrśabhā-}$ and $\textit{ṛśabhā-}$ 'bull', $\textit{gṛdabhā-}$ 'donkey', $\textit{ṛśabhā-}$ 'id', $\textit{ṣalabhā-}$ 'locust', $\textit{ṣhūlabhā-}$ 'big'. The specialisation of this suffix in animal names is known also
in other IE languages: Gk. ἀλαφός 'stag', O. Sl. голо́би 'dove', etc.

This completes the list of Sanskrit and IE suffixes. As will be seen all IE consonants were capable of being used as elements in the suffixal system.

§ 20. Vṛddhi in Derivation

In its use of vṛddhi Sanskrit has developed a system of derivation which was totally unknown in the parent IE language. It is used in connection with a number of suffixes, which may also function without being associated with vṛddhi, and as such have already been treated. Its use is a speciality of the secondary as opposed to the primary derivation. In the earlier language alternative forms without vṛddhi occur. Thus the suffix -a (normally accented) which makes adjectives on the basis of the old neuter suffixes, may be associated with vṛddhi, e.g. mānuṣa- 'connected with men; man' beside mānuṣa- 'man', and vāpuṣa- beside vāpuṣa- 'beautiful' from vāpuṣ-. This type of formation may be illustrated by a few examples classified according to the various suffixes.

Suffix -a: āṅgirasā- 'descended from Āṅgiras', māruta- 'relating to the Maruts', mānava- 'human; man', jatira- 'victorious', auṣijā- 'connected with the priests called uṣij-, mārdika- nt. 'mercy'.

Suffix -ya: dātva- 'divine', saumya- 'relating to Soma', vāyavyā- 'belonging to the wind'; neuter abstracts, pāltīya- 'greyness', ārtvijya- 'priestly office'.

Suffix -i: Āgnivesi- 'a descendant of Agnivesa-', Paurukutsi- 'a descendant of Paurukutsa'. This type is almost entirely confined to patronymics.

Suffix -āyana: patronymics, Kānvāyana-, Dākṣāyana-, etc.

Suffix -īya: pārvatīya- 'of the mountains'. This type is practically confined to the later language.

Suffix -ka: māmakā- 'mine', āvaśyaka- 'necessary', vāsan-tika- 'of the spring time', dhārmika- 'religious', etc.; this type is mainly confined to the later language and few Vedic examples are quoted.

Suffix -eya: ārṣeya- 'descendant of a sage', Jānaśruteyā- 'son of Janaśruti', vāsteya- 'of the bladder' (vasti-), pāuruṣeya- 'relating to man', etc.

Derivational vṛddhi with other suffixes is exceedingly rare;
such cases are ágnihipra- 'belonging to the fire-kindler' (agnih-) and ásvina- 'a day's journey on horseback'.

The exact details of the development of this use of vrddhi are somewhat obscure, but the material enables a number of observations about it to be made. The process began in the late Indo-Iranian period, developed rapidly in the pre-Vedic period of Indo-Aryan and continued to extend during the historical development of Sanskrit. The complete absence of any such formations in IE languages outside Indo-Iranian, makes it clear that it was a development confined to those languages, and the fact that in early Iranian examples of this vrddhi are exceedingly rare, shows that this type of formation was only in its beginning at the time of the separation of Indo-Aryan and Iranian. Iranian examples are O. Pers. märgava- 'inhabitant of Margiana', from margu- 'Margiana', Av. áhūiri- 'belonging to Ahura-', áhūiryä- 'son of a prince', from ahura-, mäźdayasni- 'belonging to the Mazdayasnian religion', xštāvaenya- 'descendant of Xštāvi. The three suffixes -a, -i and -ya which occur in connection with vrddhi in these Iranian examples are the ones that most frequently occur in this connection in Sanskrit, and the suffix of the patronymic xštāvaenya is related to the -āyana which makes patronymics in Sanskrit.

The point of departure of this derivational vrddhi must be sought in the old IE phonetic vrddhi, which, as instanced from time to time above, is found sporadically in the radical syllable of nouns of primary derivation. Instances quoted are rājan- 'king', bhārman- 'burden', vāsas- 'garment', dāru 'wood', sānu- 'top', grāhi- 'seizure', and the like. Examining some of the older cases of derivational vrddhi it can be seen that mānava- 'man', kāvyā- 'one having the qualities of a kavi-', wise man', ārya- 'Aryan', and nādyā- 'born from a river' and similar forms which from the point of view of Sanskrit show the vrddhi of secondary derivation, are not essentially different in form from words like dānava- 'demon', bhāvyā- 'which is to be ', vārya- 'to be chosen' and ādyā- 'to be eaten' which are either classified as primary formations, or (in the case of dānava-, etc.) are derived from primary formations with phonetic vrddhi. Likewise Skt. vāsara- 'matutinal; day', would appear to have derivational vrddhi (cf. vasara°), but elsewhere in Indo-European a long vowel is seen in the primary neuter (Gk. εἷπρ <*wesya, etc.). It may be assumed that primary formations
with vrddhi of the type dāru-, nābhi-, were originally more general, and that forms of the type *mānu- existed in paradigmatic alternation with mānu-, etc.; and that when the guṇa grade, mānu-, etc., was eventually generalised in the majority of the simple formations, there remained a class of thematic derivatives formed on the basis of obsolete vrddhied stems, i.e. mānavā- beside mānu-. This nucleus showing the alternation guṇa in the primary and vrddhi in the secondary derivative, would then be the starting point of the system in which vrddhi came to be widely used in the formation of secondary derivatives.

This means that derivational vrddhi must have appeared first in the case of the vowel ā, and that the use of ai and au in these formations must be due to analogy, for the reason that ai and au do not occur in primary nominal derivation. There is evidence that this was the case, since in Iranian, which reflects this process in its early beginnings, ā is the only vrddhied vowel which appears in this type of derivative. Forms such as śraētaona- n. pr. (cf. Skt. traitānā-) and haomananāha- ‘kindness’ (cf. Skt. saumanasā-) which have been quoted as parallels to the Sanskrit ai and au vrddhi, contain not vrddhi but guṇa. Since the words from which they are derived had by nature a guṇa as well as a weak grade (trai-/tri- ‘3’; (a)sau-/su- ‘good’) there is no reason why the above formations should not be straight derivatives from this (like tretā ‘triad’). It is in accordance with secondary origin of the ai and au vrddhi that cases of derivational vrddhi with these vowels are much rarer in the Rgveda than those containing ā.

On the whole the system has been fully built up by the time of the Rgveda. The main types are in existence, but examples do not occur with the same frequency as in the later language. There exist also a greater number of formations of the older type, in which the secondary suffixes are added without vrddhi, e.g. vāpuṣa- beside vāpuṣā- and viṣya- beside vaiṣya-. In the later period the popularity of the vrddhied forms rapidly increases, and it develops into one of the most characteristic features of the Sanskrit language.

§21. Grammatical Gender

In common with the other IE languages all Sanskrit nouns are classified according to the three genders, Masculine, Fem-
inine, and Neuter. This classification corresponds only partly
to the natural order of things, that is to say in so far as the nouns
or adjectives apply to human beings and to certain of the larger
animals. For the rest of the language the choice of gender is
arbitrary and without any logical foundation. In spite of this
the system has proved remarkably tenacious in the majority of
IE languages; in the modern Indo-Aryan languages, for in­
stance, where traces of the old IE grammatical system have
been reduced to a minimum, the system of grammatical gender
remains in operation. Languages such as English or Persian
which have abolished the distinction remain a minority even
now among the descendants of Indo-European.

A study of the evidence provided by the comparison of the
IE languages particularly of those which are recorded at an
early period, enables some insight to be gained into the origin
of this system. This is because grammatical gender was, at the
period of Indo-European which can be reached by comparison,
a comparatively recent innovation, and evidence enough can be
gathered from the main existing languages, to understand the
nature of its development.

Two stages can be traced in this development. At the earliest
stage there were two classes of nouns, on the one hand a ' com­
mon gender' later differentiated into masculines and feminines,
and on the other hand the 'neuters'. This state of affairs is
faithfully reflected in Hittite, which is distinguished from all
other IE languages by the absence of a special feminine gender.
The next stage sees the development of the feminine, and it is
only at this period that it is proper to speak of gender in the true
sense.

The existence of an earlier dual system is attested not only by
Hittite, but also by abundant evidence gathered from the re­
main ing languages. Meillet and others had adopted it on the
basis of this latter evidence before anything much was known
about Hittite, and the discovery of Hittite has gone further to
confirm the theory. Attempts have been made to explain the
dual system of Hittite as due to the loss of the feminine gender
in that language, but no satisfactory evidence has been adduced
for this. The fact is that the evidence of the other languages
points unambiguously to the pre-existence of a dual system, and
since such a system is to be found in Hittite, which in other re­
spects preserves archaic features not known to the remaining
languages, there is no reason why the Hittite evidence should not be taken at its face value. The evidence from Sanskrit and the other languages is briefly that (1) the bulk of the masculine suffixes is also to be found in feminine nouns, and (2) that the specifically feminine suffixes ō, ĭ are used also in masculine derivatives.

(1) The suffix -tār forms mainly agent nouns which are masculine. For the feminine the suffix ĭ is added (dātri) and a similar differentiation appears in other languages (Gk. δοτείρα, Lat. dātrīx). On the other hand in the ancient group of nouns in -tar expressing family relationships the undifferentiated suffix is used for masculine (πιτάρ-) and feminine (ματάρ-, γατάρ-) nouns. This conservative type preserves the older system which has been abandoned in the ordinary agent nouns in favour of a system in which masculine and feminine are distinguished.

The suffix -sar which appears in svāsar- 'sister', also in tisrās, cātasras, Lat. uxor and thematised in Hitt. išhaššaraš 'lady' functions adjectivally in the same way as -tar (both being opposed to the neuter -sar, -tar), but it tended at an early period to be specialised in feminine formations. The eventual adoption of H-suffix as the normal means of expressing the feminine checked this development, and only these few survivals remain.

The adjectival suffix -man is normally masculine (brahmān-, etc.), but in bahuvrihi compounds it remains indifferent to gender according to the earlier system. Vedic examples of this are purūśarmā (Aditis), dyutādyāmānam (uṣāsaman), sutārmānam (nāvam), acc. pl. śucijanmanas (uṣāsas), instr. pl. vājabhar-mabhīs (ūtibhīs). The Atharva-veda first begins to show special feminine forms in compounds containing the word nāman- 'name': pānca-nāmmī 'having five names', etc.

The feminine suffix is added to the present participle in Sanskrit and in Greek (bhārantis, φερούσα), but in Latin the older undistinguished type is used for both masculine and feminine (ferens, ferentem).

The non-neuter (i.e. accented) suffix -as functions in both masculine and feminine nouns, e.g. apās- 'active' masc. and fem. as opposed to āpas- neut. 'work'; likewise in bahuvrihi compounds, sumānās nom. sg. masc. and fem. 'well-disposed'. The same state of affairs appears in Greek, ἀλθείς, εὐμενής, etc. The compound suffix -yas, functioning in a comparative
sense, adds the feminine -i in Sanskrit (bhāyasi, etc.) but Latin preserves the undifferentiated usage (maior, masc. and fem.).

Non-neuter nouns in -i and -u are both masculine and feminine. The adjectives in i do not distinguish a masculine and feminine stem (sūcis nom. sg. masc. and fem.) and those in -u optionally follow the same system (cārus masc. and fem.). The latter may optionally form feminines in two ways (bahūt 'much' tanū 'thin'), but the fact that this still remains optional shows that it is a comparatively recent innovation.

The thematic suffix -a, accented and forming adjectives was originally in the same way indifferent to the distinction between masculine and feminine. This state of affairs has become altogether extinct in Sanskrit, but in addition to its being preserved in full force in Hittite, it has left considerable traces in Greek and Latin. It is preserved in Greek in compounds (pōdo-

Cakhulos ἡδος, etc.) and in both Greek and Latin in a number of individual formations. A good illustration is provided by the word for: daughter-in-law which appears with the thematic suffix in Greek and Latin (νυός, nurus) as opposed to the specifically feminine ā-suffix which appears in Sanskrit (snuṣā) and Slavonic (Russ. snoxā). There is no doubt that the form preserved in Greek and Latin is the more original, and that the form as it appears in Sanskrit and Slavonic is an innovation due to the growth of the system of grammatical gender; IE snuṣ-ā- was formed at a time when the accented thematic vowel was used simply to make adjectives on the basis of neuter stems in the way amply illustrated above (udārā-. ὄσωρ, etc.) and was, as still in Hittite, indifferent to gender. The word is based on an obsolete neuter in -us, and etymologically this sn-u-s- is to be connected with sn-eu-bh- in Lat. nūbo, etc.

(2) Instances in the reverse direction are quotable from a variety of IE languages. In dealing with the suffix -ā (-aH) it was pointed out that it could appear with two functions, one originally neuter forming verbal abstracts, etc., and the other adjectival; also that, since the usual variations in accent and apophony between the two types were mainly eliminated in these stems, there is no formal difference between the two. The feminine gender developed with the specialisation of this suffix, in its adjectival function, as a feminine suffix, but there are still preserved a number of masculine adjectival formations with this suffix. Examples of such masculines are seen in Lat. scriba,
nauta, agricola, etc., O. Sl. sluga 'servant', vojevoda 'army commander' which are in no way formally differentiated from feminines. Greek also has such masculine ἀ-stems, but has differentiated them on its own by adding -s in the nom. sg. (ποιητὴς, etc.). In Sanskrit this type has become obsolete like that of the feminine o-stems. On the other hand there remain a number of masculines formed with the compound suffix -i (-i-ḥ) which functions side by side with ἀ in the formation of feminines. Skt. rathī- 'charioteer' is a survival from the time when adjectival -i was indifferent to gender, before it became specialised as a feminine suffix. In Italic and Celtic this adjectival -i, by an easy change of syntactical function, was adapted to form the genitive singular of o-stems (equī stands to equus as rathī- to rātha-).

The existence of these common masc.-fern. formations so abundantly in Sanskrit and other IE languages, together with the twofold system of Hittite which shows no trace of a feminine gender, is capable of only one explanation. An older dual system has been replaced by a threefold classification into genders. The old system is preserved in its entirety in Hittite; in Sanskrit and other languages it is still partly preserved, as the above examples show, but in the main it has been replaced by the threefold system.

The process of this development cannot be followed in detail since it lies in the prehistory of the languages concerned. All that can be said is that at some period of later Indo-European the suffix ἀ (-aḥ) together with the compound suffixes i (-i-ḥ) and ū (-u-ḥ) came to be specialised as feminine suffixes. This must have applied first to these suffixes in their adjectival use beginning possibly with a small nucleus of words—which happened to possess this suffix and were feminine by meaning (e.g. Skt. gnā, Gk. γυνή). The suffixes so used are either an addition to the primary adjectival suffix (rājñī) or in the case of thematic stems a substitution for it (nēwos/nēwā).

The nature of the earlier dual system has been made sufficiently clear in dealing with the individual suffixes above. The words of 'common gender' from which masculine and feminine nouns eventually derive are in origin adjectives or, what from the point of view of early Indo-European is the same thing, agent nouns. The fundamental division is the one represented on the one hand by Gk. ὕδωρ 'water', Hitt. arkuwar
prayer', Skt. yāsas- 'fame', brāhma 'prayer', *sthātar 'stability', and on the other hand by Skt. udra- 'water-animal, otter', īkvan- 'worshipping, worshipper', yāsas- 'famous', brahmān- 'priest', and sthātār- 'stander', and in other examples copiously quoted above. It is therefore misleading to speak of an 'animate' and 'inanimate' gender as if the twofold classification were in origin the expression of such a distinction. It is clear enough from the evidence that the origin of the system was primarily grammatical and not due to any psychological classification of objects in the external world. The so-called nouns of 'common gender' or 'animate gender' are in origin agent nouns, and they are predominantly 'animate' (and in the main designative of human beings), because it is natural that the agent type of noun is most frequently applied to persons. It is not however exclusively so, and this may be illustrated by a number of Greek formations in -τήρ, e.g. ἀρτήρ 'sword-belt', λαμπτήρ 'lamp-stand', κρατήρ 'mixing-bowl', τριπτήρ 'pestle', ζευκτήρ 'yoke-strap', etc. These represent an ancient type, better preserved in Greek than elsewhere, and show how in origin the adjective/agent-noun class of stem had nothing to do with the distinction between animate and inanimate. We have seen that these suffixally accented formations are originally based on a class of neuters which are well represented by the Hittite formations in -tar. The latter are in the main verbal abstracts or nouns of a similar type. The adjectival type with suffixal accent means somebody or something connected with the meaning of the primary neuter, and could originally apply to things as well as to persons. Because in practice such formations were most frequently applied to persons, the tendency was to eliminate their use as inanimates, so that in the case of nouns in -ler for instance such usage is rare outside this Greek type.

Another type of archaism is preserved in the Vedic language. This is the occasional use of the masculine form of adjectives, in the case of consonantal stems, in agreement with neuter nouns. As examples of this we may quote vācaḥ... dvibārhāḥ RV. 7. 8. 6, śārdho... anarvāṇam I. 37. 1, visarmāṇam kṛṇuhi vittām 5. 54. 9, śārdho mārutam... satyāśravasam ṇbhvasam 5. 52. 8, tād vāstrāṃ ojasvī bhavati MS 4, p. 47,4. These reflect an early state of affairs when the formations with accented suffix and vṛddhied nominative were purely adjectival, unconnected
with gender, and could therefore be used in agreement with any noun. With the growth of the gender system a new type of adjectival neuter was created, e.g. *purū* beside *purūs* 'much', and traces like the above were eventually eliminated. The process is still to be seen in the course of development in Sanskrit in the case of the agent nouns in *-tr*; the neuter formation *kārti-" doer" (gen. sg. *kārtiṇas*) is unknown in the earliest texts and is a later analogical development. The older neuter forms of adjectives, though of early origin, were to begin with innovations of the same type.

The foundation of the non-neuter class lies in the adjectival formations, but it was early augmented by transferences which introduced a growing number of action nouns. These have been classified separately in the above pages and are illustrated by such examples as *bhārā-" burden", jogīśā "desire of conquest", vāc- "speech", ojmān- "strength", bhiyās-"fear", mati- "intelligence", and tāntu- "thread". The nature of this transference seems to have been mainly mechanical. Personification plays a certain part but this is strictly subsidiary. It is understandable that a stem like *usās-" should appear as feminine for this reason in view of the place of *usās-* in the Vedic pantheon; or that *omān-" assistance" and dāmnān- "liberality" which are invoked as divine attributes of the gods should be masculine rather than neuter. But no such consideration can apply to the majority of such nouns. For instance, while it is quite clear that *vāc-"fem. "speech" in Sanskrit usage quite definitely personified as opposed to the neuter *vācas-*, it cannot be said that it owes its feminine gender to this. On the other hand it is capable of being personified because for other reasons it has acquired the feminine (derived from the originally common) gender. Stems terminating in occlusives in all IE languages take the nominative s and distinguish between nominative and accusative. In this they are distinguished from the mass of neuter action nouns and agree with the adjectival and agent noun type. It is clear also from the absence of cases to the contrary that this must have been the case from a very early period. There is no logical basis for this; all that can be said is that there is a general rule that all stems of this type inflect in this way, that *vāk(s), vācam* is so inflected because it is a radical stem ending in an occlusive. The fact that it is inflected in this way, and
thereby acquires a non neuter, eventually feminine gender, enables it to be personified. In the same way we may judge the relationship between ápas, nom. pl. fem. and udakam, udan-(Gk. ὀμῷομ, etc.) ‘water’. There is nothing about radical action nouns as such, from the point of view of their meaning which should cause them to become masculines or feminines; only the mechanical development which caused them to inflect in the same way as the adjectival type of noun which formed the basis of the ‘animate’ gender is responsible for their becoming such.

In the same way other action noun stems ending in oclusives early inflected in this way (Hitt. kartimmiyat- ‘anger’, etc.). The neuter i-stems were eliminated except for small remnants, and a similar tendency, though on a smaller scale is observable among the action nouns in -u. The thematic action nouns are extensions of root stems which were originally common gender, and this characteristic they retained; when the common gender split into masculine and feminine they naturally became masculines because this is the masculine adjectival suffix. In the same way the action nouns in -ā are feminine because this is the feminine adjectival suffix.

An essential part is played in the development of the IE system of gender by the system prevailing in these languages by which an adjective must be inflected in the case, number and gender of the noun with which it is in agreement. This is one of the most characteristic features of Indo-European, as grammatical congruence on this scale is hardly to be found elsewhere. Traces of an earlier system, in which the simple adjectival stem could function in attributive use, survive in nominal composition, indicating that the full system was only gradually built up, but it is none the less of ancient origin. It is fully developed in Hittite and applies there to gender in so far as the ‘common gender’ and the ‘neuter’ are distinguished, that is to say in the nominative and the accusative. With the growth of the feminine gender, which is the final stage in the development of the system, the system of congruence was correspondingly extended.

§22. NOMINAL COMPOSITION

The capacity to combine independent words into compound words is inherited by Sanskrit from Indo-European, and similar formations are found in other IE languages. Sanskrit differs
from the other IE languages in the enormous development which the system has undergone, which is unparalleled elsewhere. This development, however, is characteristic only of the classical language, and in the Vedic language the use made of nominal composition is much more restricted. It is estimated that in the Rgveda the role it plays is not more important than in Homeric Greek. From the point of view of comparative philology it is mainly the Vedic language that has to be considered. The unlimited development of nominal composition in the later classical literature is artificial and not based on spoken usage.

The main features of a compound, though not invariably present, are (1) the appearance of the first member in its stem form, without the inflectional endings with which, except in the vocative, it is associated in independent use, and (2) the uniting of the two elements under one accent. The first feature is of great interest from the point of view of early Indo-European morphology, since it points to a time when the simple stem of a noun or adjective could appear in syntactical relation to other words of the sentence, without the case terminations which later became obligatory for the expression of such relationships. A compound comes into existence when two words appear so regularly and frequently together that they become to all intents and purposes a single expression, a process which is normally associated with the development of a specialised meaning. In the case of inflected groups this leads to compounds like Bṛhaspāti- proper name of a divinity ('lord of prayer'). On the other hand a compound like viṣṇātī- 'chief of a clan' can only derive, as a type, from a state of affairs in which the relationship which is later expressed by the genitive case, could be expressed by the simple juxtaposition of two nouns in a certain order (vik pōti-s). The compounds as a system are the fossilised remains of an earlier state of Indo-European which has long been supplanted by the consistently inflected type which appears in Sanskrit and the classical languages.

Four main classes of compound were recognised by the Indian grammarians, Tatpurusa (with a special subdivision Karṇadārāya) Bahuvrīhi, Dvandva and Aavyayībhāvā, terms which will be defined below. Of these the last two are in the main specifically Indian developments; the types inherited from Indo-European are those classified as tatpurusa and bahuvrīhi.
For the purpose of this brief exposition the inherited types may be divided into two major classes, namely I. those which function as nouns and II. those which function as adjectives. These are followed by III. Dvandva and IV. Avyayībhāva.

The first class falls into two main divisions according to whether the first member is (a) an adjective or noun in apposition with the second member or (b) a noun standing in such relationship to the second member as would normally be expressed by a case termination. Conversely the adjectival type can conveniently be divided into two classes according to whether the final member is adjective or noun. Of the two major classes, nominal and adjectival, the former are rare in the early language, and this is the case elsewhere in Indo-European. On the other hand the various types of adjectival compound are abundantly represented, as elsewhere, particularly in Greek. We shall see that there is very good reason for this disparity and that it is of significance for understanding how the system evolved.

I. A. Compounds in which the two members stand in apposition to each other are named Karmadhāraya by the Indian grammarians. The main class consists of an adjective followed by a noun. The type is rare in the Saṃhitās, but becomes more frequent in the later Vedic prose texts. Examples are candrāmās- ‘(bright) moon’, pūrnāmāsa- ‘full-moon’, ekavīrá- ‘unique hero’, krṣṇaśakuni- ‘raven’, mahāgrāmā- ‘great host’, mahāvīrá- ‘great hero’, mahādhāmanā- ‘great wealth’, nilotpala- ‘blue lotus’, rajataśtrā- ‘silver vessel’, dakkṣiṇāgni- ‘southern fire’, adharahanā- ‘lower jaw’, tṛtiyasavānā- ‘3rd pressing’, navadāvā- ‘land newly burnt for cultivation’, krṣṇasarpa- ‘cobra’. Such compounds possess frequently specialised meanings, which would not automatically be expressed by the simple combination of the meanings of the adjective and the noun. The word krṣṇaśakuni literally ‘black bird’, means more specifically ‘raven’; ‘black bird’ would be expressed by the uncompounded noun and adjective. Similarly nilotpala- means not merely ‘a blue lotus’, but a particular botanical species (*Nymphaea cyanea*). It is only in the later language that such compounds show a tendency to be used as simple equivalents of the combination adjective + noun.

In a smaller class the first member is a noun in a relation of apposition to the second member. Such are puruṣamṛgā-
THE FORMATION OF NOUNS 211

'male antelope', úlúkayátu- 'owl demon', vrśákapí 'man-ape', rājarśí- 'royal sage', dhenuśṭarí 'barren cow', ukśavehát- 'an impotent bull'.

The karmadharaya is represented in other IE languages by such examples as Gk. ákrópolis, μεσόγαια, áγριάμπελος, Lat. angiportus, etc., and the second type can be compared with formations like Gk. ἰατρόμαντις 'physician-seer'. But just as in the earliest Sanskrit these formations are rare. This is natural in view of the origin of these compounds and their place in the grammatical structure of Indo-European in its various stages. They are the remains of a time when the adjective, when used attributively, took no inflections for gender, number and case. Such a state of affairs came early to be replaced in Indo-European by one in which the attributive adjective was inflected in agreement with its noun in all cases, genders and numbers, but there remained a few expressions which were so grown together in usage that they continued as relics of the old system. These could then serve as models for the creation of new examples of the same type.

B. Tatpurusás with an ordinary substantive as their first member are in the earliest language somewhat more numerous than compounds of the karmadharaya type, but they are still distinctly rare in comparison with Bahuvrihis and other adjectival types. They are rara in the earliest part of the Ṛgveda and become gradually more important in the successive stages of Vedic literature. Examples are rājaputrá- 'king's son', mytyubándhu- 'companion of death', viśpáti- 'lord of the tribe', druṣpadá- 'post of wood', hiranyarathá- 'car of gold', devakilbiśá- 'offence against the gods', indrasená 'Indra's army', camasádhvaryu- 'the priest connected with the cups', druṣghaná- 'mace of wood', ācāryajāyá 'teacher's wife', puruṣarājá- 'king of men', ajalomá- 'goat's hair', aśvavālā- 'hair (from the tail) of a horse', udapātrá- 'bowl of water'. The relationship between the two members is most frequently that expressed by the genitive case, but being very general it can in various examples be transcribed by all cases, and the Indian grammarians have classified them on these lines: Dative, yuṣpadáru 'wood for a sacrificial post' (yuṣpáya dárú), ablative, caurabhaya- 'fear of thieves' (caurebhýo bhayam), locative grámaavása- 'dwelling in a village', accusative videságamana 'going abroad'.

...
Compounds of which the last member is a verbal action noun in -ti form a special class. Such are dhānasāti- ‘winning of wealth’, devāhiti- ‘invocation of the gods’, sōmasuti- ‘pressing of soma’ and devāhiti- ‘ordination of the gods’. These have accent of the first member as opposed to the tatpurusas above and in this respect go with the adjective compounds whose final member is a participle in -ta (vīrājāta-, etc.). They are also abundantly formed in the earliest language, a characteristic which is usually reserved for adjective compounds. A few instances where the final member in -ti has acquired a concrete sense are to be classed with the examples above, e.g. devaheti ‘weapon of the gods’.

The corresponding type appears in other IE languages in such examples as Gk. μητροπάτωρ ‘mother’s father’, πατράδελφος ‘father’s brother’, οἰκωδεσσώτης ‘master of a house’, Lat. muscedera ‘mouse dung’, Goth. piudangardi- ‘king’s house’, O. Sl. vodotokū ‘watercourse’.

Besides these there exists in the Vedic language a new type of compound in which the first member retains its genitive ending, and, most frequently, its accent. These are commonest with pāti- as the last member: vānaspati- ‘lord of the wood, tree’, gnaśpati- ‘husband of a divine woman’, bhīhaspāti- ‘lord of devotion’, etc.; with one accent amhasaspati- ‘lord of distress’, name of an intercalary month. Other examples appear rarely: divodāsa- ‘servant of heaven’, rāyaspoṣa- ‘increase of wealth’; later, gospada- ‘cow’s footprint, small puddle’, dāsyāḥputra- ‘slave-girl’s son (term of abuse)’. Compare Gk. Δίοςκουροι, etc. This is the type of compound an inflected language might be expected to form. Its emergence in the Vedic language is to be viewed in connection with the comparative rarity of the ordinary type. As in Greek, etc., these had come to play only a small part in the language, and were in comparison with other kinds of compound, unproductive. Later the reverse process sets in; the frequency of the true tatpurusā increases and the development of the new inflected type is checked.

II. Compounds functioning as adjectives may be divided into two classes according as to whether the latter member is an adjective or noun.

A. (1) (a) Compounds with verbal adjective as second member. In these the first member most frequently stands in the accusative relationship to the verbal adjective which forms the
second member. They may be classified according to the various types of stem that appear in the second member.

Root-stems: havirād- 'eating the oblation', āsvāvīd- 'knowing horses', vrtrahān- 'slaying enemies'. Roots in i, u, r may not appear as root nouns and add the augment -i: dhanañjit- 'conquering wealth', somasūt- 'pressing soma', jyotisākṛ- 'making light'. Such compounds with root stems have sometimes a passive meaning: manoyūj- 'yoked by the will', hrdayaśīvīdhr- 'pierced to the heart'. The type is familiar in other IE languages, cf. Gk. ὑπόλυτος, Lat. fidicen, artifex, etc.

Thematic suffix: annaddā- 'food-eating', goghōnā- 'killing cows', devavandā- 'god-praising', karmakara- 'workman'. A newer type in which the first member takes the accusative (or occasionally some other) termination is common in connection with this suffix: dhanañjayā- 'conquering wealth', prayandā- 'destroying cities', talpeśayā- 'lying on a bed'. The thematic type is familiar in other IE languages: Av. haśidava- 'betraying a friend', Gk. θυμοθθοπός, δρυρόμος, Lat. causidicus, magnificus, Russ. vodonos 'water-carrier', etc.

Suffix -ana: keśavārdhāna- 'cutting hair', amitrādāmbhāna- 'deceiving enemies', devavāyājana- 'worshipping the gods'.

Suffix -in: ukthaśamsins- 'singing hymns', vratacārin- 'performing a vow', satyavādīn- 'speaking the truth'.

Suffix -i: pathirāksi- 'protecting the road', sahohāri- 'bearing strength'.


Other suffixes - rastradipsū- 'injuring the kingdom', lokakrtnū- 'world making', nṛpāty- 'men-protecting'.

Among formations of this kind there is a considerable class in which the form of the last member is modelled on the present stem taken by the root in question. Such are stems ending in:

-ya (4th class): punarnanava- 'again thinking of', aksṛtapacya- 'ripening without ploughing', asūryampasya- 'not seeing the sun'.

-aya (10th class and causatives): anilaya- 'not resting', janamejaya- 'rousing the people', dharmadhāraya- 'maintaining the law'. Cf. Av. naro vaēpaya-.

-nva: viśvaṁvinvā 'stimulating all', dhiyanjinvā, dānupinvā.
THE FORMATION OF NOUNS

-na: duradabhd-, kulampuná-, sadāvrnd-. Cf. Gk. μίο-
θαρνος, πολυθάμνης.

Infixed nasal: agnimindhá-, śalyakṛntá-, govinda-. Cf. Av.
yimō:krnnta-.

Reduplicated formations: śardhañjaha-, manojighra-, idād-
adha-. Cf. Av. azrō:dāda-.

(b) Compounds with a past participle passive as second
member differ from these in the syntactical relation of their
members, and also in having their accent normally on the first
member. For this reason they may be treated as a separate
sub-class. They are a very productive type: hástakṛta- 'made
by hand ', vīrājāta- ' born of a hero ', devātta- ' given by the
gods', prajāpatisṛṣṭa- ' created by P. ', ulkābhihata- ' struck by
a thunder bolt '; indrotā- ' helped by Indra '. This is an old
Indo-European type which is also represented in related lan-
guages: Av. ahura-ñāta-, Gk. θεόδμητος, ἵππηλατος, etc.

The type of compound instanced under (a) is characterised by
the fact that the second member is very frequently, in the case
of some classes almost invariably, a stem that cannot appear in
independent use. Compounds like goghnd- may be formed at
will but a simple ghnd- does not exist. The same feature is
shared by the related languages and goes back to the Indo-Euro-
pean period. The origin of this type of compound goes back to
an earlier phase of Indo-European with a different and simpler
structure to that prevailing in the historical period and the
period immediately preceding it. What in the historical period
are compounds were to begin with constructions of a type
which are familiar in languages with a less developed inflection
than Indo-European. The relative participles known in
Dravidian and certain other linguistic groups are instances
of this type of construction. In Indo-European the growth
of inflection led to the disuse of such simple constructions
but this type of compound, based on them, continued to
flourish.

(2) Compounds having as their last member an ordinary
adjective are comparatively few. Such are: tanūśubhra-
' shining in body ', yajñādhīra- ' versed in the sacrifice ',
sānavipra- ' skilled in Sāma chants ', tilāmiśra- ' mixed with
sesamum '; with case termination of the first member,
médéraghū- ' quick in exhilaration ', vidmanāpās- ' working with
wisdom '.

B. (1) Bahuvrihi-. The bahuvrihi or possessive compounds contain the same elements and in the same order as the kar­
madhāraya and tatpuruṣa compounds but differ in meaning in
that the compound functions as an adjective qualifying some
other concept. They also differ in accentuation from the
karmadhāraya and tatpuruṣa types, being characterised
normally by the retention of the accent of the first member of
the compound. The distinction between the two opposing types
is illustrated by such cases as rājaputra- ‘having kings as sons’
as opposed to rājaputrā- ‘son of a king’ and sūryatejas- ‘having
the brightness of the sun’ as opposed to sūryatejās- ‘the sun’s
brightness’. The following will serve as typical examples of the
bahuvrihi type: bahūvrihi- ‘having much rice’ (after which
the class is named), māyāraroman- ‘having the plumes of a
peacock’, indraśatru- ‘whose foe is Indra’, ugrābhū- ‘having
powerful arms’, dirghaśmaśru- ‘long-bearded’, jīvāputra-
‘having living sons’, iddhāgni- ‘whose fire is kindled’, prá-
yatādakśiṇa- ‘who has presented sacrificial gifts’, chinnaṇakṣa-
whose wing is severed’, śucādṛatha- ‘having a shining chariot’,
pāncāṅgurī- ‘five-fingered’, mādhujihva- ‘honey-tongued’,
maṇīgrīva- ‘having a necklace on the neck’, pātraḥastā- ‘having a
vessel in the hand’, vājrabhāhu- ‘armed with the vājra’, khar-
mukha- ‘donkey-faced’. In the Vedic language there are occasional
examples with inflected first member: krātvāmargha-
‘constituting a reward gained by intelligence’, āsāṃnju-
‘having arrows in the mouth’, divīyoni- ‘whose origin is in
heaven’.

The type is widely distributed in the IE languages. Gk.
λευκῶλενος ‘white-armed’, ῥοδόδάκτυλος ‘rose-fingered’, Lat.
magnanimus ‘great-souled’, capricornus ‘having the horns of a
goat’, Goth. krainya-hairts ‘pure-hearted’, O. Sl. crīnovlasū
‘black-haired’.

The bahuvṛhi likewise originated in the earlier, less inflected
period of Indo-European, and it remained after the system of
declining adjective and noun in apposition was developed.
That development was, as we have seen, unfavourable to the
growth of a large class of karmadhāraya compounds, since in
the simple collocations of adjective and noun the inflected
forms were used. On the other hand the bahuvṛhi construction
could not be so simply transformed, since a substitute
could only be found by clumsy periphrases. Consequently it
survived in the more developed inflectional stage in the form of these compounds.

Though the latter member of these compounds is always a noun, it does, in the case of consonantal stems always have an adjectival form, e.g. suyasas- ‘of good fame’. From *(a)su yásas- ‘good fame’ (cf. Hitt. aššu- ‘good’) an adjective, nom. sg. suyasas is formed in the same way as yašás from simple yásas, since the apophony indicates that the accent was originally on the last syllable of the compound too. The same applies to the n-stems: nom. sg. purūnāmā ‘having many names’, etc. Adjectival -ā is frequently used in the same way as with simple nouns: anudrā ‘without water’, urūnasā ‘having a broad nose’, trivatsā- ‘three years old’, sarvavedasā- ‘(sacrifice) in which all property is given away’. Other adjectival suffixes are frequently appended, e.g. -ka: jivaptirka- ‘whose father is alive’, pūnyalakṣmīka- ‘having auspicious marks’; -ya: hiranyakēṣya- ‘golden haired’, mādhuhastya- ‘having sweetness in the hand’; -in: mahāhastin- ‘having a large hand’, satagvin- ‘having a hundred cows’.

(2) Adjectival compounds are formed on the basis of the combination preposition + noun. Corresponding to aṭy āṁhas ‘beyond distress’ there exists the compound aṭyamhas- ‘one who is beyond the reach of distress’. Similarly ānvārata- ‘obedient’, abhidyu- ‘directed to heaven’, upakāṣā- ‘reaching to the shoulder’, ėrḍhvānabhas- ‘being above the clouds’, parihastā ‘something put round the hand, amulet’. These compounds frequently take the adjectival suffixes which have been noted above in the case of bahuvrihis: ijjarāsd- ‘reaching to old age’, āpatki- ‘being in the way’, paripānitiḥ- ‘way-layer’, upātrīya- ‘lurking in the grass’.

(3) An archaic class, confined entirely to the Vedic language, is composed of a participial first member governing the second member. Examples: vidādvasu- ‘winning wealth’, bharādvāja- ‘carrying off prizes’, tārāḍvēsa- ‘overcoming hostility’, mandāyātsakha- ‘rejoicing friends’. The same type is established in Old Iranian: Av. vanat āpōna- ‘winning battles’, etc. Sporadically other verbal noun stems are used in the same way: Trasādasyu- ‘making enemies tremble’, radāvāsu- ‘opening up wealth’, dātivāra- ‘giving choice things’. Similar governing compounds are familiar in Greek: φερέωνος ‘carrying his house’, ἐλκεσίτεπλος ‘dragging robes’.
Adjective compounds used as adverbs

Compound adjectives may be used adverbially in the same way as simple adjectives, and as such normally appear in the accusative singular neuter. This is common with bahuvrihis and in the classical literature long conglomerations of this nature are frequently so used. It is also common with the compounds having a preposition or other indeclinable as first member, thus atimātraṁ adv. ‘excessively’ from atimātra- adj. ‘excessive’. Such adverbial compounds are considered by the Hindu grammarians to be a separate class of compound and they are termed avyayābhāva-. The reason for this lies in the fact that in the later language there is a considerable class of such adverbs without actual adjectives corresponding to them. This class is represented by such examples as uparājam ‘near the king’, upanadām ‘near the river’, pratyagnī ‘facing the fire’ and pratiniśām ‘nightly’. A productive class of indeclinables is formed by those compounds, which have a relative adverb as prior member: yathākāmam ‘according to wish’, yāvajīvam ‘as long as one lives’, etc.

III. Dvandva Compounds.

This type has nothing exactly corresponding to it in the related languages and has developed mainly within the historical period of Sanskrit itself. The earliest type which is common to Sanskrit and Avestan consists of two duals, each retaining its own accents, which are juxtaposed in such a way that \( a + b \) is expressed by \( 2a + 2b \): Mitrā-Vārunau ‘M. and V.’, dyāvā-prthivī ‘heaven and earth’, uṣāsā-nāktā ‘dawn and night’; cf. Av. pasu vīra ‘beast and man’, gen. pasvā vīrayā. Sometimes elliptic duals may be used in place of this construction: Mitrā ‘M. and V.’, pitarā ‘parents’, dyāvā ‘heaven and earth’.

This represents the oldest state of affairs. Out of such constructions, which are not in the proper sense of the term compounds, the Sanskrit system of dvandva compounds developed and some of the intermediate stages may be observed in the early literature. Thus (1) the form of the nom. acc. dual is retained in the first member in cases other than nom. acc.: mitrā-vārunayoh instead of mitrāyor vārunayoh; (2) in a small number of instances in the RV., and in a somewhat larger number in the later Saṁhitās, the first member of such a
THE FORMATION OF NOUNS

combination loses its accent: \textit{indrāpūṣṇōḥ, somārudrāyoh}. The final stage appears when the first member appears in its simple stem form: \textit{indravāyū} (only example in RV.) \textit{vāyu-savitṛbhyām, dakṣakratā}, etc.

Because the ending of the agent nouns, etc., in -\textit{tar} in the nom. sg. coincides with that of the first member of the dual dvandva, this form is chosen in dvandva compounds having such a stem as first member: \textit{pitāputrau} 'father and son', \textit{hotādhvaryū}, etc.

Plural dvandvas are exceedingly rare in the earliest language. Of the few examples \textit{indrāmarutāḥ} (voc.) and \textit{pitāputrāḥ} 'father and sons' are modelled, as far as their first member is concerned, on the dual dvandvas. An example of the normal type, with simple stem of first member, appears in a late hymn of the \textit{Rgveda}: \textit{ajāvāyāḥ} 'sheep and goats'. In the later Vedic literature such examples become more common: \textit{devamanusyāḥ} 'gods and men', \textit{bhadraptāpāḥ} 'good and bad'. In this period also dvandva compounds with more than two members begin to appear: \textit{prānāpānodānēsu}.

Feminine nouns are not found employed in the oldest type of dvandva in the Veda, though such are known from Avestan: \textit{āpa urvairē} 'water and crops'. They appear in the later Vedic period in the fully developed type of compound: \textit{jāyāpatī} 'wife and husband'.

A few neuter dvandvas of the fully developed type appear even in the \textit{Rgveda}: \textit{satyānṛtē} 'truth and falsehood', \textit{ahorātrāṇi} 'days and nights'. There are also a few older types: \textit{idhmā-barhīś-} with two accents and \textit{iṣṭāpūrtā-} with the first member modelled on the old type of masculine dvandva. In the plural dvandvas \textit{āṅgāpārūṃśi} 'limbs and joints' (two accents) and \textit{ukthāsastrāṇī} 'hymns and praises' the form of the first member may be interpreted as the old form of the nom. acc. pl. neut.

At an early period there was created a type of neuter dvandva which functions as a singular collective stem: \textit{kṛtākṛtā-} 'what has been done and what has not been done', \textit{tyṇodakā-} 'grass and water', \textit{kaśīpūpaabarhanā-} 'pillow and bolster'. In the examples both members are neuters. The same type also appears early in cases where one member is neuter, whether it be the last member as in \textit{kesaśmaṣrū-} 'hair and beard' and in \textit{kloṃahṛdayā-} 'lungs and heart', or the first member as in \textit{ahorātrā-} 'a day and a night', \textit{śīrogṛivā-} 'head and neck' and in \textit{yugaśamyā-} 'yoke and the attaching pin'. Finally the stage
is reached (in the Brāhmaṇas) when two non-neuters are combined to form a singular collective dvandva: *osadhivanaspati-‘plants and trees’, candratārakā-‘moon and stars’, uṣṭrakhara-‘camels and asses’.

Adjectival dvandvas are formed by the combination of two adjectives applying to the same noun, and such occur from the *Rgveda onwards: *nilalohita-‘dark blue and red’, tāmradhūmrā-‘dusky copper-coloured’, arunābhrur-‘red brown’, kṛṣṇa-sabala-‘speckled black’, sītoṣṇa-‘lukewarm’, etc. There are parallels to these in other IE languages (e.g. Gk. λευκόπυρρος, λευκόφαιος, γλυκύπυκρος) and it is likely that in contradistinction to the nominal dvandvas the type is inherited from Indo-European.
CHAPTER V
THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS

§1. ACCENT AND APOPHONY

The IE declensional system was characterised by a shift of accent from the stem in the strong cases (nom. acc. sg. and du., nom. pl.) to the termination in the weak cases, that is to say in the majority of the oblique cases. This shift of accent entailed apophonic changes affecting stem and suffix. The system was already in decay in the late IE period, and tending to be replaced by a system of fixed accent. In Vedic the shift of accent is best maintained in monosyllabic stems, but considerable traces of it are found in the case of other types of stem, both radically accented neuters (yákṛt, yaksāś) and suffixally accented masc.-fem. types.

The three grades of apophony associated with this accent shift are clearly seen in the declension of vrtrahān-: nom. sg. vrtrahā, acc. sg. vrtrahāṇam, gen. sg. vrtraghnās. It is seen also in the suffixally accented r- and n-stems of the type pītā, pītāram, pītrey. ukṣā ‘bull’, ukṣāṇam, ukṣnās. Elsewhere it has been modified and simplified in various ways. The vrddhi of the nom. sg. tends to be extended to the acc. sg. and nom. pl., e.g. pāṭi ‘foot’, pāḍam, pāḍas, as opposed to Gk. πόδα, πόδες. The accent shift may remain while the vowel gradation is abandoned, e.g. dīk ‘direction’, gen. sg. diśās for what must originally have been *deiks: dīkēs. Conversely the accent may be stabilised but the vowel gradation retained, e.g. paśumān ‘possessing cows’, paśumāntam, paśumātas.

The system of accent shift is best preserved in radical consonantal stems. In these the accent regularly appears on the termination outside the strong cases. On the other hand the accompanying vowel gradation is only partially preserved. The three grades appear in the declension of kṣāṃ- ‘earth’: nom. du. kṣāmā with vrddhi, loc. sg. kṣāmi with guna, gen. sg. kṣmās, jmās, gmās with zero grade of root. Elsewhere the zero grade is rare in alternating stems: cf. vrtraghnās already mentioned,
THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS 221

havyaūhā instr. sg. of havyavāh- 'carrying the oblation', duṇas (once duṇas RV. 2. 2. 7.) acc. pl. of dvāras 'doors'. In other stems there is only alternation between vrddhi and guṇa, e.g. nom. sg. pāt 'foot', gen. sg. padās, āpas nom. pl. 'water', acc. pl. apās, nāsā nom. acc. du. 'nostrils', gen. loc nasōs. The vrddhi grade is generalised in vāc- 'speech' (nom. sg. vāk, gen. sg. vācas) as also in Lat. vōx, vōcis, in contradistinction to the guṇa grade in Gk. ὡξ, ὢθα. The guṇa grade is generalised in such nouns as kṣāp- 'night', instr. sg. kṣapā, spās- 'spy', etc.

Root nouns having i, u, or r as the radical vowel have generalised the weak grade in all cases: dik nom. sg. 'direction', gen. sg. diśās, instr. pl. digbhīs, similarly from jī- 'hymn', rīk, rdās, rghīs, and so on without exception. With these belong root nouns originally ending in h, namely radical stems in -i. and -ū, e.g. āhi- 'thought' (dhis, dhiyam, dhiyās) and bhā- 'earth' (bhās, bhūvam, bhuvās).

Accent alternation has been abandoned as a general rule in the case of those root stems which appear at the end of compounds, e.g. trivīt- 'threefold', gen. sg. trivītas. The older alternating system is only preserved in vrtraghṇās because the vowel of the root had been elided. In the alternating stem anadvāh- gen. sg. anadvāhas the apophony indicates that there was originally a shifting accent which has been replaced by a fixed accent. An exception to the general tendency is found in the various formations in -aṅc (pratyāṅc-, etc.) which are originally compounds of prepositions with the root of ākṣi 'eye'. Here the accent appears on the termination in the weakest cases (gen. sg. pratiścās) but it is shifted back in the middle cases with a corresponding difference of grades (pratyāgbhīs).

The movable accent was originally characteristic of the neuter nouns formed with the various suffixes classified above. The tendency was from the late IE period for this to be given up and replaced by a fixed radical accent. Nevertheless there remain in Sanskrit, as also in Greek, various survivals from this system. The accent shift is usually preserved in the archaic neuters with alternating r/n stem: āṣyk, asnās 'blood', yākrt, yaknās 'liver', sākrt, sāknās 'dung'; likewise in the stems in i/n: ākṣi, akṣnās 'eye', āṣhi, asthnās 'bone', dādhi, dādhnās 'curd'. Similar terminational accent appears also in āsnās gen. sg. (āsyā- 'mouth'), likewise in dōṣnās, yūṣnās, udnās and śirṣnās (gen. sg. to dōs 'forearm', yās- 'broth', udakā- 'water', and
The terminational accent in the oblique cases entails in some instances a reduction of the root, e.g. *udnās* as compared with Engl. *water*, etc. It is seen also in gen. sg. *usrās* 'of the dawn' compared with the strong stem *vasar* which appears in compounds. In two cases fixed accent has been applied to nouns of the old *r/n* declension: *dāhar, áh纳斯* 'day', *ādhar, ādh纳斯* 'udder'.

In the masc. and fem. *r*- and *n*-stems the accent shift to the termination is preserved in the weakest cases where the vowel of the suffix is lost: *pitā, pitre*, cf. Gk. *πατήρ, πατρός, μῦρδά* 'head', gen. *mūrduh纳斯, ukṣā* 'bull', *ukṣuṇās*, cf. Gk. *ἀρήν, Ἀρη* 'lamb', gen. *āpūs*. In the middle cases where the *n* and *r* of the suffix were vocalised on the loss of the guṇa vowel the accent is retracted to the suffix: *pitbhis, mūrdbhābis*. In certain cases the apophony indicates that the accent was originally of the alternating variety although it has become fixed: *śvā* 'dog', gen. *śūnas* (original accent in Gk. *κυνός*), *yuvā* 'young man', gen. *yīnas, maγhāvā, maγhόnas*.

With *as*-stems traces of this accent shift are exceedingly rare. The instr. sg. *bhiṣā* (*bhiyās*-'fear') and the gen. sg. *uṣās* (for *us-s-as*) show both the terminational accent and the corresponding weak form of suffix and root. Otherwise these stems have been normalised.

This accent was originally characteristic of the *i*- and *u*-stems, and traces remain notably in Greek: *οἰς* sheep', gen. *οἰός, γόνα* 'knee', *γουμος, δόρα* 'spear', *δουρός*. Sanskrit in general has stabilised the accent (*āvyas, mádhvas*) though occasionally the apophony indicates original accent of the termination, e.g. in *drūnas* (<*drunās*) gen. of *dāru* 'wood'. The nom. sg. *pāśu* nt. and the gen. sg. *paśvās* (masc. but originally neuter) represent the original IE inflection, but they no longer belong together, since the forms classed with *pāśu* have acquired a normal radical accent, and a masc. *paśús* has come into being, to which the gen. sg. *paśvās* is attached. Elsewhere terminational accent appears in a small number of suffixally accented nouns which take the gen. sg. termination -as: *arīs: arīds; rayīs: rāyās; pitūs: pitvās*.

The accent shift remains in the case of those participles in *-ant* which are accented on the suffix: nom. sg. *adāṃ* 'eating': instr. sg. *adatā; yuṇjān* 'joining': *yuṇjatā; sunvān* 'pressing': *sunvatā*, etc.; but this does not apply to the middle
cases where the accent is on the suffix and not the termination.

These are the main cases where shift of accent appears in declension in Sanskrit. Elsewhere, and these form the majority of stems, the accent has been stabilised either on the root or on the suffix. Fixed accent on the root becomes the normal accentuation of neuter nouns in Sanskrit: dhánva 'bow', dhánvanas; náma 'name', námnas; bráhma 'prayer', bráhmanas; ánhas 'distress', ánhasas; mádhu 'honey', mádhvas, mádhunas; vári 'water', váriñas. Fixed radical accent is likewise the rule in those masculine and feminine nouns which are accentuated on the root: bhráta 'brother', instr. bhrátra; rájá 'king', gen. rájána; bhavan 'being', bhávatas; gómán 'possessing cows', gómatas; ávis 'sheep', ávyas; pátis 'lord', pátas, pátyas (husband); krtus 'wisdom', krtvas; sátrus 'enemy', sátras.

Thematic stems, both those accented on the root and those accentuated on the suffix, have invariably fixed accent both in Sanskrit and Greek. The same applies to verbal thematic stems. The evidence is that in Indo-European such stems were characterised by fixed accent from the beginning.

Fixed suffixal accent in the case of non-thematic stems appears in a number of types. It is rare in Sanskrit in the r- and n-stems, though not uncommon in Greek (πομήν πομένος, and with vṛddhi carried through, δοτήρι, δοτήρος). Such accent only appears in Sanskrit in those n-stems in which the suffixal vowel is not elided in the weak cases: brahmá, brahmánas.

On the other hand this type of accentuation has assumed great importance in the case of the i- and u-stems, where it produced a special inflection of the suffixally accented type (adjective and agent noun), which was eventually applied to all masculine and feminine nouns however accented. Inflection of the type pítá : pitré is found only in the stem sákhi- 'friend', nom. sg. sákha, dat. sg. sákhye, but there has been a secondary shift of accent to the root which must have originally been the same in the two cases. Elsewhere in the normal type (agnís, agnés) there is fixed radical accent, and this type must be very ancient because accent and apophony are in agreement in the gen. sg., etc. The accent causes the retention of the guna grade of the suffix in the genitive, dative (agnáye) and nom. pl. (agnáyas), and the reduction of the gen. sg. termination to -s (agné-s). Likewise in the case of u-stems the inflection of the type vāyús 'wind', gen. sg. vāyós arises from the fixation of
the accent on the suffix of suffixally accented agent nouns and adjectives. This type of declension eventually ousts the alternative type, which was originally exclusively used with neuter nouns (madhvas, pasvas originally neuter) and optionally in the agent noun-adjective type (sakhye with secondary radical accent). The decline of the neuter as opposed to the masc.-fem. types is largely responsible for this development.

Fixed accent on the suffix is to be found also in masc. and fem. stems in -as: nom. rakṣas, gen. rakṣásas and in the stems in -mant and -vant in so far as they are accented on the suffix: paśumān, paśumālas. In the latter case the apophony indicates an original shifting accent. It does so also in the perfect participles whose fixed accent must be of secondary origin: cakrvān, cakriṣas.

The accent of certain infinitival forms calls for mention since it differs from any of the types listed so far. This appears in certain dative infinitives which are accented on the suffix. This is most commonly found in infinitives formed from s-stems, e.g. rcāse 'to praise', carāse 'to move', spūrdhāse 'to strive', bhojāse 'to enjoy'. Some examples are also found from man- and van-stems: vidmāne 'to know' dāvāne 'to give', turvāne 'to overcome'. This accent cannot be original since suffixal accent is proper to the adjective and agent-noun type, whereas the neuter action nouns, to which these infinitives belong, are accented on the root. It is also hardly possible that this type of accentuation should have supplanted a radical accentuation, since that has become the normal type, and the reverse would be expected. The accent normal to neuter nouns does sometimes occur in these infinitives, rarely in those with suffix -as (āyase 'to go', dhāyase 'to cherish'), more preponderantly elsewhere (dāmane 'to give', dhūrvāne 'to injure'. Since it is unlikely that this normal type would be supplanted, the infinitival accent on the suffix must be explained as a substitution for older terminational accent (*rcāsē, etc.). The cause of this change is not altogether clear but it may be associated with the tendency observed elsewhere to avoid final accentuation in forms of more than two syllables: cf. trīfias as opposed to rcās, and aksābhīs as opposed to aksnā. It may also be due partly to influence of locative infinitives where the regular accent was on the suffix.

A few action nouns in -as have also acquired suffixal accent,
notably bhiyās- 'fear', instr. bhiyāsā beside older bhīsā (p. 159). When the neuter nouns had substituted fixed radical accent for the shift of the accent to the suffix in the oblique cases, the only type where it normally took place were masculine stems in which the vowel of the suffix was elided in these cases: ukṣā, ukṣnās. On this analogy the few remaining neuter stems which retained oblique cases with terminational accent received suffixal accent in nom. acc. (acc. bhiyāsam corresponding to bhīsā like ukṣānam to ukṣnā; later bhiyāsā is created by stabilisation of the new accent). In this, noun the feminine gender results from its changed accent.

Suffixal accent has become normal in the majority of the neuter nouns in -iś: arciś- 'flame', gen. sg. arciśas, etc., as opposed to the rarer type jyōtīś- 'light'. The anomalous nature of this accent is clear from the weak grade of the syllable on which it is placed, and also from a comparison with the related -as and -uṣ stems. The same type of accent appears in the ī-stems of the urkī- type and in ā-stems (originally -iṇ and -uḥ stems). The system here is more complicated inasmuch as these classes contain both action-noun types (dehi 'rampart', lanā 'body') and agent-noun/adjective types (urkī- 'she-wolf', agrā- 'maid'). The accent of the former type is exactly parallel to that of arciś-, etc. An exact parallel to the latter type is found in the adjectives in -in: balī, balīnas. In both these adjectival types the suffixal accent is regular, but its weak grade is to be explained out of forms in which the accent was originally on the suffix (*urkīyās, *balinās). The weak grade associated with the latter forms has been generalised, but also the suffixal accent of the nom. acc. where originally the strong grade of the suffix must have prevailed. The action nouns of the (urkī) ī- and ā-stems have fallen together with the adjective/agent-noun type in accent as in other respects.

The same kind of development seems to have taken place in a number of originally neuter ī- and u-stems. This is clearest in the case of the stem paśu- 'domestic animal'. A neuter paśu is preserved in one instance and comparative evidence shows that this form with its radical accent is original (cf. Lat. pecu, Goth. fathu, O. Pruss. pecku: IE pēku). The old form of the gen. sg. to this, with its terminational accent is preserved in Sanskrit (paśvās), but by the analogy of the masc. stems mentioned above this form is the cause of the creation of a new. masculine,
nom. sg. *paśus. The same seems to have occurred with *pitis 'food', gen. sg. *pitvás, since this by its meaning is an action noun, and among i-stems with *rayis: rāyās 'wealth' (for *rāhis: rāhyās). Possibly also some masc. n-stems which are not of the adjective/agent-noun type arose in this way, e.g. mūrđhā, gen. sg. mūrdhnds 'head'.

§ 2. Heteroclitic Declension

The mutual relation of the r- and n-stems has been dealt with at some length in the section dealing with the formation of nouns, and may be briefly summarised here. The neuter r-stems that remain in Sanskrit are normally not declined outside the nom. acc. sg., n-stems being used in the remaining cases: dāhar/dhnas 'day', yākṛt/yaknās 'liver', etc. This type of inflection is found elsewhere in Indo-European, but always, outside Hittite, as an archaic survival, and not as a productive formation. In Hittite, on the other hand, this type of alternation is exceedingly common, and appears regularly in the inflection of neuters in r/n, and in the compound suffixes -mar, war, šar, tar/n. It was therefore at an earlier period of Indo-European much commoner than later, and its decline is due partly to the decline of the old neuter types in general, and partly to the extension of the n-stem to the nom. acc. sg. This system arose too early for it to be possible now to say how precisely it came into being. It does not however appear that the neuter r-stems were from the beginning incapable of inflection, since such examples occur in all languages (Skt. svār/sūras; vasar°/usrās; Gk. ἕστος; Hitt. kurur/kururāš, etc.), and there is no reason to believe that this type is not ancient. Nor can it be said that the n-suffix is in origin either a case termination or a formative making an oblique case. It is a suffix in its own right, on a par with the others, and it appears like them in the nom. acc. sg. in many ancient examples (e.g. Skt. nāma 'name', Lat. nōmen, Hitt. lāman, etc.). It is therefore difficult to say how exactly these two stems so often combined to form a single paradigm, but this took place in the early period of Indo-European, and though the system was beginning to become obsolete in the final stages of the parent language, it persists as an archaic survival in several of the existing languages.
In the same way the few neuters in -\(i\) substitute an \(n\)-stem outside the nom. acc. sg. :\(\text{āsthi} : \text{asthnds} '\text{bone}', \text{etc.} \) Besides these the instr. pl. \(\text{naktābhis} \text{may correspond to an old neuter nākti 'night' which has been replaced by a feminine (nom. sg. nāktis).} \) In the case of \(\text{vāri} '\text{water}'\) the \(n\)-suffix is added to nistead of being substituted for the \(i\)-suffix (gen. sg. vāni\(nas\)). This process appears commonly in neuter \(u\)-stems :\(\text{dāru drũnas}, \text{mādhunu 'honey', mādhunās, etc.,} \) and its antiquity is guaranteed by similar formations elsewhere : Gk. \(\text{dōρu, dōρaros (}\text{*dorwṉtos}, \text{with the additional t-suffix characteristic of Greek).} \) In the Vedic language this is only one means of inflecting the neuters (the alternatives are \(\text{mādhvas} \text{and mādhos,} \text{the latter an innovation borrowed from the masc.})\), but it becomes the general rule in the classical language. This \(n\)-extension in the oblique cases is found occasionally with other suffixes : e.g. \(\text{the as-stem śiras 'head', gen. sg. śirśnas, and the yā-stem kanyā, gen. kaninām, Av. also gen. sg. kaininō.} \) The use of this \(n\) is much extended in certain cases, e.g. instr. sg. of masc. \(i\)- and \(u\)-stems (agninā, vāyinā); \(in\) the gen. pl. it has been introduced in the case of all vocalic stems: \(\text{devānām, agnīnām, pīrnām, etc.} \)

Certain defective neuter \(n\)- and \(m\)-stems appear in the Veda mainly as instrumentals, and have become attached to the corresponding \(man\)-stems :\(\text{bhūnā, mahnā, prenā, prathinā, mahnā, varinā (bhūmān- 'abundance', etc., prathimān- 'width', etc.).} \) It has been noted above that it is unnecessary in these cases to assume a change of \(-mn\)- to \(-n\). An alternative \(uś\)/\(van\) similar to the \(r\)/\(n\) alternation appears in the Vedic declension of \(\text{dhānus}- '\text{bow}'. \) The \(uś\)-stem appears in the nom. sg., while elsewhere the stem \(\text{dhānvan-} \text{is used.} \) It is probable that the two stems \(\text{párus- and párvan- 'joint'} \) were originally distributed in the same way. This combination of \(n\)- and \(s\)-stems is found also in the corresponding masculines. The voc. sg. of certain \(van\)-stems in the Veda is in \(-\text{vas} : \text{rīvās, eva-yāvas, vibhāvas, mālariśvas from rīvāvan- 'righteous', etc.} \) There are also doublets like \(\text{dbhvan-, ṭhvas-, śkvan-, śkvas- (both meaning 'skilled') in which the two suffixes alternate without any apparent rule.} \) This voc. \(-\text{vas} \text{appears also, and more regularly, in the stems in } -\text{vant, which is a t-extension of the } -\text{van-suffix, and in the parallel stems in } -\text{mant : ṭśivas, gnāvas, ṭpatnīvas, tuviṣmas, bhānumas, śucīsma.} \) In the case of
these stems the s-forms are more extensively used in Iranian, since Avestan has nominatives of this kind attached to stems in -vant: amavād (amavantu).

On analysis the Sanskrit forms of the nom. sg. are derived from this (namasvān, paśumān, etc.). The nominative formed from the vant- and mant-stems would have appeared as *van and *man (like *an in the ant-stems). The nominatives in -vān, -mān are derived from *-vāns, -māns (-vāms, māms) which have replaced *-vās, *-mās by analogical extension of nasalisation to the nom. sg. This phenomenon is found elsewhere in Sanskrit in s-stems, and since it does not appear in Iranian, it is to be taken as a special Indian development. The alternation of nasalised forms in the strong cases with forms without nasal in the weak cases in such classes as the present participles (adān, adāntam, adatā, etc.), which is due to the change of the sonant nasal to a, led to the extension of n to the strong cases of other classes where the nasal does not originally belong. This is found notably in the comparatives in yas (śreyān ‘better’, śreyāmsam, śreyāsas) and in the perfect participles in -vas (vidvān, vidvāmsam, vidvāsas). It is found also, in the declension of pumān ‘man’: pumān, pumāmsam, pumās. This is a masc. -ās-stem, but one which in contradistinction to the normalised type (rakṣās, rakṣāsam, rakṣāsas) has preserved some archaic features. These are (1) the weakening of the radical vowel as a result of the accentuation of the suffix, (2) the old terminational accent of the oblique cases as in pūtē, ukṣṇās, etc., and (3) the consequent weakening of the suffix in these cases. In addition the inflection is complicated by the introduction of the nasal into the nom. acc. sg. (replacing *pumās, *pumāsam). There is one other example of this nasalisation among the masc. as-stems, namely svāvān, nom. sg. of svāvas- ‘helpful’.

The introduction of -n- into the heteroclitic nom. sg. of the vant- and mant-stems follows this general principle, and it was further facilitated by the existence of -n- regularly in the acc. sg. which was formed with the vant-stem. The distribution of the two stems corresponds to that of the neuter uṣ and van in dhānuṣ-|dhānvan above except that in the masculine the acc. sg.

1 The masc. pumās- would correspond to a neuter *prāmās- ‘pubes’. The Lat. words pūbēs, pāber, have different suffixes. Since the final root here is likely to be that which appears also in Lat. pu-d-ór, b and m may also be varying suffixal elements, alternatively b in Latin may be for m before r in pāber as in hibernus, tuber (: tumōr).
has a form different from the nom. sg. and this form follows the analogy of the majority of cases.

The vant-suffix is built on the van-suffix and though no nom. sg. in -vās is recorded for the latter type of stem, the vocatives in -vās are an indication that the nom. sg. may once have been so formed.

In some stems the suffixes van- and vant- are combined heteroclitically. The stem maghāvan- (nom. sg. maghāvā, gen. sg. maghōnas uses the vant-stem before terminations beginning with a consonant (instr. pl. maghāvadbihis). An instr. sg. ṣkvatā appears beside the usual stem ṣkvan- 'praising'. The stems ārvan- and ārvant- 'steed' are interchangeable. The stem yuvan-, yūn- makes its neut. sg. yuvat, and this extended stem is the basis of the fem. yuvati-.

The perfect participle is formed mainly with the stem in -vāms-/uṣ, but before the terminations beginning with a consonant, there appears a stem in vat (vidvādbhis instr. pl.). This suffix reappears in Greek, where it forms the normal basis of the declension (eisōs, eisōros) and it is attested also in Gothic (wettwōd- 'witness'). The comparative evidence shows it to be different from the vat (wēt) which is the weak form of the vant-suffix, since it has no nasal.

The word for 'path, way' declines with a variety of stems. The strong form in the Rgveda appears as nom. sg. pānthās, acc. sg. pānthām, nom. pl. pānthās, to which correspond Av. pānīḍa, pāntām. In the weak cases the stem appears as path- (instr. sg. pathā, etc.). The relation of these two stems is one of apophony: strong form of suffix aH (> ā), weak form ḫ. The weak form of the suffix, ḫ, aspirates the preceding t, and this aspiration is then extended to the nom. sg., etc. The same development occurs in the case of the strong and weak stems mahā-, mah- 'great' (mehē₂/megē₂). In the middle cases of path- an i-stem is used, which occurs elsewhere (O. Sl. pośi, O. Pruss. pintis): instr. pl. pathībhis, etc. (on the other hand Av. has ādobiṣ without -i-). In the same way mahā/mah- has a supplementary i-stem, in this case in the neut. sg. (māhi; in Av. also in the instr. pl. mazībīṣ). After the Rgveda there appears another strong stem of path-, an n-stem (acc. sg. pānthānam, nom. pl. pānthatānas). This is also ancient since the same formation appears in Avestan: pantānam, pantānō. The same kind of inflection is laid down by the grammarians for ṛbhukṣ- 'n. of a divine being' and math- 'churning-stick'.
§3. The Case-terminations

Nominative Singular, Masc. and Fem. The nominative singular of masculine and feminine nouns is formed in three ways, (1) by vṛddhi of the suffix, (2) by the termination s, (3) by the simple stem uncharacterised in any way. The basis of the first method has been dealt with at length in the section dealing with the formation of nouns. There it was seen that adjectives and agent nouns were formed on the basis of the various types of neuter stem by the transference of the accent to the suffix, and that for phonetic reasons which are not now clear, this led to the vṛddhi of the suffix in the nom. sg. Associated with this vṛddhi there is a tendency for the final semi-vowel of a suffix to be elided: pitā, brahmā. The vṛddhied type of nom. sg. appears regularly in the case of masc. r-, n- and s-stems (dātā, cf. Gk. δοστήρ; brahmā, cf. Gk. ποιμήν; rakṣās, sumānās, cf. Gk. φευδής, εἱμενής), rarely in the case of i-stems (sākṣā). A similar vṛddhied nom. sg. originally existed in the case of u-stems of this type, but in all cases where such vṛddhi is preserved it has secondarily acquired the addition of -s: Skt. dyaus, Av. uṣbāsauṣ, Gk. βαολευς (for -ηνος), etc.

The termination -s appears in Sanskrit, which in this respect is in close agreement with the related languages, in the masculine a-stems (devās, Lat. deus) in masc. and fem. i- and u-stems, both of the action-noun (matis, krātus, Gk. βάοις, πηχυς, etc.) and adjectival type (śucis, purūs; Gk. ἵδρυς, πολύς, etc.), in i-stems of the vṛki-type and ā-stems, in consonantal stems (action-noun or agent), including the monosyllabic stems originally ending in -h (dhist, bhās).

It is clear that there is no common principle uniting these various formations, and distinguishing them from those classes in which the nom. sg. masc. and fem. is formed differently. It is also clear that the range of s-nominatives has extended at the expense of other types. This has already been observed in the case of the vṛddhied nominatives in -aus. It is also clear that the feminines in -ī of the vṛki class, and those in -ū (tanūs) have acquired their -s from the radical stems in -i and -ū which elsewhere are declined like them. The feminines in -ā and those in -i of the devā class preserve the uncharacterised nominative which was original to the stems in -h. Furthermore it is doubtful whether the s-nominative was originally attached to the i- and
u-stems, though it must have extended to them at a very early period. The reason for this is that the action nouns of these classes would be expected, according to the general analogy, to have been originally neuters, and this is borne out by the existence of survivals of the type; on the other hand in the case of the agent-noun/adjective types there is evidence of a vṛddhied treatment parallel to that of the r-, n- and s-stems, and though this is rare in the historical period, it can be shown to have been much commoner earlier. The probability is that the nominative s was originally proper to the adjectival thematic stems, since they are definitely a class apart. Its extension to the i- and u-stems is not difficult to understand, since like the thematic stems they are vocalic stems. In this process the morphological distinction and agent-noun/adjective appears to have counted very little, and the s of the nominative (and with it the distinction between nom. and acc.) became early attached even to the action nouns of these classes. In this way the majority of such nouns acquired the masc. or fem. (earlier, common) gender. Historically they do not take s in the nom. sg. because they have gender, but rather they have acquired gender as a result of taking -s. In the same way stems in occlusives were from an early period characterised by s in the nom. sg., and this regardless of whether they were action or agent nouns. In monosyllabic stems the s was also added after consonants other than occlusives (nasals, Gk. etis, κτείς; H, Skt. dhis, bhūṣ).

The feminines in -ā and those in -ī of the devi class have no special sign for the nom. sg. To this extent they agree with the neuters. The action nouns ending in these suffixes originally were neuters, and in the case of this suffix the adjectival type, which was specialised as a fem. formation was always less clearly distinguished from the action noun type than was the case with other suffixes.

Accusative Singular, Masc. and Fem. The accusative singular masc. and fem. shows no such variation. The termination appears as -m after vocalic stems (dsvam, Lat. equum; agnim, Lat. ignem, etc.) and -am after consonantal stems (pādām, rājānam, pilāram, etc.). In the latter case Greek has a out of ἄ (πόδα, πατέρα) and, this is the form which would be expected phonetically, but Indo-Iranian substitutes the fuller form which has the advantage of greater clarity. In some languages (Gk., Celt., Germ.) this final -m changes to -n, as it also does in
the nom. acc. sg. neut. (Gk. λύκος, πέδον), and it is certainly wrong to assume, as is sometimes done, that the latter is the more original form.

Nom.-Acc. Sg. Neuter. Apart from a-stems neuter nouns have no endings in these cases: ādhār, Gk. οἶδαρ; mādhū, Gk. μέθυ; nāma, Lat. nōmen, Hitt. lāman, etc.). In thematic neutrals the termination in both cases is -m. It has been suggested above that the -m of the old neutrals of this class was originally the suffix -m (yugām : yugmā-, etc.) and as a result of these forms coinciding with the acc. sg. of thematic adjectival stems, a neuter thematic type was developed.

Instrumental Singular. The instrumental singular shows no united formation in Indo-European. Forms corresponding to the -ā which is the regular ending in Indo-Iranian, appear only in certain languages, and there only in certain classes of stem. In addition there appear the endings -bhi (Gk. θεόφω, Arm. mardov) and -mi (O. Sl. vlūkomi, Lith. sūnuni). The former element is that which appears in the instr. pl. in Sanskrit (-bhi-s). In Greek it is used indifferently either as singular or plural, and further in a wide sense, covering instr. loco and abl. Hittite has a different formation of its own (-ēt) which is not to be reconciled with any of the other forms in Indo-European. It appears that the instrumental with its various forms is a comparatively new case, and consequently has no common form covering the whole of Indo-European.

The Sanskrit form is normally -ā, i.e. -ah: padā, pitrā, rājñā, etc. But it may also appear in the zero grade, -h, notably in the case of feminine i-stems: cītī (Av. čisti), uātī, jūṣṭī, etc. In Avestan this form is also attested for u-stems: mainyū, xratū, etc. It must further be assumed for thematic stems (vīkā, Av. vahrkā, etc.), since the acute accent which appears elsewhere (Lith. vilkū, gerā-ju, and cf. the Gk. adv. ἐμοχερώ which is interpreted as an old instrumental) speaks against contraction (IE therefore wī/ku-o-h, not wī/ku-o-ω/εΗ). The quality of the long vowel that developed from this varied between -ō (Lith. vilkū, OHG. wulfu with u <ō) and -ē (Goth. hamma-h, hē, Skt. (adverbs) pāscā, uccā with palatalisation indicating -ē. This implies an original IE metaphony eH/οΗ.

Dative Singular. The termination is -e, Av. -e, ōi, Indo-Ir. -ai: padē, pītre, sūne, mānase; Av. bōzzāte, vīse, pībre, pādhuvē-ka. ərəzəjyōi, etc. The IE ending -ei is preserved in
Oscan (pateret, regarei, leginei) and Phrygian (Faraktei). Elsewhere phonetic developments have obscured it (Lat. mātrī, O. Sl. materi, etc.). There has been some dispute about the original form of the dative ending, since alternatively the Greek infinitives in -ai have been compared (δομεναι, δοθεναι, δοιναι, etc.). But the existence in Greek of certain traces of the dative in -ei (Δειφιδεος), shows that, whatever the explanation of these infinitives, they should be discounted in settling the form of the IE dative.

Ablative Singular. A special form for the ablative singular, which elsewhere has the same form as the gen. sg., is found only in the declension of thematic stems: -at (-ad) in vphät, etc., Lat. lupō(d). This represents the IE state of affairs. In certain languages, notably in Italic and the later Avestan, this form is extended to other classes (Ose. loutad (civitate " Lat. magistratud, Av. ābraṭ, garoī, etc.). In Slavonic this termination serves both for the ablative and the genitive of the thematic declension (O. Sl. vlūka). It is not possible to determine whether the final consonant was originally d or t. The vowel was ō in ordinary nominal declension alternating with ē in adverbial forms (Lat. facillumēd). In the latter type the termination was accented (Skt. pascāt, sanāt). The vowel was of circumflex quality (Lith. tō; Gk. (dial.) ταδε ἐ̆ from here ') indicating contraction (-ōd < -o-od), and this is reflected by occasional disyllabic scansion in the Veda.

Genitive-Ablative Singular. The termination, which outside the thematic class combines the functions of the ablative and the genitive, is -as representing IE -es and -os. The difference between the two depended on accentuation, -es occurring in connection with the original terminational accent, -os in those cases (Gk. σώμαρας, etc.) where the accent had become fixed on the root. This distinction is nowhere preserved, since in the various languages one or other form is generalised, e.g. -os in Gk. (σώμαρας, ποδός) and -es (> is) in Latin (corporis, pedis, but O. Lat. regus, etc.). In addition there exists a reduced termination -s which appears in conjunction with adjective and agent noun types with accented suffix. This appears in Sanskrit in connection with i- and u-stems (agnēs, sūnōs), in Avestan also in some r-stems (pitarš). In the i- and u-stems the form has spread from the adjectival type to which it properly belongs, to the majority of action nouns (matēs, étos). Only a few
Locative Singular. Three types of locative singular are found in Sanskrit, illustrated by the alternative forms of locative of the word for 'eye': aksán, aksáni, aksánti. Their chronology appears to be in this order. The type aksánti is the latest. According to the grammarians the locative of n-stems may be in -ani or -ni (rājani, rājni; sankháni, sankhni), but in the language of the Ṛgveda the latter type does not appear, and is therefore clearly an innovation. It is due to an analogical tendency to put the loc. sg. on the same footing as the other oblique cases by accenting the termination and weakening the suffix. In many of the consonantal stems this tendency had already become general in the pre-Vedic period (adati, bhágavati, vidúsi, etc.), but the older type with accent and guṇa of suffix is preserved in the an-stems, in r-stems (svásari, pitári), to which certain monosyllabic stems can be added: kṣámi, dyávi (beside dívì).

The oldest form, the locative without ending, appears in n-stems (áhan, mūrahán, sīršán; cf. Gk. áiev ‘always’, and infinitives like δομεν, etc.), and in the vrddhied forms of the i- and u-stems. It also appears sporadically elsewhere, e.g. in parút 'last year' as opposed to Gk. πέρνωι, πέρντι, a compound whose last member (-uí) is the weak form of the wēt that appears in Hitt. wett-, Gk. Fétos 'year'. In Avestan there appears a locative without ending from a root noun man- 'mind' in the phrase mēn ča dāidyāi 'and to put in the mind, remember'.

The locative in -i is based on the older locative without ending, to which a suffix or particle -i has been added. This produces a clearer form which tends to oust the earlier form without ending, but the process is not yet complete by the Vedic period. To a large extent this form of locative preserves the accent and guṇa of the suffix which characterised the form without ending, and it is thus sharply differentiated from the genitive and dative singular with their accented termination. At the same time analogy has tended to adapt the loc. sg. to their type, in some cases in the prehistoric period (adati, etc.) and in other cases during the history of Sanskrit itself (rājni, etc.). The suffixal accent of the old locatives without ending is parallel to that which has been observed to occur in adverbs based on neuter stems (prātár, etc.).
Vocative Singular. The vocative singular consists of the simple uninflected stem, and it is therefore a survival from the time when the inflection of the noun had not been built up to the degree which appears later. In this respect it points to the same conclusion as the system of nominal composition, indicating an early period of IE in which the bare stem could function as a word. In thematic stems the vocative is formed simply by dropping the -s which characterises the nominative: *vrka* (Gk. λύκε, Lat. lupa). The various languages agree in having the e-grade of the suffix in this case instead of the usual o (*λύκος*, etc.). Stems which take vṛddhi in the nom. sg. substitute guṇa in the vocative (*śvan, pitar* as opposed to *śvā, pitā*, etc.), and this characteristic is found also in related languages (Gk. κυν, πάτερ). This guṇa appears also in i- and u-stems (*āgne, sūno*) since the formation of adjectival i- and u-stems was originally parallel to that of the adjectival r- and n-stems. The feminines in -i and -u substitute the short vowels i and u and this is probably to be regarded as the regular development of -iH and -uH when followed by a pause. Compare the similar development of -aH to ā in Greek vocatives like νύμφα, συβώτα. The vocative of the ā-stem is anomalous (*bāle, voc. of bālā 'girl') and is perhaps due to the addition of an enclitic particle i (-e for -aH-i). The vocative is unaccented in Sanskrit, except when it appears at the beginning of a sentence or pāda, and in these conditions it has a special accent of its own, namely on the first syllable, regardless of the normal position of the accent in the word. There are traces of this latter type of accentuation elsewhere (Gk. πάτερ, ἀδελφε, as opposed to πατήρ, ἀδελφός in the nom. sg.), but nowhere to the extent that is found in Sanskrit. The system cannot be very ancient, otherwise there would not be regular guṇa of the suffix, which is due to the suffixal accentuation which characterises these types normally.

Nominative Plural, Masc. and Fem. The Sanskrit -as (*pādas 'feet') corresponds to IE -es which is preserved elsewhere (Gk. πόδες). The termination always appears in the full grade though it is never accented. It is associated with the strong stem in stems of varying grades, and this may be either guṇa (*pitāras, ukṣānas, agnāyas*) or vṛddhi (*dātāras, rājānas*). As in the accusative singular the latter type is due to extension from the nominative singular.

An s appears in most of the plural cases, e.g. acc. -ns, instr.
-bhis, dat. abl. -bhyas, loc. -su. It is possible, but not certain that this s is identical with that of the nom. pl. The IE plural system is complicated by two unusual features. On the one hand if this s is the sign of the plural it is distinguished from the type found in most linguistic families by being added after instead of appearing before the case terminations. In the second place the terminations of the plural are for the most part different from those that appear in the singular and this appears to be quite an unusual phenomenon. A further problem is presented by Hittite. In this language the nominative plural has a form of its own, and likewise the accusative (humantēs, humandus ‘all’) but for the gen. dat. there appears normally a form identical with the gen. sg., and otherwise the inflection is undeveloped. It is uncertain to what extent this is due to Hittite innovation, but it may be an indication that the plural inflection in IE is a later development than the singular.

Accusative Plural, Masc. and Fem. The ending in IE was -ns after vocalic stems, -ys after consonantal stems. This is preserved in Gothic and certain Greek dialects, notably Cretan (Gk. ἔλευθερος, νεῦς, Goth. wulfansi, gastins, brôpruns). In Sanskrit the accusative plural of masc. vocalic stems (-ān, -īn, -ūn, -sn) preserves this -s in sandhi (-āms, etc., before t-). In the Veda its effect is seen also before a vowel (-ām, īm). The long vowel in Sanskrit is not original but arises in thematic stems from the analogy of the nom. pl. (-ās with long vowel whence acc. -āns for -ans). From this declension the long vowel has spread to the stems in -i, -u and -r. The ending -ys after consonantal stems becomes regularly -as in Sanskrit as in Greek (padās, nōdōs). The acc. pl. is a weak case in Sanskrit, that is to say the termination may be accented and the stem appears in its weak form. This is in contradiction with the fact that the termination itself appears in the weak grade and it is therefore in all probability an innovation. If IE -ns in this case is derived from -ms the form can have arisen by the addition of the plural sign -s to the acc. sg.

The feminine vocalic stems show no trace of n in Sanskrit (-ās, -īs, -ūs, -īn). This absence of n is shown to be IE in the case of stems in -ā by the agreement of Indo-Iranian (Skt. kanyās, Av. urvard) and Germanic (Goth. gībōs). Non-distinction of nominative and accusative, which characterises neuters was originally characteristic of -ā (-aḥ) stems when these had not
become differentiated from the other neuters. It is preserved in the ā-formation which serves to provide the plural of neuter thematic stems (nom. acc. pl. yugā). The normal feminines have acquired the plural -s of the non-neuter classes but they still retain in the plural the absence of distinction between nom. and acc. From the ā-stems the type spreads to the fem. i-, u- and r-stems which did not originally in IE have a form distinct from that of the corresponding masculines (Gk. (dial.) ἰφυς 'sheep').

**Nominaive-Accusative Plural Neuter.** (1) The neuter plural appears still in the Vedic language in some cases undifferentiated from the singular: e.g. in údhār divyāṇī 'divine udders', viśvāni vāsu 'all goods', yójanā ṣuṇū 'many leagues', sāṁ arantā pārva 'the joints came together'. This is a survival from an early stage when the inflectional system was less developed. (2) There exists in Iranian, beside this type, a series of neuter plurals characterised by vrddhi of the suffix: Av. ayārō 'days', vaćā 'words', nāmān 'names', etc. This type is ancient since examples are also quotable from Hittite, e.g. wīdār, pl. of watar 'water'. In Greek on the other hand such vrddhied neuter forms appear merely as singulars: ὀδωρ, ῥέκμωρ, etc. These may be old plural forms utilised as singulars after the type had died out as a plural formation. Sanskrit has in the main replaced this type by that which is extended by the suffix -i (nāmāni 'names') but the Vedic language still retains it (beside the alternative form) in the case of neuter n-stems (bhāmā 'beings', ṣāhā 'days', sīrā 'heads') in which the n of the suffix is elided as elsewhere in connection with vrddhi (rājā, etc.). (3) The neuter plurals which are made by suffixing i to these vrddhied forms appear also in Avestan (nāmāni 'names', sāxānī 'teachings', varebāhī 'energies') as an alternative to the plurals with simple vrddhi. A neuter plural suffix -i is found in Hittite (kururi pl. of kurur nt. 'hostility'), which testifies to its antiquity in Indo-European as a method of forming the neuter plural. The i is apparently identical with the suffix -i which appears in the formation of neuter nouns. Other IE languages have mainly the suffix a or ā which originates from the thematic stems (Gk. ὀνόματα like ἵρυκ, etc.). In Vedic the i-form of the plural has been much extended in comparison with the Indo-Iranian state of affairs which can be deduced from the comparison of Avestan. The
formations with simple vṛddhi have disappeared in the case of most types of stem. In addition the nasal of the n- and -nt-stems (nāmāni, ghṛṭāvānti) has been analogically introduced into other types of stem, e.g. mānāmsi ‘minds’ for mānās-i, similarly havīnsi ‘ablations’, cākṣūnsi ‘eyes’, etc. A non-nasalised form remains only in the case of catvāri ‘four’. The process is continued further in the post-Ṛgvedic period by the creation of nasalised i-plurals for consonantal root-stems, e.g. śānki from śak- ‘able’, būndhī from būdh- ‘understanding’. In addition, on the analogy of the neuter n-stems-like nāmāni there is created a new type of neuter plural for a-, i- and u-stems: bhūvanāni ‘worlds’, śucīni ‘bright’, vāstīni ‘riches’. In the older language these forms occur in competition with the older forms (bhūvanā, śucī, vāsī), but in the later language they are exclusively used. Furthermore, on this analogy the later language creates a neut. pl. -tṇi for stems in -ṛ. (4) The inherited neuter plural of thematic stems is in -ā (yugā, Gk. ᾱγγα, Lat. inga, Goth. juka, O. Sl. iga). This -ā is identical with the suffix -ā which in the historical period forms feminines. As already pointed out this ā (<āḥ) was not originally distinct from the usual type of neuter suffix. These plurals were originally singular neuter collectives, and in Greek they retain this character to the extent that they are still construed with a singular verb (tā ᾱγα τρέχει). In this function the suffix -ā retains its primitive characteristic of being indifferent to the distinction between nominative and accusative. The variation in the IE languages between ā and ā appears to be due to different sandhi developments of IE -āh (-ā before vowels or a pause, otherwise -ā) and it is paralleled by a similar fluctuation in the case of feminines in -ā. The neuter stems in -i and -u also make plurals by lengthening the vowel of the stem, and if these forms are not simply made on the analogy of the thematic neuters, they can be analysed -i-ḥ and -u-ḥ with the weak form of the suffix added to the stem. In the Vedic language they exist side by side with forms undifferentiated from the singular and with the innovating type -ini, -ūni which later becomes the rule.

In instrumental Plural. The ending of the instrumental plural -bis (Av. -biś) contains an element -bhi- which according to the evidence of Greek (θεόφι, ἀγεληφι, ἱφι, ναύφι, ἐρέβεσφι, etc.) was at an earlier period of IE of much vaguer and wider appli-
cation, being used both in the singular and the plural, and covering the meanings of instrumental, locative and ablative. In Indo-Iranian, as opposed to Greek and Armenian (gailov, pl. gailook: gail ‘wolf’) this formative appears only in the plural, the instrumental singular being formed in quite a different manner. The final -s may be interpreted as the -s of the plural added to this element, or possibly in view of such adverbial forms like Gk. ἀποκριθής ‘crosswise’ and Av. mazibis ‘greatly’ may be merely some adverbial suffix (cf. ἀμφί: ἀμφίς, etc.), which in view of the regular occurrence of -s in the plural led to its being understood as such. As elsewhere Balto-Slavonic and Germanic have -m- in this case (Lith. sinumis, etc.) which it is not possible phonetically to relate to the -bh- of the other languages.

Dative-Ablative Plural. Anomalously the ablative which in the singular has mainly the same form as the genitive, has in the plural a form identical with that of the dative. The ending is -bhyaś, Av. byō. The western IE languages have a form similar to this going back to original -bhōs (Lat. -bus, Osc. fs, ss, Venet. -bos, Gallic -bo). It is possible but not certain that this -bhōs has developed out of -bhyos through the sporadic loss of post-consonantal -y-, easily understood in a weakly stressed termination. The analysis of the form is indicated by the comparison of the datives of the personal pronouns. Beside the usual forms -bhyaś, asmabhyaś the Vedic language preserves also a form without -m, whose antiquity is attested by Iranian (Av. maibyā). The -bhyaś of the dat.-abl. plural can be interpreted as this -bhyā followed by the -s which characterises the plural. In this way the case would originally be a dative, and its use also as ablative can naturally be explained by the fact that the -as which comes at the end of the termination is similar in form to the -as of the gen.-abl. sg.

Genitive Plural. The termination of the genitive plural is distinguished from the majority of the plural cases by the absence of s (with the exception of the pronominal forms tēsām, tāsām). The termination is -ām which is frequently scanned as disyllabic in the Veda, and this in conjunction with the circumflex accent in Gk. -ōv, points to an original contraction of -o-om. This can only have come about in thematic stems, and it must be assumed that the original termination -om has elsewhere been replaced by the long contracted -ōm
which arose in this class. The shorter termination -om has been
generalized in Slavonic (> ú, māterū, imenū), and also probably
in Latin (hominum), where it appears unnecessary to assume
that -um has developed out of an earlier form with a long vowel.
A variant e-grade of this formative appears in Gothic only
(wulfê, suniwe). The Sanskrit vocalic stems are characterised
by an -n- inserted before the termination, and the Avestan de-
clension agrees with this system with the exception of the
stems in -r. The only agreement elsewhere is in Germanic, in
the ā-stems (OHG. geboño ' of the gifts ') and it is likely that the
inserted -n- began in this class and from there spread to the
other vocalic classes.

Locative Plural. The Sanskrit termination -su (pātsū)
appears also in Iranian, Slavonic (-chū < su) and dialectically in
Lithuanian. In Greek on the other hand the termination is -σι
(ṇōsōi, etc.). This variation indicates that the termination is
analysable into two elements, on the one hand s + u and on the
other hand s + i. The s can be identified as the plural s which
appears in other cases, to which the further elements i and u are
added in the two types. The -i of Greek is apparently to be
identified with the -i of the locative singular, and the -u of the
other languages in an alternative suffix performing the same
function. The case would thus originally be formed by the
addition of plural -s to the endingless form of the loc. sg. (in
thematic stems to the loc. sg. in -oi), and the addition of i and u
is secondary, just as is the addition of -i in the loc. sg.

Nom. Voc. Acc. Dual. This case was made by various form-
atives in IE, according to the type of stem. The ending -au, -ā
of Sanskrit was originally, from the evidence of the related lan-
guages, confined to the thematic stems (Gk. λυκω, Lith. vilkū,
O. Sl. vlūka) from which in Sanskrit it has been extended to
other types of stem (pādau, pitārau, etc.). In these latter classes
Greek and Lithuanian have an ending -e (μητέρε, áuguse). It
has been suggested that this termination, elsewhere replaced
by -au in Sanskrit, is preserved in the dual dvandva mātara-
pitārau ' parents ' which the grammarians quote as a northern
form. The termination is regularly -au in classical Sanskrit, but
in the Vedic language it varies between -au and ā. As a general
rule -au is used before vowels, becoming -āv, elsewhere ā.
Some such variation must go back to the IE period, and it is the
latter form which has been generalised in the related languages.
THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS

The feminines in -ā and the neuters take the termination -ī. This agreement is another sign of the close relations existing between the feminine ā-stems and the neuters. Examples from neuter consonantal stems are: vācasī, cākṣusī, nāmīti, brhatī. In the thematic neuters and the feminines in -ā this -ī combines with the vowel of the stem to form the diphthong -ē: yugē, śyinge; āsve, sēne. This -ī is found also in Old Slavonic, though rarely (imeni, tēlesi), and Slavonic shows the same diphthong in o- and ā-stems (selē, rūcē) a form which then spreads to consonantal stems (imenē 'two names'). The i- and u-stems make the dual by lengthening the vowel of the stem: pātī, sūnā, and with them are to be classed the feminines in -ī of the devī type in the Vedic declension (du. devī, later devyau). This type is ancient, appearing also in Avestan (gairī, mainyau), Slavonic (O. Sl. poči, syny) and Lithuanian (nakštis, sānu).

Instr. Dat. Abl. Dual. The termination that serves for all the three cases is -bhyān, and it contains the same element -bhi- that occurs in the dat.-abl. and instr. pl. A corresponding -byām appears only once in Avestan (brvaṭbyām from brvaṭ 'brow'). Elsewhere it has -byā and O. Pers. has -biyā, which makes it clear that -m is an element secondarily added, as elsewhere (cf. tubhya, tubhyam, etc.). The Balto-Slavonic languages have, as in the plural, -m- instead of -bh- here (O. Sl. očima, etc.). The termination is ordinarily added to the normal stem, but in the earlier language sometimes to the form that serves as nom. acc. du., e.g. aksibhyām, cf. aksi 'the two eyes' (cf. O. Sl. očima: oći 'the two eyes'). This has become the normal form in the case of thematic stems: vṛkkaḥhyām, cf. vṛkā(u), etc.

Genitive-Locative Dual. The termination common to these two cases is -os: padōs, pitrōs, etc., which is added to the weak form of the stem. Avestan on the other hand has two separate terminations, -ō (zastayō) for the locative and -ā (nāirikayd) for the genitive. The ending -ō is derived from -au and is equivalent to the Sanskrit ending minus the final -s. The genitive -ā (<-ās) is peculiar to Avestan. Slavonic has a termination -u which could represent either -ou (Av. -ō) or -ous (Skt. -os). Lithuanian which keeps this inflection only in some adverbal forms has both -au and -aus: dvējau, dvējaus 'in twos, as a pair', cf. Skt. dvāyos. The -ay- which in Sanskrit appears before the termination in a and ā-stems has spread from the declension of the pronouns and the numeral 'two' (tāyos, dvāyos). It re-
mains confined to these cases in Slavonic: toju, duoju, but vlăku, igu, roku.

§ 4. THE DECLENSION CLASSES

The complication of the Sanskrit declension consists not so much in the system of terminations thus briefly described, as in the combination of these with the various types of stem, and the alternation of the stem itself in respect of accent and apophony. The classification of the stem types and the declensions based on them falls naturally into five main divisions: (1) consonantal stems, (2) stems in -r, (3) stems in i, u, (4) stems in ā, ī, ū, (5) stems in -a (thematic stems). After the practice of the grammar of the classical languages, and also for reasons of convenience, the descriptive grammars normally deal with these classes in the reverse order to that given here. Since however the normal scheme of terminations as described above appears most clearly in the consonantal declension, and since the thematic declension is the most aberrant from this, having adopted a variety of special declensional forms from the pronouns, it is more convenient from the point of view of comparative grammar to proceed in this order.

§ 5. CONSONANTAL STEMS

The consonantal stems consist of the root stems (pad-, etc.) and derivative stems in -n, -nt, -s, etc. The latter fall into two classes, neuters and masculine-feminines. The particulars of their formation, and the mutual relation of the two classes have already been dealt with. The inflection of the neuters and non-neuters is distinguished only in the nom. and acc. In this respect the consonantal stems differ from the stems in i and u (mādhvas : sūnōs), and also from the practice of certain other languages with consonantal stems (Gk. oὐθατος, ὀνόματος, neut. : φέρωντος, ποιμένος, masc.). The declension of these stems calls for little extra comment. The normal endings are added with little modification throughout this declension. The special development of Sanskrit phonetics cause some complication (e.g. viś- ‘settlement’: nom. viṭ, acc. viśam, instr. pl. viḍbhīs, loc. pl. (vedic) viṅśu) but this aspect of the problem belongs more properly to phonetics than to morphology. For the rest the complications that occur in this class have already been described under the headings of (1) Accent and Apophony
(pāt: padās, etc.) and (2) Heteroclitic Declension (ādhar, ādhnas, etc.). The strong tendency of Sanskrit to nasalise the stem in the strong cases has also been noted (vidvān, vidvāmsam, vidūṣas). It spreads by analogy from those cases where it is historically justified (bhāvan, bhāvantam, bhāvatas, etc.) and it is paralleled by a similar development in the neuter plural.

§6. STEMS IN r


The fact that the stems in r are classed in Sanskrit as vocalic stems rather than consonant stems is due to certain developments of Sanskrit which have tended to enhance their vocalic character. This appears particularly in the acc. and gen. plur., forms which are Sanskrit innovations. On the analogy of the consonantal stems the acc. plur. would have been pītrās, but this is replaced by a new form in -ṛn, based on the analogy of -ān, -in, -ūn. By this process Sanskrit creates a new long vowel ṛ which has no phonetic basis among the inherited IE sounds. The old type of gen. pl. appears in Av. ḍugodram, etc. In Sanskrit it is preserved occasionally in the Veda, e.g. nārāṁ (: Osc. nerum), gen. pl. of nār- 'man', and once svāstrāṁ. Elsewhere it has been replaced by the innovation -ṛṇāṁ, created by the same type of analogy on the pattern of -ānāṁ, -īnāṁ, -ūnāṁ.

In the vrddhied nom. sing. the r is elided in the same way as the -n of n-stems (pītā: rājā). This elision appears also in Iranian (Av. māta, etc.), Baltic (Lith. motė, sesuō) and Slavonic (O. Sl. mati). In other languages the -r of the stem is preserved (Gk. μητηρ, etc.). The acc. sg. has guna of the suffix in most of the names of family relationship (mātāram, duhitāram, etc.), but in svāṣr- 'sister', and in the agent nouns hī vṛddhi appears which has been introduced from the analogy of the nom. sg. The same distinction appears in the nom. acc. du. and nom. pl. In the weakest cases the old type of inflection, with transference of the accent to the termination is normally preserved. Elsewhere in IE this type is found in the conservative names of relationship (Gk. πατρός, πατρί, Lat. pātris, etc.), be-
side which there is found an alternative type with guṇa of suffix (Gk. μητρός beside μητρός, cf. πουμένος, Osc. palerei, O. Sl. materi, cf. agnaye). Indo-Iranian alone preserves the primitive type in the case of the agent nouns in -tr. Elsewhere this has been replaced by innovating forms with guṇa or vrddhi of suffix in these cases (Gk. δοτήρος, δώτορος, Lat. datōris, etc.). In Sanskrit guṇa of the stem appears in the declension of nar- ‘man’ (D. nāre, G. nāras) as opposed to the older type of inflection seen in Greek (ἀνδρός, ἀνδρὶ).

In this respect the Sanskrit r-stems differ markedly from the adjectival i- and u-stems which keep the guṇa and accent of the suffix in the dat. and gen. sg. (agnaye, agnēs). The difference between the two classes becomes less when the nature of the gen. sg. of r-stems is examined. To agree with the form of the dative this would normally have been in -ās with accented termination, and such forms are in fact found in Iranian (Av. brāthrō, dābrō) as well as in other IE languages (Gk. πατρός, etc.). The form which actually occurs (-ur, -us, -uh) goes back on the evidence of Iranian (Av. nārś) to -ṛś (*pitrś). Such a form with weak grade of both suffix and termination cannot be original and it must therefore be regarded as an innovation which has replaced something else. There is no way by which it could have developed from *pitrāś if that had been the only form, and its origin is therefore to be sought in yet another type of gen. sg. which Iranian preserves: nārś, zaotārś, sāstarś. This type, with which we may compare Lith. motēis is of exactly the same formation as the gen. sg. of adjectival i- and u-stems (agnē-s). It has arisen by the same process, i.e. by the extension of the accent and guṇa of suffix proper to adjectival stems to the gen. sg. and since it involves a reduction of the termination it must be ancient. In Sanskrit and partly in Avestan the -arś has been replaced by -ṛś (> Skt. -ur). The reason for this is that elsewhere in the weak and middle cases the suffix appears in its weak form (pitrā, pītibhis, pītīsu), and this grade has been analogically extended to the genitive singular.

No forms of the loc. sg. without ending are preserved, though such presumably existed at one time. This case always retains the guṇa of the suffix which is proper to it, in contradiction to other stems (rājṇi, etc.) and the practice of other IE languages in nouns of this class (Gk. πατρὶ, etc.).

Of the old neuter nouns in -r such few as remain inflect
THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS

heteroclitically, and they have lost connection with the masc.-fem. r- (r-) stems. On the other hand Sanskrit creates a new adjectival type of neuter in -r which has no prototype in IE. This differs from the masc.-fem. in the nom.-acc. as usual (dhatṛ, dhatṛṇi, dhatṛṇi), and also in the weak cases by inserting -n- after the style of the neuters in i and u (dhatṛṇā, etc.). It is not of frequent use.

§ 7. STEMS IN i AND u

Sing. N. aṅgīs, sūnūs; vāri, mādhnu, Acc. aṅgīṁ, sūnūṁ, I. aṅgīṁa, sūṁaṇā; gātyā, dhenvā, D. aṅgāye, sūnāve; pāṭye, paśvē; vārīne, mādhune; gātyai, dhenvai; Ab. G. aṅgēs, sūnōs; āvyas, mādhvas; vārīnas, mādhunas; gātyas, dhenvas, L. aṅgnai, sūnai; sāno, sānai, sānuni; gātyām, dhenvām; V. aṅgne, sāno. Du. N.A. aṅṅī, sūnā, I. D. Ab. aṅṅibhyāṁ, sūnūbhyāṁ, G. L. aṅnyōs, sūνōs; vārīnos, mādhunos. Pl. N. aṅṅayās, sūṅavas; āvyas, sūcī(ṇi), ṣurū(ṇi). Ac. aṅṅīn, sūṅūn; gātis, dhenus; aryās, paśvās, I. aṅṅibhis, sūṅūbhīs, D. Ab. aṅṅibhyās, sūṅūbhīyas, G. aṅṅīnām, sūṅūnām, L. aṅṅīṣu, sūṅūṣu.

The most ancient and fundamental division of these stems is between the neuters on the one hand and the masculine-feminines on the other. The latter two classes were originally identical in declension and the distinction between them which is observed in Sanskrit is a secondary development. On the other hand the distinction between the neuter and masc.-fem. types (mādhvas : aṅgēs) which is caused by variation of accent goes back to an ancient period of Indo-European.

The inflection of the neuters was effected by the addition of the normal endings, which in the weak cases originally bore the accent (Gk. δουπός, γουνός), and in this respect it did not in principle differ from that of the consonantal stems. This type of declension was not originally confined to the neuters (see below, sākhye, etc.), but the special type developed by the masc.-fem. class as a result of their suffixal accentuation (aṅṇāye, aṅṇēs) was foreign to them. In Sanskrit the accent has become fixed on the root throughout the declension, mādhvas gen. replacing *mādhvas, as in other neuter stems. A few traces remain. The IE declension of the neuter u-stem meaning ‘domestic animal’ was of the type peku, pekwēs. Corresponding to these forms Sanskrit has a neuter pā-su (once in RV.) and a gen. sg.
paśvās which directly continue the old type, but paśvās has be-
come the gen. sg. of an analogically created nom. paśūs, while
corresponding to paśu there has been created a dat. sg. paśve by
the usual levelling process.

As a result of the stabilising of the accent on the root in the
normal type of neuters, the only type remaining in which the
accent normally changed from the stem to the termination in
decension consisted of those suffixally accented masculines and
feminines in which the vowel of the suffix was elided in the
weak cases (mūrdhā : mūrdhnās, etc.). The result was that in
certain cases, where an old neuter noun had preserved the
terminational accent in the gen. sg., a new suffixally accented
stem was created on this analogy, and with this change of
accent was associated a change of gender : paśūs masc. for paśu
neut. Of the same type is pitūs : pitvās ‘food’.

The number of stems inflecting in this way in the Vedic
language is very small, and in addition to neuters it includes
some masc. and fem. nouns : āvis, āvyaś ‘sheep’, krātus,
krātvās ‘intelligence’, cf. Av. xraṣṭuś, xraṭwō. These may be
regarded as transferred neuters. Such a development is easily
understandable in the case of āvi- on account of its animate
nature. The action nouns in -i and -u were originally, in accord-
ance with their meaning, of the neuter type, but in general they
have been transferred to the masculine and feminine classes.
In doing this they have normally adopted the adjectival type of
decension (matis : matēs, etc.) but the neuter type has re-
mained in a few cases as an indication of their originally neuter
class. The masculines of this type use sometimes special forms
of the nom. acc. plur. (nom. Av. paśvas ‘cattle’, oravō ‘fingers’,
acc. Skt. paśvās) but also those of the normal type (paśāvas,
paśūn).

The Vedic declension of the stem rayī.-rāy- is of this type
(n. rayīs : g. rāyās, etc.). It represents earlier *rahi-s,rahiyās.
It is a transferred neuter of the āvi- type, and the termina-
tional accent of the gen. sg. has effected a change of accent from
root to suffix in the nom. sg., just as has happened in the case of
paśū-. Besides this there exists a root stem rā- corresponding to
Latin rēs. In the classical declension this is combined with the
rāy- form of the i-stem. Similar is the declension of naūs,
nāvās ‘ship’ (Gk. ναῦς, νηός) for *naho-s, *nahoś. In the
only place where the nom. sg. occurs in the Rgveda it is pro-
nounced as a dissyllable: *naus (navus) and in this respect it can be compared directly with rayis. The long diphthong is a later contraction of these vowels in hiatus. The acc. sg. is an innovation like the rāyam which supplants rayim.

The stem arī- in which two different words have been confused (arī- 'pious', *alī- 'alien, hostile') inflects according to this type, although adjectival in sense. Since there are found elsewhere in IE examples of old neuters being adapted to this use without the usual modification of the stem, its characteristic inflection (gen. sg. arýas, etc.) might be explained by its being an old neuter of this type transferred to the masculine. If it were originally an adjective it would have to be assumed that it inflected originally like sākhi (I. sākhyā, D. sākhye) and that from these weak forms the type of inflection characteristic of this class has spread to the nom. pl. (arýas like paśvās). On the whole the absence of any trace of the strong form of the suffix makes the first explanation more probable.

The same doubt exists in the case of pāti-. In the meaning 'lord' this word follows the normal inflection (type agnī-), but in the meaning 'husband' it forms cases after this style (dat. pātye). The accent and the -n- of the derivative pātī 'wife' might be held to indicate an old alternating neuter; on the other hand the nom. pl. is always normal and weak cases of this type are shown also by the adjectival sākhi-. The stem jāni- 'woman' has a gen. sg. jānyus with a termination -us which appears also in sākhyus, pātyus and which is clearly borrowed from the nouns of relationship (*pītus, etc.). In all three cases the normal gen. ending -as has been replaced. Avestan has janyōiš, a compromise form replacing *janyas. This type of genitive inflection indicates that the stem is an old neuter transferred to the feminine.

There existed an alternative way of inflecting the neuters of this class in IE, by the employment of the heteroclitic n-suffix. In the few neuter i-stems that remain this n replaces the i-suffix (āksi, aksṇās), so that these stems are in the main removed from this declension. On the other hand the neuter stems in -u add this -n- to the stem before the vocalic weak terminations: dat. sg. mādhune, gen.-abl. mādhunas, sāmunas, drūnas, loc. mādhuni, vāstuni, nom. acc. du. jānunī 'knees', gen. loc. du. jānunos. Similar forms in other languages show that this practice is ancient (Gk. gen. sg. ἐχωντος for *ἐχώνωτος,
Toch. du. *kanwe*m (*knees*). It is probable that originally a corresponding extension -r could be added in the nom. acc. sg. whence the two types of suffix -ura/una- in derivative adjectival stems. In the early language these endings are, with very rare exceptions, used only with neuter nouns. In adjectives the neuter is not normally distinguished in form outside the nom.-acc. In the classical language the n-forms are the rule for neuter substantives, but optional in the case of adjectives. The -n- has already in the earliest language spread to the instrumental singular of the masculines (*sūnānā*).

Examples of this kind of inflection in neuter i-stems are exceedingly rare (*akṣinī* 'eyes') and the only common neuter that inflects in this way, *vāni* 'water', gen. sg. *vārīnas*, does not appear in the earliest language. This is to be expected in view of the rarity of such stems, the existence of an alternative type of heteroclitic declension (*āsthi/asthnās*), and the fact that the adjectival i-stems do not, any more than the corresponding u-stems, distinguish the neuter in these cases in the early language (gen. sg. nt. *bhirēs*). Nevertheless it may be assumed to be old from the existence of the alternating suffixes -ura-/ina- and the fact that this -n- has already in the earliest language spread to the instr. sg. of the masculines.

In the Veda the neuter nouns in -u may as a third alternative inflect according to the normal masculine type: gen. sg. *mādhos*, *drōs*, *snōs*, etc. This is an innovation which is eliminated in the classical grammar.

The neuter type of declension shows three types of loc. sg. in the u-stems which differ from the normal type of the masculine stems (*sūnaũ*). (1) A locative without ending appears in *sāno*, *vāsto*. This type appears also in Iranian (Av. *pārtao*, O. Pers. *BābīrauI, gāthav-ā*), and it corresponds to similar formations from n-stems (*akṣān*), except that the characteristic accentuation of the loc. sg. has been eliminated. In *sānāvi* this formation is extended by the addition of locativa-v-i as has happened in *akṣāṇi*, etc. In the Vedic language this type has been extended to a small number of masculines (*ānāvi, dāsyavī*, etc.). (3) The locative may be made on the basis of the stem extended by -n-: *sānumi*, *vāstumi*. This becomes the regular inflection in the classical language.

The common masc.-fern. type, consisting originally of adjectives and agent nouns, but at an early period enriched by
wholesale transfers of action-nouns from the neuter, was differ­entiated in IE from the corresponding neuters by its suffixal accent: ἐλφεῖν nt. subst. 'much' (Goth. filu), πλεῖον adj. 'much, many' (Gk. πλεῖον). On the basis of this adjectival stem there could be formed a ὀρθογόνοιοι nom. sg., uncharacterised by the termination -s, on the same pattern as in the n-, r- and s-stems: σάκκῳ 'friend' (stem. σάκκοι- like πίθῳ, ῥᾶζα. In Sanskrit this word, in which the accent may be presumed to have been secondarily transferred to the root, remains the only example of this type of formation from an i-stem. As a general rule the forms -is, -im and -us, -um are substituted in the nominative and accusative, forms which go back to an early period in Indo-European. The ὀρθογόνοι which appears in the acc. sg. and nom. pl. (σάκκοιαμ, σάκκοιας) is as elsewhere (ἀδήραμ, etc.) an extension of the form of the nom. sg. Guṇa was originally proper to these cases. Some forms of the acc. sg. with guṇa are preserved in Avestan (kavaēm, frādat-fśaom). Sanskrit has no such forms but it preserves the regular guṇa in the nom. pl. of the ordinary declension (agnāyas, sūnāvas). The accented and guṇated suffix could also appear in the dat. and gen. sg. (agnaye, agnēs) and this type has become the normal one in Sanskrit for masculines and feminines. Alternatively, on the analogy of πίτρε, etc., the accent could appear on the termination in stems of adjectival type, so that in these cases their declension is not distinguished from that of the neuters. Apart from the shift of accent this type is preserved in the dat. sākhyē; and also in pātyē if this word is of adjectival origin. The Avestan declension of haxā 'friend' corresponds in general to that of sākka (nom. s. haxā, acc. haxāim, dat. haše, etc.) thus establishing it as Indo-Iranian. In the gen. sg. this stem has been influenced by the names of relationship of the r-declension (sākhīus after pītūs). The old endingless locative has been replaced by one in which the -y- of the dat. sg., etc., has been introduced (sākhīaum). A similar form appears in the case of pātī- 'husband' (pāgyau).

Although the ὀρθογόνοι nom. sg. which appears in sākkō is isolated in Sanskrit, signs are not wanting that it was originally more common in the i- and u-stems of the adjectival and agent-noun type. In Avestan the stem kavi- which has been normalised in Sanskrit still inflects in this way: nom. sg. kavaē. In the acc. sg. this word has the original guṇa (kavaēm, i.e.,
250 THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS

kavyam, cf. pitáram), as opposed to the vṛddhī in Skt. sákhhā-

yam, Av. hāxāim. In the gen. sg. in Avestan the gunāted suffix

normally appears, but once apparently it is inflected on the

analogy of the heteroclitic neuters (kvarṇō, cf. vārīnas).

A vṛddhīed nom. sg. in -āus appears in Iranian in the case

of some u-stems: Av. hitāus 'associate', uzbāzāuš 'with arms

aloft' (and ugarī), O. Pers. dāhyāuš. These have developed

from the asigmatic vṛddhīed nom. sg. by the secondary addition

of the nom. sg. -s. The adjectival nature of this form of termina-

tion emerges clearly from the juxtaposition of uzbāzāuš and bāzuš

'arm'. In the acc. sg. we may have the old guna grade preserved

(Av. dāiňhaom) or vṛddhī extended from the nom. sg. (O. Pers.

dāhyāum, Av. nasāum 'spirit of the corpse'). The contrast

between the acc. sg. ṭpasum 'domestic animal' and frādak-

fśaom 'increasing cattle' illustrates the adjectival nature of

this kind of inflection. A similar variation appears between

arstīm 'spear' and dārīγī arstāem 'having a long spear'.

In the gen. sg. these stems have either the old type of inflection

undifferentiated from the neuter (uzbāzvō), the normal type

with guna (daiśhuṣ), or by later innovation forms with vṛddhī

(nasāvō).

In Greek the adjectives and agent nouns have separated into

two types in the case of u-stems. The adjectives have, as in

Sanskrit, adopted the endings -us, -um (-uv) in the nom. acc. sg.

πολίσ: purús), at the same time preserving the original

suffixal accent. On the other hand the agent-noun type (βa-

συλόεις, γονεῖς, φονεῖς, etc.), have developed on the basis of

the old vṛddhīed nom. sg. to which -s has been secondarily

added as in Iranian (-eis for -ης). The vṛddhī is carried

through the declension as in the case of certain other types of

stem (βασιλή(F)os, cf. δοτήρος).

To return to Sanskrit there is possibly one example of a

formation parallel to sākhā: apratā in RV. viii, 32, 16, nā sómo

apratā pape 'Soma is not drunk without recompense' (prati-, cf. πρῶτον

Lat. prētium). This is usually interpreted as loc. sg., but as

non-adjectival compounds with a- are against the normal usage

of the Vedic language, it is probably better taken as a nom. sg.

interpreting the compound as a bahuvrihi

The inflectional type of which Avestan preserves traces in

examples like uzbāzāuš is preserved in Skt. dyauś 'sky'. This

is conventionally classed as a diphthongal stem, but, as else-
where this classification is unsound. On the one hand the normal i- and u-stems are themselves partly diphthongal (agnés, súnós), and on the other hand this word is in part of its inflection not diphthongal (gen. sg. di-v-as, cf. madh-v-as). It is an adjectival u/eu stem dy-eu- with accent and guṇa or vrddhi of suffix according to the general rule. The addition of -s in the nom. sg. is secondary but of IE date (dyaús : Zeús). In the oblique cases of the singular there appears most commonly the undifferentiated type with accented termination (diwás : Gk. Διώς) but also the special adjectival type with accent and guṇa of suffix (dyós : Av. dyaoṣ). With this must be classed gaús 'cow' (dat. gáve, gen. gós) whose accent and declension show it to have this adjectival suffix (g-ó-, i.e. gʷʰ-eu, cf. Gk. βόσκω). It inflects only according to the adjectival type and goes further than other u/o-stems in introducing the guṇa into the cases of the plural (instr. góbhis, etc.). In the acc. sg. the forms dyám, gám appear to be from *dyaum, *gaum, with vrddhi from the analogy of the nom. sg. and elision of the final element of the diphthong before -m.

The stem vi- 'bird' is an adjectival formation based on an old IE neuter *8wi (egg' (whence with thematic extension Gk. ḍoν) and the accentuation of the suffix has resulted in the total elision of the radical vowel (as opposed to Lat. avis). In the RV. it has a nom. sg. vis with guṇa and nom. s. There is no parallel to this formation.

An old nominative agnál(i) is traceable from the derivative Agnáyi 'wife of Agni', and it appears also in the compound Agnávisnū 'Agni and Viṣṇu' (cf. mālāpiṭarau). Similarly Manávi 'Manu's wife' is based on an old nominative *Manaúi. More important than this the vrddhied nominative of the adjectival type is preserved intact in the form that appears in the locative singular: agná(u), sūnáu. These forms are a special adjectival type of the locative without ending, being identical in every respect with the forms that originally served as the nom. sg. In that function they have normally been replaced by the termination -is, -us, but in their locativa function they have been retained.

The terminations -is, -im, -us, -um are therefore innovations in IE, and this accounts for the association of the accent with the weak grade of the suffix (purús). Nevertheless they are of considerable antiquity, and they have become the normal type
in the various languages (Hitt. šalliš ‘great’, aššuš ‘good’, Gk. πολύς ‘much’, Lith. lipūs ‘sticky’, Goth kaurus ‘heavy’, etc.). Their origin is to be sought in the fact that in the masculine and feminine i- and u-stems two classes have coalesced. To the adjectival class consisting of adjectives proper (purú-, etc.) and nouns of adjectival type (sīnu-, etc.) there has been added a large class of action nouns (gāti-, sētu-, etc.) which were transferred at an early period from the neuter class. This involved the adding of the case terminations -s, -m in the nom. acc. sg. on the analogy of the thematic stems, thus producing a type ending in -is, -im, -us, -um. In the amalgamation of the two classes in a common masc.-fem. declension, this type of formation in the nom.-acc. is generalised, but in the dat. and gen. sg. the formation proper to the adjectival type is generalised (gātes after agnēs, etc.).

The type of inflection prevalent in i- and u-stems in Sanskrit appears also in other IE languages: cf. gen. sg. Goth. anstais, sunaus, Lith. naktēs, sūnaius, dat. sg. O. Sl. synovi. In Hittite and Greek the forms of the gen. sg. with non-reduced termination (Hitt. šallaias, aššawaš, Gk. ὀφεος, ἡδεος) may be regarded as innovations replacing this type.

In the locative singular the -au of the u-stems (sūnaius) has been introduced into the i-stems (agnai), but the Vedic language also has agnā (i.e. agnā(i)). The locative without ending appears also in other IE languages (Goth. anstai, sunau, O. Sl. synu, etc.), but it is not possible to determine whether a long or short diphthong is represented in these cases.

The special feminine terminations in the dat., gen.-abl. and loc. sg. (gātyai, -ās, -ām; dhenvai, -ās, -ām) are adapted from the i-declension. They are still rare in the RV. but become very common in the later pre-classical literature. The grammarians allow optionally in the case of feminine nouns either these terminations (gātyai, etc.) or the common masc.-fem. terminations (gātaye, etc.).

§ 8. STEMS IN ā, ī, ļ


-ī: (A) Sg. N. vrkīs, A. vrkyām, I. vrkyā, D. vrkyē, Ab. G.
The declension of nouns

(vrkyās, Loc. gaurit; Du. N.A.V. vrkyā(u), I.D. Ab. vrkibhyām, G.L. vrkyōs; Pl. N.A.V. vrkyās, I. vrkibhis, D. Ab. vrkibhyas, G. vrkīnām, L. vrkīsu.)


The nouns of these classes have in common an IE suffix -H (-aH, -i-H, -u-H > ā, ī, ū). With this suffix action nouns could be formed which originally did not differ from the usual neuter types (cf. the neuters in -as, -is, -us), and also adjectives which came eventually to be specialised as feminines. The dual type of inflection which appears in the ī-stems is traceable to the distinction of these two types, since whereas the vrkt type inflects according to a system which may appear in both neuter and adjectival types, the devi declension contains inflections (devyā-s, etc.) of a specifically adjectival nature, in which the strong form of the suffix is due to the original adjectival accent.

The stems of the vrkt type consist of both action nouns (dehti ‘rampart’) and nouns of adjectival type, masculine and feminine (rathi- ‘charioteer’, vrkt ‘she-wolf’). In the former the accent has been shifted to the suffix, where it remains throughout the declension, in the same way as has happened in the stems in -i$ (havīs, havīṣas, similarly -iH, -iḥos). In the adjectival class the strong form of the stem (*vrkyā), whose original existence is to be assumed on the basis of the accentuation and of the general system (piṭā, etc.), has been replaced by the weak form, a process for which a parallel is to be found in the in-stems (balt, baḷinas). As a result of these processes, and because of the acquisition of feminine gender by action nouns with suffix -H, the two classes become completely fused together in declension.

The same two types are found among the ū-stems ((1) tanū- ‘body’, (2) śvaśrū- ‘mother-in-law’) and their fusion has proceeded in the same way.

Since the -s of the nom. sg. was originally not characteristic of the ḫ-stems. from which it remains absent elsewhere, its
existence in these two classes must be regarded as an importation from the root stems in ī and ā which are declined in the same way (dhiś, dhiyās, bhūs, bhuvās). For the rest the declension is of the normal consonantal type calling for little comment. The stem and ending are pronounced as separate syllables in the Veda (tanuvām, etc.) although written according to the later system (tanvām, etc.). The normal type of loc. sg. appears in camvī, tanvī, etc., the endingless variety in camā, etc. The few locatives in -ī of the ī-stems could either be the result of contraction (*iyī <*īī) or be locatives without ending. In the gen. pl. -n- has been introduced on the general analogy of the vocalic stems.

The devī type is the one that normally appears in the feminine of non-thematic and some thematic stems (rājī, dāṭī, pṛthvī, kalvānī). It is thus predominantly an adjectival suffix, and although the accent of stems of this type has become variable in Sanskrit, the suffixal accent which frequently appears may be considered to be the more original type. The strong forms of the suffix, which are to be explained by this adjectival accent, appear in the dat., abl.-gen. and loc. sg. In the nom.-acc. the weak form of the suffix appears, so that there exists an alternation here parallel to that which appears in the ī- and u-stems. Theoretical considerations indicate that the weak form of the nom.-acc. sg. (and of the nom. pl. following suit) are innovations, just as the similar formations in the adjectival ā and u-stems, and the related languages provide some evidence that this is so. This is clearest in the case of the acc. sg. which for phonological reasons cannot be original, since these stems were originally consonantal and *-īham could only produce -iyam (-yam). In Balto-Slavonic and Germanic the strong form appears in the acc. sg. (Lith. nesušiq, O. Sl. nesuša, Goth. bandja, etc.) and there is no reason to believe that these forms are innovations. On the other hand these languages have the weak stem in the nom. sg. (Goth. frijondi, Lith. vežanti, O. Sl. vezqštī) a fact which indicates that the weak form was earliest established in the nom. sg. Greek on the other hand has *-ya in the nom. sg. (πότνια, φέρουσα, μία), and this cannot be phonetically equated with the ī of the other languages since IE -iH- develops into ī in Gk. as elsewhere. The final -ā here as elsewhere (vṛṣapā, etc.) represents IE -aH- and the short vowel, as opposed to the long ā elsewhere, arises from the pre-vocalic sandhi of this combina-
It is clear that the accent of \( \mu \text{i} \text{ā} \text{a} \) is not original since it rests on a weakened syllable and it follows that the accent of the oblique cases (\( \mu \text{i} \text{ā} \text{s} \)) must have originally prevailed in the nom. sg. also (*\text{s}mī\text{ā}h\).

The distinction between the two types of declension of the \( \text{i} \)-stems, which is strictly observed in the Vedic language, is not retained in later Sanskrit. The \( \text{devi} \) inflection is preserved at the expense of the \( \text{vṛkī} \) inflection, but it adopts the inflections of the latter class in the nom.-acc. du. and nom. pl.: \( \text{devya} \text{ā} \text{u} \), \( \text{devya} \text{ā} \text{s} \). Among the \( \text{ū} \)-stems inflection of a type parallel to that of the \( \text{devi} \) stems is exceedingly rare in the RV. In the later language it becomes the normal type: \( \text{vadhv} \text{ā} \text{i} \), \( \text{vadhv} \text{ā} \text{s} \), \( \text{vadhv} \text{ā} \text{m} \), the development running parallel to that of the \( \text{i} \)-stems.

The fusion of the termination and suffix in certain cases (\( \text{devya} \text{i} \), \( \text{devya} \text{ā} \)) produces the special feminine terminations which are later applied to the feminine \( \text{i} \)- and \( \text{u} \)-stems. The loc. sg. has a special termination -\( \text{m} \). This -\( \text{m} \) is absent in Iranian (O. Pers. \( \text{haravvati} \text{yā} \)), which shows that the loc. was originally without termination. The secondary addition of -\( \text{m} \) is paralleled elsewhere: \( \text{tūbh} \text{y} \text{a} \): \( \text{tūbh} \text{y} \text{am} \); instr.-dat.-abl. du. -\( \text{bh} \)\( \text{y} \)\( \text{ā} \)\( \text{m} \): Av. -\( \text{by} \)\( \text{ā} \).

The stems in -\( \text{ā} \) have been influenced in declension by the stems in -\( \text{i} \). The cases of the singular from the dative onward are formed by the addition of -\( \text{y} \)\( \text{a} \), -\( \text{y} \)\( \text{ā} \), -\( \text{y} \)\( \text{ā} \)\( \text{m} \) which have been abstracted from the \( \text{devi} \) declension. This peculiarity is shared by Iranian: Av. dat. sg. \( \text{daēnay} \text{ā} \), etc. The older IE endings are preserved elsewhere: gen. sg. Gk. \( \chi \)\( \text{ṓp} \)\( \text{ā} \), O. Lat. \( \text{vi} \)\( \text{ā} \), Goth. \( \text{gi} \)\( \text{ō} \)\( \text{s} \), etc.

§ 9. Stems in -\( \text{a} \)

Sg. N. \( \text{dev} \)\( \text{ā} \), A. \( \text{dev} \)\( \text{ā} \)\( \text{m} \), I. \( \text{dev} \)\( \text{ē} \)\( \text{n} \), D. \( \text{dev} \)\( \text{ā} \)\( \text{ya} \), Ab. \( \text{dev} \)\( \text{ā} \)\( \text{t} \), G. \( \text{dev} \)\( \text{ā} \)\( \text{s} \)\( \text{ya} \), L. \( \text{dev} \)\( \text{ē} \), V. \( \text{dē} \)\( \text{va} \); Du. N.A.V. \( \text{dev} \)\( \text{a} \)\( \text{i} \), I.D. Abl. \( \text{dev} \)\( \text{ā} \)\( \text{b} \)\( \text{h} \)\( \text{y} \)\( \text{ā} \)\( \text{m} \), G.L. \( \text{dev} \)\( \text{ā} \)\( \text{y} \)\( \text{os} \); Pl. N. \( \text{dev} \)\( \text{ā} \), A. \( \text{dev} \)\( \text{ā} \)\( \text{n} \), I. \( \text{dev} \)\( \text{ā} \)\( \text{s} \), D. Ab. \( \text{dev} \)\( \text{ā} \)\( \text{b} \)\( \text{h} \)\( \text{y} \)\( \text{a} \)\( \text{s} \), G. \( \text{dev} \)\( \text{ā} \)\( \text{n} \)\( \text{ā} \)\( \text{m} \), L. \( \text{dev} \)\( \text{ē} \)\( \text{s} \)u.

Neuter N.A. \( \text{yug} \)\( \text{ā} \)\( \text{m} \), Du. \( \text{yug} \)\( \text{ē} \), Pl. \( \text{yug} \)\( \text{ā} \)\( \text{n} \)\( \text{i} \).

The stems in -\( \text{a} \) are the most numerous type in the language (45 per cent of all nominal stems in the \( \text{Ṛgveda} \)). They are characterised by the absence of any shift of accent in declension, and this seems always to have been the case. Thematic stems are either masculine or neuter, and these differ in declension only
THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS

in the nominative and accusative. This declension contains some special features which may be briefly summarised. It has been considerably influenced by the pronominal declension. In the instr. sg. the termination -ena has been taken from that source. The older termination -ā still exists in the Vedic language, though it is a good deal less common than -ena. In Avestan only the ending -ā appears. The Indo-Iranian termination of the dat. sg. was -āī, a contraction of the stem vowel and the termination -ai, and this was inherited from Indo-European (-o + ei): Av. hāomāi, Gk. ἱππος, etc. To this a postposition ā might optionally be added as in Av. ahurāī ā and in Skt. this element has become permanently attached, producing the extended termination -āyā. The ablative sg. which is distinguished from the gen. sg. in this declension alone, is inherited directly from IE (O. Lat. -ād, etc.).

There exists no common IE form of the gen. sg. In Balto-Slavonic the old abl. sg. functions also as gen. sg. and in view of the identity of the two cases elsewhere this could be ancient. Italic and Celtic have an ending -ī, which is the adjectival suffix -ī substituted for the thematic suffix. This ī appears in Sanskrit in constructions of the type samī-krī 'to make even'. In Hitt. the gen. sg. of the thematic class is equivalent to the nom. sg. There exists in the Veda a small number of compounds like rathaspāti which possibly contain such a form of gen. sg. A form corresponding to the Sanskrit termination appears in Greek and Armenian (Gk. οὐ, Arm. -oy). A similar formation, but without the -y- appears elsewhere: Goth. wulfis (<"eso), O. Sl. ēso 'whose'. These terminations may be presumed to have originated in the pronominal declension, as has happened elsewhere. The elements -so and -syo which are thus added to the stem appear to be demonstrative pronouns of that form.

The loc. sg. is analysable into the stem vowel and the normal termination -ī: cf. Gk. oīkoī, etc. The nom. pl. -ās (a + as) appears in a similar form elsewhere (Goth. wulfōs, Osc. nūvlanūs), but in its place an ending -oi, derived from the pronouns is also frequent (Gk. λόκος, Lat. lupī, Lith. vilkai, Toch. B. yakwi). The ending -ās is in the Vedic language sometimes pleonastically extended to -āsas, a feature which is also observed in Iranian (Av. -dāhā). This innovation is again abolished in classical Sanskrit, but it lives on in some early Pali forms (pañḍitāse, etc.). The acc. pl. has acquired its long vowel
from the nom. pl. (original form in Gk. (diaL.) λυκοῦς, etc.). The gen. pl. has acquired its -n- from other classes, the innovation being common to Indo-Aryan and Iranian (Av. maṣyaṇam, O. Pers. bagānām). The original termination is preserved only in the phrase devāṇ jāṁma 'the race of gods'; cf. Av. staṝram, Gk. θεῶν, Lat. deum, etc.

Two forms of the instr. pl. appear in the Vedic language, in -ais and in -ebhis. In Iranian Avestan has -āiš, O. Persian -aibiš. Elsewhere there exist only forms corresponding to -ais: Gk. λύκοις, Lat. lupīs, Osc. nūvλanūs, Lith. vilkašis. This form of the case has the appearance of being a pluralisation of the form that appears in the singular as dative. If so it must go back to a time when the cases were less differentiated than they became later. The ending -ebhis is an Indo-Iranian innovation after the pronominal declension. The innovation is later eliminated in classical Sanskrit, but it is the basis of the Middle Indo-Aryan forms of this case (: Pali -ehi, Pkt. -ehi(m)). The -e- which appears here is from the form of the pronominal stem which appears in most of the cases of the plural (nom. pl. te, etc.). It also appears in the dat.-abl. and loc. pl. of this declension (-ebhyas, -eṣu).
CHAPTER VI
NUMERALS, PRONOUNS, INDECLINABLES

§ 1. NUMERALS

The Sanskrit numerals from 1-1000 are inherited from Indo-European. They are constructed on the decimal system, the numerals 1-10 being the foundation of the whole series. The numerals from 1-10 are adjectives, as also 11-19 which are compounded with dāśa ‘ten’. The higher numbers are properly collective nouns, though a tendency to treat them as adjectives appears as the language develops. The numbers from 1-4 are fully inflected in the three genders; those from 6-10 are defective and appear originally to have been uninflected.

1. Two roots appear as the basis of the numeral 1 in Indo-European, of which the one (ōt-) appears to have had the meaning of ‘alone’, the other (sem-) that of ‘together’. In Sanskrit eka- ‘one’ is formed from the first root with the suffix -ka, and it is declined according to the pronominal declension. The only form exactly corresponding is the Aryan aika- which is found in the Hittite documents. Elsewhere different suffixes appear: Av. aēva-, Gk. oĩos ‘alone’; Lat. ūnus, O. Ir. ōin, Goth. ains. The root sem- provides this numeral in Greek (ἐRecipient, μία: *séms, *smia) and Tocharian (A. sas, B. ōeme). This root appears in Sanskrit in its reduced form (ṃ-) in sakṛt ‘once’ (: Av. hakṛt), and in compounds of the type sāmanas- ‘of one mind, the same mind’. The adjectives samā-, samānā- ‘same’ are derived from it.

2. The numeral dvau (: Gk. δῶ, Lat. duo, O. Sl. dva, etc.) is like the normal dual of an a-stem: N.A. nt. dve (: O. Sl. ḏvě), I.D. Ab. dvābhyām, G.L. dvāyos (: O. Sl. dvoju). The uninflected thematic stem appears in the Gk. variant ḏwo. There is an alternative stem formed by means of the suffix -i, which appears in compounds (dvipād- ‘two-footed’, Gk. δίπως, Lat. bipes) and in various derivatives (dvitiya- ‘second’, etc.). Beside the numeral proper there is a stem ubhā- ‘both’ which inflects in the same way. The exact nature of its relation to Gk. ḏμφω,
3. The stem *tri- contains a suffix -i which is absent in the ordinal *tr̩̃t̩̃ya-. It is inflected like a normal adjective in -i (nom. pl. *tréyas : Gk. τρεῖς, etc.), except in the gen. pl. where *tr̩̃yānām has replaced an earlier *tr̩̃yām (: Av. ṭrayām, with guṇa from the nom. pl. as opposed to Gk. τρεῖν, etc.). It preserves the alternation of accent in declension: instr. pl. *tribhīs as opposed to *vibhīs 'with birds'.

4. This numeral is formed on the basis of a root *kʷet- which seems originally to have meant something like 'angle' (cf. Lat. *triquetrus 'triangular'), whence 'square' and from that 'four'. In the masc. and neut. (catvāras, catvāri, Lat. quattuor, etc.) the stem is formed by means of the suffix -var, with adjectival accent and vrddhi in the nominative. In the other cases (acc. catvāras, etc.) the suffix has the weak form according to the general rule. A neuter noun *cātvar, or its IE prototype, is presupposed by the thematic extension catvara- 'square, cross-roads'. Elsewhere the simple r-suffix may appear (Gk. Dor. τέτοπες, Lat. quater), or the elements of the suffix may be reversed (Av. ćahru-).

The feminine of these two numerals (nom. acc. tisrās, cātasras : Av. tiṣrō, ćatayrō) is made by means of the suffix -sar, which elsewhere (see p. 141) shows a tendency to become a specifically feminine suffix. In tisrās the -r- of tri- has disappeared through dissimilation. The common form of the nom. acc. is in origin accusative. The original forms of the nom. to be assumed for IE, *tisores, *kʷetesores, are continued in Celtic : O. Ir. teoir, cetheoir.

The numerals from 5-10 have a less developed system of inflection than the preceding ones. With the exception of the dual ending of asḥau 'eight', they do not inflect in the nom. acc. In the Vedic language they may appear uninflected also in the other cases: pāṇca kṣitīṣu 'in the five tribes', saṃtab hotṛbhīḥ 'with seven priests', etc. In Greek and Latin the corresponding words are uninflected, also in Germanic when used attributively. This is the oldest state of affairs. The beginnings of inflection may be put in the late IE period, the uninflected type surviving by the side of the new inflected type down to Vedic times.

5. In pāṇca (: Gk. πέντε, Lat. quinque, etc.), representing IE
péykʷe, we find an uninflected thematic stem. As such are to be assumed, from the evidence of compounds, etc., to have existed freely at an early stage of IE, this is an interesting archaism. The root péykʷe is in all probability that which appears in Engl. finger (péykʷrō-) and fist (pékʷsti-, cf. O. Sl. pešti 'id'). The derivative pánkti- (O. Sl. pešti 'five') means from the Rgveda on, not only 'group of five', but more generally 'group, series'.

6. Skt. saṭ (<*sāts <sāts with assimilation of initial) represents IE *seks: cf. Lat. sex, Goth. saiths, etc. The forms of this word in Indo-European are rather complicated, since there also exist forms beginning with sw- (Welsh chwech), ks- (Gk. ξέοτριξ 'in rows of six', O. Sl. šesti 'six'), ksw- (Av. xswaš) and simple w- (Arm. veç, O. Pruss. uschīs 'sixth'). The original initial consonant group has been simplified variously in the different languages. Middle Indo-Aryan cha goes back to an original differing from the Sanskrit form, and beginning with kṣ-.

7. The final -a of saptá (: Gk. ἑπτά) represents IE -η, as is clear not only from Lat. septem but also from the ordinal saptamá-. The agreement between Greek and Sanskrit shows that the final accentuation existed already in IE (septēn), but it cannot be original since it appears on a reduced syllable.

8. In aṣṭau (: Gk. ἀκτώ, Lat. octō, Goth. ahtau, etc.) there appears the termination of the dual. The meaning of the stem oktō- of which this is the dual may be inferred from a related i-stem, aštī-, which is found in Avestan. This is a measure of length meaning 'the width of four fingers', from which it may be inferred that the dual *oktō(u) meant originally 'two groups of four fingers'. In classical Sanskrit there exists beside this a form aṣṭa with short a from the surrounding numerals.

9. The -a of náva 'nine' (: Gk. εὔνεα) may go back to -η (cf. navamá-, Lat. novem) or possibly -η (cf. Lat. nōnus 'ninth'). The word has been considered to be related to IE nēwos 'new', which in view of the formation of the preceding numeral is not without plausibility.

10. The primary series closes with dāśa 'ten' (: Gk. δέκα, Lat. decem, Goth. tathun, etc.) representing IE dékη, about the etymology of which no likely suggestions exist.

11-19. These are dvandva compounds of 1-9 with 10: dvādaśa '12', trāyodaśa '13', cāturdaśa '14', sōdaśa '16', etc.; cf. Gk. δώδεκα, Lat. duodecim, etc. The long vowel of
ekādaśa '11' is from dvādaśa. The numeral 19 may alternatively be expressed ekonavimśati '20 less 1'.

The tens from 20-90 are feminine substantives and as such decline properly in the singular, with the gen. pl. of the things enumerated: navatīṁ nāvayānāṁ '90 navigable streams', etc. But they may also be construed either (1) agreeing in case, but not in number, with the noun enumerated, vimśatīdvā hāribhīkaḥ 'with 20 bay horses', or even (2) adjectivally, agreeing also in number with it: paṁcāsadbhir bānaiḥ 'with 50 arrows'. The intervening numerals are constructed like those from 11-19: trāyastrimśat- '33', cātuḥṣaṣṭi '64', etc.

20-50: vimśati-: cf. Av. vīṣaiti, Gk. eĩkosi, Lat. vigintī, etc.
trimśat: cf. A. ṛisās, acc. sg. ṛisatem, Lat. trīgintā, etc.
catvārimśat: cf. Av. caṭhvarasatēm (acc. sg.), Gk. τετταράκοντα, Lat. quadraginta, etc.

paṁcāsati-: cf. Av. paṁcāsat-, Gk. πεντήκοντα, Lat. quinquaginta, etc.

The element -ṣat- which appears in these four numerals is out of -k1pt-, which further stands for ḍk1pt-, a reduced form of the numeral 10, with the t-suffix that appears in Skt. dasāt- 'decade'. The reduced form belongs properly to the weak cases, since Av. ṛisās '30', and visās '20', show that the strong stem (-sant-) was originally used in the nom. sg. This stem was originally neuter and could be inflected as such along with the preceding numeral (Gk. τετταρά-κοντα '4 tens', etc.). In Sanskrit the neuter pl. inflection appears in the first member in catvāri-m-ṣat and paṁcā-ṣat-. Its absence from the second member is explained by the fact that this inflection could be optionally omitted (cf. viśvāni vāsu, etc., p. 237). The i-stem vimśati- was originally a dual *vi ṣati '2 tens'. The vi which appears here in the sense of '2' is the normal word in Tocharian in place of the usual ḍvau, etc. (A. wu, we (fem.), B. wi). It may be identified with the prefix vi- 'apart, separate'. The presence of the nasal at the end of the first member is unexplained, and outside Indo-Aryan it appears only in Oss. inśāi '20'.

60-90. sāṣṭi, saptāt-, aṣṭī-, navatī-. These are formed in a manner quite different from the preceding. They are abstract or collective nouns formed by means of the suffix -ti, meaning primarily 'hexad', etc. The primary meaning is retained in the similarly formed paṅkti- 'group of 5', and O. Sl. sešt, which corresponds in form to Skt. sāṣṭi-, means simply '6'. The
specialisation of these forms as names of the tens is common to Indo-Aryan and Iranian, cf. Av. xśvaśti-, haptāiti-, aśtāiti-, navāiti-. The form of the numeral 80 in Sanskrit is an independent formation from the root which is not paralleled elsewhere but which is obviously ancient. It has been replaced in Iranian by a normalised form based on aśtā.

100. The original form of śatām (Av. satām, Gk. ἐ-κατόν, Lat. centum, etc.) was *kmptóm, as is clear from Lith šimtas. In view of this, and in view of the fact that the -sat- in trimśat, etc., means 'ten', the IE original is derived from dkmptóm, a neuter collective noun meaning 'a decad (of tens)'.

1000. sahāsra- (Av. haṣayra-) is connected with Gk. χίλιοι, χέλιων, χέλιων (*χέλιων), and the initial element sa- is identified with IE sm- 'one, together'.

These two numerals are neuter substantives, but the same variations of construction are found as with the tens. The numerals above a thousand are purely Indian: ayūta- '10,000', lakṣā- '100,000', prayūta- '1,000,000', koṭi- '10,000,000', etc. The series is carried to great lengths, particularly among the Jains and Buddhists (asaṃkhyeya- = 10140), but among the higher numbers there is little agreement in the names between the various texts.

Ordinals: 1 prathamā- (Av. pratāma-), 2 dvitiya- (: Av. daibitya-, bitiya-, O. Pers. duvitiya-), 3 tertiya- (Av. dritya-, Lat. tertius, etc.), 4 (a) caturthā- (Gk. τέταρτος, Lith. ketviršas, etc.), (b) turya-, turya- (Av. tūrīya-), 5 (a) pakthā- RV. īo, īī, ī (Av. puxda-, OHG. funftio from ἰγκων(ί)-: Gk. πέμπτος, Lith. penkitas, etc., from peynkuto-), (b) pāncatha-, Kāth. (: Gall. pimpetos, O. Welsh pimplhet), (c) normally pāncamā- (Pahl. panjum, Oss. pānjām), 6 saṣṭhā- (Gk. ἕκτος, Lat. sextus), 7 (a) sapṭathā-, RV. (Av. ḍaptātha-), (b) normally sapṭmā- (Pers. haftam, Gk. ἑξήδος, Lat. septimus, etc.), 8 aṣṭamā- (Av. aṣṭama-), 9 navamā- (Av. navama-, O. Pers. navama-), 10 daṣamā (Av. dasama, Lat. decimus, etc.).

The simplest type of ordinal is made by adding the accented thematic vowel to the numeral in its usual adjectival function: saṃpadā-, daśamā-. From these ordinals the formation is further extended to cases where it did not originally belong: aṣṭamā-, as opposed to the more original Gk. ὥγδος, Lat. octāvus; navamā- as opposed to Lat. nōmus. The suffix -thā, i.e. -t-ḥ-ā- must have originally arisen through the addition of
the accented thematic vowel to a collective or abstract derivative in -tā, i.e. -taḥ (*caturtiā + ā > caturthā-). There is no evidence of an ḥ outside Indo-Iranian: Gk. πέμπτος, etc., are formed on the basis of the simple t-stem.

The first ordinal differs in the various languages (Gk. πρῶτος, Lat. primus, Lith. pirmas, etc.), but they agree in deriving it from the same root meaning ‘in front’, and not from the corresponding cardinal. The ordinals from 11-19 are thematic formations with accentuation of suffix: dvādaśā-, etc., cf. Av. dvādasa-, etc. The suffix -tama which serves also as a superlative suffix is used to form ordinals from the tens, 100 and 1000: trimśattama- (Av. ṉrisastama-, Lat. trice(n)simus) ‘30th’), ṣaṣṭitama- ‘60th’, śatatama- ‘100th’, sahasratama- ‘1000th’ (Av. hazayrō · tama-). Alternatively there exists for 20-50 the type viṁśā-, trimśā-, catvārimśa-, paṅcāsa-, to which nothing corresponds outside Indo-Aryan. They are formed analogically on the pattern of ekādaśā-, etc.

Of adjectival derivatives other than ordinals dvayā- (Gk. δωτός, O. Sl. dvoji) and trayā- (O. Sl. troji), meaning ‘of two (three) sorts, parts’ are inherited. Sanskrit has created by means of the suffix -taya a series ekataya-, cātuṣṭaya-, etc., used in the same sense. Old adverbial derivatives are dvis (Av. biś, Gk. δίς, Lat. bis) and tris (Av. briś, Gk. τρίς) ‘twice, three times’. It is not certain whether catuḥ ‘four times’ is the simple stem catur used adverbially, or whether it is from *catur-ṣ, with the addition of this adverbial -s. Av. cabruś ‘four times’ has such an -s (though the elements of the suffix are arranged in different order), but it is not necessary to assume its original presence in Lat. qualer. Elsewhere this meaning is expressed by the use of kītvas ‘times’: pāṇca kītvah ‘5 times, etc.’. The root of this word appears in the compound sakīt ‘once’, and in Lith. kātās, O. Sl. kratū. Other adverbial formations are made by means of the suffixes -dhā (trīdhā ‘in 3 parts’, etc.) and -sas (sataśās ‘in hundreds’), etc.

§ 2. Pronouns

Personal Pronouns

1. Sg. N. ahām, A. mām, mā, I. māyā, D. māhyam, me, Ab. mā, G. māma, me, Loc. māyī.

The inflection of the pronouns differs in many respects from that of the nouns, and this difference is most marked in the personal pronouns. (1) These pronouns show no difference of gender, which is in accordance with the earliest IE practice, and contrasts with the practice of other language families (e.g. Semitic) in which gender is distinguished. Only an isolated *yuśmāś acc. pl. fem. is quotable from the Vedic texts. (2) The distinctions of number are expressed by the use of different stems, which contain different radical elements. (3) The same distinction appears in the first person between the nom. sg. and the other cases. (4) The terminations of the plural are partly identical with those of the singular, and this was much more marked in the prehistoric period. (5) The individual terminations differ widely from those of the noun.

The nom. sg. ahām (Av. azəm) contains a suffix -am which is elsewhere prevalent in the declension of the personal pronouns. The form is found also in Slavonic (Q. Sl. azu with ū <-om). Elsewhere there appear forms without ending (Lith. es, as) and forms terminating in -ō (Gk. eγόν, Lat. ego). The latter form was originally eγόίν, and the aspiration in Sanskrit shows that it was to this form that the -ām has been added (eγό + ōm > eγό-ōm). The -am of tvām (Av. tvēm, tūm) is not found outside Indo-Iranian and is therefore of more recent origin. The other languages have tā which also survives in Iranian, and possibly also in the Vedic particle tu (cf. RV. 8, 13, 14 ṣ tā gahi, pra tu drava). In the other cases of the first person there appears a stem beginning with m-, before which on the evidence of Greek (*eμέ acc. sg.) and Hittite (ammuḫ acc. dat. sg.) a vowel has been lost in most of the IE languages. On the other hand the pronoun of the second person does not differ radically in these cases. The base tē which appears elsewhere (O. Sl. tē = Skt. tvām, etc.) may have arisen out of *twē by sporadic loss of -w- after initial t-. The final -m in the acc. sg. forms mām, tvām
NUMERALS, PRONOUNS, INDECLINABLES 265

(: Av. mām, ñwām) is found outside Indo-Iranian only in Slavonic (O. Sl. me, te). It is an innovation replacing the older forms which are preserved only as enclitics: mā, tvā (: Av. mā, ñwā). The relation of these forms with long vowel to the forms with short vowel like Gk. émé, mé, ñé, ñé is not clear.

The enclitic forms me, te (: O. Pers. maïy, taïy, Av. mōi, me, tōi, te, Gk. μου, σου, Lith. miti) are forms of stem and contain no case ending. As such they are more ancient than the accented forms which have evolved a full case system. It is also an ancient feature that their use is much wider than that of a normal case form. They are used regularly in the sense of both genitive and dative, and occasionally even more widely. Originally there must have been corresponding accented forms with similar wide use. The growth of a full system of inflection for the accented personal pronouns has abolished these, but the older undeveloped system is preserved in the enclitics.

The lateness of the fully inflected case forms is shown by the fact that a number of them have no exact correspondences in other IE languages. Such is the case with the instr. sg. máyā. This is formed on the basis of the stem form preserved in the enclitic me. On the other hand the original form of the instr. sg. of the second person was tvā, as is shown by the agreement of this rare Vedic form with Av. ñwā. It is replaced by tvāyā formed on the pattern of máyā. The same form of stem is the basis of the loc. sg. máyi. The original loc. sg. of the second person is tvē which appears in the RV. It is replaced from the AV. on by the analogical tvāyi. In the absence of Iranian evidence it is not possible to say anything about the earlier history of this case.

The forms of the abl. sg. māt, tvāt (: Av. maṭ, ñwāṭ, cf. O. Lat. mēd, lēd) are formed with the same element that appears in the declension of thematic stems. A form mámat, influenced by the gen. sg. appears in the RV., and later the extended forms matīs, tvattīs, formed with the ablative suffix -tas, come to be frequently used. The forms of the dat. sg. are máhyam, tūbhyam, but tūbhya is attested in the RV., and both máhya and tūbhya are frequently required by the metre. These are the earliest forms and the -m is a secondary addition of Sanskrit, as elsewhere. The -m is absent in Iranian: Av. maibyā, maibyō, taibyā, taibyō. The final element ā found in Indo-Iranian is
absent elsewhere (Lat. *mihi, tibi, Umbr. mehe, tefe, O. Sl. tebē, O. Pruss. tebbei), and it is therefore to be regarded as a postposition which has become attached to the original case form. The $h$ (*<gh>) in Skt. māhyam is shown to be original as opposed to the -b- in the Avestan form, because it appears also in Italic. The -u- of tūbhhyam is peculiar to Sanskrit: all the other languages have forms derived from original te-. The gen. sg. tāva (: Av. tāva) representing IE *tēwō is an uninflected thematic adjectival stem, and therefore an isolated survival of archaic IE usage. Elsewhere this stem is found inflected as a full adjective: Gk. ῥεός, Lat. tuus. On this analogy máma may be explained as a substitute for *āma, the initial m- being introduced from the rest of the paradigm. This *āma would correspond to the stem of Gk. εὕος 'my' in the same way as tāva to ῥεός. Such an IE form of gen. sg. is represented in Armenian im. The gen. sg. in Iranian (Av. mana, O. Pers. manā) which corresponds exactly to that of Slavonic (O. Sl. mene) is a different formation, containing an n-suffix which in Germanic is attached to the diphthongal base (Goth. meina).

The nom. pl. vayām (: Av. vaēm) contains the same additional element -am that appears in the nom. sg. It points to an original IE wei which appears in Gothic with the secondary addition of the plural -s (weis, cf. also Hitt. weš). This -s appears also in the nom. pl. of the second person in Av. yūš, Goth. jus, Lith. jūs. A second form yūžom exists in Avestan with the addition of the common pronominal termination -am. In Sanskrit yūyām the -am is added to the stem without -s, with the intervention of a -y- taken from vayām.

The cases of the plural from the accusative on are made from the bases asmā- and yuṣmā- to which correspond exactly Gk. (Aeol.) ἄμε and ὑμε. The as- of the first person is for Ὑς- (= Goth. unos) which is explained as the weak grade of the form of the pronoun which is used as an enclitic, nas. It is possible that in yuṣmā- the initial y has been secondarily introduced from the nom. pl., and that an original *us- was in the same way the weak form of ῃς. The stem extension resembles that in the masc. sg. of the demonstrative pronouns (tāsmāt, etc.). These bases originally took the inflections of the singular, and the introduction of the plural termination is of comparatively recent origin. The old state of affairs is still preserved in the dative and ablative: asmābhyam (: Av. ahmaibeyā), yuṣmā-
bhyam (: Av. yuśmaibya); asmāt (: Av. ahmañ), yuśmāt (: Av. yuśmañ, xśmañ).

For the accusative the simple uninflected base was originally used as in the Greek forms quoted above and in Avestan ůhmā, ahna. The introduction of the termination -ān is an innovation of Sanskrit. The original (singular) ending of the instr. pl. is preserved in Av. xśmā, and also in Vedic in a few compounds, like yuśmā-datta- ‘given by you’. The long -ā- of asmābhis, yuśmābhis is derived from this form of instrumental, and from here it has been introduced into the loc. pl.: asmāsu, yuśmāsu.

The forms of the gen. pl., āsmākam, yuśmākam (: Av. ahmākam, O. Pers. amāxam; Av. yuśmākam) are based on the adjectival stems āsmaka- and yuśmaika- which still function as such in the RV. The original form, which still occurs occasionally in the Vedic language, was the uninflected stem as in tāva, and the -m as elsewhere is a later addition.

An earlier form of the locative, asmē, yuśmē appears in the Vedic texts, with the peculiarity that it can be used also as dative and genitive. This archaic characteristic of combining the meanings of several cases indicates that the forms are ancient, though nothing exactly parallel is quotable elsewhere.

Only one form of enclitic appears in the plural, nas, vas, which serves as acc. dat. gen. In Avestan the corresponding nō, nō, vō, vō, serve only as dat.-gen. while for the acc. there appear forms with a long vowel, nā, vā. These correspond in form to Lat. nōs, vōs and O. Sl. ny, vy.

In classical Sanskrit three case-forms are distinguished in the dual of the personal pronouns, as elsewhere. In the Vedic language more numerous distinctions are found. The nominative āvām, yuvām are distinguished from the accusative āvām, yuvām. The ablative forms āvāt and yuvāt appear. A separate instrumental is attested by compounds of the type yuvā-datta- ‘given by you two’. The uninflected adjectival stem yuvāku is found functioning as gen. du. In Avestan there exists a gen. du. yuvākam more closely parallel to the forms of the plural. The forms of the dative and locative, yuvābhyaṃ, yuvās are replaced by more regularised forms in the classical language: yuvābhyaṃ, yuvāyos.

The nom. du. yuvām is formed from the same radical element as the nom. pl. The unextended form is seen in Lith. jū-du ‘you two’. For the first person a nom. du. vām is attested once
This corresponds to Av. vā, the -m being obviously a secondary addition of Sanskrit. Av. vā corresponds exactly to O. Sl. vě, and from these forms Goth. wi-t and Lith. ve-du differ in having a short vowel. All these forms contain the same radical element as the nom. pl. A form corresponding to āvām is found only in Av. āsāvā (acc.), and there is nothing similar in the rest of IE. The most plausible explanation of this formation peculiar to Indo-Iranian is that a dual ā of the nominal stem a- has been prefixed to the original vā, va (IE wē, we).

The enclitic forms of the dual, whose usage corresponds to that of the plural enclitics, are nau, vām. Forms corresponding to nau appear in Av. nā (gen.), O. Sl. na (acc.) and Gk. νά (nom. acc.). It is clear, particularly from Greek, that this formation was not originally confined to enclitic use. A form of the second person without -m appears once in the RV. (4. 41. 2), and a comparison with Av. vā (acc.) shows this form to be original. In O. Sl. the corresponding form va is an accented form used as both nom. and acc.

There existed in IE a reflexive pronoun which inflected after the fashion of the personal pronouns (Lat. sé, sibi, etc.). The initial varied between sv- and s- in the same way as that of the second personal pronoun. There are some remnants of this inflection in Avestan (dat. sg. hvāvōya, i.e. *hvawya), but it does not remain in Sanskrit. The stem sva- ‘self’ is used in compounds (sva-yuj- ‘yoking oneself’, etc.), in the adverbial svatas ‘from oneself’, and in certain derivatives (svatvā-, etc.). Apart from these cases the stem svā- is a possessive adjective corresponding to Lat. suus, etc. There is also an indeclinable svayām ‘self’, which is formed by adding the usual pronominal increment -am to a base *svai- (sve-, cf. me, te). As an enclitic this base appears with initial s- in Av. hōi, hē, sē, O. Pers. šaiy, functioning in the same way as me, te. It has been thought that this enclitic pronoun is represented in Pkt. se, but the latter is more likely to be of secondary origin. The Vedic enclitic sīm (acc.) appears to be radically related to this group, though differing widely in formation. In Iranian there are corresponding forms of the dual (Av. hi) and plural (Av. hiš, O. Pers. šiš).

The old possessive adjectives based on the first and second personal pronouns (cf. Lat. meus, tuus, etc.) have been lost in Sanskrit, although they are preserved in Iranian (Av. ma- ‘my’,
NUMERALS, PRONOUNS, INDECLINABLES 269

\( \theta \nu a- \) (thy'). It is pointed out above how the stem of such adjectives is adapted as a gen. sg. In their place there are some fresh creations of Sanskrit, e.g. \( māmakā-, tāvakā- \) with \( vṛddhi, \) based on the gen. sg.; \( māmakīna-, \) etc.; \( madiya-, tvadiya-, \) \( asmadiya-, yuṣmadiya-, \) based on the compositional stem; \( matka- \) (mine' etc.

Substitution of some honorific term for the singular of the second personal pronoun is a characteristic shared by Sanskrit with many languages. To some extent the plural serves this purpose, as in English, etc. \( (yūyam \ m e \ g u r a vāh \ ' \ y o u \ a r e \ m y \ t e a c h e r ', \) but the normal substitute is \( bhavān \) (stem \( bhavant- \)) 'your honour' with the third person singular of the verb. The word is an irregular contraction of \( bhāgavaṇ \) 'the fortunate, blessed one', which is itself used in this way. The vocative \( bhōs \) (<\( bhagavas \)) which is still further contracted, preserves the old Vedic form of the vocative.

Substitutes for the old, reflexive pronoun are provided by the nouns \( tanā- \) (body' and \( ātmān- \) 'soul'). The former is so used in the Vedic language \( (sūra \ u pākē \ t a n vām \ dādhānāḥ \ ' \ p l a c i n g \ h i m s e l f \ n e a r \ t h e \ s u n ' \) and the usage is paralleled in Avestan. It disappears in this usage in the classical language, but derivatives of it appear in later dialects of the North-West (N.W. Prakrit \( t a n u vākā-, \) \( t a n u vāga- \) 'one's own', Torwali \( t a n u \ ' \ i d ', \) etc.). The classical alternative \( ātmān- \) appears also in the RV., and supersedes the other word from the early prose onwards.

**Demonstrative, Interrogative and Relative Pronouns**

Sg. N. m. \( sā-s, \) f. \( sā, \) n. \( tād, \) A. m. \( tām, \) f. \( tām, \) n. \( tād, \) I. m. n. \( tēnā, \) f. \( tāyā; \) D. m. n. \( tāsmāi, \) f. \( tāsyai, \) Ab.-m. n. \( tāsmāt, \) f. \( tāsyās, \) G. m. n. \( tāsyā, \) f. \( tāsyās, \) L. m. n. \( tāsmin, \) f. \( tāsyām. \)

Du. N.A. m. \( tāuí, \) f. n. \( tē, \) I.D. Ab. m. f. n. \( tābhyaṁ, \) G.L. m. f. n. \( tāyos. \)

Pl. N. m. \( tē, \) f. \( tās, \) n. \( tā, \) tāní, A. m. \( tān, \) f. \( tās, \) n. \( tā, \) tāní, I. m. n. \( tais, \) tēbhīs, f. \( tābhīs, \) D. Ab. m. n. \( tēbhyaś, \) f. \( tābhyaś, \) G. m. n. \( tēsām, \) f. \( tāsām, \) L. m. n. \( tēṣu, \) f. tāsu.

Those demonstrative, interrogative and relative pronouns whose stem ends in the thematic vowel inflect according to the above pattern. The masculine and neuter pronouns inflect partly in agreement with the nominal \( a- \) stems and the feminines partly in agreement with the \( ā- \) stems. In addition they have
forms of inflection which are not shared by the nominal stems. These are as follows:

The nom. sg. in the pronouns sa, eṣa and sya appear without final -s when followed by a word beginning with a consonant: sa đadarśa 'he saw', but so 'braviit 'he said', puruṣa eṣah 'this man'. Forms without the nominative -s appear also in the corresponding Gk. ὁ, Goth. sa.

The nom. acc. sg. nt. ends in धत: tāt (Av. taṭ, Gk. τό <*tod, Lat. is-tud), etāt (: Av. aētaṭ), tyāt, yāt (: Av. yāṭ, Gk. ὑτ-τι), kāt RV. (: Av. kaṭ, Lat. quod), tvat, enat. The Sanskrit sandhi does not allow any decision as to whether the original consonant is -d or -t, but it is clear that the final consonant was originally -d both from the evidence of other languages (Lat. quod, Goth. paṭ-a) and from forms in Sanskrit where a further suffix is added to this stem: taddā, idām, etc.

The instr. sg. masc. nt. is in the classical language identical in noun and pronoun. In the Vedic language the noun has also the termination -ā, which is not used in the pronoun with the exception of enā (classical enena) and the adverbial anā 'thus'. It is clear that -ena is the termination proper to the pronoun and that this has been transferred to the noun. The form is based on the diphthongal stem (ke-, etc.) which elsewhere is confined to plural use. The -n- appears to be of the same nature as the -n- which appears in the instr. sg. of masc. and neut. i- and u-stems. As opposed to classical -ena, the Vedic language has both -ena and -enā, due to different developments in sandhi of final -aṇ (>-ā before vowel). No forms corresponding exactly to these are found outside Indo-Aryan. In Iranian there are some forms with the intrusive -n-, but they are formed on the ordinary thematic, not on the diphthongal stem: Av. kana, O. Pers. tyanā, avanā. The instr. sg. fem. (tāyā, etc.) is likewise based on the diphthongal stem, without the -n-. It has likewise been adopted by the nominal declension (sēnayā).

In the dat. abl. loc. sg. the stem of the pronoun is enlarged by an element -sm(a)-. This element is fairly widespread in IE: Umbr. esmeipusme, Goth. imma, pamma (-mm- <-sm-), O. Pruss. stesmu, etc. It is not altogether clear whether the simple -m- which appears in O. Sl. tomu, etc., is a development out of this or stands for an originally variant form. If -sm- only is original it could perhaps be connected with the root of samā-, so that tāsmai, for instance, would mean originally 'to that same'.
The dat. sg. preserves the old termination of the thematic stems, which in the noun has been replaced by the extended -āya. The -in which forms the termination of the loc. sg. appears nowhere else. In Iranian there are forms with simple -i: Av. ahmī, kahmī, cahmī, yahmī. These forms are clearly more original, and the -n of Sanskrit must be regarded as a secondary addition, whatever its origin. There is also absence of nasalisation in some of the middle IA forms: Pa. tamhi, Pkt. tamṣi, as opposed to Pkt. tassim. These may be connected directly with the Iranian forms, and they point to a dialect variant *tāsmi, etc., in Old Indo-Aryan, existing beside tāsmi, etc., adopted by the literary language.

In the dat. gen. abl. loc. sg. fem. an element -sy- appears before the termination. This is found also in Iranian (Av. ahyāi, aiṇhāi, aiṇhā, etc.) and in Old Prussian (dat. sg. stessiei, gen. sg. stessias). In Germanic there appears in these cases simple -s (Goth. dat. sg. pizai, gen. sg. pizōs). The most plausible explanation of these forms is that they are based on the gen. sg. tāsya, etc., which were originally common to both genders, the feminine being eventually discriminated by the addition of the termination -ās. From this starting the rest of the cases could easily be formed on the analogy of the noun.

The terminations of the dual are the same as those of the noun. In the gen.-loc. this is due to the transference of the pronominal forms to the noun, as can be seen from the opposition of two types of formation in Slavonic (vluku, toju). A few forms with simple -os appear in the Vedic language (avōs, enos).

The nom. pl. masc. is formed by the diphthongal stem: té, ké, etc. Similarly in other IE languages: Gk. τοί, Goth. pai, Lith. tie, O. Sl. ti, etc. Since in O. Lat. quoi (gen. quoius, dat. quoiei) we find such a form of stem used in the singular, and since in Sanskrit it appears in certain cases outside the plural (instr. sg. tē-n-a, fem. tāy-ā, gen. loc. du. tāy-os), it must be assumed that this form of stem was not originally exclusively plural, and that it gradually became specialised as such. The form of stem that appears in the nom. pl. forms the basis of the other cases (tēbhis, etc.) with the exception of the acc. pl. which is in all probability borrowed from the nominal declension. In the RV. the only forms of the instr.-pl. that occur are of the type tēbhis, and the nominal declension shows a tendency to borrow
NUMERALS, PRONOUNS, INDECLINABLES

this type. Later the pronominal form of the case is not only excluded from the noun, but also in the pronoun it is replaced by the nominal form (tāts). The only exception is the stem a-which preserves the old form of instrumental in the later language (ēbhīs: Av. aēbibīś).

In the gen. pl. both in the masc.-neut. and in the feminine an\,-s- appears between the stem and the termination. The same\,-s- appears elsewhere: masc. Av. aēśām, O. Pers. avaisām, O. Sl. tēchū, O. Pruss. steison; fem. Av. āṃhīm, Gk. ῥαῶν, Lat. īstārum, Osc. eizazun-
-c. Allowing for the fact that in Germanic (AS. ēāra) and Slavonic (tēchū) the masculine forms have replaced the feminine in this case, the \,-s- forms are clearly more widespread in the feminine than in the masculine (e.g. Gk. ῥαῶν but ταῦν). This may well indicate that the formation is more original in the feminine, and if so the \,-s- would be the \,-s of the nom. pl. tās, to which the gen. pl. termination is added. Apart from the gen. pl. the inflection of the feminine does not differ from that of the nouns in the plural.

The thematic pronominal stems that appear in Sanskrit are sā/ta- 'that; he, she, it', esā/etā- 'this', syā/tyā- 'that', ena- 'him, her, it', āma- 'this', avā- 'that', tua- 'one, one ... the other', kā- 'who, which?', yā- 'who (relative)', sama- 'any, every', simā- 'self', nēma- 'a certain', a-, ana- and imā- 'this'.

The stems sā- and tā- combine together to make one paradigm, and they are divided so that sa- appears in the nom. sg. masc. and fem., and tā- elsewhere. In this respect Sanskrit is in agreement with Iranian (Av. hā, hō. hā, taṭ, etc.), Greek (o, ἦ, ῥό, etc.) and Germanic (Goth. sa, sō, pata, etc.). This continues the IE state of affairs, and where t- appears in these two cases (Lith. tās, tā, O. Sl. tū, ta) it is an innovation. The absence of the s-termination in the nom. sg. masc. was also an original characteristic of this pronoun. In Sanskrit the pronoun has this termination (sah) when it appears at the end of a sentence, and in sandhi before vowels it is treated as if it were sās (sā āha, so 'dya). Greek also has a form ōs 'he', which appears predominantly at the end of a clause, which suggests that this variant form of the nom. sg. goes back to the IE period. For the rest of the paradigm tā- follows the regular form of the declension of these pronouns, with the possible exception of RV. sāsmin, loc. sg. Since however the meaning of this in some
contexts appears to be 'the same, one', it should perhaps be connected with the IE root *sem- 'one', rather than with this pronoun.

The stems esā-/etā- and syā/tyā- alternate in the same way as sa/ta-. The former of these is compounded e-, which is the ay-of the ayām-pronoun, and the above stem sa/ta-. The combination appears also in Avestan (nom. sg. masc. aēša, aēšō, fem. aēša, nt. aētaţ) but not elsewhere in IE. The pronoun syā/tyā- appears mainly in the RV. There are a small number of occurrences in the later preclassical literature, and even in early Pali texts (Jāt. ʻtyamhi, ʻtyāsu), but it is not used in the classical language, although it is recognised by the grammarians. Outside Indo-Aryan the only corresponding forms are O. Pers. hya/tya-, used as a relative pronoun in place of Skt. Av. yā-.

The interrogative pronoun kā- 'who?' is declined regularly according to the pronominal declension with the exception of the nom. acc. sg. nt. kim, beside which the RV. has also kāt (: Av. kaţ, Lat. quod, Goth. ha) formed regularly from the a-stem. In Indo-European there existed both an a-stem (Skt. kā-s, Av. kō, Lith. kās, Goth. has, etc.) and an i-stem (Gk. ṭiś, Lat. quis, Hitt. kwāš). Indo-Iranian had likewise both forms of stem, and this state of affairs is continued in Iranian: Av. nom. sg. ēiš, acc. sg. ēim nom. pl. ēayo, etc. The tendency in Sanskrit has been to eliminate this form of the pronoun. An isolated interrogative kīs is quoted once from the RV., elsewhere this form only occurs in the combinations na-kīs and mā-kīs 'no one' (: Av. naē-čiś, mā-čiś). A particle kīm of the same formation as īm, sim, which occurs in combinations like na-kīm, mā-kīm (cf. Av. naē-tīm, mā-tīm) also belongs here. The only kī-form which maintains itself in the regular paradigm is nom. acc. sg. nt. kim. This form does not correspond to that found in other IE languages, which has the normal pronominal -d of the neuter (Hitt. kwīt, Lat. quid, Av. ēt, etc.). This form is preserved in Sanskrit in the enclitic particle cit (kāscit 'anybody'), from which the existence of an interrogative *citd may be inferred at an earlier stage of the language. How the final -m should be explained is not quite clear, but the existence of the Avestan particle ēim would seem to indicate that it is at least of Indo-Iranian date, and further connections with the Latin adverbial termination in inter-im, ūlim, and of Skt. kimcit with Arm. in-č ‘something’ have been suggested. The restora-
tion, by analogy, of the k- before the palatalising vowel is a common feature of Sanskrit in contradistinction to early Iranian. It has also taken place in certain of the thematic stems which originally contained the vowel e, e.g. gen. sg. kāśya, Av. čahyā, Gk. réo, O. Sl. česo.

There is a variety of adjectival and adverbial derivatives from this pronoun based on the three stems ka-, ki- and ku-.

ka-: katará- 'which of two' (Av. katāra-, Gk. πότερος, Goth. kaþar), katamá- 'which of many' (Av. katāma-), káti 'how many' (Av. čaiti, Lat. quot), kathā, kathām 'how' (Av. kāthā) kada 'when' (Av. kadā, kada), kārhi 'when'.

ki-: kivánt- 'how much' (Av. ēvant-) kiyant- 'id'.

ku-: kū in kūcit 'everywhere', kuv-t particle of interrogation (Av. kū 'where'), kvā 'where', kūha 'id' (Av. kudā, O. Sl. kūde), kūtra 'id', kūtas 'whence'.

The relative pronoun yá- is paralleled in Iranian (Av. ya-) Greek (ος) and Phrygian (ios), and in various derivatives elsewhere. Its declension is of the normal pronominal type (yās, yā, yād, etc.) and calls for no further comment. Among the various derivatives from it mention may be made of yatara- 'which of two' (Av. yatāra-), yāti 'how many', yāvant- 'how big' (Av. yavant-), yāthā 'how' (Av. yathā), yātra 'where' (Av. yabrā), yadā 'when' (Av. yadā), yādi 'if' (Av. yēdi, yeidī, O. Pers. yadiy).

The enclitic pronoun ena- 'him, her, it' is used only in the acc. of all numbers, in the instrumental singular, and in the gen. loc. du. In other cases unaccented forms of the ayām pronoun are used with the same syntactical function (asya, asmai, etc.). No pronoun which can be compared with this is found in Old Iranian, nor in the rest of IE, but possibly M. Pers. ēn, Mod. Pers. ēn go back to the same source.

The pronominal stem avā- is nearly extinct already in the Vedic language, being confined to three occurrences in the gen. loc. du. (avās). In Iranian on the other hand it remained in common use (Av. O. Pers. ava-) and a corresponding pronoun is found also in Slavonic (O. Sl. ovů).

The unaccented pronoun tva- 'a certain one, many a one' (when repeated 'one . . . another') occurs in the Veda but is absent from the later language. Outside Indo-Aryan it is possible to compare Av. ṭvāt, nt. sg. used adverbially (as also is Skt. tvat). Avestan has also a pronoun hvo 'he', which suggests that
there was originally an alternating stem *sva/tva- after the fashion of sya/tya-.

The pronoun áma- ‘this one’ appears only in one ritual phrase. Elsewhere the stem appears only in the O. Pers. adverb amata ‘from there’, and possibly in the Vedic adverb amā ‘at home’.

The Vedic pronoun néma- ‘a certain one, many a one’ is used in much the same sense as the pronoun tva-, and may be combined with it in phrases like néma u tva āha ‘one or the other said’. It is the stem of Skt. néma- ‘half’, Av. naēma- ‘half, side’ used adjectivally, ‘he, they on the one side’.

The unaccented sama- ‘any, every’ is likewise confined to the earliest language. It corresponds to Av. hama- ‘every’, Goth. sums ‘a certain one’, and it is ultimately derived from the IE root sem- ‘one’. An adverb samaha ‘somewhere, somehow’ is derived from it.

The pronoun simā- ‘oneself’, which is also confined to the Vedic language, has nothing exactly corresponding to it outside Sanskrit. In structure it can be compared to the pronominal stem imā-, simā- having the same relation to sim, for instance, as imā- to im.

The stems á-, aná- and imá form part of the aytóm declension, and are treated below.

This form of declension is followed by a variety of adjectival stems, consisting partly of pronominal derivatives, and partly of certain other adjectives. The full pronominal declension with nom. acc. sg. nt. in -at is taken by anyá- ‘other’ (anyát, cf. Gk. ἄλλο, Lat. aliud) and such pronominal derivatives as katará-, kalamá-, yatará-, yatamá-, and itara- ‘other’. Pronominal inflection, but with nom. acc. sg. nt. in -am is taken by such stems as viśva- ‘all’ (nom. pl. masc. viśve, gen. pl. masc. neut. viśvesám, etc.: Av. viśpe, viśpaēsam), sára- ‘all’ (Indo-Aryan development on the analogy of viśva-), eka- ‘one’ (cf. Av. āevahmāt, etc., from aēva- ‘one’). Other adjectives which show declension of this type are certain comparatives and superlatives such as ādhara-, adhamá-, ántara-, ántama-, ápara-, āpamá- and the like, and a few other adjectives such as pūrva- ‘prior, east’, dáksīna ‘right, south’ and ubhāya- ‘of both kinds’. In this latter class there is considerable fluctuation of usage; in some cases pronominal inflection is optional, and in others pronominal inflection only occurs in specific senses.
The Pronouns ayam and asau

Paradigms:

(1) Sg. N. m. ayám, f. iyám, n. idám, A. m. imám, f. imám, nt. idám, I. m. n. anéna, f. anáyá, D. m. n. asmai, f. asyát, Ab. m. n. asmát, f. asyás, G. m. n. asyá, f. asyás, L. m. n. asmín, f. asyám.

Du. N.A. m. imaú, f. n. imé, I.D. Ab. ābhyaám, GL. anáyos.

Pl. N. m. imé, f. imás, n. imání, A. m. imán, f. imás, n. imání, I. m. n. ebhís, f. ābhís, D. Ab. m. n. ebhyás, f. ābhyaÁ, G. m. n. eÁám, f. āsám, L. m. n. eÁú, f. āsú.

(2) Sg. N. m. f. asau, n. adás, A. m. amúm, f. amúm, n. adás, I. m. n. amúná, f. amúyá, D. m. n. amúismai, f. amúsyai, Ab. m. n. amúsmát, f. amúsyás, G. m. n. amúsyá, f. amúsyás, L. m. n. amúsmín, f. amúsyám.

Du. N.A. amá, I.D. Ab. amúbyáám, GL. amúyos.

Pl. N. m. amé, f. amús, n. amúni, A. m. amún, f. amús, n. amúni, I. m. n. amúbhís, f. amúbhís, D. Ab. m. n. amúbhyas, f. amúbhyaÁ, G. m. n. amúsmám, f. amúsmá, L. m. n. amúsmu, f. amúsmu.

These two pronouns may be classed together as being in many ways aberrant from the normal pronominal declension. The ayám pronoun is distinguished by the number of different stems that combine to form the paradigm. The fundamental stems are ay-(e-)i and a-.

The nom. sg. masc. ayám (: Av. aÁm) is made by the addition of the common pronominal -ám (cf. ahám, etc.) to the gútated form of the first stem. The nom. sg. fem. iyám (Av. im for *iyém, O. Pers. iym both masc. and fem.) is a similar extension of i-<i-h. In the same way the nom. acc. sg. nt. is an extension of id (: Lat. id) which remains in use as a particle. Latin has the same extension in idem 'the same ', with a specialised sense that is absent in Sanskrit. The same extension applied to an acc. sg. masc. *im (Gk. ' ev a`orov, Lat. im ' eum ') has produced imám (: Av. imém, O. Pers. imám), from which a new stem imá- is abstracted and extended to the acc. sg. fem. imám (: Av. imám, O. Pers. imám), nom. acc. du. masc. imáú (: Av. imaÁ), fem. nt. imé, nom. pl. masc. imé (: Av. ime, O. Pers. imáiÁ), acc. pl. masc. imán (: Av. imaÁ), nom. acc. pl. fem. imás (Av. imáÁs), O. Pers. imáÁ) nt. imáÁni) (Av. imáÁ). The stem is occasionally extended to other cases in the Vedic (but never in the classical) language: imásya, imásmaÁ; similarly in Iranian (Av. nom. acc. sg. nt. imat,
The stem *a- appears in the D.G. Ab. L. sg., in accordance with Avestan (ahmāi, ahmat, ahyaā/he, ahmi, fem. ahyaī, etc.) with the normal corresponding forms in the instr. pl. etc. (ebhis: Av. aēibīš; fem. ābhīs, : Ay. ābiš, etc.). In the Vedic language the instr. sg. appears as enā, fem. ayā, and the gen. loc. du. as ayōs. These are (allowing for the alternation -a/ā in kēna, etc., as opposed to enā) the normal thematic endings, and the stem therefore is *a-. On the other hand in the classical language these are replaced by anēna, anāyā, anāyos. In Avestan there is an instr. sg. anā, formed like kana, etc., from the stem *a-, and corresponding to it there is a Vedic adverb anā ‘therefore’. It seems that the stem ana-, on which the above Sanskrit forms and the Av. instr. pl. anāiš are made, originated in this form anā. On the other hand there is in Slavonic a pronoun onu which can be compared. It is possible that the Slavonic pronoun has arisen by the generalisation of a stem which arose in the same way as Indo-Iranian ana-.

There is a difference of accentuation between this pronoun and the corresponding forms of the normal pronominal declension (asyā as opposed to tāsyā, etc.), which is apparently due to a generalisation of the final accentuation of ayām. As an anaphoric pronoun (asmai ‘to him’, etc.) the cases of the a-stem are unaccented.

A variety of adverbial forms are made, on the basis of the pronominal stems a- and i-: ātra ‘there’ (: Av. ābrā), ātas ‘from there’, idā (: Av. īda), idānīm ‘now’, īdā ‘here’ (Av. īda, īda, O. Pers. īda), itthām ‘thus’, etc.

The only part of the asaū pronoun for which anything corresponding can be found in another language is the nom. sg. asaū. Corresponding to this Iranian has Av. hāu, O. Pers. hauv, but in the other cases it uses the stem ava-, which has become almost extinct in Sanskrit. The most likely explanation of *sāu is that it consists of the pronouns, sa, sā and a particle -au indicating distance. In the same way the acc. amūm may be explained as replacing am-ū, with a variant grade of the same particle. The am- would originally be the acc. sg. of the pronominal stem a-, the specific sense of the pronoun (‘that over there’) being provided by the added element -u. Once this is
interpreted as a stem, and the acc. sg. termination added it naturally forms the basis of a fully inflected pronoun declined on the analogy of the other pronominal stems. If it had been an older stem with suffix -u, inflection after the style of the u-stems would be expected. The fact that in contradistinction to all other u-stems it inflects according to the thematic type (in its pronominal variety) indicates that it is a late creation peculiar to Sanskrit which has arisen in some such way as described above.

The Sanskrit nom. sg. masc. fem. has an initial a- which is absent from Iranian hāu. It is clear that this has arisen from the analogy of the amū-stem, and that Iranian hāu, representing Indo-Ir. *sāu is the more original form. The nom. acc. sg. nt. adās is a form for which no analogy appears elsewhere. The most likely interpretation of this form is that it was really adō misinterpreted as being for adās in those sandhi contexts where -as becomes -o. In support of this explanation one instance of adō before initial p- can be cited from the RV. The nom. pl. amī and the remaining cases based on this stem are not easy to explain. It is suggested, but without any degree of certainty that an analogical diphthongal form amūi was created corresponding to the diphthongal plural stems of the thematic pronouns (ītī < tāi < tōi, etc.) and that since this combination was new and unfamiliar (inherited u + i becoming vi-), it was unstable and became changed to -ī.

§ 3. INDECLINABLES

Some of the oldest types of adverb have been mentioned already in connection with the formation of nominal stems. It was observed that adverbs of the type prātār 'early' are formed by means of suffixes that were originally used in the formation of neuter stems. Adverbs of this type have most commonly accent on the suffix which also appears in the endingless locatives, with which they are identical in formation. There is also a type with radical accent (ānti, etc.) having the form of an unaltered neuter stem. The following is a list of adverbs of these types arranged according to suffix:

Neuter stems without suffix: yugapād 'simultaneously', ānuśāk 'in order'.

-ar: avār 'down', pūnār 'again'. -tar: prātār 'early', sanutār 'away, apart', anlār 'inside'; -tur: sanītūr 'away,
apart'; -var: sasvár 'secretly'; -ur: mûhur 'suddenly';
-i: sânti 'half' (usually in compounds, cf. Gk. ἴμμ-, Lat. sēmi-), práti 'around'; -ti: ánti 'near', práti 'opposite, towards'; -u: mithu 'falsely', makhû 'immediately' (cf. Lat. mox), mûhū 'suddenly' (cf. Av. mōrzu°- 'short', Gk. βαρχῆς), anuṣṭhû 'at once'; -as: mithâs 'falsely', hyâs 'yesterday' (: Gk. χθές, Lat. herī with additional suffix), śvâs 'tomorrow' (as opposed to r-stem in Av. sūr- 'morning'), avâs 'down', adhâs 'id', prâyas 'generally', sadyâs, sadîvas 'today, immediately', tirâs 'across', parâs 'beyond', purâs 'before'; -is: āvis 'openly', bahîs 'outside'; -us: anyedûs 'on the following day', prâdûs 'forth to view'; -at: dravât 'quickly', drahyât 'stoutly' (RV. once), īsât 'a little'; -it: pradakṣinât 'so as to keep something to the right', cikitvît; -ad: smât, sumât 'with' (: Av. maṭ); -k: jyôk 'for a long time' (cf. Lat. diū).

A number of adverbs functioning as verbal prefixes have the form of uninflected thematic stems, namely âva 'down', āpa 'away from' (: Gk. ἄπο), āpa 'up to, near' (: Gk. ἄπο 'under'), and prâ 'forth' (Gk. πρό, etc.). Since the thematic suffix was originally used for the formation of adjectives, words of this type may be regarded as fossilized adjectival stems without inflection which have acquired the function of prepositions and verbal prefixes.

The above adverbs are formed on the same lines as the corresponding nominal stems. Other adverbs contain specifically adverbial suffixes. The more important of these are as follows:

-tas: This suffix makes adverbs which have in general an ablative sense: itâs 'from here', tâtas 'from there', anyâtas 'from another place', dakṣinâtâs 'from the right, on the right', hrtâs 'from the heart', etc. In some cases such forms function like forms of the ablative case: sarvato bhayât 'from all fear', kutâs cid deśâd âgâtya 'coming from some district or other'. It has already been pointed out that this formation may be explained as deriving from the gen.-abl. of old t-stems. When simple t-formations became rare forms of the type dakṣinâtâs were reinterpreted as dakṣina-tâs, etc., and a new adverbial suffix created. Corresponding formations appear in other IE languages: Av. x yatō 'of oneself', aiwîtō 'around', O. Pers. haça paruviyata 'from of old', amata 'from there', Gk. ἐκτὸς 'outside', Lat. funditus, caelitus, etc.
-tāt: This formation which arises from a contamination of the above with the ablative termination -āt appears in such adverbs as idaktāt 'from above', prāktāt 'from in front', adhāstāt 'from below', purāstāt 'from or in the front' and the like. There are no parallels in other languages.

-trā: With this suffix are formed adverbs with a locatival sense from noun stems (in the Veda only) and from pronominal stems: devatrā 'among the gods', puruṣatrā 'among men', śayutrā 'on a couch', daksinatrā 'on the right side', atrā 'here', tātra 'there', kuṭrā 'where', etc. The forms (compare those in -las) are occasionally used as substitutes for the locative case: hásta ā daksinatrā 'in the right hand'. Similar formations in Iranian are Av. vañhaatrā 'at the place of dwelling', iдра 'here', aдра 'there', ku跌破 'where', etc. As already indicated these adverbs are based on the extinct class of neuters in -ār (*sayutar 'couch', *vasatar 'dwelling-place'), of which they are instrumentals, with the locatival sense which instrumental forms always have when used adverbially. The fluctuation between ā and ā is due to variant treatment in sandhi of final -ā <aH, of which examples are noted elsewhere.

-thā, -tham: The suffix -thā forms adverbs of manner: rūthā 'regularly', pratnāthā 'as of old', viśvāthā 'in every way', anyāthā 'otherwise', tāthā 'so', kathā 'how', itthā 'thus', etc. More rarely -tham appears in the same sense: kathām 'how', itthām 'thus'. A similar formative appears only in Iranian: Av. kāḍa, kuṭa 'how', avāda 'thus', hamāda 'in the same way', etc.

-dā, -dānīm, -di: The suffix -dā in kāḍa 'when', tāḍa 'then', iḍā 'now', sarvadā 'always' contains clearly as its first element the -d of the neuter pronouns (tāḍ, etc.). Similar formations appear in Iranian (Av. kāḍa, tāḍa, etc.), and Lithuanian (kāḍa, tāḍa; viśvadā 'always'). These forms may be extended by the addition of an element -nim of obscure origin: iḍānīm, tāḍānīm; viśvadānīm 'always'. The same pronominal -d appears in the -di of yāḍi 'if' (: O. Pers. yadiy, Av. yeidī).

-dhā: This suffix meaning 'in so many parts' appears in such words as tridhā 'triply', caturdhā 'four fold', katidhā 'in how many parts', bahudhā 'in many ways', viśvādhā 'in every way', bahirīdhā 'outside', mitradhā 'in a friendly manner'. The -dhā is not in origin suffixal, but the root dhā forming a compound with the previous member (cf. tridhāturo 'consisting
of 3 parts' beside tridhā), but it has come to function exactly like a suffix.

-dha, -ha: A suffix -dha appears occasionally, e.g. Vedic sadhā- 'with' (in certain compounds; usually it is weakened to -ha: sahā 'with'). The same suffix with the same weakening appears in tāhā 'here' (Pa. ādha, Av. iṣa), kūha 'where' (Av. kudā, O. Sl. kūde), visvāhā 'always' (O. Sl. viside 'everywhere') and samahā 'in some way or other'.

-sas: This suffix makes distributive adverbs from numerals and other words: dvīsas 'in twos, two by two', sutasas 'by hundreds', sahasrasas 'in thousands', sreniṣas 'in rows', devasas 'to each of the gods', etc.; cf. Av. navasā 'in nines'. The corresponding suffix in Greek is -kas, in ekas 'by oneself' and anvratkas 'man by man'. The ultimate analysis of this element is not certain.

-rhi: kārhi 'when ?', tārhi 'then ', etārhi 'now', yarki 'where (rel.)', amūrhi 'there'. The first element of this double suffix appears independently in various IE languages to make adverbial derivatives from pronominal stems: Lat. cur 'why', Goth. par 'there', Lith. kūr 'where ', visur 'everywhere', etc. The second element is best explained as a weakening of -dhi (cf. -ha above) and this -dhi may be compared with the -θ which appears in Greek in such words as πόθι 'where', τόθι 'there'.

**Adverbially Used Case Forms.** It has been pointed out that a large number of the adverbs dealt with above are, in their ultimate analysis, case forms of nominal stems, e.g. the simple neuter stem which elsewhere functions as nom. acc. sg. nt. (jātu), endingless locative (pratār), instrumental (sayutrā). In principle such adverbs are formed in the same way as those below, but the stems on which they are based no longer exist apart from the adverbs concerned. The following list consists of adverbs formed from stems which are used also as substantives or adjectives.

The most common case form used in the making of adjectives is the nom.-acc. sg. nt. By this means adverbs are formed, occasionally from nouns, copiously from adjectives, including all compounds which are adjectives. Typical examples are puru 'abundantly', urū 'widely', māhi 'greatly', bhāyas 'more, again', rāhas 'secretly', nyāk 'downwards', nāma 'by name', sūkham 'happily', bālavat 'strongly', dhrśnū 'boldly',
NUMERALS, PRONOUNS, INDECLINABLES

satyām 'truly', nītyam 'continually', cīrām 'for a long time', sādaram 'respectfully', nānārathām 'on different chariots', pradāna-pūrvām 'accompanied by a gift'. Those compounds which have a preposition as their first member are classed by the grammarians as avayābhāva. Such are pratyagni 'towards the fire', anuṣvadhām 'by one’s own will', pratidoṣām 'towards evening', and the like.

Adverbs meaning ‘like — ’ are formed by means of the suffix -vāt in its nom. acc. sg. nt. form, the accent being on the suffix (as opposed to bālavat, etc.): manuṣvāt 'like Manu', pūrāṇavāt 'as of old', etc.

The acc. sg. is occasionally so used in the case of masculine and feminine nouns: kāmam 'at will, if you will', nāktam 'by night', vaśām 'freely, as one wills'. The feminine accusative functions adverbially in certain cases where the suffixes -tara and -tama are added to adverbs: uccaistarām 'higher', sanaistarām 'more gradually', etc. These suffixes are allowed by the grammarians to be added even to finite verbs—sūdātētarām, etc., though no trace of such usage appears in the earlier language. From the adverbial accusative there develops a special form of gerund in -am: abhikrāmam juhoti 'approaching (the fire) he offers', viparyāsām avagāhati ‘he buries it upside down’. These formations are common in the Brāhmaṇas, but rare earlier. In the later language only a repeated variety is used: madhukarāṇāṃ kvanitāni śrāvam-śrāvam pūrībhrāma ‘constantly hearing the humming of bees he wandered about’.

The adverbial use of the instrumental may be illustrated by such examples as sāhasā ‘suddenly’, dānjasā ‘suddenly’, diṣṭyā ‘fortunately’, aśeṣeṇa ‘completely’, daksinēna ‘to the south’, śānakais ‘slowly’, uccais ‘on high’, nicais ‘below’. A number of adverbial instrumentals in -ā have a locative rather than an instrumental sense: dīvā ‘by day’, doṣā ‘in the evening’, etc. Shift of accent sometimes characterises the form as an adverb: so in dīvā, madhyā ‘in the middle’, daksīnā ‘to the right’. In the Vedic language there occur adverbs in -ayā such as naktayā ‘by night’, ṛtayā ‘in the right way’, sumnayā ‘piously’, svapnayā ‘in a dream’. Avestan has similar formations, angrayā ‘evilly’, aśaya ‘rightly’, etc. These have the appearance of instrumental singulars of feminine ā-stems, but no such ā-stems occur. Possibly they have
developed out of the locative singular with postposition -ā of the type O. Pers. dastayā ‘in the hand’. On the other hand a similar formation appears (also confined to the Vedic language) in connection with stems in -u: rághuuyā ‘quickly’, dhṛṣṭuyā ‘boldly’, etc.; cf. Av. āsuya ‘quickly’. A satisfactory explanation to account for both types is difficult to find.


Miscellaneous Adverbs and Particles. In addition to the adverbs classified above, mention may be made of the following. The particle evā ‘only’ is possibly to be identified with the stem of that form of the word for one which appears in Iranian and Greek (Av. aeva-, Gk. olos-), and evam ‘so’ is probably the neut. sg. of the same word. Of the particles of comparison īva ‘like’ appears to be based on the pronominal base ī- and its formation may be compared with that of the stem ava-. In the Vedic language a particle nā, homophonous with the negative particle is used in this sense: gaurō nā tṛṣitāḥ pibā ‘drink like a thirsty bison’, etc. A comparable form elsewhere appears only as an enclitic particle in certain combinations: Av. yābanā, cīdanā, Lat. quidne. This enclitic may be seen also in Skt. cana (kāscana ‘anybody’).

The negative nā is a common IE base: cf. Av. na-, O. Sl. ne, Lith. nė, Lat. ne-, Goth. ni, etc. As the first member of compounds it appears in a weakened form, a- (<&-), before vowels an-; similarly Av. O. Pers. a-, an-, Gk. α-, av-, Lat. in-, Ir. an-, Goth. un-.

The adverbs nú, nú, núnám ‘now’ belong to a family well represented in Indo-European: Av. nú, núrm, Mod. Pers. nūn, Oss. nur, O. Sl. nyně, Lith. nú, Gk. νῦ, νῦν, νῦν, Lat. nun-c, Engl. now, etc. The radical element is that which appears in the adjective núva- ‘new’. Formed directly on the adverb Sanskrit has nūtana-, nūtana- ‘new, belonging to the present time’. From a comparison of Greek it appears that the form núnám is to be analysed nūn-dm, and that it contains the same strengthening affix which was frequently met with in the pronominal formations. The n/r alternation between Skt. núnám
and Av. nūrm is of the same origin as that of the nominal formations (cf. Gk. veapóς : veáinas, etc.).

The adverb nānā 'variously' (the Veda has also an extended form nānānām) is of unknown derivation.

The conjunction ca 'and' (Av. ēa, Gk. τε, Lat. que, Goth. -h) is enclitic, as in all the languages. The same applies to vā 'or', cf. Lat. ve. A non-enclitic in the former sense is utā 'and, also' (Av. O. Pers. uta 'and').

Of miscellaneous particles of asseveration, etc., mention may be made of anā 'verily' hánta (expressive of incitement), kīla 'forsooth', khālā 'indeed', tū 'but', hi 'for' (Av. zi), gha, ha 'indeed' (the latter a weakened form of the former; cf. O. Sl. že), vāī 'verily', vāvā 'id' (with two accents that have not been explained), u, āha, sma, bhala. The particle sma used in conjunction with a present tense gives it an imperfect value. In the later language particles are less frequent than in the earlier, and those that remain tend to lose their significance, and serve in poetry simply as devices for filling out the metre.

A few interjections may be merely listed: ā, āha, ahaha, he, ayi, aye, aho, bat, bata, dhik. Some noun and adjective forms have acquired this function; re, are (voc. of arī- 'enemy'), bhos (for bhavas, voc. of bhavant- 'your honour'), kaštam 'woe is me!', svasti 'hail!', suṣṭhu, sādu 'good, excellent!', etc.

Prepositions and Postpositions

In contradistinction to other IE languages Sanskrit has not a developed series of prepositions. Furthermore those adverbial formations which are used to define more closely the case-relationship are normally placed after the noun used in this case, and not before it as in other IE languages. In comparison with the Vedic language later Sanskrit is noticeably poorer in words of this type, so that the distinction between it and the usual type of IE language is partly due to regression. On the other hand the system as it appears in the Vedic language, with freer order and looser connection of such words with the nouns they govern, is clearly more primitive than that found in Greek, Latin, etc., and is closer to the IE beginnings of the development of the prepositional system.

Of the words so used in the Veda the most important class, as elsewhere, consists of those words which are also used as verbal prefixes (see below). The majority of these can be so
NUMERALS, PRONOUNS, INDECLINABLES

used, but *ud, ni, para, pra, ava* and *vi* are exceptions. Their use, mainly postpositional, may be illustrated by a few examples:

- **ādi**: *yó devó mártyān ādi* 'the god who is beyond mortals'.
- **ādhi**: *prihivyām ādhy ोśadhih* 'the plants upon the earth'.
- **āpi**: *yā apām āpi vratē* 'who are in the domain of the waters'.
- **ānu**: *māma cītām ānu cītēbhīr ēta* 'follow after my mind with your minds'.
- **ābhī**: *yāh ādhi śūryo vīcāste* 'what quarters the sun looks abroad to'.
- **ā**: *mārtyeśu ā* 'among mortals'.
- **upa**: *amār yā upa śūrye* 'those who are near the sun'.
- **pārī**: *jātō himāvatas pārī* 'born from the Himalaya'.
- **prati**: *ābodhy agniḥ práty āyatim uṣāsam* 'Agni has been awakened to meet the approaching dawn'.
- **sām**: *te sumātiḥbhīḥ sām pātnībhīr nā vīṣano nasīmahi* 'may we be united with thy favours as males with their spouses'.

The use of the last one is rare, and in its place the radically related *sahā* commonly appears as a postposition with the instrumental in the earlier and later language. Of the other words listed above the only ones so used in the later language are *ānu, prati* and *ā*. The first two are used as postpositions, the latter as a preposition with the ablative meaning 'up to', *ā samudrāt* 'up to the ocean'.

In addition a variety of adverbs, both the old inherited type and the newer adverbially used case-forms, are used to define more closely the relation expressed by a case affix or in conjunction with it to express a relation which cannot be expressed by a case-termination alone. Such are:

With accusative: *tīrās* 'through', *antar, antarā* 'between', *avareṇa* 'below', *pāreṇa* 'beyond', *uttareṇa* 'to the north of', *dākṣiṇena* 'to the south of', *nīkāṣa* 'near'; e.g. *yē vareṇādityam, yē pareṇādityam* 'those who are below the sun, those who are beyond the sun', *dākṣiṇena vēdim* 'to the south of the altar', *nīkāṣa Yāmunām* 'close to the Jumna'.

With instrumental: Mainly words meaning 'with', e.g. *saha* (above), *sākām, sārdhām, samām, samāyā, sarātham*, but also *vīnā* 'without' which follows the analogy of the words of contrasting meaning.

The dative is the only case which is not used in conjunction with words of prepositional character. Nevertheless, as noted
above, the form of the dative of a-stems (-āya) can only be explained by the incorporation of what was originally an independent postposition.

With ablative: bahiś 'outside of', purās 'in front of', avās, aṅhās 'below', purā 'before', pārās 'beyond'. vinā 'without' (also instrumental), arvāk 'this side of', paścāt 'behind', ārdhvaṁ 'above', rī 'without', etc.

With genitive: mostly case-forms of nouns or adjectives which take this case by virtue of retaining their nominal character. Such are āgree 'in front of', abhyāṣe, samēpe 'near', arthe, krite 'for the sake of', madhye 'in the midst of'. Words of more purely adverbial character used with the genitive are upāri 'above', parāstāt 'beyond', purāstāt 'before', etc.

With locative: antār, antaṁ 'inside', sācā 'with'.

Verbal Prefixes. A widespread feature of Indo-European is the compounding of verbs with prepositional prefixes. It is normally the same words which appear in use as the common prepositions which are compounded with the verbs. In Sanskrit, it has been noted, the 'system of prepositions (or postpositions) used in conjunction with nouns is much less developed than in the related languages. On the other hand the use of the same class of words as verbal prefixes is as fully developed in Sanskrit as in the other IE languages.

The common prefixes so used are as follows: āti 'across, beyond' (Av. aiti, O. Pers. aiy; Gk. ēti 'also, still', Lat. et 'and' which are used differently), ādhi 'above, on, on to' (Av. aidī, aidi, O. Pers. adiy) ānu 'after, along, towards' (Av. anu, O. Pers. anuv; Gk. āva with variant suffix), antār with-in' (Av. antara, O. Pers. antar, Lat. inter), āpa 'away, from' (Av. O. Pers. apa, Gk. ἀπο, Lat. ab; Hitt. appa 'back, behind'), āpi 'unto, upon' (Av. aipi, O. Pers. aipy, Gk. ἐπί; in Sanskrit used rarely in this way but mostly as a conjunction also', cf. Gk. εἰς, Lat. et above), abhi 'to, towards, against' (Av. aidi, O. Pers. abiy, O. Sl. obū, obi, Lat. ob), ava 'down, off' (Av. O. Pers. ava, O. Pruss. au-, O. Sl. u-, Lat. au-), ā 'to, up to, at' (Av. O. Pers. ā), ād 'up, forth, out' (Av. us-, uz-, O. Pers. ud-, Ir. ud-, od-, Goth. ut 'out'), āpā 'to, toward, near' (Av. āpā, O. Pers. apā, Gk. ἀπά, Goth. uf), ni 'down' (Av. ni-, O. Pers. niy-), nis 'out, forth' (Av. niś-), pārā 'forth, away' (O. Pers. pārā). pāri 'around' (Av. pāri, O. Pers. pārya, Gk. περί), pṛā 'forward, forth' (Av. O. Pers. fra- O. Sl. pro,

These are the regular and normal prefixes. In addition there are a few of more restricted application. In the Veda *ácchá* 'to, towards' is fairly common, but it dies out later. Others occur, in the Veda and later, only in connection with a restricted number of roots: *āvis* 'forth to sight, in view' (with *bhû, as and kṛ*), *prādus* 'id' (with the same roots), *tirds* 'through, across, out of sight' (with *kṛ, dhâ, bhû*) *purás* 'in front' (with *kṛ, dhâ, i* and a few others.

More than one prefix can be combined with a verb (as in Greek, etc.). Combinations of two are common, of three, not unusual, but more than three are very rarely found. There are no particular rules as to the order in which they may appear, but the prefix *ā* is practically never separated from the verb.

All these prefixes were to begin with independent adverbs. In the language of the Veda they partly retain this character and it is only in the later language that they become inseparably combined with the verbal stem. A similar difference is to be observed between Homeric and later Greek, which makes it clear that the development of the full system of verbal composition is largely a parallel development in the various languages.

In the Veda, a prefix most frequently stands immediately before the verb (*ā gamat* 'may he come') but it may be separated from it by another word (*ā tvā višantu* 'may they enter thee') and it may even follow the verb (*Indro gá avrnod ánā* 'Indra disclosed the cows'). Whatever its position, in a principal clause the preposition is regularly accented, and the verb, according to the general rule, is unaccented. When two prefixes are used both are accented normally in the RV. (*ūpa prá yáhi* 'come forth here') a fact which emphasises their status as independent words. But besides this there is a system, showing the transition to a closer form of union, according to which the second only of two prefixes is accented when they immediately precede the verb: *āihâśtam vipáretana* 'then scatter ye away to your home'. In subordinate clauses the process of composition has preceded further, the preposition generally appearing
compounded, and since the verb in these cases is accented, the prefix is without accent: e.g. yād . . . niṣidathah 'when ye two sit down'. Even here, however, it may appear separate from the verb and accented (vi yo mamē rājasi 'who measured out the two spaces'), while occasionally it is treated as a separate word and accented even when it immediately precedes the verb: yā āhutim pāri veda nāmobhiḥ 'who fully knows the offering with devotion'.

In the preclassical prose texts the prefix is still to some extent separated from the verb, but on a much more limited scale. By the classical period its independence is totally lost, and except for the few that continue to function as postpositions, the verbal prefixes have ceased to exist as independent words.

In combination with the nominal derivatives of verbal root the verbal prefixes appear fully compounded from the beginning: adhivāsā- 'garment', āpaciti- 'retribution' (Gk. ἀπότυχος), abhidruh- 'treacherous', avapāna- 'drinking place'; udāyana- 'rising (of the sun)', upāsruti 'overhearing', nidhi- 'deposit, treasure', nirāyana- 'going out'; prabhaṅgīn- 'crushing', etc. In such cases the general rule is that the prefix loses its accent in favour of the second member of the compound but in some cases it is regularly accented, namely (1) in combination with the past passive participle, pāreta- 'gone forth', antārhitā- 'concealed', avapānna- 'fallen down', etc.; (2) with the verbal action nouns in -ti, āpaciti, etc. In both these cases there is agreement in the matter of accent between Sanskrit and Greek (ἀπόβλητος, ἀνάβλητος, etc.); (3) with the infinitival forms based on the tu-suffix: sāṃhārum 'to collect', āpi- dhātave 'to cover up'; āvagantos 'of descending'.
CHAPTER VII.

THE VERB

§1. THE VERBAL ROOT

The roots of the Sanskrit language as enumerated by the Hindu grammarians comprise a list of some two thousand. Something like half of these are not attested in actual use, and since it is unlikely that many of them will ever turn up they may for all practical purposes be neglected. Of the rest a considerable number may be dismissed as being either reduplications (didhi-), stem forms (ūrṇu-), denominatives (artha-, etc.) or in some other respect not primitive. When allowance is made for these there remain somewhat over eight hundred roots, which form the basis not only of the verbal system, but also the larger part of the inherited nominal stems of the language.

Chiefly owing to its antiquity the Sanskrit language is more readily analysable, and its roots more easily separable from accretionary elements than is the case with any other IE language. This is because the suffixes with which the present and aorist stems are formed, are normally kept out of the other forms of the finite verb, and from nominal derivatives: sunōti 'presses out': perf. sūḍava, sūṣumā, fut. sōṣyati, part. pass. sutā-. Nevertheless even Sanskrit is not wanting in cases where suffixes whose primary function is the formation of the present stem, have become permanently attached to the root, and consequently appear throughout the conjugation of the verb. For instance from the present prccchāti 'asks', formed with the IE suffix -ske- an extended root prch-/prach- is made which appears in the perf. papráccha and elsewhere. Similarly Latin has poscō, poposcī (<prkṣkō). The simpler form of the root appears in Lat. precem (acc. sg.), procos and in Skt. prasnā- 'question'. The root ksnu- 'to sharpen' contains the nu-suffix which elsewhere forms the fifth present class. From a number of presents in which this suffix enlarged by the thematic vowel appears, extended root forms ending in -nv develop: pinnv- 'to fatten', pres. pinnvati, perf. 2 du. pīpinvāthus (beside simple root pī-
in páyate, etc.). Similar extended roots are inv- 'to send' (: i-) and jinv- 'to quicken' (: ji-). From present stems in -va a number of roots ending in -v are created: jīv- 'to live', pres. jīvati (: simple root in gāya- 'livelihood, belongings'), dhūrv- 'to injure' (: dhurv-), tūrv- 'to overcome' (: tṛ-) and bharv- 'to chew' for which no simpler form exists.

Accretions of this type are of comparatively recent origin, and it is quite clear how they have arisen from particular stem forms that are current in the verbal conjugation. Besides them there exists another class of extended roots, of much more ancient date, containing accretions whose functions it is for the most part no longer possible to discern. These elements are fairly easily recognisable, either through the coexistence of a simpler form of the root, or by the existence of synonymous roots which differ only in the final element. They are identical with the individual suffixes which have been enumerated in treating of the formation of nouns, and may conveniently be enumerated in the same order:

-ar/r: dhār- (dhr-) 'to hold' (i.e. dh-ar-, cf. dhā-), svār- 'to sound' (: cf. svān- 'id' with alternating -n).
-an: kṣan- 'to wound' (: sas- 'to cut': Gk. κτέινω for *kstenō has compound suffix -ten- alternating with -ter- in κτέρες νεκρόν), svan- 'to sound' (see above), khan- 'to dig' (i.e. kha-an-: cf. khā- without n-suffix, likewise ākhā- 'mole' and ākharā- masc. 'hole' with alternating r).
-as/s: tras- 'to fear', Gk. ῥέω (: Lat. tremō), bhyaś- 'to fear' (: bhī- 'id'), gras- 'to devour' (gṛ- 'to swallow'), dhvaś- 'to scatter' (dhū- 'to shake'), śrūṣ- 'to hear', O. Sl. slyšati, Toch. klyos-, etc. (: normally śru- 'id', Gk. κλῶ-, etc.), aks-, naṅs- 'to attain' (: as-, naś- 'id'), uks- 'to sprinkle' (: Gk. ὑγρὸς 'wet', etc.), nikṣ- 'to pierce' (: O. Sl. vū-nizq 'id'), bhaks- 'to partake of, eat' (: bhaj- 'to divide, share'), mikṣ- 'to mix' (: miśrā- 'mixed'), mykṣ- 'to rub' (: nṛj- 'wipe', Gk. ὄμωργυμ, etc.), rakṣ- 'to protect', Gk. ἀλέξω 'to ward off' (: Gk. ἀλάκτειν 'id', AS. ealghian 'to protect'); vakṣ- 'to increase', Gk. ἀέξω (: Lat. augeo 'id', etc.), hās- 'to go forth' (: hā- 'id'). In contrast with most of the extensions the suffix s plays a considerable part in the conjugation of the verb, and this no doubt accounts for the comparatively frequent use of such forms.

-am: dram- 'to run', Gk. ἐδραμοῦν (: drā-, Gk. διδράσκω; dru- 'id '), gam- 'to go', Goth. qiman, etc. (: gā- 'id', Gk. ἔβα- ;
THE VERB 291

Gk. βαίνω, Lat. veniō from *ve~en-), kṣam- 'to endure', by metathesis for *zgham-, cf. Paśiō zyamal 'id' (sagh- 'to be equal to, endure'), bhram- 'to revolve, wander' (dhur- 'to be in uneasy motion').

-i: jri-, jráyatī 'to move', jrayasānā- 'extending': jār- 'to move', Ir. zar- 'id'; kṣi-, kṣáyatī 'to rule', as opposed to kṣatrā- 'sovereignty' and Gk. κτάομαι 'possess'; śri-, śráyatī 'to lean', Gk. κλίνω, etc. (:Lith. atsikalti 'to lean against', Russ. klon 'inclination', etc.). Alternative forms of root appear in the conjugation of śvi-, śū- 'to swell', sī (<shi-), sā- 'to bind', and śi-, sā- 'to sharpen'. It has not in these cases become completely incorporated, but it shows a tendency in the direction.

-u: śru- 'to hear': the unextended form of the root appears in the Skt. present, śrṇó-tī; elsewhere the u/o, which appears as part of the suffixal complex in this form, is permanently attached to the root. Other examples are dṛu- 'to run' (: dṛam-, dṛā- above) and sru- 'to flow' (sar- 'to move, flow', cf. sarit- 'river').

-ah/ḥ: gā- 'to go' (: gam- above), yā- 'to go' (: i- 'id'), pśā- 'to devour', Gk. ἁφω 'chew' (: bhaś- 'to devour'), dṛā- 'to run' (: dṛam-, etc.), mnā- 'to note' (: man- 'to think'), trā- 'to rescue' (: tṛ- 'to cross'), ṣya- 'to swell (udder)' (: pi- 'id'), pi- (piy-) 'to abuse' (i.e. pi-ḥ- : piś- in piśuna- 'malicious, tale-bearing', Gk. πυκός, etc.). A series of roots belonging to the ninth class contain this enlargement. The simple form of the root appears in the present tense, where the aḥ/h suffix is separated from it by the intervening n-suffix with which it is combined: e.g. pṛṇāti 'fills' for pḷ-n-ḥ-ti as opposed to pṛṇā- 'full' for pḷ-h-nō-. Similar cases are jū- 'to be swift' (junāti, jūtā-), pū- 'to purify' (punāti, pūtā-), stṛ- 'to strew' (strṇāti, stīrnā-) and so on. The enlargement tends to be introduced into the present tense, so that from mi- 'to damage' for instance there appear both mināti and mīnāti. In some cases the root appears only with the enlargement in the present tense, e.g. bhrīṇāti, Av. brīṇantī 'cut' and kṛīṇāti 'buys' though in the latter case the metre of the Rgveda indicates a pronunciation kṛīṇāti.

-t: kṛt- 'to cut' (: Gk. κείρω), cit- 'to perceive' (ci- 'id'); in combination with i, mṛit- 'to fall in pieces' (mṛ- 'to crush', mṛd- 'id'), śvīt- 'to be bright' (: súc- 'to gleam', subh-
to be bright'), with u, dyut- 'to shine' (di- in dina- 'day', etc.).

-\(\text{th}\) (i.e. t-\(h\)-): prath- 'to extend' (: Hitt. p\(\text{alh}\)iš 'wide', Lat. pl\(\text{ànus}\), etc.), vyath- 'to be unsteady' (vij- 'to tremble', vip- 'id'), snath- 'to pierce' (: simple root in s\(\text{išná}\)- 'organ of generation', cf. Gk. ke\(\text{rētēw}\) 'pierce' with g\(\text{u}A\)\(\text{a}\) of root and simple t-suffix); similarly śrath- 'to loosen', grath- 'to tie', mith- 'to alternate' (mi- 'to exchange').

-d: kṣad- 'to divide' (: śas- 'to cut', cf. kṣan- above), chid- 'to cut', Lat. sc\(\text{idnō}, etc. (: cf. chā-, chi- 'id'), rud- 'to weep', Lat. rudo, AS. rēotan, etc. (: ru- 'to cry', O. Sl. r\(\text{juvō}, etc.), mṛd- 'to rub, crush' (: mīr- 'to crush'), ṽid- 'to press' (\(\text{<}^\text{\text{*pīd}}\): piś 'to crush'); in combination with n, syand- 'to flow' (sic- 'to pour', Toch. sik-, etc.), krand-, kland- 'to cry out', cf. Gk. ke\(\text{lādōs}\) 'cry, shout' (: Gk. καλέω 'call', etc.).

-\(\text{dh}\): mṛdh- 'to neglect, be careless', cf. Gk. μαλθακός 'soft', etc. (: Gk. ἀμαλκός 'soft', etc.), edh- 'to prosper', cf. Av. a\(\text{zdyā}\)- 'thriving, fatness', Gk. ἐθλός 'good' (: IE es- in Gk. e\(\text{i}s' 'good', Hitt. a\(\text{šu}-\), Skt. su-), sp\(\text{rdh}-\) 'to contend', Av. spar\(\text{dād}-\), cf. Goth. sp\(\text{aurhd}s 'race-course' (: sp\(\text{r}-\) 'to win', sp\(\text{rh}-\) 'to be eager', Gk. σπερχομαι, etc.); combined with u-suffix, kṣudh- 'to be hungry' (: Hitt. ka\(\text{št}-\), Toch A. ka\(\text{št}, B. k\(\text{est}, with g\(\text{u}A\)\(\text{a}\) of root and dental suffix whose exact nature cannot be specified).

-\(\text{p}\): di\(\text{p}-\) 'to shine' (: cf. di-, dyut- above), m\(\text{lup-}\) 'sun' to set' (: m\(\text{ruc-}, m\(\text{luc-}\) 'id'), rīp-, li\(\text{p}-\) 'to smear' (: lī- 'to cleave to', Lat. lino, etc.), rup-, 'to break', Lat. r\(\text{umpo}\) (: ru- 'to break', Lat. r\(\text{uo}; ruj- 'to break'), vip- 'to tremble' (: cf. vyath-, vip- above), svap- 'to sleep', AS. swe\(\text{f}a\)n (: Gk. ε\(\text{δω}\) 'id' <seu-d).

-\(\text{bh}\): subh- 'to be bright' (: suc- 'to gleam', etc., above) stubh- 'to praise' (: stu- 'id').

-\(\text{c}\): m\(\text{luc-}\) 'to set' (: m\(\text{lup-}\), yāc- 'to ask' (: Av. yās- with different enlargement), ruc- 'to shine' (r\(\text{ūsant}\) 'bright'), sic- 'to pour' (: syand- above).

-\(\text{j}\): tarj- 'to threaten' (cf. tras-, etc., above, Lat. terre\(\text{o}\), yuj- 'to join' (: yu- 'id'), ruj- 'to break', vij- 'to tremble' (rup, vip-).

-\(\text{h}\): sp\(\text{rh}-\) 'to be eager' (: sp\(\text{rdh-}, etc., above), dru\(\text{h}-\) 'to injure' (: d\(\text{hru}-\) 'id').

The identity of these elements with the suffixes enumerated
The verb...
That is to say a root form \( *\text{trés-} \) (Skt. \( \text{trásati} \)) would originally be a nominal stem meaning 'fearing, one who fears', and the alternative form \( *\text{térs-} \) (Lat. \text{terreo}) would be a stem meaning 'fear'.

In these cases when the ultimate root has been reached by analysis it is seen never to consist of more than two consonants and the guna vowel (\( \text{ler-}, \) etc.), or if the root begins with a vowel, of this vowel and a following consonant (\( \text{ed-}, \text{es-} \)). The number of roots which can be so reduced is sufficiently great to justify the extension of this principle to other roots of three consonants, even where shorter or variant forms are not preserved. There is little reason to doubt that the third consonant of all roots which have it is to be regarded as an incorporated suffix.

§ 2. System of the Finite Verb

Voice. The Sanskrit verb contains two voices, Active and Middle, which are distinguished by means of two sets of personal terminations throughout the conjugation. The difference in meaning between the two is expressed by the names given to them by the Sanskrit grammarians, \textit{parasmai padam} 'a word for another' and \textit{ātmane padam} 'a word for oneself'. The middle is used when the subject is in some way or other specially implicated in the result of the action; when this is not so the active is used. For instance \textit{kātam karoti} 'he makes a mat' would be used of the workman employed in the trade of mat-making who makes a mat for another, while the middle \textit{kātam kurute} would be used of one who makes a mat for his own use.

The same distinction is seen between \textit{pacati} '(the cook) cooks' and \textit{pacate} 'he cooks (a meal for himself)' and between \textit{yajati} '(the priest) sacrifices (on behalf of another)' and \textit{yajate} '(the householder) sacrifices (on behalf of himself)'. Again the special sense of the middle is seen in those cases where the direct object of the verb is a member of one's own body: \textit{nakhāni nikṛntate} 'he cuts his nails', \textit{dato dhāvate} 'he cleans his teeth'.

In another class of roots there appears a distinction of a different nature, that between transitive (active) and intransitive (middle): \textit{dṛṃhati} 'makes firm', \textit{dṛṃhate} 'becomes firm', \textit{vardhati} 'increases, makes bigger', \textit{vardhate} 'increases (intr.), becomes bigger', \textit{vahati} '(chariot) carries (man)', \textit{vahate} '(man) rides (in chariot)'. From this the development is not far to the
distinction between active and passive, and the use of the middle to express a passive sense becomes common in the perfect and the future, which possess no other means of expressing the passive. One sense that the middle does not normally express is that of a direct reflexive, which is expressed by means of the accusative ātmānam 'self'. Not all verbs are capable of appearing in both voices. Some are used only in the active, e.g. ad-'to eat', as-'to be', kṣudh-‘to be hungry’, bhuj-‘to bend’, sarp-‘to creep’, etc.; others only in the middle, e.g., ās-‘to sit’, kṣam-‘to endure’, labh-‘to receive’, vas-‘to wear (clothes)’, sac-‘to accompany’. Occasionally a different voice appears in different tenses of the same verb, the most usual alternation being that of active perfect and middle present: vartate: vavarta.

The distinction between active and middle is inherited from Indo-European (cf. the equation sācate, Gk. ἐμετα, Lat. sequitur), and outside Indo-Iranian the language which shows the greatest similarity to Sanskrit in form and usage is Greek. In later Indo-Aryan the distinction dies out, and this is reflected in the Epic and other less correct forms of Sanskrit.

Tense. The Sanskrit verb has four tense stems: Present, Future, Aorist and Perfect. The present stem forms the basis of a preterite, the so-called Imperfect, in addition to the present tense. In the same way there is formed a preterite of the future which functions as a conditional. In the Vedic language a form of preterite is formed on the basis of the perfect stem. These pluperfect forms are rare even in the earlier language, and disappear later. The aorist stem forms only a preterite.

The clearest division to be found in this somewhat complicated system is that between the perfect on the one hand and the other three systems on the other. The perfect is distinguished from the other tenses not only in stem-formation, but also in the fact that it possesses a special series of personal endings. Between the perfect and the rest of the conjugation we have clearly the most ancient and fundamental division in the Indo-European system. On the other hand when we examine the future and the aorist in their relation to the present system it is clear that they are in origin only special modifications of the same type of formation. The future for instance is only one subdivision of the class of present stems in ya in which are included the verbs of the fourth class and the various types
of denominative. The close relation between the aorist and present systems is seen by the fact that certain types of aorist stem are identical in form with certain types of present stem. This is so with the root aorist (ākar, etc.) which is formed like the imperfect of the root class (āhan, etc.), and the a-aorist (āruhat, etc.) which resembles the imperfect of the sixth class (ātudat, etc.). The aorist or imperfect character of these two types of formation is determined not by the form itself but by the existence or non-existence of a present from the same stem. In other cases there is evidence for the one time existence of presents from those forms of stem which in Sanskrit are used exclusively as aorists. Thus corresponding to the reduplicated aorist ājījanat, Avestan has a present zīzanenti 'they give birth'. Even in the case of the s-aorist, which is most clearly marked off from the present system, the existence of presents like Av. nāismi 'I insult' demonstrates that such formations were not always exclusively aoristic.

The relation of the present-imperfect on the one hand, and the aorist on the other, can be discussed only in view of the meaning of the three tenses. In Sanskrit this is not at all complicated. The present indicates simply present time, and the imperfect past time in contradistinction to this, no more and no less: hānti 'he slays', āhan 'he slew', etc. There exists no trace of an 'imperfect' sense in the Sanskrit tense of that name, and such a sense, if it is needed, is expressed by the present tense with the addition of the particle sma. The aorist in contradiction to the imperfect expresses a special kind of past time, inasmuch as it is used for describing an action which has just recently been completed: ūd asau sūryo agāt 'yonder sun has risen', etc.

This clear distinction of meaning between the aorist and present stem is found only in the case of the indicative, in these two kinds of preterite. There exist also various moods—injunctive, subjunctive, imperative and optative—and also participles, active and middle, which may be formed alternatively from the present or aorist stems. But in all these latter types of formation no serious distinction of meaning can be found in the Vedic language between those formed from the present and those formed from the aorist stem, e.g. kārat subj. 'he will do' does not differ in any demonstrable sense from kṛnāvat 'id' from the present stem.
The absence of distinction of meaning in all these types of formation between the present and aorist stem, in contradistinction to the clear distinction between the two types of preterite, points to the conclusion that it was specifically in these preterite forms that the aorist developed as a special grammatical category. It appears that originally Indo-European distinguished in the indicative simply between present and preterite, the forms of which could be made from a wide variety of stems. This state of affairs is continued in Hittite, which shows no sign of ever having had a tense corresponding to the aorist of other languages. The next stage of development is the evolution of a double set of preterite forms, one with a corresponding present (imperfect) and one detached from the present tense (aorist) and having a special sense. This stage is represented in Indo-Iranian. In Greek the distinction between the present and aorist systems is carried further, and applied to moods, participles and infinitives derived from the two stems. The two stems in all formations express different modes of action, namely punctual (aorist) and durative (present). Consequently the preterite of the present acquires an 'imperfect' sense which is absent from it in Hittite and in the corresponding formations in Sanskrit.

The perfect is independent in formation from the present/aorist system, and is also characterised by the possession of a special series of personal endings. It appears to be one of the more ancient IE verbal formations, and to bear some relation to the conjugation of the Hittite verbs in -hi. In that language there are two conjugations of verbs, one making the 1st person singular in -mi (like Skt. āsāmi, etc.) and the other in -hi. The relation between the two is not at all at which exists between the present and perfect in other IE languages, but the endings of the -hi conjugation are comparable in some ways to the perfect endings of Sanskrit, Greek, etc., so that while the detailed relation of the two formations remains obscure, there is general agreement that some definite connection exists between them.

The fundamental meaning of the perfect, as it emerges from a comparison of Sanskrit and Greek, and is confirmed by the evidence of the other IE languages, is that of state as opposed to process which is expressed by the present: e.g. bibhāya 'he is afraid' as opposed to bhayate 'he becomes afraid'; ciketa 'he is aware of, knows': cetati 'he becomes aware of, notices';
tasthau 'stands' (permanently) : tiṣṭhati 'takes his stand', etc. Closely related is the meaning of continuous action seen in such examples as: nā śrāmyanti nā vi muñcanti ēte vāyo nā paptuh 'They do not become weary or stop, they fly (continuously) like birds'. The perfect is thus in origin a special kind of present tense, not a preterite form, and in such cases it is normally to be translated by the English present. Its development to a preterite takes place in two stages, both of which are represented in the Vedic language. The first stage is the development of a sense which is rendered in translation by the English perfect. Since a state is normally the result of a preceding process, it was natural that the perfect should be used to express the fact that such an action had already taken place. As examples of this use we may quote: yat sim āgas caṅmā tāt sū mṛatu 'whatever sin we have committed, let him forgive that', and yādhā jaghānta dhrṣatā pūrā cid eva jahi śātram asmākam indra 'as thou hast boldly slain (enemies) in the past, so slay our foe now, O Indra'. The difference in meaning between this use of the perfect and the aorist remains clear, because the aorist is confined to those actions which have taken place in the immediate past, while the perfect indicates completion of the action regardless of the precise time. The final step takes place when the preterital sense acquired by the perfect in contexts like these becomes the predominant sense, with the result that the perfect becomes a tense of narrative with a meaning that does not differ materially from that of the imperfect. The last usage has already become quite common in the Rgveda: āhan dhim ānv apās tatārda, ' (Indra) slew the dragon, he penetrated to the waters'. The same usage has developed widely in other sections of Indo-European, notably in Italic, Celtic and Germanic.

The pluperfect, the augmented preterite of the perfect, is rare even in the Rgveda, and it quickly dies out. It appears to have no specific meaning proper to itself, being used as a rule in sense of the imperfect (narrative), occasionally in that of the aorist.

Mood. Five moods are enumerated in Sanskrit grammar, the Injunctive, the Imperative, the Subjunctive, the Optative and the Precative. In the older language modal forms may be made from all three types of stem, present, aorist and perfect, without any apparent difference of meaning. In the classical language
injunctive forms are confined to the aorist stem, imperative and optative forms to the present stem, while the subjunctive, except for such forms of it as are incorporated in the imperative, dies out. The precative is in the later language connected with the root aorist in the active and with the is-aorist in the middle. Earlier, while confined to the aorist it appears associated with a greater number of forms.

**Injunctive.** The so-called injunctive is not strictly speaking a separate morphological category at all. In form the injunctives are unaugmented aorists and imperfects: dhat, vrṇak, etc., but forms of this nature may also be used as simple preterites of the indicative, in the same way as the augmented forms. Comparative study of the languages makes it clear that the augment was originally an optional prefix in the formation of these preterites, and that the unaugmented forms are the most ancient. The fact that these forms can also be used in an 'injunctive' sense, that is to say as futures, imperatives and in the expression of a wish, takes us back to an extraordinarily primitive state of the language when owing to the undeveloped nature of the verbal system one form had perforce to serve in many meanings.

The three main meanings of the injunctive may be briefly illustrated by a few examples: (1) as future: kō no mahyā áditaye pūnar dāt 'who will give us back to the great Aditi', indraṣya nū vīryāṇi prá vocam 'I will now proclaim the manly deeds of Indra'; (2) as imperative: gārbham ā dhāh 'deposit the embryo', pāri teṣāśya durmatir mahī gāt 'let the great malevolence of the impetuous one avoid us'. Where special forms of the imperative do not exist, in the 2nd person plural, etc., the injunctive remains the only way of expressing the imperative, and such forms are incorporated into the imperative system. The injunctive is used exclusively with mā to express prohibitions: mā gāḥ 'do not go', etc. This construction remains in the classical language where it is the only type of injunctive (except for those forms incorporated in the imperative) which continues to exist; (3) in the expression of a wish: aṅgīm hinvaṇu no dhīyas tēṇa jeśma dhānam-dhanam 'let our prayers urge Agni; may we continually win wealth through him'.

**Imperative.** The imperative possesses distinct forms only in a certain number of persons and numbers, namely in the 2. 3.
singular and 3. plural. Of these the forms of the 3. sing. and plur. have originally evolved from injunctive forms by the addition to such forms of a particle -u: vāhatu from vahāt + u. The forms of the 2. 3. dual and 2. plural are unaltered injunctive forms. The forms of the first person in the later language are subjunctives which have been incorporated in the imperative system; they do not belong to this system in the earlier language. The imperative expresses commands just as the injunctive may do, but it is not used in the other senses which the injunctive has. It is also used more commonly in this sense than the injunctive.

Subjunctive. Morphologically the subjunctive arises by the evolution of a particular kind of injunctive. It is natural therefore that its sphere of meaning should correspond in general to that of the injunctive. Like the injunctive the subjunctive may be used (1) simply in a future sense: prā nū vocā sutēsu vām 'I will now praise you two at the libations', uvāsā usā uchchā ca nū 'Dawn has shone forth (in the past) and she will shine forth now'; (2) equivalent to an imperative: ā vām vahantu . . . āsvāh, pībātho asmē mādhūni 'let your horses bring you here and drink ye draughts of mead with us'; (3) in the expression of a wish: pāri no helo vāruṇasya vṛjyāh, urūṁ na indraḥ kṛṇavād u lokām 'may the wrath of Varuna avoid us, may Indra procure for us a wide space'. While the sphere of the subjunctive coincides with that of the injunctive, there is a difference of emphasis inasmuch as the future meaning is much more prominent in the case of the subjunctive. The subjunctive is, in fact, the normal means of expressing the future in the Vedic language. There are also certain important syntactical differences between the use of the two moods. The injunctive for instance is alone used to express prohibitions in connection with mā. Another important difference is that the injunctive is rarely used in subordinate clauses (relative, conditional, etc.). On the other hand the use of the subjunctive is very widely developed in this connection, and even more distinctively so in the related languages, whence the name of the mood.

Optative. The optative differs from the moods so far described in that it is formed on the basis of a special stem formed by the suffix yā/ī. Its original meaning appears to have been the expression of a wish (from which its name is derived) and this meaning is well preserved in Sanskrit: vayāṁ syāma pātayo
rayinam 'may we be lords of riches'. From this there arises a potential meaning (the mood is sometimes so called) which from the testimony of the various languages was already well established in the Indo-European period: yad agne syam aham tvam, tvam va ghaha sya aham, syus te satya ihastah, 'if, Agni, I were you or you were me, then your prayers would come true'. A usage widely developed in Sanskrit is that of the prescriptive optative, which appears largely in law books and similar texts: sanvatsarikam aptais ca rastrad aharyed balim, he should have the annual tax collected from the kingdom by suitable officials.'

Precative. The precative is formed on the basis of the optative stem by the addition of s to the optative suffix, producing the combination yasis. Its use is in all cases confined to the expression of a wish: bhago me agne sakhye ná mydhyah 'may my good fortune, O Agni, not relax in (thy) friendship'; yo no dveshi adharah sas padishata 'may he who hates us fall down'.

§ 3. THE VERBAL STEM

The foregoing analysis of the root shows how from the earliest period the verb could be built optionally on the root itself, or the root already provided with suffixes. These suffixes are in all cases identifiable with the corresponding suffixes which appear in the formation of nouns. In these formations of the oldest type the suffixes are completely incorporated and new, fuller roots are created. Besides these suffixes there exists a series used only to form the present stem but excluded from the other verbal formations. These are likewise identifiable with corresponding nominal suffixes, e.g. dhrysnau of the fifth class, from dhrys 'to be bold', with the adjectival stem dhrysnau- 'bold'. The general structure of nominal and verbal stems runs closely parallel. Both may be based either on the simple root or on the root provided with suffix. The suffixes may be simple or compound and the compound suffixes arise always by the addition of one suffix to another. The formations are divided into non-thematic and thematic classes, the latter in both cases progressively increasing in importance. Verbal stems may be accented on the root or the suffix, e.g. in the case of non-thematic stems vamiti, jesma as opposed to snoti, prnati, and in the case of thematic stems, bhavati as opposed to tudati. The fact that such accentual difference corresponds to no difference of meaning in the verbal system, but clearly does
so in the nominal system, may be held to indicate that these stems are primarily nominal in origin.

In the classical language the present stem of a verb is normally made according to one only of the ten different types. In the Vedic language greater latitude is observable. While in general the distribution of the roots among the ten present classes corresponds to that of the later language, a large number of roots is found which form their present tense according to two, three, or even more different types. Such cases are illustrated by hrṣ- 'to plough', I karsati, VI krṣāti; jṛ- 'to grow old', I járati, IV jīryati; dā- 'to divide', II dáti, IV dyāti; dhū- 'to shake', V dhunōti, VI dhuvāti; pṛ- 'to fill', III pipāti, IX pṛṇāti; bhī- 'to fear', I bhāyate, III bhībheti; rāh- 'to prosper', IV rāhyati, V rāhṇōti, VII subj. rṇādhat; ṭṛ- 'to cross, overcome', I tarati, III ptc. tirat-, VI tirāti, VIII tarute.

To a large extent this variation of stem is not associated with any difference of meaning, but sometimes the difference between transitive and intransitive is connected with the use of alternative stems; jdvate 'hastens, is quick', junāti 'speeds, urges on', tāpati 'heats', tāpyati 'becomes hot', pācati 'cooks, ripens (trans.)', pacyate 'becomes ripe'. In particular an intransitive sense tends to be associated with stems of the fourth class.

It is clear from the comparative study of the IE languages that this variability of stem formation was even greater in the prehistoric period. Avestan shows in some respects even greater variety than the language of the Veda. Furthermore the discrepancies in stem formation between the various IE languages (Skt. rinnākti: Gk. λειπω, etc., etc.) shows that in the earlier IE period the greatest freedom prevailed in the formation of present stems. In all this variety of stem formations no inherent difference of meaning was attached to the various types, just as in Sanskrit the ten present classes are equivalent in function. At the same time there arose early in Indo-European a tendency for certain of these formations to acquire a special meaning and function. The suffix -sco- for instance acquired an inchoative meaning which is represented in a variety of languages. In Hittite formations in -nu- (corresponding to the Skt. fifth class) acquired a special function as causatives, a development which is not shown by the other languages. In Sanskrit those present formations which acquired a special meaning became the foundation of what is called secondary
THE VERB

conjugation, namely causatives with stems in -āya, desideratives with reduplicated stems in əs, intensives with strong reduplication and radical stem or stem in yə. These were originally conjugated in the present system only and it is a special development of Sanskrit which allows them to be inflected in other parts of the verbal system. With these must be classified the passive which is a special development of the fourth class and which arises from a tendency of stems of that class to specialise as intransitives.

§ 4. ACCENT AND APOPHONY OF VERBAL STEMS

By a rule peculiar to Sanskrit, the like of which is not traceable in other IE languages, the verb is unaccented in an independent clause, except at the beginning of such a clause and under certain special conditions; it retains its accent in dependent clauses. When accented the verbal stem has an unchangeable accent in the case of thematic formations, which in this respect agree entirely with the nominal thematic formations. In the non-thematic formations the accent varies between stem and personal ending, and this variation corresponds to a variation between the guṇa (occasionally vṛddhi) grade of the stem and the zero grade. The general rule is that in the indicative the stem has the accent and the guṇa grade in the three persons of the singular active, and that in the dual and plural of the active and in the whole of the middle the accent is on the termination and the stem appears in its weak form: āvēṣṭi 'hates', 3 pl. āvīṣānti, 3 sg. mid. āvīṣṭe, yunākṣṭi 'joins', 3 pl. yunījānti, 3 sg. mid. yunīkṣtē. Exceptions to the rule (e.g. in the s-aorist) are comparatively rare. This old IE system appears also in other languages (e.g. Gk. εἶμι ἵμαι), though nowhere so clearly and consistently as in Sanskrit.

§ 5. AUGMENT AND REDUPLICATION

In addition to a large variety of suffixation Indo-European made use of two types of prefixation in the formation of tense stems, Augment and Reduplication.

The augment (IE e-, Skt. a-) is prefixed to the various preterites (imperfect, aorist, pluperfect, conditional) to indicate past time. It is found in Indo-Iranian (Skt. ābhārata), Greek (ἴπθερε), Armenian (eber), and Phrygian (ēdās 'constructed'), but it is absent in the rest of Indo-European. It is thus an
important feature in connection with the dialectal divisions of Indo-European, since it is clearly of late origin, and has established itself over only part of the IE linguistic area, among dialects which for other reasons also may be held to have been contiguous. Even where it established itself it existed originally only as an optional formation, augmented and unaugmented forms being optionally used. The unaugmented forms were of course alone used in an injunctive sense, but they could be also used as preterites just like the augmented forms. The coexistence of augmented and unaugmented preterites is a characteristic both of the earliest Greek and the earliest Sanskrit. It is only in the later stage of both languages that the augment ceases to be optional and becomes obligatory. In Iranian the augment is regularly used in Old Persian, but only rarely in Avestan, where the unaugmented type of preterite has mainly prevailed. In the early stage of Middle Indo-Aryan, which still preserves an old preterite made up of imperfect and aorist forms, the old Vedic freedom of usage is maintained, but the unaugmented instead of the augmented forms become the most common.

The augment seems in origin to have been a separate word, namely a particle e meaning 'there, then' which came to be compounded with the verb. It invariably bears the acute accent whenever the verb is accented. When the verb is compounded with a preposition, it always appears between the preposition and the verb: samābharat, etc., and likewise in Greek. An irregular sandhi appears when it is combined with a root beginning with i, u or r (aicchat 'wished', aurnti 'covered', ardhniti 'throve' from icchāti, urnti, rdhniti, with vṛddhi instead of the expected gna, and this indicates that up to a late period it was pronounced as a separate syllable with hiatus (aicchat, etc.). On the other hand its coalescence with initial a (IE e, a, o) appears to be ancient, judging by parallels between Greek and Sanskrit (Skt. ās 'was', Gk. Dor. ἦς, Skt. ājat 'drove', Gk. Dor. ἀγε). Before roots beginning with v, y, n and r the augment may appear as long a in the Vedic language (dvrañak, ayunak, etc.). The reason for this is not very clear but a parallel phenomenon in the case of initial v- is found in Greek (Hom. ἦ-[F]εδη, Att. ἦδει).

Reduplication consists normally of the repetition of the initial consonant of a root with a vowel which may or may not
be the same as the radical vowel. It appears in one class of present (the third class), in the reduplicated aorist, in the perfect, in the desiderative and in the intensive. The main varieties which will be detailed below under the separate formations are as follows:

1. Reduplication with the vowel 'a (IE e): dadhāti 'places', tatāna 'stretched', cf. Gk. γέγονε, Lat. pepīgī, etc.

2. Reduplication with long ā: jāgarīti, jāgāra 'is awake', cf. Gk. δηδεχαται 'they welcome', etc.

3. Reduplication with the vowel 'i' when that is not the vowel of the root: tīṣṭhati 'stands', dīārkṣate 'desires to see', cf. Gk. ἵστημι, γίγνομαι, Lat. sisto, etc.


5. Reduplication with weak form of vowel of roots in diphthongs: jūhōti 'sacrifices', bibhēdā 'split', cf. Lat. ḫupūgī, scīcidī.

6. Intensive reduplication with guna vowel of such roots and similar reduplication with repeated final r, n, etc.: nenikte 'washes', dēdīste 'points out', vārvratī 'they turn (continually)', cf. Av. načnīzaiti, daēdōišt, etc. This involves the complete repetition of roots containing only two consonants: nōnāva 'roars mightily', jaṅghanti 'smites violently'.

7. Such intensive reduplication with ī suffixed to the reduplicating syllable: bhārībharti 3 sg., bhārībhṛati 3 pl. This type alternates with one in which the ī is suffixed after the root: jōhavīti 'calls loudly', etc.

8. Initial 'a may be reduplicated producing ā (āsa 'was') or some more complicated process may appear.

In the case of roots beginning with two consonants the first is reduplicated with the exception of the combination s + occlusive: śuṣrāva 'heard', cf. Av. susrūma, Gk. κέκλυτε, śiśriyē 'rested on', cf. Gk. κέκλυται, sasṁārā 'remembered', saṃnau 'bathed', etc. When the root begins with the group s + occlusive, the occlusive is repeated in Sanskrit: tīṣṭhati 'stands', caskānda 'sprung', paspārsa 'touched'. On the other hand, s (> h) appears in the reduplicating syllable in such cases both in Iranian and Greek. The same type of reduplication appears also in Lat. sisto and in Celtic (Ir. -sescaind from skinnim 'jump out', cf. Skt. skand-). Yet other varieties of reduplication in the case of these groups appear (a) in Lat. perfects of the type
stetī, scicīdī, sopoṇdī, which preserve the consonant group in the reduplicative syllable but simplify it in the root, (b) in Gothic where the full group appears in both root and reduplication: skaiskaih (skaidan ‘cut’). In view of this variety it is unlikely that there was any universally consistent usage in the IE period.

Certain sound changes have affected the reduplicated forms in Sanskrit. By the rule which prevents a succession of two aspirated consonants, a non-aspirate is substituted in reduplication for an aspirate: dādhāti, etc. In the case of h < IE ḡh the non-aspirated form appears as j: jahāra. Since a in a reduplicating syllable was originally e, the old velar series is palatalised before it: cakāra, jagāma, jaghāna. The same treatment appears regularly when the vowel of the reduplicating syllable is i (cikīrṣati) and it is applied analogically in the case of u: cukópa.

§ 6. Personal Terminations

Sanskrit, like the parent Indo-European, has two sets of personal terminations, one for the active and one for the middle voice. These two sets embrace further subdivisions which appear in different parts of the verbal conjugation. In the present-aorist system the so-called primary endings appear in the present and future, while a different series, the secondary endings, appear in the imperfect, aorist and optative. The subjunctive has optionally either. The perfect endings, where they differ from the above, do so more fundamentally than the primary and secondary endings differ from each other. The imperative has special endings only in the 2 singular and in the 3 singular and plural. The subjunctive has a separate termination in the 1 singular, which is old, and some special middle endings which are an Indian innovation. The primary, secondary and perfect endings are listed in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Middle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>s.</td>
<td>d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>vas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>si</td>
<td>thas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>tas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ For table of imperative and subjunctive endings see under the respective sections.
THE VERB

B. Secondary

1 am, m va ma i, a vahi mahi
2 s tam ta thus athām dhvam
3 t ū tum an, ur ta ālām ania, atu, ran

C. Perfect

1 a va ma e vahe mahe
2 tha athus a se āthe dhve
3 a atus ur e āte re

Active Terminations:

1 Sing. P. Skt. āsmi 'I am', Gk. eimi, Lith. esmi, Hitt. esmi; ēmi 'I go', Gk. eiμ, dādāmi 'I give', Gk. dēōμ, etc. This ending was originally confined to the non-thematic classes, and a different ending -ō (-ou) appeared in the thematic classes: Gk. φέρω, Lat. fero, Goth. baira. Some such forms are preserved in Iranian (Av. spasyā : Lat. specio), but usually in Iranian, and always in Sanskrit, mi from the non-thematic verbs is added to the older form: Skt. bharāmi, Av. baremi. S. ābharam, Gk. ἑφερον, āgam, Gk. ἔβην, syām 'sim', O. Lat. siem. Non-thematic verbs have the fuller ending -am, āsām 'I was', O. Pers. āham, as opposed to Gk. a<νν in Hom. ηα. A similar difference between the two languages was observed in the case of the acc. sg. of non-thematic stems. Pf. Skt. vēda, Gk. oίδα; dadārsa, Gk. δέωρκα. Sbj. The Vedic language has either ā or āni, bravā 'I will speak', bharāṇi 'I will bear'. In the classical language, where these formations have entered the imperative system, only the fuller ending āni is used. The ending -ā is identical with the -ō which in other languages appears in the present indicative of thematic verbs as well as in the subjunctive: Gk. ἄγω, φέρω, etc. The extension -ni appears only in Indo-Iranian and is of uncertain origin.

2 Sing. P. ēsi 'you go', Lith. eisi, bharasi 'you bear', Av. barahi; cf. O. Russ. velišt 'you command', Hitt. iyaši 'you do'. S. āsthās, Gk. ἔστη, ābhās, Gk. ἑφερες, bhārēs Gk. φέρους, Goth. bairais. Pf. vēttha, Gk. οἶδα, Goth. waist, dādāha, Av. dādāhā. Impv. hīθi 'go' (<*idhi), Av. idī, Gk. ιθί, jahi 'slay' (han-), Av. jāṣī, viddhi 'know', Gk. ιθο. In thematic verbs the simple stem serves as the second person singular of the imperative: bhara, Gk. φέρε, Goth. bair; Lat. lege, etc.
3 Sing. P. āstī, Lith. ėstī, Gk. ēstī, Hitt. ėšṭī, (zi < ti); hānti 'slays', Av. jaštāti, Hitt. kuṇzī; bhārati, Av. baraiti, O. Sl. beretē (beside beretē). S. ābharat, syāt, cf. Av. barat, Gk. (with loss of -t) ēphēpē, ēphōu, Lat. erat, sīt (O. Lat. sīd), etc. Pf. dadārśa, Gk. δέορκε. Impv. astū, Hitt. ēstū, ētu 'let him go', bhāratu, O. Pers. baratu. An alternative ending -tōd appears in Greek and Latin (ἔστω, estō(d)). Forms corresponding to this are found in Sanskrit, e.g. vittāt (=Gk. ἔστω) but they are used for both the second and third persons, and for all numbers.

A different kind of inflection in the primary endings of the 2, 3 sing. appears in Gk. thematic verbs: 2 ēγεῖς, 3 ēγεῖ. A comparison with Lith. vedī 'take': you take ' shows that the s of the 2 sing. is a later addition, and that the two persons were originally identical. They contain no personal terminations, only an appended i indicating present time. Such an i, un-associated with a personal ending, is found in Hittite verbs of the -idi class: aki 'dies', dāi 'takes'. Sanskrit has innovated here by applying the endings of the mi-conjugation, just as in the 1 sing., but in this case the innovation is more widely shared by other IE languages, Lat. agis, agit, Goth. bairis, bairip, etc.

1 Plur. P. (a) imās 'we go', bhārāmas 'we bear', cf. Gk. Dor. ἑμεῖς, ἑφομεῖς, Lat. ēmus, ferimus, O. Sl. damū, nesemū, etc., (b) smāsi 'we are', O. Pers. amahi, bhārāmasi, Av. barāmahi, cf. O. Ir. amni 'sumus', bermāi, bermī 'we bear'. S. and Pf. ābhārāma, syāma, Av. hyāmā, vidmā 'we know', Goth. wittum. Forms with long vowel which appear in the Vedic language, particularly in the perfect (vidmā, etc.) appear to be ancient, and not merely metrical lengthening, on account of the occurrence of similar formations in other languages: Lith. sukome-s (reflexive), Goth. bairaima opt. (out of *smē or *smō).

The variations between IE-mēs and -mos were due to differences of accentuation, like the similar phenomenon in the genitive singular: originally *imēs but *bhēromos. The alternative ending -māsi appears in the Vedic language beside mas, but it is disused in the classical language. In Iranian the corresponding mahi has come to be exclusively used as the primary ending. In Greek there is an alternative termination -μεν, used both as a primary and secondary ending. It was customary to regard the final-ν of this form as ephelcystic, and to equate the Gk. ending with the Skt. secondary ending, but it is now clear from
Hittite that this is not so. The Hittite terminations are:
P. weni, meni (with i appended as in Skt. masi), S. wen, men.
The variety with w- is related to the dual endings of other IE languages; the forms with m- appear after u (arunummeni ‘we bring’, etc.) and the secondary form -men corresponds exactly with the Greek ending. In Indo-Iranian this form of ending is traceable in Khotanese: hāmāmāne ‘we may become’ (subj. mid.).

2 Plur. P. (a) bhāratha, cf. Av. xṣayaθā, (b) vādathana ‘you speak’. S. (a) ābhārata (impf.), bhārata (impv.), cf. Gk. φέρετε, Lat. forte (impv.), Goth. bairīp, O. Sl. berete, (b) ājahātana ‘you abandoned’, hantana ‘slay’ (impv.), cf. Hitt. kuenten pret. and impv. (kuen- ‘slay’). Pf. cakrā (kr- ‘to do’), vidā. The primary endings with aspiration (-tha <the) do not appear outside Indo-Iranian. The other languages have normally one form which serves as both primary and secondary ending, and this corresponds to the secondary ending of Indo-Iranian. Hittite has evolved a distinction between primary and secondary ending here in quite a different way (P. teni, S. ten). The longer forms were analysed as tha-na and ta-na, the na being regarded as an appended particle, and the whole form as a Sanskrit innovation. In view of Hitt. -ten we should analyse rather -tan-a of which tan corresponds exactly to Hitt. -ten, and the a is simply a thematic enlargement such as is found elsewhere in the formation of words. The perfect form is properly without termination and nothing like it is found outside Indo-Iranian.


The full form of the ending varied between -onti and -enti according to accentuation, like the variation between -mes and -mos in the 1 plur. Also due to accent is the weakening to -ṇti > ati which appears in Sanskrit and Greek. A corresponding weak form of the secondary ending, -at <nt, appears in Iranian: Av. dañña, Ḫiγav. In such cases Sanskrit always has the
alternative ending -ur. The secondary ending was originally -ant which has been reduced to -an by the normal cause of phonetic development in Sanskrit as in most of the related languages (Gk. -ov < ov̂, etc.).

The alternative secondary ending -ur appears in the imperfect of the reduplicating class (ādādur), in the imperfect of root stems ending in -ā (ādyur: yāti 'goes'), in non-thematic aorist stems and in the perfect. Outside Indo-Iranian r-endings of the 3 plur. appear in Hittite, Latin (dixere) and Tocharian (kātkar 'they arose', mrasar 'they forgot'). In Iranian this r may be enlarged by an additional element s (čikōtāras, etc.). The form of the Sanskrit ending shows that it also originally contained this enlargement, since -ur has developed out of -rs here in the same way as it has done in pīlur < *pīṭš. Of the various types of r-formation which Iranian preserves, one has been generalised in Sanskrit at the expense of the rest.

1 Dual. P. bhārāvas, cf. Goth. bairōs (< *bherōwes), svās 'we two are'. The corresponding ending in Iranian is an extended -vahi (cf. masi beside mas): Av. usvahi 'we two wish'; a form -vasi after the style of masi does not appear in Skt. S. and Pf.; impf. ābhārāva, opt. bhāreva, pf. vidvā, cf. Av. jvāva 'we two lived', Lith. pret. sūkova, -vō-s, O. Sl. pres. jesvē, vezevē, Aor. vezovē, Goth. opt. bindaiwa. As in the 1 plur. only Indo-Iranian distinguishes between primary and secondary terminations. The variation between the long and short vowel (Skt. va: Sl. vē) was noticed also in the plural. The first person of the dual is found only in Indo-Iranian, Balto-Slavonic and Germanic. Hittite contains a termination which is related to these forms, P. weni, S. wen, but it is used as a plural side by side with the rarer -meni/men. The most satisfactory explanation of this is that there existed originally in IE parallel formations beginning with w or m which were optionally used as 1 plur. ending. Hittite has preserved this state of affairs but restricted the use of the men- termination to stems in u. The above-mentioned languages have kept both types of ending but specialised as duals the w-variety. About the remaining IE languages it is not possible to say anything owing to lack of evidence.

2, 3 Dual. P. 2 bhārathas, 3 bhāratas, cf. Av. yūidyaṭō, baratō-Goth. bairats. In Avestan no 2 dual is found; the terminations tō and -ṭō are used promiscuously as endings, of the 3 dual, the
two forms having been confused. The Gothic form is used only for the 2 dual. S. 2 ábhahatam, Gk. ἐφέρετον, 3 ábhahatám, Gk. ἐφέρετην. Pf. 2 cakrátur, 3 cakrátur, cf. Av. yaétatara.

With the primary terminations of the 2, 3 dual it is possible to compare the -tis (-<tes) of Lat. legitis, etc., which is used as 2 plur. As in the first person the dual endings seem to have arisen by the specialisation in dual usage of a variant form of the plural ending. It is also noteworthy that the variation between t and th serves quite a different purpose in the two numbers, to distinguish 2 from 3 in the dual, and to distinguish primary from secondary in the plural. Secondary adaptation in both cases would account for this difference. The 3 dual is not of independent origin but merely a variant in form of the 2 dual. The same form may appear for both as in the Gk. primary ending (φέρετον). In Balto-Slavonic there appears an ending in -tā which in Lithuanian appears only in the second person (sūkata, sūkato-s) in Slavonic in both (O. Sl. 2, 3 vezeta). It corresponds to the secondary ending of the third person in Sanskrit (-tām : Gk. -τηύ, Dor. -τάv) to which -m is a secondary addition. The perfect endings are an Indo-Iranian creation with -ur (Ir. ar) introduced from the 3 plur.

Middle Endings

1 Sing. P. bruve ‘I speak’, Av. -mruye, yaje ‘I worship’, Av. yaze. A different formation with -m- as in the active of mi-verbs appears in Greek: φέρωμαι, etc. S. non-thematic, ἀδυκί ‘I milked’, ἀκρί ‘I have done’, Av. aofī (aog- ‘to say’), mōnghī = Skt. (d)manṣi (man- ‘to think’, s-aor.). Thematic stems have -e as in the primary system, ábhave, etc. Greek has a quite different ending: ἐφέρομαι, Dor. μαύv. Pf. šusruvē, Av. susruve with same ending as primary system. Sbj. māṃsai, Av. mōṅghai, yājai, Av. yazāi. Ōpt. tanuŷā, Av. tanuya.

2 Sing. P. bhārase, cf. Av. pōrasahe ‘you ask’, Gk. φέρει xφέρη, Goth. bairaza; datsē ‘you give’, Gk. δίδωσαι. S. ákrthās, ádhatthās, etc. In contradistinction to Sanskrit, Iranian and Greek both agree in having forms representing IE -so : Av. -zayaṇha, Gk. ἐφέρεο, ἐφέρου. These bear the same relation to the primary ending -sai as the 3 sing. secondary -to to primary -tai. Pf. same as primary, ririkṣē, dadhiṣē, cf. Gk. λεεψαι, δεδωσαί. Impv. bhārasva, Av. baryaṇha.

3 Sing. P. bhārate, Gk. φέρεται, Goth. bairada, āste ‘sits’,
In the Vedic language there occur some forms without the -t-, the termination being identical with that of the first person as in the perfect: duhē, šāye, šrunvē, etc. In view of the Hittite middle formations of the third person of the type eša, kiša (cf. aduhā below), this type must be regarded as ancient and not as an importation from the perfect system. S. ábharātā, Gk. ἑφέρετο, opt. bhārēta, Gk. φέρωτο. The -ta which appears in Hittite as primary ending arta 'stands up', kitta 'lies' beside artarī, kittari) is equivalent to the Sanskrit secondary ending. Rare forms without t corresponding to the presents duhē, etc., are aīša and aduhā (īš- 'to rule', duh-'to milk'), cf. Hitt. primary eša, kiša, etc. Pf. dadhē, cakrē, etc. On the other hand Gk. has -t- as in the present, dēdōtai, etc. Impv. bhāratām, dhattām, cf. Av. vṛzyatām. This form and the corresponding plural anām/ātām are without parallel outside Indo-Iranian. A form without -t-, corresponding to the indicative endings P. -e, S. -a, appears occasionally in the Veda: duhām.

1 Plur. P. Pf. yājāmahe, Av. yazamaide, bṛūmāhe 'we say', Av. mṛūmaide, cakṛmāhe, etc. S. ábharāmahi, cf. Av. varṇomādi (var-'to choose'), etc. Sanskrit -h- is from -dh-, as in the imperative -hi, etc., the original Indo-Iranian terminations being *-madhai and -madhi. Closely related to these forms but differing in the matter of the final vowel is Gk. -μεθα<*medha, which serves as both primary and secondary ending: φέρο-μεθα, ἑφέρομεθα. Greek has also a fuller ending -μεθωθα, with which Hitt. -wašta is to be compared, there being the same alternation of m and w as appears in the active (men/wen).

2 Plur. P. Pf. bhāradhve, ὀδιδήύε, cf. Av. mṛongūdyē (maruk-'to destroy'). S. ábharādhvam, cf. Av. dārayādωm, etc. The Greek ending -οθε (primary and secondary) may be related presuming it is out of -zdhwε, and more closely the dual ending -οθο (<zdhwom) the dual use of which is, as elsewhere, a secondary adaptation. The Hittite termination, primary dumā (pahhašduma 'you protect'), S. dumat is more obviously connected, -dum- being the weak grade corresponding to -dhvam.

3 Plur. P. (a) bhárante, Gk. φέρονταί, ἀσατε 'they sit', Gk. Hom. ἥπαι (<*ěsptai); (b) sére 'they lie', Av. sōire, saère, duhre, sunvire, with the same endings as the perfect. A combination of a and b appears in rêrate, duhrate. S. (a) ábharanta, Gk. ἑφέροντο, ἀσατα 'they sat', Gk. Hom. ἥρο; (b) Three
varieties of r-ending appear: (1) -ra: āduhra, (2) -ran: āduhran, āseran, opt. āsiran, bhāreran, (3) -ram: asasrāgram, cf. Av. vaozīrām (vaz- 'to carry'). The types (2) and (3) are clearly enlargements of type (1) which must be regarded as most original. By combination of (a) and (b) arise the terminations -ranta and -rata: dvavrtranta (vṛt- 'to turn'), bhārerata. Outside the optatives in -eran, -iran, the r-endings are comparatively rare and archaic formations in the Vedic language beside the normal nt-formations. They are almost completely discarded in the classical language. It will be observed that the r is identical with the r which appears in the third plural of the active, and it is the elements added to it which characterise the terminations as middle (-e in duhrē, etc., -a in āduhra). Pf. Exclusively r-endings: duduhré, cakriré, etc., cf. Av. čáxrare (variant -arai which does not occur in Skt., cf. Av. -aro active which is likewise missing in Skt.).

1 Dual. P. Pf. bhārāvahe, cakrvāhe, S. ābhārāvahi. Avestan has only -vaidi: dvaidi (dav-, i.e. du-vaidi). The Hitt. plural ending -wašla has formally the same relationship to Indo-Iranian -vadhi as Gk. -μεοθα to -μαθι.

2, 3 Dual. P. Pf. thematic 2 bhārethe, caráethe, cf. Av. 3 dual čarōiše, 3 bhārete, cf. Av. vīsaēle; non-thematic 2 bruvāthe, mammāthe, 3 bruvāte, mammāte. S. thematic 2 ābharethām, 3 ābharetām, cf. Av. jasaētōm (with short vowel of termination as opposed to long vowel in Sanskrit); non-thematic 2 āśruvāthām (śru- 'to hear'), 3 āśrūvatām, Av. asrūvātām. The variation between Iranian -tam and Skt. -tām in the third person corresponds to a similar difference in the active (Av. jasatēm, Skt. āgacchātām). No corresponding endings appear outside Indo-Iranian. The Greek terminations, P. 2, 3 -οθω, S. 2 -όθω, 3 -όθην are connected with the second plural of the middle. On the other hand the Indo-Iranian forms are connected with the corresponding active terminations of the dual. The same variation between th and t appears between the two persons in the primary endings, and in the middle this is introduced also into the secondary endings. The final -e of the primary endings is the same -e characterising the middle which appears throughout the primary system. The influence of this -e of the middle is responsible for the substitution of e for the a of thematic stems (ābhavētām as opposed to active ābhavatām, Av. jasaētōm beside fasatēm). Non-thematic verbs are distin-
guished by an ā of the middle ending, but examples like Av. dazde 3 du. pl. and Skt. cikēthe indicate that this is an innovation. It can only have come from formations of roots in ā like dadāthe, dadāte where the ā is originally part of the root as in 2 sg. dadātha (beside dadīthā) and 2 pl. dādhātana (beside dhattana).

§ 7. Structure and Origin of the Terminational System

A comparison of the primary and secondary endings shows that from the historical point of view they are incorrectly named. It is the 'secondary' endings that are primary, and vice versa. The relation of the series -m, -s, -t, -an(t) with the primary -mi, -si, -ti, -anti can only be explained by the assumption that in the latter series a particle -i indicating present time has been secondarily added. In the same way in the imperative endings -tu, -antu, a particle -u is added to the same basic terminations. This is made clear, among other things, by the fact that these same elements -i and -u may appear by themselves in formations that have no personal termination, e.g. in Gk. φέρει (φέρε + i), Hitt. šakki 'knows' and in Hittite imperatives of the -hi class: aku, dāu (ak- 'to die', dā- 'to take'). This addition of -i to -t, etc., implies an earlier period when secondary terminations alone existed; the 'primary' system, and therefore the present tense is formed on the basis of the 'secondary' system of the preterites. The unaugmented preterite and the 'injunctive' form the primary basis of the IE present-aorist system.

It does not seem that the distinction between primary and secondary terminations was fully worked out in the IE period. For instance in the 1 plur. and in the 2 plur. Greek makes no distinction (P. S. -μεν), and this indifference is shared by other languages (O. Sl. nesemū, nesomū, Goth. bindam, witum, -budum). The distinction appears in Hittite and Indo-Iranian, but it is effected by quite different means. In Hittite -weni, -meni beside -wen, -men is clearly a private innovation modelled on the three persons of the present and the 3 plur. In Indo-Iranian the distinction is effected by the choice of two different forms of the suffix (mas/ma, similarly du. vas/va) and there is no evidence to show that this variation was connected with the distinction between secondary and primary in the IE period.
Possibly -\textit{ma} was originally the perfect ending in view of the frequency of final -\textit{a} in forms of that tense (\textit{vēda}, \textit{vētha}, \textit{vēda}, 2 pl. \textit{vida}). The innovation Skt. -\textit{masi}, Av. -\textit{mahi}, Av. -\textit{vahi} resembles the Hittite development, but it is quite independent, and expresses no such distinction (P. \textit{mas} and \textit{masi} as opposed to Hitt. P. -\textit{meni}, -\textit{weni}, S. \textit{men/wen}). Hittite treats the 2 pl. in the same way (\textit{teni/teni}) and here again Sanskrit expresses the difference in quite a different way (-\textit{ta/tha}). In all other languages the distinction does not exist. Apart from lack of support from other languages, the fact that the distinction between \textit{t} and \textit{th} is used in the related dual endings for a totally different purpose (2 -\textit{thas}, 3 -\textit{tas}) makes it altogether unlikely that the difference between the two forms of suffix was from the beginning connected with the distinction between primary and secondary ending.

In the middle the priority of the secondary endings is no less clear. The primary endings all terminate in -\textit{e}, and the comparative evidence shows that the extension of this -\textit{e} to all the primary persons of the middle is a special Indo-Iranian development. In Greek, which is closest to Indo-Iranian in its verbal inflection, a corresponding -\textit{e} is found only in the three persons of the singular and in the 3 plural. Elsewhere (-\textit{σθων}, -\textit{μεθα}, -\textit{θε}) the endings are not characterised by this element, the same ending functioning as both primary and secondary. It is certain that in this respect Greek represents the more original state of affairs, and that in Sanskrit -\textit{mahe} and -\textit{dhve} (and the same applies to the dual endings) are new formations on the basis of \textit{mahi} and \textit{dhvam} which originally functioned indifferently as primary and secondary endings. Comparison between Sanskrit and Hittite confirms this. Hittite differs from Sanskrit more than Greek does, and it shares with Italic, Celtic and Tocharian an element \textit{r} in the middle endings which Greek and Sanskrit agree in ignoring. Nevertheless there exist forms in the two languages which can be directly compared, and these are invariably secondary endings in Sanskrit: Hitt. 3 sg. pr. \textit{arta}: cf. Skt. \textit{ākṛta}; 3 pl. \textit{aranta}: Skt. \textit{aranta}; 3 sg. \textit{ēsa}: cf. Skt. \textit{āduha}; 2 pl. \textit{pahhaśduma}: cf. Skt. \textit{ābharadvam}. The Hittite terminations all belong to the present (primary) system, as opposed to the identical forms in Sanskrit which belong to the secondary system.

The formation of the middle endings, \textbf{as is clear} from a survey
THE VERB

of the Sanskrit forms, is remarkably heterogeneous, and its study is made more complicated by the existence in Indo-European of two distinct types, one (Hittite, Italic, Celtic, Tocharian) which makes extensive use of an element *r in its formation, and another (Indo-Iranian, Greek, Germanic) which ignores this element. At the same time there is a nucleus of forms, as instanced above, which bridge the gap between the two types. Among the oldest forms we can observe several types. (1) In the 3rd person a thematic variation of the same suffix serves as the middle ending: ákar(t) : ákra; ábharan(t) : ábharanta; duhur: áduhra. (2) In the 1st person dual and plural the middle ending is formed by the addition of particles (Skt. -hi <*dhi, Gk. ṭa <*dha) to a form of the active ending. The Greek alternation -μας/-μεθα, which contains as its first element two variant forms of the active ending (cf. Skt. -mas and -ma), makes this quite clear. Hitt. -wasṭa, with the -w- that elsewhere appears in the dual, but in Hitt. in the plural, is naturally to be explained in the same way as Gk. -μεθα. (3) In the 2nd plur. an ending which is quite different from the active ending is used. The 2nd sg. -θασ is likewise quite different from the active -s but it is clearly connected with the perfect active ending -tha. The final s may be explained as a secondary addition, since -s characterises the 2nd person elsewhere. The relation between *-θά and -tha is apparently the same as that between mā and ma (IE mē/me) of the 1st person plural.

The simplest form of the 1st person middle termination in Hittite is -ṭa (zahhiyahṭa) which occurs rarely beside the more usual -ḥari, ḫaḥari. This ending is represented in Sanskrit in the 1st person middle of the optative (bhāveya). Elsewhere there is a secondary ending -i (āduhi, ākri) for which there are no parallels outside Indo-Iranian (Av. aofi, mōnghi).

It is clear from the agreements between Sanskrit and Hittite that the oldest nucleus of middle endings is common IE property. Further developments based on this show remarkable divergence, since Hittite shares with Italic, Celtic and Tocharian an element *r which is not known to Sanskrit and Greek. In Hitt. this *r, which appears with the addition of the primary -i of the present, is optional, e.g. 3 sg: arta and artari, 3 pl. aranta and arantari. It is clear that it must have been in the same way optional in Indo-European, and that in the further course
of development it became established as a necessary element in Italo-Celtic and Tocharian, and on the other hand went out of use in that dialectal area of Indo-European from which Indo-Iranian and Greek derive.

The primary middle endings of Sanskrit arise in the first place, as in the active, from the addition of -i to the secondary endings: \( bh\acute{a}rata + i > bh\acute{a}ratae \). Corresponding to the -\( e \), Greek has -\( a \). This vocalism is most simply explained as due to the ending of the 1st person (-\( Ha + i > ai \)) from which it spread by analogy to the other persons. In Sanskrit this final -\( e \) appears in all the primary forms, but its presence in the dual and in the first and second persons of the plural is due entirely to analogy, and these are to be regarded as the latest parts of the system.

The active endings of the perfect are in the singular identical with the oldest forms of the middle endings: (1) -\( Ha > a \), \( ved\acute{a} \), cf. \( bh\acute{a}veya \); (2) -\( tha \), cf. -\( th\acute{a}-s \), Hitt. -\( ta \); (3) -\( a \) (IE -\( e \)), \( veda \), cf. \( aduha \), Hitt. \( e\acute{s}a \). That this is no accident is clear from the frequent cases in which active perfects with intransitive sense appear by the side of middle forms in the other tenses, e.g. Skt. \( v\acute{a}rtate \): \( v\acute{av\acute{a}rta} \), Gk. \( v\acute{ý}v\omicr{o}v \): \( v\acute{ý}v\omicr{o}v \), etc. Originally, it seems, the perfect had no distinction of the two voices, and both in form and sense it was closer to the middle than to the active. The development of separate middle forms may be regarded as a late Indo-European feature. In Sanskrit these perfect terminations are identical with those of the present, and these, as already observed, are later formations than the corresponding secondary endings.

As to the nature of the personal endings it is quite clear that they have nothing to do with the corresponding personal pronouns. The theory that these endings are of the nature of suffixed pronouns has often enough been put forward in the course of IE studies, but concrete evidence in the form of detailed comparisons is lacking. It is possible to find an -\( m- \) in the ending of the 1 sg., and a \( t- \) in the 3 sg., which are letters that occur in the corresponding pronouns (acc. sg. \( m\acute{a} : ta- \)), but beyond this there is practically nothing. Since no theory can be based on the comparison of one or two single letters, the attempt at explaining the personal endings as suffixed pronouns has to be abandoned. When this is done, and the terminations are analysed in such detail as the comparative evidence will permit, it becomes clear that the elements of which the system
is constructed are in the main identical with the suffixes of derivation which are met with in the formation of nouns. This is clearly so in the purely thematic formations which have no ending in the proper sense: 2 sg. impv. ája, 3 sg. impf. mid. áduha, 2 pl. pf. vidá. Such formations are in no way to be distinguished from ordinary thematic nominal stems. The same correspondence is generally seen between the ending of the 3 pl. (Skt. -an(t)/anti, IE -ent/-ont) and the suffix which forms present participles (Skt. bhárant-, Lat. ferens). In addition it has been pointed out that the relation of the two kinds of ending in the 3 pl., the above and that consisting of or containing an element r, is reminiscent of the alternation found in nominal stems between r and n/nt: Gk. ὁδωρ, ὠδαρος, etc. Elsewhere too there are features about the verbal terminations which recall those of the nominal suffixes. There appears to exist the same relation between the terminations of the active and middle of the 3 sg. ((d)kar(t), (d)kṛta) as is found in the nominal suffixes in kṛt-: kṛtā-. The suffix of the 2 pl. contains also a -ta which may be equated with the corresponding nominal suffix (bhárat-, cf. the nominal stem bharat-). In Indo-Iranian alone there exists a variant ending -tha which functions as primary ending. It is probably no coincidence that Indo-Iranian is also the only branch which shows a suffix -tha beside -ta in the formation of nouns (yajátha- 'worship': yajätā- 'to be worshipped').

The behaviour of the suffix of the 1 pl. is in several ways reminiscent of the corresponding nominal suffix. In the first place the coexistence of two forms, one beginning with w and one with m, which is seen in Hittite, is matched by a similar duality in the infinitival forms containing the same elements: tiyawar, tiyawanzi; tarnummar, tarnummanzi. In Sanskrit the suffixes -vant and -mant are found in the same way side by side with similar function. Another similarity between the verbal and nominal forms is seen in the variation of the latter part of the suffix: IE wen/ves, men/mes. This is paralleled by the variations in nominal declension, e.g. in the vocatives rívas, ātavas, tuvímas from the stems rívan-, pátinvant- and tuvismant-.

Correspondences of this kind make clear the original nature of a considerable section of the verbal terminations. By some process of adaptation, the course of which it is not now possible to follow, certain nominal formations became associated with
particular persons and numbers, and at least a fair proportion of the existing personal terminations came into being in this way.

§ 8. THE TEN PRESENT CLASSES

The roots of the Sanskrit language are arranged by the Hindu grammarians in ten classes, according to the way in which they form the present system, and named after a verb taken as typical of its class. The order in which these classes are placed corresponds to no discoverable grammatical principle, and for convenience of exposition it needs to be rearranged. The verbs are divided into two major types, (a) non-thematic (classes 2, 3, 5, 7, 8, 9) and (b) thematic (classes 1, 4, 6, 10).

A. Non-thematic Presents

Root Class (Second or ad- class)

Paradigm: (dviṣ- 'to hate').

Present, Active, S. 1 dviṣāmi, 2 dviṣāṣi, 3 dviṣāṣi, D. 1 dviṣāṃs, 2 dviṣāṣā, 3 dviṣāṣānti.

Middle, S. 1 dviṣē, 2 dviṣēṣi, 3 dviṣēṣē, D. 1 dviṣāvāhe, 2 dviṣāthe, 3 dviṣāte, P. 1 dviṣāṃhe, 2 dviṣādhvē, 3 dviṣāte.

Imperfect, Active, S. 1 ādviṣām, 2 ādviṣet, 3 ādviṣet, D. ādviṣa, 2 ādviṣam, 3 ādviṣām, P. 1 ādviṣāma, 2 ādviṣāta, 3 ādviṣāan.

Middle, S. 1 ādviṣi, 2 ādviṣāṣhā, 2 ādviṣāṣa, D. 1 ādviṣavāhi, 2 ādviṣāthām, 3 ādviṣātam, P. 1 ādviṣāmahi, 2 ādviṣādvam, 3 ādviṣātata.

Inflection of this type in Sanskrit is made from nearly 130 roots. In most other IE languages it has largely died out, its place being taken by thematic formations. Consequently direct comparisons with forms of other languages are confined to a few common roots: ásti 'is', Gk. ἔστι, Lat. est, etc.; ēmi 'I go', imās 'we go', Gk. εἰμί, ėμεν, Lith. ėmī, etc.; ētti 'eats', Lat. est, Russ. jest'; ēste 'sits', Gk. ἔσται; šēte 'lies', Gk. κεῖται, Hitt. kitta, kittari. Hittite is the only language beside Sanskrit in which this type of formation is well preserved, and here further parallels are available: hānti 'he slays', ghnaṇṭi 'they slay', Hitt. kuenzi, kunanzi; vašti 'he wishes' (vaś-) Hitt. ukezi (Gk. only ptc. ἐκών); sāsti 'sleeps', Hitt. šešzi.

Beside the regular endings given above there exists a variant
type: active, 3 pl. impf. caksur, duhur; middle, 3 sg. pres. īse, citē, duhe, bruve, śāye, vidē, 3 pl. duhrē, śere; duhrate, śerate; impf. 3 sg. aīṣa, aduha, 3 pl. aduhrā; aduhran, āseran; āserata; impv. 3 sg. duhām, vidām, āyām, 3 pl. duhrām; duhratām, śeratām. These forms (for which see above, § 6) are confined to the Vedic language with the exception of the root śī- 'to lie' which preserves such inflection in the classical language (3 pl. śerate). This series is important because it shows that there were originally two types of conjugation in the case of root stems, corresponding to the Hittite -mi and -hi conjugations. Sanskrit has generalised the mi- type in the active, but in the middle the Vedic language preserves these traces of the old dual system.

With certain exceptions the normal system of accent and apophony prevails in this class, that is to say the root has accent and guna in the three persons of the active, while elsewhere it appears in its weak form and the accent is on the termination: hānti: ghnānti; vāșmi: uśmāsi; āsmi: smās, etc. Roots in -u followed by endings beginning with a consonant, take vrddhi instead of guna in the strong forms: staūti, 'praises', yaūti 'joins'; also certain others, e.g. mārṣṭi 'rubs'; 3 pl. mṛjānti. A number of roots retain accent and guna throughout for reasons which are not clear: e.g. śete 'lies', váste 'wears clothes'. Certain roots with long vowels where this applies, e.g. āste 'sits', īste 'rules' have perhaps been adapted from the perfect system (ās- originally perfect stem of as- 'to be'). In the Vedic language the strong form of the root is optional in the 2 pl.: pres. netdh, impv. stota, impf. ābravīta. The weak form of the 3 pl. mid. termination (dvīśāte as opposed to dvīśānti) indicates original final accent which is preserved occasionally in the Veda: duhatē, rihatē. The root śās- has the weak termination also in the active (śāsatī 3 pl.) which accords with its radical accent.

The conjugation of this class is complicated by changes due to internal sandhi. As this is a matter of phonology rather than morphology, a few examples will suffice: duh- 'to milk', doh + si > dhokṣi, doh + ti > dogāhi; lih- 'to lick', leh + ti > leḏhi; śās- + dhi > sādhi. Analogy is responsible for the 3 sg. impf. āśat (instead of *aśās <*aśāst) and in the same way for ālet. Different formations are occasionally substituted where the operation of phonetic laws would leave a form too short or
obscure: 3 sg. impf. ādat with thematic vowel from ad- 'to eat' āsit with -i- beside Vedic ās from as- 'to be'.

Some of the roots of this class contain enlargements, e.g. trā- 'to save, protect', śā-s- 'to command', v-as- 'to clothe', which means that originally they did not belong to the root class. Such roots tend to be irregular in the matter of accent and apophony. Some reduplicated formations have come to be classed here, e.g. jakṣ- (1) 'to laugh' (has-), (2) 'to eat' (ghas-) which retains some features of reduplicated inflection (3 pl. act. jākṣati), and nims- 'to touch closely, kiss' (nas-); likewise certain intensive formations which are treated as roots by the grammarians: jāgarti 'is awake', daridrāti 'runs about, is poor', dideti 'shines'.

Here are classified certain roots making a stem by means of the suffix i, namely, in the classical language, rud- 'to weep', svap- 'to sleep', an- 'to breathe', śvas- 'to breathe' and jakṣ- 'to eat': 3 sg. pres. roditi, svapiti, etc. Further examples are found in the Vedic language: vāmīti 'vomits', janiśva 'be born', vāśīva 'wear', śnathihi 'smash', stanihi 'roar', and the M.Bh. has sócimi. This formation corresponds to the Latin 3rd conjugation verbs of the type capio (capis, capit . . . capitunt). Like the other non-thematic classes it shows changes in accent and apophony (1 pl. rudimás), but it had originally nothing to do with the root class, being an independent formation. But it is a formation which from the earliest period of the language is on the way to obsolescence. Most of the forms quoted are isolated and not parts of complete paradigms. Even in the most stable group which the classical language preserves, the i-suffix is absent before endings beginning with a vowel (3 pl. rudánti) and in the 2 and 3 sg. impf. it is replaced either by long i (dṅit), or by a thematic formation (ānāt). The type has ceased to form a full separate class, and by interpreting the suffix as the union vowel i (iī), and attaching it to the root class, the grammarians were able to account for most of its characteristics.

A suffix i appears in the conjugation of brū- 'to speak', but only in the strong forms before terminations beginning with a consonant (brāvīti, ābravīt; ābravam, bruvañti). In the corresponding Avestan verb it does not appear at all: 3 sg. mṛaoīti, impf. mṛaoī. The suffix has importance elsewhere in the formation of verbal stems, namely in Latin (audīre) and Slavonic
(O. Sl. supitū ‘sleeps’ mluvitū ‘mutters’). Like the short i above it is obsolescent in Sanskrit, and in addition to brū—only a few roots are found to take it in the Vedic language: āmiti (am- ‘to injure’), tāvīti (lū- ‘to be strong’), śamīśva (sam- ‘to labour’).

The Reduplicating Class (3rd or hu- class)

Paradigm: (hu- ‘to sacrifice’).

Present, Active, S. 1 juhómi, 2 juhósi, 3 juhóti, D. 1 juhuvás, 2 juhuthás, 3 juhutás, P. 1 juhumás, 2 juhuthá, 3 juhváti.

Middle, S. 1 jühve, 2 juhusé, 3 juhuté, D. 1 juhuváhe, 2 juhváhe, 3 juhváthe, P. 1 juhumáhe, 2 juhudhvé, 3 jühvate.

Imperfect, Active, S. 1 ájuhavam, 2 ájuhos, 3 ájuhot, D. 1 ájuhuva, 2 ájuhutam, 3 ájuhulám, P. 1 ájuhuma, 2 ájuhula, 3 ájuhavur.

Middle, S. 1 ájuhvi, 2 ájuhuthás, 3 ájuhuta, D. 1 ájuhuvahí, 2 ájuháváthám, 3 ájuhávátám, P. 1 ájuhumahí, 2 ájuhávaham, 3 ájuhávata.

Forms according to this class are made from some 50 roots all told, but only from 16 in the classical language. The formation is well represented also in Greek: πιπαρμῖ, πιπράμα; eἰπεδράναι ‘to introduce’, cf. Skt. bibharmī, bibharmás; διδωμῖ, Skt. dādāmi; τίθημι, Skt. dādāhāmi; τίττημι, Skt. tiśṭhāmi (transferred to thematic class). Elsewhere it has become comparatively rare.

The accent of verbs of this class is somewhat unstable. It may appear on the root in the strong forms (juhoti, etc.) which is in accordance with the guna of the root, or in the case of

Forms according to this class are made from some 50 roots all told, but only from 16 in the classical language. The formation is well represented also in Greek: πιπαρμῖ, πιπράμα; eἰπεδράναι ‘to introduce’, cf. Skt. bibharmī, bibharmás; διδωμῖ, Skt. dādāmi; τίθημι, Skt. dādāhāmi; τίττημι, Skt. tiśṭhāmi (transferred to thematic class). Elsewhere it has become comparatively rare.

The accent of verbs of this class is somewhat unstable. It may appear on the root in the strong forms (juhoti, etc.) which is in accordance with the guna of the root, or in the case of

Forms according to this class are made from some 50 roots all told, but only from 16 in the classical language. The formation is well represented also in Greek: πιπαρμῖ, πιπράμα; eἰπεδράναι ‘to introduce’, cf. Skt. bibharmī, bibharmás; διδωμῖ, Skt. dādāmi; τίθημι, Skt. dādāhāmi; τίττημι, Skt. tiśṭhāmi (transferred to thematic class). Elsewhere it has become comparatively rare.

The accent of verbs of this class is somewhat unstable. It may appear on the root in the strong forms (juhoti, etc.) which is in accordance with the guna of the root, or in the case of

Forms according to this class are made from some 50 roots all told, but only from 16 in the classical language. The formation is well represented also in Greek: πιπαρμῖ, πιπράμα; eἰπεδράναι ‘to introduce’, cf. Skt. bibharmī, bibharmás; διδωμῖ, Skt. dādāmi; τίθημι, Skt. dādāhāmi; τίττημι, Skt. tiśṭhāmi (transferred to thematic class). Elsewhere it has become comparatively rare.

The accent of verbs of this class is somewhat unstable. It may appear on the root in the strong forms (juhoti, etc.) which is in accordance with the guna of the root, or in the case of
certain verbs on the reduplication (dādhāti, etc.). The latter type is most prevalent in the Vedic language, appearing often when the later language has radical accent (bībhārti : bīhbārti). Greek has also accent of the reduplication (diēwmu, etc.), but the apophony indicates that radical accent must be original in the three persons of the singular active. On the other hand accent of the reduplication appears to be ancient in the 3 pl. active, where both root and ending appear in weakened form: dādati, sāscati. In the weak forms the normal accentuation of the terminations is found, with the exception that the accent is thrown back on to the reduplicating syllable when the termination begins with a vowel (jūhve, bīhre, etc.). This develops in the post-Vedic period (V. juhve) from the analogy of the 3rd person plural.

The weakening of the radical vowel results in samprāṣāraṇa in the case of vyac- (viviktās) and hvar- (juhurthās), and in loss of syllable in sac- and bhas- (3 pl. sāscati, bāpsati). Roots in long ā are treated variously. In the commonest, dā- and dhā-, the root is fully reduced and the vowel elided: dadvās, dadmās; dadhvās, dadhmās, etc. In the case of other roots this type is superseded by one in which the vowel -i- is inserted between the reduced form of the root and the termination. The short appears in some forms from the root hā- ‘to leave’: jah-i-mas, jahihi, etc. This reduplicated formation may be compared to the type svapiti of the root class. Normally however the vowel is long: śiś-i-hi (śā- ‘to sharpen ’), mīṁīte (mā- ‘to measure ’), rāriihās (rā- ‘to bestow ’), etc. The prevalence of the long vowel is due to rhythmical reasons, and the suffixal ī balances the ā of the root in such a way that the two have acquired the appearance of being the strong and weak forms of the root.

The nu- and u- Classes (Fifth and Eighth, su- and tan- classes)

Present, Active, S. 1 sunōmi, 2 sunoṣi, 3 sunōti, D. 1 sunuvās, etc. . . . P. 3 sunvānti, Middle, S. 1 sunvē, 2 sunuṣē . . . . P. 3 sunvāte.

Imperfect, Active, S. 1 āsunavam, 2 āsunos, 3 āsunot, D. 1 āsunuvā . . . . P. 3 āsunvan, Middle, S. 1 āsunvi, 2 āsunuthās, 3 āsunuta, D. 1 āsunuvahi . . . . P. 3 āsunvata.

About 50 roots make presents according to this class. Typical examples are: rñōti ‘rises’ (cf. Gk. ?pivym), sṛñōti ‘strews’ (cf. Gk. στόρνυμι), kṣiñōti ‘destroys’ (cf. Gk. φθινω,
THE VERB

φθωνω) minōti 'harms, lessens' (cf. Lat. minuo), dhūnōti 'shakes' (cf. Gk. θώνω 'rage'), trypōti 'is satisfied', ḫaṁnōti 'thrives', āpnōti 'reaches, obtains', aśnōti 'obtains', etc.

This suffix, which is compounded of n and u, appears also in the formation of nouns, frequently from the same roots, e.g. dhṛṣṇū- 'bold' beside dhṛṣṇōti 'is bold'. In a series of roots the alternative suffix nā (ninth class) appears side by side with no/nu: vrṇōti: vrṇāti; strnōti: strnāti; kṣinōti: kṣināti.

A simple suffix u, without the n, often appears in related formations: ῥnōti, cf. Gk. ὅροσ; strnōti, cf. Goth. straujan; vrṇōti 'covers', cf. vārutra-; dhṛṣṇōti 'is bold', cf Gk. θρασός; dabhūnōti 'injures, deceives', cf. dabhula- 'that cannot be hurt, divine' wonderful'; jinōti 'enlivens', cf. ḫivā- 'alive'; sādhnōti 'accomplishes', cf. sādhū- 'straight, good'. The same relation exists between kṣurā- 'razor' and kṣnānti 'sharpens', which the complete incorporation of the suffix has caused to be transferred to the root class. In śrū- 'to hear' (partc. śrutā-, Gk. κλεύσ, etc.) this u has been incorporated in the root everywhere except in the present tense (śrnōti: IE *kl-ṇ-eu-τi). In Iranian, by later substitution it appears even here (Av. surun-a-ūditi).

Verbal classes corresponding to this appear in Greek (ὀρφυμ etc.) and Hittite, where the formation has developed a special causative sense (arnummi, etc.), but in neither case is the old apophony seen in Sanskrit preserved intact. Elsewhere formations of this type have been replaced by thematic formations (Ir. ro cluinēthar 'hears', etc.). Thematic formations based on this suffix are found: pīvati 'fattens' (cf. pinute, Av. pinaoīti), invati 'drives, attacks' (cf. inōti), hīnvi 'impels' (cf. hi nōti) jīnvi 'enlivens' (cf. jinōti).

In accent and apophony this class conforms to the normal type, with the usual Vedic irregularities, e.g. strong form of suffix in 2 pl. (ākṛṇota(na)) and final accentuation of 3 pl. middle (kṛṇvate, vṛṇvate, etc.). Concerning the form of the endings it may be noted that the u of the suffix may optionally be omitted in the I du. and pl. (sunvās, sunmās; this starts of course in the I du.), and that before vocalic terminations -nv- appears instead of -nv- after roots ending in a consonant (saknuvānti 'they are able'). The terminations -e of the 3 sg. middle (ṣunvē 'is heard', sunvé 'is pressed') and -re of the 3 pl. (ṣunvirē, sunvirē
I etc.) appear sporadically in the Veda, the latter being always associated with the union vowel -i-. This union vowel is found also in Vedic śṛṇvīṣe 2 sg. middle.

Under the eighth class are classified certain roots formed by the simple suffix o/u instead of no/nu. These consist of a number of roots terminating in n: tan- 'to stretch', 3 sg. tanōti, similarly sanōti 'wins' (cf. Gk. āvōμ 'achieve'), vanōti 'winds', manutē 'thinks', kṣanōti 'wounds', and the root kr- 'to do': 3 sg. karōti. There is some uncertainty in interpreting the forms from the roots in -n, since it is possible to argue that here the suffix is really no/nu before which a stands for y appearing in the reduced form of the root (tṛ-neu-ti). On the whole it seems preferable to adopt the simpler theory, and evidence for it may be seen in the existence of Vedic tarute which appears to be exactly parallel to manutē.

The other important root classed here, namely kr- 'to do' (karōti, kurutē) also presents a problem because both the Vedic language and Iranian agree in inflecting it as a nu-verb (V. kṛnōti, kṛnutē, Av. kṛṇaṇoītī, O. Pers. akunavam <aṅkNavam). This might suggest that the classical forms are 'prakritisms', but this is rendered implausible by the fact that a phonetic development of r to ar is wholly anomalous in Middle Indo-Aryan (cf. tṛṇa- 'grass'> lāṇa-, tiṇa, etc., and Pkt. kunaḥ from the Vedic form of the verb). The formation must therefore be regarded as a genuine and ancient dialect variant formed, like tarute, with the simple suffix u, which also appears in the Vedic noun kariṇa- nt. 'action'. The weak form of the root presents some complication since normally either complete reduction (kṛ-) or restoration of guṇa as in tarute might be expected. Since suffixal n which produces the combination -ur- in the weak grade elsewhere (gurū-, etc.) is here out of the question, the only theory that remains to explain the form of the weak grade is the assumption that the root originally began with a labio-velar. The form kur- may then be classed with those survivals where this labial element is found to function as a vowel (Gk. γυνή, Hitt. kunanzi, etc., see p. 74). As to the etymology it seems that the IE root kṛel- diverged in Indo-Iranian, consequent on the second palatalisation, to produce two roots, on the one hand an intransitive ca-r- 'to move, go', and on the other hand a transitive kṛ- 'to do, make'.

The u of the suffix of this verb is always omitted in those
cases where such omission is optional in the nu-verbs (kurmds, etc.). It is also omitted in the active of the optative: kurvyam as opposed to kurvīyā. These may be radical formations incorporated in this conjugation.

The nā- Class (Ninth or krī- class)

Present, Active, S. i krīṇāmi, 2 krīṇāsī, 3 krīṇāti, D. i krīṇīvās, 2 krīṇīthās, 3 krīṇīlās, P. i krīṇīmās, 2 krīṇīthā, 3 krīṇīnti.

Middle, P. i krīṇe, 2 krīṇēse, 3 krīṇētē, D. i krīṇēvāhe, 2 krīṇētēthe, 3 krīṇēte, P. i krīṇēmāhe, 2 krīṇēdhvē, 3 krīṇēte.

Imperfect, Active, S. i ákrīṇām, 2 ákrīṇās, 3 ákrīṇāt, D. i ákrīṇīva, 2 ákrīṇīlām, 3 ákrīṇīntam, P. i ákrīṇimā, 2 ákrīṇīta, 3 ákrīṇan.

Middle, S. i ákrīṇi, 2 ákrīṇīthās, 3 ákrīṇīta, D. i ákrīṇīvahi, 2 ákrīṇīthām, 3 ákrīṇītēm, P. i ákrīṇimahi, 2 ákrīṇidhvam, 3 ákrīṇata.

Some fifty roots all told make presents according to this class. Typical examples are: krīṇāti 'buys' (cf. Ir. crenaid), lināti 'sticks, adheres to' (cf. Ir. lenaid 'id'), śṛṇāti 'smashes' (cf. Ir. ara' chrinat 3 pl. 'collapse'), jināti 'inflicts loss', mṛṇāti 'crushes', pṛṇāti 'fills', etc.

The suffix is compounded of n and ā (-ah-), and these elements often appear separately in related formations. The n which appears in śṛṇāti appears in connection with other elements in śaṇat and śaṇyātī. The ā-suffix without n appears in a number of parallel formations in -āya-: grbhāyāti, mathāyāti, skabhāyāti beside grbhānāti, etc. The ā is often partially incorporated in the roots, e.g. in āyā- 'to inflict loss' and pṛā- 'to fill' beside the presents jināti, pṛṇāti; cf. the same process, though more-complete, in śru-/śro beside śṛṇōti. With the addition of the weak form of the suffix roots in ā, u and ū become roots in ā, ū, and ū. This is how they are normally given and how they normally appear outside the present system: pṛūā- 'pleased', pūtā- 'purified' (; pūnāti), pūrnā- 'full' (; pṛnāti).

In the tense there are two kinds of treatment: (a) the unextended form of the root appears before -nā-, e.g. jināti, pūnāti, mṛṇāti; (b) the extended form of the root is introduced even into this formation, e.g. pṛṇāti, bhṛṇāti, a process which is found only in the case of roots in ā. The root viṇī- 'to press down' makes both types and Pali has kīṇāti 'buys' (corresponding to the Celtic form) as opposed to Skt. krīṇāti.
THE VERB

The alternation between the strong form of the suffix -nā- with -ni- in the weak cases is not found outside Sanskrit. In Greek there is alternation between long and short vowel, δάνει·, δάνειν. In Avestan complete loss of ā in the weak grade, which is the regular Indo-Iranian phonetic development, is found: 3 sg. mid. vorontē, ōstontē. In Sanskrit this type is replaced by one containing an extra suffix -i-, in a way similar to that observed in the third class, e.g. vrṇitē having the same relation to Av. vorontē as Skt. mimitē, etc., to dattē. This ī is only introduced before the consonantal terminations; before vowels the simple reduced form of the suffix is found: jāntē, cf. A. zānaitē.

Nasal-infixing Class (Seventh, rudh-class)

Present, Active, S. 1 yunājmi, 2 yunākṣi, 3 yunākti, D. 1 yuṇīvās, 2 yuṇkthās, 3 yuṇktās, P. 1 yuṇjmās, 2 yuṇkthā, 3 yuṇ-jānti.

Middle, S. 1 yuṇjē, 2 yuṇkṣē, etc. . . . P. 2 yuṇgdhvē, 3 yuṇjāte.

Imperfect, Active, S. 1 āyunajam, 2 āyunak, 3 āyunak, D. 1 āyuṇīva, etc. . . . P. 3 āyuṇjan.

Middle, S. 1 āyuṇji, 2 āyuṇkthās, etc. . . . P. 3 āyuṇjata.

About thirty roots inflect in this manner. Common examples are: rinākti ‘leaves’ (Lat. linqō), chid- ‘cut’, chinatti (Lat. scindo), bhid- ‘split’, bhinatti (Lat. findo), piš- ‘crush’, pinaštī (Lat. pinso), aṅj- ‘anoint’, anākti (Lat. unguo), bhuj-, bhunākti ‘benefits’, bhunktē ‘enjoys’ (Lat. fungor).

In most languages outside Indo-Iranian the strong forms have been replaced by the weak forms, and the whole type transferred to the thematic class. The same tendency is seen in Skt. vindāti finds as opposed to Av. vinasti, and in the later history of Indo-Aryan such forms completely replace the older type (Pa. yuṇjati, etc.). In Hittite the corresponding class has a double nasal infix and no apophony, e.g. ḫarnink- ‘to destroy’; both these features are special developments of Hittite, out of the regular IE type which Sanskrit preserves.

This type appears superficially to be different from the two preceding types, the present stem being made by infixation instead of suffixation. Ultimately they are not really different, since in most of the roots of this class, the final consonant can be interpreted as an extension, that is to say originally a suffix which in course of time has become incorporated in the root.
Beside the root yuj- ‘to join’ for instance there is also a simpler root yu- (yuduti) with the same meaning. Evidence of the same kind is available in the case of a number of roots: e.g. chid- ‘to cut’, cf. chyāti ‘cuts’, chitā- ‘cut’; ric- ‘to leave’, rinākti, cf. rināti ‘lets flow’; trd- ‘to pierce’, trṇātti, cf. trṇa- ‘grass’, Engl. thorn; kri- ‘to spin’, kṛṇātti, cf. Lat. colus ‘distaff’. In such cases the analysis of the forms of this class is the same as of those of the other two nasal classes: 5 kl-n-ēw-ti (śrṇōti), 9 pl-n-ēt-ti (prṇāti), 7 yu-n-ēg-ti (yunākti).

At the same time not all forms can be explained in this way, e.g. anākti ‘anoints’. Once the infixing class was established through the incorporation of the second suffix, it attracted a certain number of other roots which did not belong to the original nucleus.

B. Thematic Presents

Radically Accented Class (First or bhu-class)

Present, Active, S. 1 bhāvāmi, 2 bhāvasi, 3 bhāvati, D. 1 bhāvāvas, 2 bhāvathas, 3 bhāvatas, P. 1 bhāvāmas, 2 bhāvatha, 3 bhāvanti.

Middle, S. 1 bhāve, 2 bhāvase, 3 bhāvate, D. 1 bhāvāvahe, 2 bhāvethe, 3 bhāvete, P. 1 bhāvāmahe, 2 bhāvadhve, 3 bhāvante.

Imperfect, Active, S. 1 ābhavam, 2 ābhavas, 3 ābhavat, D. 1 ābhavāva, 2 ābhavatam, 3 ābhavalam, P. 1 ābhavāma, 2 ābhavata, 3 ābhavan.

Middle, S. 1 ābhave, 2 ābhavathās, 3 ābhavata, D. 1 ābhavāvahi, 2 ābhavetēm, 3 ābhavetām, P. 1 ābhavāmahi, 2 ābhavadhvan, 3 ābhavaṇta.

This is the commonest of all the present classes in Sanskrit, being formed by nearly half of the verbal roots in the language. The predominance of thematic formations is paralleled in the nominal stems, and it recurs in other IE languages. Direct equations between Sanskrit and other languages, attesting IE forms, are commoner in this class than anywhere. Examples are: plāvate, prāvate ‘floats’, Gk. πλέω; srāvati ‘flows’, Gk. ρέω; svānati ‘sounds’, O. Lat. sonit; stānati ‘roars’, Gk. στένει; bhārati ‘beats’, Gk. φέρω, Lat. fero, Goth. bairiþ, Ir. berid, O. Sl. bereti; cárati ‘goes’, Gk. πελώμαι, Lat. colo; bōdhati ‘understands’, Gk. πειθομαι; jósate ‘enjoys’, Gk. γειώμαι ‘taste’, Goth. hinisiþ ‘tests, chooses’; rōdhati, rōhati ‘grows’, Goth. liudip; ṭsatī ‘burns’, Gk. εώ, Lat. úro;
vārtate 'turns', Lat. vertitur; párdate 'breaks wind', Gk. πέρδηται; sárpa'ti 'creeps', Gk. ἔρπετε, Lat. serpit; yásati 'seethes', Gk. ζέω; vāhāti 'carries', Gk. Pamph. Féxω, Lat. vehit, O. Sl. vezetū; vásati 'dwells', Goth. wiṣip 'is'; násate 'resorts to', Gk. νέομαι 'return', Goth. ganisip 'is saved'; mágjati 'plunges', Lat: mergit; trátsati 'trembles', Gk. τρέω; pátati 'flies', Gk. πέτομαι; sthágati 'covers', Gk. στύγει, Lat. legit; sácate 'associates with', Gk. ἑπταται 'follows', Lat. sequitur 'id'; dāhāti 'burns', Lith. degū; pácati 'cooks', Lat. coquit, O. Sl. pecetu; tāksati ' (carpenter) joins, constructs; hews', Lat. texit 'weaves'; hāvate 'calls', Av. zavaiti, O. Sl. zovetū; ājati 'drives', Gk. ἀγεῖ, Lat. agit, Ir. ad · aig; ānati 'breathes' (beside āniti), Goth. uzanip 'breathes out, expires'.

The majority of roots conform to the normal type, the stem consisting of the accented and gáunated root followed by the thematic vowel. In a small number of verbs wṛddhi instead of guna is found: bādhate 'repels', bhrájate 'shines', dhāvati 'runs' (Gk. θέω with gáuna grade), krámati 'strides' (beside middle krámate), ācāmāti 'sips'. The class is augmented by a number of varied thematic formations with accent on the root or first syllable which did not originally belong here: e.g. (1) a form with infixed nasal, nísdati 'blames' (cf. níá- 'contempt, insult', Gk. ὅνειδος); formations of this type are commoner in the sixth class; (2) forms with a suffix -va: jīvati 'lives', tārāvati 'overcomes', etc.; in such cases it can be seen from the apophony that the initial accent is not original; (3) stems containing the IE inchoative suffix -skeʃsko- (> ccha-) with secondary radical accent: gácchati 'goes' (cf. Gk. βάσκε, impv.) yácchati 'holds'; (4) reduplicated thematic formations: tīshhati 'stands' (stha-), cf. Lat. sistit, śibati 'drinks' (pā-), Ir. ibid, jīghrati 'smells' (ghrā-); in śidati 'sits', Lat. sīdo (IE sīzd- from sed-) the normal phonetic development would have given d in Sanskrit, but d appears here through the influence of other parts of the conjugation.

Suffixally Accented Class (Sixth or tud- class)

This and the following two classes are conjugated in exactly the same way as the preceding. The sixth class is fairly common, something like 150 roots being conjugated in this way. Typical examples: nūjāti 'breaks', viśdīti 'enters', tudāti
THE VERB

'pushes', *disáti* 'points out', *mṛśáti* 'strokes', *spṛśáti* 'touch', *suváti* 'drives', *kírāti* 'scatters', *śṛjáti* 'lets go'. In contrast to Sanskrit this type is rare in most of the IE languages, because the preceding class has become normal for thematic verbs. In Greek this type of stem is found usually only in aoristic use, where its contrasts in apophony with the normal thematic presents, *φεύγω* : *εφυγόν*. In such presents of this type as can be found the accent has been transferred to the root (*γλίφω*).

A fairly common sub-class here is formed by roots taking an infixed nasal: *siścáti* 'sprinkles', *muścáti* 'releases', *vindáti* 'finds', *kṛntáti* 'cuts', *lumpáti* 'breaks', *limpáti* 'smears'. Some are obvious transfers from the seventh class, e.g. *unádti*, *yuśjáti* beside *unálli*, *yunákhti*, and it is possible that the whole series arose in this way.

The accented suffix *-cchá*- (IE *-ske-*) appears in *iccháti* 'wishes', *uccháti* 'shines', *ṛccháti* 'goes' (roots *iś-, vaś-, ṛ*). In *prccháti* 'asks' (Lat. *poscit*) it has been incorporated into the root (pf. *papráccha*), but the unextended root appears occasionally in nominal derivatives: *praśná* 'question'.

Ya- Class (Fourth or div-class)

The fourth class contains some 130 roots which form their present by means of the suffix *ya*: e.g. *kúpyáti* 'is angry', *krúdhyáti* 'id', *túśyáti* 'is pleased', *yúdhyáti* 'fights', *vídhyáti* 'pierces' (*vyadh-*), *āiative* 'plays', *hrásyáti* 'rejoices', *tátýate* 'is hot', *páśyáti* 'sees', *nálhyáti* 'ties'. This suffix is also used in the formation of denominative verbs, and the form of the passive differs from the middle of this class only in having suffixed accent. The formation is found in Hittite (*wemiezzi* 'finds', *zaḥhiezzi* 'fights') and Greek (*μαίνεται* 'is mad', cf. Skt. *máñyáte* 'thinks', *βαίνω*, *στρίζω*, etc.). In Latin on the other hand non-thematic stems in *-i* appear instead of this type (*cupio, cupit* as opposed to Skt. *kúpyáti*). In Sanskrit the existence of a present *stáñyáti* 'thunders' (O. Sl. *stenjje*) beside the non-thematic *stánti* illustrates how the formation may arise by the thematic enlargement of an *i*-stem in the same way as in nominal stems ('*kraivi*': *kravya-* etc.). The apophony of the majority of forms indicates original suffixal accent, such as is found in the passive. On the other hand there are certain forms with *vrddhied* root, e.g.
mādyati ‘becomes intoxicated’, śrāmyati ‘becomes tired’, which must have had radical accent from the beginning, which makes it appear that there were originally two types combined in this class.

Certain roots in ā which belong here, e.g. gā- ‘to sing’ (gāyati), glā- ‘to be weary’ (glāyati), trā- ‘to save’ (trāyate) and dhyā- ‘to think’ (dhyāyati), are by the grammarians attached to the first class by the wholly unnecessary assumption of roots of the form gā-, etc. Since the roots are certainly to be set up as gā-, etc., these presents must be attached to this class, in which their form and accent are regular.

There are a number of roots in ā which lose this vowel before the accented suffix -yd-: da- ‘to bind’ (dāyati), chā- ‘to cut’ (chyāti), sā- ‘to sharpen’ (sāyati) and sā- ‘to bind’ (sāyati: cf. Hitt. ışıḫyā- ‘bind ’). They retain what must have been, as noted above, the original accent of this class, because the complete reduction of the radical syllable made impossible any shift of accent to the root.

The Tenth Class (cur- class)

The suffix is -dya-. This has normally been specialised in the formation of causative verbs, but it is not exclusively used for this purpose, and a nucleus of forms remain which belong to the primary rather than the secondary conjugation. In the language of the Veda there is a fairly clear distinction between presents in āya which do not have strengthening of the root (guna or vrddhi) in which a causative sense is usually absent, and those in which it is so strengthened which are normally causative. Examples of the former are: citāya- ‘notice, observe’, iṣāya- ‘flourish’, turāya- ‘hasten, speed’, dyutāya- ‘shine’, rucāya- ‘id’, subhāya- ‘be splendid’, mṛdāya- ‘pardon’, śṛṛhāya- ‘desire’, pādāya- ‘fly about’. Here belong originally such presents as hvāyati ‘calls’, śvāyati ‘swells’ and dḥ-āyati ‘sucks’, which the grammarians have attached to the first class by the assumption of the root forms śvi-, hve-, dhe-.

In the classical language the verbs classified here are more miscellaneous and they include a variety of formations of denominative or causative origin: e.g. kāmāyate ‘desires’, corāyati ‘steals’, chādāyati ‘covers’, avalokayati ‘looks upon’, dūṣāyati ‘spoils’, bhūṣāyati ‘adorns’, tādāyati ‘beats’, etc.
§ 9. The Future

The stem of the future is formed by means of the suffix -syá-, or, with connecting vowel -i-, -isyá- added to the gunätated root, and it is inflected in precisely the same way as the thematic presents: dásaýáti 'he will give', dhokṣyáti 'he will milk', bhaviṣyáti 'he will be', kariṣyáti 'he will do', etc. There are no simple rules by which the distribution of the two forms can be stated. In Iranian there exists a corresponding formation in -syá- (Av. vaxṣyá 'I will say'), but none corresponding to -isyá-. The same formation appears in Lithuanian: duosių 'I will give'. On the other hand the Greek future (déxéω, etc.) appears to be based on a simple so-stem. In the early period of the Sanskrit language the future tense is comparatively rare, as it is in the Avesta, the sense of the future being most usually expressed by the subjunctive, but it rapidly becomes more common.

The future is a specialised type of present stem and it belongs with the various denominative formations in -yá-. It is capable of forming a preterite in the same way as the present stems proper. This formation functions as a conditional: yad evam návaksyó mürdhá te vyapátiṣyat 'If you had not spoken in this way, your head would have fallen off'. Only one example of the conditional is found in the Ṛgveda and it is never very common during any period of the language.

In addition to the ordinary future Sanskrit created a second or periphrastic future based on the agent nouns in -tar. In the third person the nom. sg., du. and pl. of such nouns functions as the second future without any addition: kartá, kartárau, kartáras. In the first and second persons forms of the verb 'to be' are added to the nom. sg. of agent noun, in the dual and plural as well as in the singular: kartásmi, kartási; kartásvas; kartásma: The function of the second future is to express the future in connection with some specified time: ēvo vraṣṭá 'it will rain tomorrow', etc. This type of future first begins to appear in the Brāhmaṇa period, and its use continues later, though it is never anything like as common as the first future. There was created also a corresponding middle, which, however, is exceedingly rare, since it appears to have been current in the living language for only a very limited period. The special middle forms, which exist only for the first and second persons,
are as follows: S. I kartāhe, 2 kartāse, D. I kartāsvahe, 2 kartāsāthe, P. I kartāsmāhe, 2 kartādhve.

§ 10. THE AORIST

The aorist is formed by seven different types of stem which fall clearly into two classes, non-sigmatic and sigmatic. Of the non-sigmatic types the root aorist (ādhāt) and the a-aor. (āruhat) do not differ in their formation from the imperfects of the corresponding present classes (āyat, ātudat). It has been pointed out that the two types of preterite, imperfect and aorist, have arisen by specialisation out of a system with undifferentiated preterite, and the continued existence of forms common to the two remains as an indication of this. The difference in function depends on whether a corresponding present exists or not. The reduplicating aorist is less closely connected with corresponding present stems and it has undergone special developments of its own, but it cannot be separated in origin from the reduplicating type of present. On the other hand the various aorist s-stems are formations which are confined to this use, with the rarest exceptions (Av. nāismī is a present from an s-aor. stem.)

The Root-Aorist

The root-aorist is abundantly represented in the Vedic language. The apophony differs from that which is regular in the imperfect in that ā in the root appears normally in all the persons of the active with the exception of the third person plural. The normal weak form of the root appears in the middle. Typical forms are: S. I āśravam, āgām, ākaram, 2 āgās, āsres, ākar (for ākars), 3 āsrot, āsthāt, ākar (for ākari, cf. Av. čūrta), D. 2 āgātam, ābhūtam 3 ākartaṃ, ādhatām, P. I ākarma, ādāma, āhema, 2 ākarta, āgāta, āhetana, 3 (a) ākran, ākṣan (ghas-), āgman, (b) ādhur, āsthur, ākramur.

Middle: S. I ākri, āyuji, 2 ākrthās, agathās, ayukthās, 3 ākṛta, āmata (maṇ-), āyukta, D. I ganvahi (gaṃ-), P. I āganmahī, āmanmahī (with strong form of root), ayujmahī, āhūmahī, 2 acidhvam, ayugdhvam, 3 (a) ākrata, āgmata, (b) ādṛśran, abudhran, (c) ādṛśram, abudhram.

The root aorist of the root bhū- (which is conjugated only in the active) is anomalous in having the weak grade throughout: ābhūvam, ābhūs, ābhūt, . . . ābhūta, ābhūvan.
Certain root aorists are attested as Indo-European by such correspondences as Skt. ásthāt, Gk. ἔτη; ἀγάτ, Gk. ἐβή; ἀγαμαμ, ἀγαν, ἀγατα, etc., cf. Arm. ekn 3 sg., Gk. βάτν 3 du.; 3 sg. mid. aksata, Gk. ὑεταρο; impv. kṣidhi 'destroy', cf. Gk. ἐφθεῖτο, φθίμενος. The anomalous form of the root aorist of bhū- reappears in Greek, 3 sg. ἐφʊ, etc. Occasionally what appears as root aorist in one language appears as imperfect in another, showing that the distribution of these radical stems between the two tenses was not completely settled in the IE period: Skt. áhata 3 sg. impf., cf. Gk. ἀπέθανεν (aorist); kṣēti 'dwell', Gk. κτίμενος (aorist stem); conversely Skt. ávṛta, aor. compared with Lat. vlt, present.

The Greek aorists of roots in long vowel that belong here show the weak form of the root in the plural of the active (ἐδομεν, ἔθεμεν) which is in contradistinction to Sanskrit (ādāma, ādhāma), but, since it conforms to the general pattern of verbal apophony, doubtless more original. The weak forms that appear in the middle (ἐδοτο, ἐθετο) are in accordance with the Sanskrit practice, but in the case of roots in a Sanskrit has, in accordance with its common practice, introduced the union vowel -i- into the middle forms to help out the conjugation: a-dh-i-thās, adhita; adithās, adita; ásthithās, asthīta, asthirān. In some cases the union vowel appears as í (cf. -i- in the present, brah-i-ti and elsewhere): a-dh-i-mahi, adīmahi (dā- 'to cut'), a-s-i-ta (sā- 'to sharpen '). It seems necessary also to assume such an -i- after such roots, in this case after the strong forms, in the optatives (active) of the root aorist: dheyaṁ, deyām, stheyaṁ, etc. (stāh-i-yā-, etc.), otherwise the roots should appear with ā (as yāyām, etc., of the present).

The phonetic tendencies which brought about the reduction of final consonant groups in the earliest Indo-Aryan strongly affected the 2 and 3 sg. active of the root aorist, producing forms which ceased to be grammatically clear and unambiguous: e.g. akar, or in the appropriate sandhis, akah, etc.; ānat for -nas+s and -nas+i; aghas 2 and 3 sg.; skan for skand-t, etc. In addition when the root terminates with an occlusive and the termination begins with one (abhakta, etc.) it is not possible to tell from the form itself the difference between root aorist and s-aorist, on account of the elision of s in such position. In the post-Vedic period the root aorist undergoes a rapid decline, and there is little doubt that this phonetic mutilation and the con-
sequent ambiguities were largely responsible for the development. All that remains of the root aorist in the classical language is the active inflection of certain roots in ā (ādāt, etc.) and of bhū- (abhūt).

In addition there are certain forms of the 2 and 3 middle of the root aorist (where the root terminates in a short vowel according to the grammarians) which in the later history of the language became heteroclitically attached to the s-aorist, e.g. we find 2 sg. āvṛthās and 3 sg. āvrta forming part of the same paradigm with 1 sg. āvṛṣi and 3 pl. āvṛṣata, etc. In the same way the middle forms quoted above from the roots dā-, dḥā-, sthā- with connecting vowel -i- are combined with -iṣ- aorist forms to produce a series like sg. 1 a-sth-iṣ-i, 2 ā-sth-iṣ-thās, 3 āsthīta.

The a- Aorist

The form and conjugation of the a-aorist agrees with the imperfect accented a-class: āsicam, āsicas, āsicat, etc., cf. ātudam, ātudas, ātudat, etc. The stems agree in apophony, and also in accent, in the comparatively rare instances where the unaugmented aorist forms bear the accent: S. 1 ruhām, 2 vidās, 3 dhrṣāt, vidāt, P. 3 dḥvasān, vidān, tyrpān; regularly in the participle tyrpānt- dhrṣānt-, śucānt-, etc., middle, śucāmāna- etc.

Correspondences with other languages attest the IE date of a number of such formations: āvidat, Gk. ἴδου, inf. ἴδεῖν, Arm. egit; ḍyṣan, Gk. ēdrakōn; āricat, cf. Gk. ἐλποῦ, Arm. ēlik’; budhanta, cf. Gk. ἐπνύθοντο. At the same time there is sometimes disagreement between languages in the assignment of a form to imperfect or aorist: Skt. ādaṣat impf.: Gk. ēdrakōn aor.; Skt. ābhujat impf.: Gk. ἐφυγε aor. The suffixal accent is retained in Greek in participles and infinitives (λιπών, λιπεῖν).

In addition to the regular type there are a number of a-aorists in Sanskrit whose form agrees rather with imperfects of the first class rather than of the sixth class since they have gūṇa of root: e.g. āsakam, āsanam, āsaram, ākaras, āgamat, atanat, āsada. This is the normal form of the a-aorist for roots consisting of two consonants and the thematic vowel. Furthermore where accent occurs these forms are accented like stems of the first present class. Examples of this are kāras, sānat, sārat, dārṣam (= the Gk. present stem δέρκομαι), gāman,
sādatam, sādatam, and the participles sādant-, sānant (these have also contaminated the regular type above to some extent, so that forms accented like rūhat occur occasionally).

A number of the stems listed here are probably thematisations of root aorists, and not ancient. For instance the a-aorist āgamat appears later in the history of the language than the root aorist agan. On the other hand some are clearly old (e.g. āsadat), and since the type appears also in Greek (ἐγένετο, γένεθα) it must be referred to Indo-European.

The a-aorist has attracted a number of reduplicated forms which did not originally belong to it, namely āpaptat (pat-' to fall'), āvocat (for avavc-, vac-' to speak') and, with what in the perfect becomes a substitute for reduplication, nešat (naš- 'to perish').

Reduplicated Aorist

Active, S. 1 āḍiḍjanam, 2 ṛiḍjanas, 3 āḍiḍjanat... P. 3 āḍiḍjanan. Middle, S. 1 āḍiḍjane, 2 āḍiḍjanathās, 3 āḍiḍjanata... P. 3 āḍiḍjananta. The typical reduplicating vowel of this is ī but the reduplication is subject to the following modifications: (1) If the root begins with two consonants short ī is employed in reduplication: ācikśipat, āpisprṣat. (2) If the root vowel is u the reduplicating vowel is ū or ū under the same circumstances: abūbudhat, acukrudhat. (3) If the root is a heavy syllable two processes are found: (a) the root is unaltered and the reduplication is short: ādiddikṣam, abubhūsam; where the radical vowel is a followed by two consonants or long ā the reduplicating vowel is a: addadakṣam, addadhāvam; (b) in order to preserve the rhythm favoured in this aorist heavy roots may be weakened: avīvaśam (vāś-), acikradat (krand-). It is in accordance with this principle that roots appear either with guṇa or in the weak form: āḍiḍjanat but avīrydhat. Verbs which make a causative stem in -ūp- substitute -ip- in the reduplicated aorist: atiśṭhipat (śhāpayati). (4) Roots beginning with a vowel are found either to repeat the whole root (āmamat) or, later, to repeat the last consonant with i (ārpiṇat).

In the Vedic language there are a number of non-thematic forms attached to the reduplicated aorist: āṭīgar, asīśnat, dīṛdhār, etc. These represent an alternative type of the reduplicated aorist which was early abandoned owing to the prevalence of the thematic type.
The reduplicated aorist stands out from the other forms of aorist because it is attached not to the simple verb but to the causative; ājijanat is the aorist of janāyati, āvivṛdat of vardhāyati and so forth. Such an aorist is therefore made from all roots which have causatives, in addition to their normal aorists. This arrangement is essentially a development of Indo-Aryan, though its roots go back to Indo-Iranian. The other IE languages have nothing which can strictly be compared. In form the stem of the reduplicated aorist is related to the reduplicating present (bibharti), and more closely to the thematic variety of the same (tiṣṭhati; Gk. γενομαι; Lat. gignit, sistit) but it has developed features of its own, namely the length of the reduplication and the guna of the root in certain forms (ajijanat). The transitive sense which is observable in some of the related stems with this type of reduplication (Lat. gignit, etc.) has been generalised and eventually developed into a full causative.

Related Iranian forms provide some interesting information about the history of this formation, because it has also present stems formed in the same way: zīzanenti 3 pl., etc. (also non-thematic zīzanenti 3 sg., cf. the Skt. type ajīgar). From this it is possible to conclude that originally this was a type of stem forming both present and preterite in the manner of the various formations of the present system. The aorist, it has been observed, came about by the specialisation of certain preterite formations, and this is a case in point. To begin with we may assume two pairs *jījanati: ājījanat and janāyati: ājanayat having essentially the same sense. In the further development janāyati comes to be exclusively used in the present and ājījanat originally simple preterite (= imperfect) becomes when isolated integrated into the aorist system.

There are a few roots in the classical language which take this aorist as part of their primary conjugation, e.g. aśiśriyāt and adudruvat from sṛi- 'to resort' and dru- 'to run'. There are further examples in the Veda (e.g. acikradat from krand- 'to roar') and also some non-thematic forms which are made exactly like imperfects of the reduplicating class: aśiśret, adudrot. Certain reduplicated stems which became attached to the a-aorist have already been mentioned. These continue the IE usage which had reduplicated aorists in primary function and none that were specifically causative: cf. Gk. ἐπεφνον, ἐκέκλετο, etc.
The s-Aorist

Active, S. i ánaíśam, 2 ánaíśis, 3 ánaíśit, D. i ánaíśva, 2 ánaíśtam, 3 ánaíśtam, P. i ánaíśma, 2 ánaíśta, 3 ánaíśur.

Middle, S. i áneśi, 2 áneśṭhās, 3 áneśta, D. i áneśvahi, 2 áneśañāhām, 3 áneśātām, P. i áneśmahi, 2 áneśdhvam, 3 áneśata.

The s-aorist stem differs from other verbal stems in having the vrddhi grade throughout the active, in the dual and plural as well as in the singular. In the middle roots with medial vowel i, u, r appear in the weak form (acchitsi, árutsi, ásrksi); also roots in final r (ákṛṣi) and in the Veda certain roots with final nasal, e.g. ágasmahi from gam- and masiya opt. i sg. from man- (cf. Av. māhmaidī). Elsewhere there is guṇa. The subjunctive takes guṇa in both active and middle (stośāni, etc.) and this is extended to certain injunctive forms (jēṣma).

Before terminations beginning with occlusive when the root ends in such the s of this aorist is elided according to the usual phonetic rule: arođh-s-ta becomes arođhāha, etc. This leads to some confusion between this aorist and the root aorist, but this is largely eliminated in the post-Vedic period by the disuse of the root aorist except in connection with very few roots. Phonetic decay also strongly affected the 2 and 3 sg. active, with the result that both the tense sign s and the terminations frequently disappear: abhār for abhār-s-t and abhār-s-s, similarly araik, aśvait, etc. In the post-Vedic period these inconvenient and ambiguous forms are abandoned and their place is taken by new formations taking the connecting vowel -i-: ánaíśit, ácchaitśit, etc.

The s-aorist and the other forms of sigmatic aorist are sharply distinguished from the other classes of aorist in that there are no present-imperfect stems formed in the same way. There are indeed in the Veda certain isolated forms of the present made in this way (stuśē, hiśe, krṣe) as well as some anomalous formations containing s which cannot be referred to the s-aorist stem (i arcase, rṇjase, ii grṇiśe, puniśe) but these have the appearance of being tentative formations which never developed very far rather than relics of an earlier system.

The s-aorist is found in Greek (ἐξείρα, ὀδείρα, etc.) and Slavonic (věšū, sluchū, etc.). In Latin s-aorist forms have coalesced with perfect forms to make one tense (perf. dīxī, dūxī, etc.). In Irish injunctive and subjunctive forms of the
s-aorist are retained (the s-subjunctive). No trace of it appears in Germanic. Radical vrddhi is attested for the vowel e by Latin and Slavonic (Lat. vēxī, O. Sl. vēsū: Skt. āvākṣam from vah-); for roots in diphthongs there is no clear evidence. In Hittite there is no s-aorist any more than any other kind of aorist, but there are certain preterite forms in the 2 and 3 singular which have final -ś: 2 sg. da-a-aś 'you took', tarna-a-ś 'you put in', da-iś 'you placed', pa-iś 'you gave'; 3 sg. da-a-aś 'he took', da-a-iś 'he placed', ag-ga-aś 'he died', etc. These forms consist of the verbal stem enlarged by the suffix -ś and have no personal ending proper, and beside them there are forms to which the personal terminations have been secondarily added: 2 sg. da-iś-ta beside da-iś, 3 sg. na-iś-ta 'lead' beside na-i-iś. These forms are compared to the s-aorist of other IE languages, but it seems unlikely that they are simply remains of a fully developed IE s-aorist system. In the first place we have seen reason to believe that the aorist in general has arisen by specialisation out of an undifferentiated preterite, and in this respect Hittite should represent an earlier state of affairs. Furthermore there is some agreement between Hittite and Tocharian on this point, since the latter language has also a certain type of preterite using an s-stem in the 3 sg.: A. prākās, B. preksa 'he asked', and this coincidence does not seem to be fortuitous. Bearing these considerations in mind we may perhaps rather explain the IE s-aorist to be a post-Hittite formation based on the extension to the whole paradigm of an s-suffix which was originally restricted to the preterite of certain persons (notably the 3 sg.) of one class of verbs.

The iś-Aorist

Active, S. i śāpaviśam, 2 śāpāvīṣ, 3 śāpāvīt, D. i śāpāvisva. . . . Pl. 3 śāpāvisur; Middle S. i śāpaviśi, etc. . . . P. 3 śāpaviśata.

This aorist has in the active vrddhi of the root if it terminates in a vowel (śāpaviśam, śāraviśam, śāsāviśam) and guṇa in the case of medial i, u, r (ārociśam, etc.). Both types occur from roots with medial a: ākāniśam; āvadhit. In the middle the root has normally guṇa, but occasional forms with weak root occur: nudiśṭhas, (opt.) rućiśiya beside roćiśiya, gmiśiya, idhiśīnaih.

Just as the s-aorist is founded on certain s-stems which functioned as finite verbal forms, so the iś-aorist is formed on stems in the compound suffix -i-s, cf. arociśta beside roćiś-
THE VERB

'light'. To judge by the small number of such forms in Iranian (xšnaوتšā 'I will satisfy', čůštiš 'I expect') it was not to begin with very frequent, but it became more common in Indo-Aryan in accordance with the tendency that is observable everywhere with set forms of the verb. Several different but closely related types of formation have come to be associated with the ḫš-aorist. (1) The suffix -i- (as opposed to -iš- with short -i-) is used in the case of the root grabh- 'to seize': agrabhishma. (2) Non-sigmatic formations in -i- (compare abravī, etc., of the present system) appear: agrabhīm, avadhīm, agrhītām, agrhīthās. The normal 2 and 3 sg. of the ḫš-aorist is adapted from this formation, since -iš-s and -iš-t cannot phonetically produce -iš and -išt. (3) Some preterite stems in short -i- (compare presents of the type vamiti) have been incorporated in this aorist: atārima, avādiran, bādhithās, avitā, etc.

The isolated and anomalous vanušanta of the RV. is interesting because it is formed on the bases of an -uš- stem in the same way as this aorist is founded on -iš- stems, but unlike the ḫš-aorist it has never developed to form a system.

The aorist forms sthēšam, sthēšur, dešma, jñēšam, khyesam, etc., from roots in ā are best interpreted as regular ḫš-aorist forms (stah-iš-, etc.). There are corresponding middle forms with weak root as in the examples quoted above: asth-iš-i, asthišata, etc. With these are associated certain non-sigmatic forms which were mentioned in connection with the root aorist: asth-i-ta, etc.

The siš-Aorist

This aorist, which is inflected exactly like the preceding (āyāsišam, āyāsīs, āyāsīt, etc.) arises from a mixture of the two preceding. It is an innovation of Indo-Aryan, unknown to Iranian, and in the RV. it can be quoted only from two roots (gā- 'sing', yā 'go'). More examples are found later but it is never very common. In the classical language it is allowed to be made, in the active only, from roots in ā and nam- 'bow', yam- 'hold', ram- 'be content'.

The sa-Aorist

The sa-aorist has the normal thematic inflection and the weak root. The accent on unaugmented forms, when it occurs, is on the suffix (dhukśān) which is in accordance with the apophony. It is made only from roots containing a medial vowel
i, u, r and a final consonant which combines with the s of the suffix to produce -kṣ- e.g. ādikṣat, āmrkṣat, amrksanta, avrksam, adukṣat later adhukṣat from dis- 'point', mṛṣ- 'touch', mṛj- 'wipe', vrh- 'tear', dhu- 'milk'. It is rare in RV. (examples from 7 roots), which may suggest that it is an innovation, though from Iranian (O. Pers. niyapisam 'I wrote down') it appears to be of at least Indo-Iranian date. Nothing that can be exactly compared is found in the other IE languages.

The Passive Aorist in -i

There exists a passive aorist in -i, used only in the 3rd person singular, which is independent of any of the foregoing aorist stems: ājñāyi 'was known', ādarṣi 'was seen', etc. Unaugmented forms (which appear in both indicative and injunctive use) are always accentued on the root syllable: śrāvi, pādi, etc. Roots having i, u, r as medial vowel appear in the gūṣa grade (aceti, ḏboḍhi, asarji); elsewhere there is normally vrddhi (āgāmi, ākāri, āstāvi, āsrāyi), more rarely guna (ajaṇi, avadhi). The formation is taken by some 40 roots in the RV., to which others are added later. It appears also in Iranian (Av. srāvi, O. Pers. adāriy = Skt. śrāvi, ādhāri), but not elsewhere in Indo-European.

Neglecting the augment, which was a secondary and optional addition to preterite formations in Indo-European, it is clear that these forms are nothing more than old neuter i-stems, without any termination, which have been adapted to the verbal conjugation.

§ II. The Perfect

Active, S. 1 cakāra, cakāra, 2 cakārtha, 3 cakāra, D. 1 cakrva, 2 cakrathur, 3 cakratur, P. 1 cakryama, 2 cakra, 3 cakrur.

Middle, S. 1 cakrē, 2 cakṛṣē, 3 cakrē, D. 1 cakṛvāhe, 2 cakṛāthe, 3 cakrāte, P. 1 cakṛmahe, 2 cakṛdhvē, 3 cakrīrē.

The perfect is formed from the root stem but this is characterised by (1) reduplication and (2) a special series of endings. The general principles of reduplication have already been detailed (§ 5). Of the types there enumerated the one adopted for the perfect is that which uses the vowel a (IE e) in the reduplicating syllable, with the proviso that in Sanskrit (as opposed to Greek, etc.) i and u are substituted before roots which contain such a vowel (tatāna: pīpesa, bubhōja). Special features of the
perfect reduplication, in addition to those mentioned above are as follows: (1) There is a class of roots in the Veda which reduplicate with a long vowel: dādhāra, jāgāra, māmrajē, pīpāya, tūlāva. This is mainly intensive reduplication, but in some cases the a of the normal reduplication has coalesced with an element elsewhere lost before the beginning of the root, e.g. in the perfects of gr- 'to awake' and mrj- 'to wipe'; cf. Gk. ἐγείρω, ὄποργυμ. (2) Two roots in ū reduplicate with a instead of the usual u and in both this is associated with irregular weak form of root in the singular active: babhūva, sasūva from bhū- 'to be' and sū- 'to give birth'. (3) Roots beginning with a normally have ū- (a + u) in the perfect, e.g., āda, āsa from ad- 'to eat' and as- 'to be'. A different type appears in the perfect of aṇjj- 'to anoint' and as- 'to attain' (variant root forms aṃs-, nas-) where an n which forms part of the root is repeated in the reduplication: ānāṇja, ānajē; ānāṃsā, ānāsē (cf. Ir. t-ān-āic 'he came'). This spreads by analogy to other roots including a number beginning with r-: ānārca, ānarcē from re- or arc- to praise. (4) Roots beginning with i or u reduplicate with these vowels which in the strong forms of the active are prefixed to the guna grade of the roots with intervening -y- and -v- and in the weak grade coalesce with the radical vowels to form i and ū: iyēṣa, īṣē, uvōca, īcē from iṣ- 'to seek' and uc- 'to be accustomed'. (5) A similar type of reduplication appears in the case of one root beginning with ya- and a number beginning with va- which reduplicate with i and u. These coalesce with i- and u- in the weak forms of the root to produce i and ū: iyāja, ījē from yaj- 'to sacrifice' (weak form ij- in pass. ijjēte, etc.), uvōca, īcē from vac- 'to speak' (weak form uc- in ucyāte, uktā-, etc.); similar forms from vap- 'sow', vad- 'speak', vas- 'dwell' and vah- 'carry'. (6) Roots having a medial a before a single consonant, and beginning with a consonant that is unchanged in reduplication have the normal reduplication only in the strong forms: tālāna, pāpāta from ian- 'stretch' and pat- 'fall'; the weak forms of the perfect are made by substituting -e- for the a of the root: tenē, tenirē, pecē, pecūr. This is an innovation of Sanskrit which is by no means complete in the Vedic period; the more original forms which occur are V. paptima, iatne, mammāte, etc. The type originated in certain roots which acquired such form through normal phonetic development, notably sad- 'to sit' where sedir stands regularly
for earlier *sazdur (cf. Av. hazdyāt pf. opt.) and roots beginning with \( y- \) (\( \text{yemur} \) for *\( \text{yaymur} \)). (7) The root \( \text{vid} \- \text{‘know’} \) has no reduplication, and this is in accordance with the related languages: Skt. \( \text{vēda} \), Gk. \( \text{oīdā} \), Goth. \text{wait}, etc. There are a few other sporadic cases of unreduplicated perfect forms in the Veda, e.g. \( \text{takṣathur, takṣur, skambhathur, skambhur} \), and three perfect participles formed without reduplication: \( \text{ḍāśvās-‘pious’} \), \( \text{miḍhvās-‘liberal’} \) and \( \text{sāhvās-‘overpowering’} \).

In apophony the perfect follows the normal type of verbal inflection, that is to say the strong form of the root appears in the three singular persons of the active, the weak form elsewhere. Normally the strong grade is \( \text{guna} \) (\( \text{vavarta, cikēta, bubodha} \)) but wherever in the strong stem medial \( a \) appears before a single consonant (1 sg. act. \( \text{tatapa, bihāya, cakāra} \), etc.) \( \text{vrddhi} \) is substituted in the 3rd person sg., and in the later language optionally in the 1st: \( \text{tatapa, bihāya, cakāra} \), etc. This feature does not appear outside Indo-Iranian; the majority of the languages show \( \text{guna} \) only, and by general agreement the \( o \)-grade of the root: Gk. \( \text{γένοε} \), etc. Original \( o \)-grade is attested also by Sanskrit, since certain roots which have undergone the second palatalisation retain the original guttural in these perfect forms: \( \text{cikāya, cikēta, jīgāya, jaghāna from ci-‘gather’, ci-‘observe’, ji-‘conquer’ and han-‘slay’} \).

The weak forms of the root are the normal ones that result from the loss of the \( \text{guna} \) vowel: \( \text{cakrē, jaghnē, jagmūr, bubudhe} \), etc. Roots in \( ā \) lose this vowel altogether in the weak forms as generally (\( \text{da-dh-ur} \)), but before consonantal endings invariably insert the union vowel \( i \) (\( \text{dadh-i-re} \)) in contradistinction to the present. \( \text{Samprasāraṇa} \) appears in such roots as \( \text{vyadh-‘to pierce’} \) and \( \text{svap-‘to sleep’} \) (\( \text{vividhūr, suṣupur} \); their reduplicating vowel goes with this form). In some roots having nasal in the strong form the weak form is marked by the absence of this nasal: \( \text{cakradē from krand-‘to roar’} \). On weak stems of the type ten- see above.

For the personal terminations see § 6. There are not many complications. Instead of the normal endings roots in \( ā \) terminate in \(-au\) in the 1 and 3 sg. of the active: \( \text{dadaū, dadhau, tashāū, jajnāū from dā-‘to give’, dhā-‘to place’, sthā-‘to stand’, jnā-‘to know’} \) (for IE *\( \text{dedōh-}u \), etc., with \( \text{vrddhi} \) before laryngeal). The final \( u- \) element, which appears here in place of a personal termination, is found also in Latin, incor-
The verb


A feature of the perfect conjugation is the frequency with which the connecting vowel -i- appears before the terminations that begin with a consonant: 2 sg. bubōdhitha, r du. bubudhivā, r pl. bubudhīmā, ... 3 pl. mid. bubudhivē, etc. In the later language the -re of the 3 pl. mid. has it always. Before other consonantal endings except the 2 sg. act. it is taken by the vast majority of verbs. In the 2 sg. act. the anīt forms allowed are more numerous, and a number of roots take optionally either form, e.g. ninētha, nināyitha. Roots in ā have this option, but when taking -i- they appear in the weak form and the accent is transferred to the ending: dadātha, dadithā. In the Veda the use of the union vowel is less extensive than in the classical language. As a general rule it appears after roots ending in a consonant provided the last syllable of the stem is a heavy one: vivēditha, ucimā, paptimā, etc., as opposed to tatāntha, yuyujmā, etc. It is also taken by roots in -ā (dadimā, dadhimā) but the type dadithā of the 2 sg. is unknown to the early usage. In Iranian the use of the auxiliary vowel is exceedingly rare which makes it clear that in the main its employment in the perfect (as elsewhere in the verbal system) is an innovation of Indo-Aryan.

The perfect tense is widely represented in Indo-European, having been dropped only in Armenian and Balto-Slavonic. Perfects common to Sanskrit and other languages may be illustrated by such examples as the following: jajāna (jan- 'to beget'): Gk. γεγονε; dadārsa (drś- 'to see'): Gk. δέδορκε; cicchēda, cicchidē (chid- 'to split'): Lat. scicidī, Goth. skaikap; didēsa, didiše (diś-' to point out'): Gk. δεδεσα, δεδεσσα, Goth. ga-taih; rirēca, riricē (ric- 'to leave'), Gk. λειωσα, Lat. liquē, Goth. laiū; nineja, ninije (nij- 'to wash'), Ir. -nenaig; tutōda, tutudūr (tud- 'to push'), Lat. tutudī, Goth. staistau; vavārta (vrt- 'to turn'), Lat. vortī, vertī, Goth. warp; dadhārsa (dhrś- 'to be bold'), Goth. ga-dars; jaghāna (han- 'to slay'), Ir. r sg. -gegon, 3 sg. -gegoin.

In some languages, notably Latin and Germanic, the reduplication is not an essential part of the perfect formation. It occurs with certain roots and is absent in the case of others. This corresponds more nearly to the original state of affairs in IE. The reduplication was, to begin with, no more an essential
part of the perfect formation than was the augment of the aorist and imperfect. Its generalisation in Greek and Indo-Iranian is one of the many isoglosses that unite those two branches within the IE family. Even they preserve in *vēda* 'knows' the older type of non-reduplicating perfect.

Here, as elsewhere, Hittite shows greater divergence from the normal IE type. Hittite has no perfect, but a special type of present conjugation, the *hi*-conjugation, which has been compared with, and has certain features in common with, the normal IE perfect. At the same time the gap is not easy to bridge, since we have on the one hand a special tense with a sense of its own (state, result) which is made by most roots in addition to the present tense, and on the other hand a variant form of the present taken by certain roots. It is probable that in this matter Hittite is the major innovator, but it is not possible simply to derive the Hitt. *hi*-conjugation from a system corresponding to the IE perfect, because there are outside Hittite also certain present formations which go with it: notably (1) Skt. formations of the type *āduha* enumerated above, (2) the Gk. conjugation of thematic verbs (*lēw*, *lēyeis*, *lēyei*).

The perfect in Sanskrit and Greek conjugates in both active and middle. There is reason to believe that this is a secondary arrangement. In Sanskrit the middle endings of the perfect are in the main obvious imitations of the present, in marked contrast to the active endings which differ so markedly from those of the present. Furthermore it has already been pointed out that an active perfect not infrequently corresponds to a middle present, and that the endings of the active are more closely related to certain middle endings than to other active endings. All these indications lead us to believe that the existence of two voices in the perfect is of later origin than in other parts of the verbal system.

The evidence also points to the conclusion that the perfect did not at first have a corresponding preterite. Such forms of this kind as exist in several languages are to be classed as independent innovations. This applies both to Sanskrit and to Greek, and to a greater extent in the former, since while Greek did eventually develop a pluperfect with a meaning of its own, the forms classified as such in Sanskrit are in the main isolated and unstable formations which appear in the Vedic
language but are not used later. Such are sg. 1 ajagrabham, 3 ājagan, du. 2 anumuktam, pl. 3 ābībhayur, mid. pl. 3 ajag-miran. The distinction between these forms and the imperfect of the reduplicating class is not very clearly to be drawn. Their sense is normally that of simple preterites.

§ 12. INJUNCTIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

The so-called injunctive is no separate morphological category, but the term is applied to those unaugmented forms of the imperfect or aorist which are used with the force of subjunctive or imperative (§ 2). In the RV. the augmentless forms are more than half as common as the augmented and they may appear indifferently in preterite or injunctive use. Such forms occur from both imperfect and aorist stems, more frequently from the latter. In the later Atharvaveda the proportion of such forms occurring is noticeably less, and of those that do occur a greater part are formed from the aorist stem. In post-Vedic Sanskrit the injunctive disappears except in one construction. Prohibitions continue to be expressed by the use of mā in connection with unaugmented aorist forms: mā bhaśāḥ ‘do not be afraid’, mā gāh ‘do not go’, etc.

The subjunctive stem is formed by the addition of the vowel a to the indicative tense stem, the guṇated form of such a stem being employed if it exists: dōha-, juháva-, yunája-, etc., from the tense stems dōh-, juhó-, yunáj-. This a combines with the a of thematic stems to form long ā: bhāvā-, tudā-, ucyā-. The inflection of the subjunctive from non-thematic verbal stems is illustrated by the following paradigms :

Active, S. 1 āyāni, āyā, 2 āyasti, āyas, 3 āyati, āyat, D. 1 ayāva, 2 āyathas, 3 āyatás, P. 1 āyāma, 2 āyatha, 3 āyan.

Middle, S. 1 āsai, 2 āsase, āsāsei, 3 āsate, āsātei, D. 1 āsāvahai, āsāvaha, 2 āsaithe, 3 āsaite, P. 1 āsāmahai, āsāmahe, 2 āsadhve, āsadhvaie, 3 āsante, āsanta, āsāntai.

It will be observed that the endings of the subjunctive are partly secondary and partly primary. In 1 du., 1 pl. and 3 pl. of the active secondary endings are employed; in 2 and 3 du. and 2 pl. primary endings; in 2 and 3 sg. either primary or secondary endings are used. In the middle forms with secondary endings are rare, appearing normally only in the 3 pl.

The 1 sg. active has a special ending of its own, -āni, beside which in the earlier language simple -ā appears which is to be
compared to the -ō which appears in Greek in the subjunctive as well as in the active of the 1 sg. of thematic verbs (ἀγων). The 1 sg. middle ending -ai arises from the contraction of the a of the subjunctive stem with the -e of the termination. This -ai is then extended to other parts of the middle inflection and such eventually become the normal forms. This type of termination is preceded by the vowel ā even in subjunctives of non-thematic verbs.

The conjugation of subjunctives from thematic stems is the same as the above but based on a stem in ā arising from the combination of the a of the tense stem and the subjunctive a:

**Active, S.** 1 bhāvānī, 2 bhāvāsi, bhāvās, 3 bhāvāti, bhāvāt, D. 1 bhāvāva, 2 bhāvāthas, 3 bhāvātas, P. 1 bhāvāma, 2 bhāvāha, 3 bhavān.

**Middle, S.** 1 bhāvai, 2 bhāvāse, bhāvāsai, 3 bhāvāte, bhāvātai, D. 1 bhāvāvahai, 2 bhāvaithe, 3 bhāvaite, P. 1 bhāvāmahai, 2 bhāvādāvai, 3 bhāvāntai.

The subjunctive can be formed in the Vedic language from all three tense stems, present, aorist and perfect. This variety of formation is not matched by any variety of meaning, e.g. śṛṇavat, śravat and śuśravat all mean 'he will hear' or 'let him hear' and no sort of difference related to the tense stem appears between them. Aorist subjunctives are commonest from the root aorist (karat, gamat, yamat, varat; karati, jōsati, bhēdati, etc.) and from the s-aorist (jēsat, nēsat, matsat; nēsat, parsati, etc.); none are found from the sa-aorist. Examples of subjunctives from the perfect stem are jaghānat, jūjōsat, puspārśat; jūjōsat, dīḍēsat, būbodhati, etc.

The subjunctive remained in use during the later Vedic period (Brāhmaṇas and Upaniṣads), but, apart from the first persons which were incorporated in the imperative, it is extinct in the classical language.

A subjunctive corresponding in form and meaning to that of Sanskrit appears in Greek. Here the primary endings are exclusively used and the forms with long vowel associated with thematic stems have become predominant. The quality of this vowel (where Sanskrit has ā) varies in accordance with the variation in the indicative (ἀγωμεν, ἀγητε). Some old short vowel subjunctives are preserved as futures (ἐδομαί, πίομαι) and the simplest explanation of the s-future is that it is the subjunctive of the s-aorist. The Latin future erit corresponds to
the Skt. subjunctive *dsat(i)* and both Italic and Celtic have forms deriving from the s-aorist subjunctive (Lat. *faxo*, Osc. *deivast*, Ir. 1 sg. *-tias*, 3 pl. *-tiassat* from *tiagu* 'go'). These two groups have also an *a*-subjunctive which does not appear in Greek or Sanskrit.

The subjunctive is absent over a considerable part of Indo-European, and has the appearance of being a comparatively late formation. It can be plausibly explained as having grown out of the injunctive, certain forms of which developed into an independent system. The hesitation between primary and secondary endings in Sanskrit represents a transition from an earlier system in which the endings were secondary (as in the injunctive) and a new one in which primary endings are applied as being more appropriate to its predominantly future meaning. This transition has been completed in Greek. Of the short and long vowel subjunctives the former is the earlier and more original. The addition of the thematic suffix to a stem already provided with such is without parallel elsewhere in IE stem formation, and its presence here is due to the analogy which created *bhavā-*, etc., having the same relation to *bhava- as asa-* to *as-*.

§ 13. The Imperative

Active, S. 1 *bhāvāni, āyāni*, 2 *bhāva, ihī, 3 bhāvatu, ētu*, 2 *bhāvatam, itām*, 3 *bhāvatam, itām*, P. 1 *bhāvāma, āyāma*, 2 *bhāvata, itā, 3 bhāvantu, yāntu*.


This paradigm is composite. The first persons in the three numbers are properly subjunctive forms. Injunctive forms are employed in 2 and 3 du. and 2 pl. Specific imperative forms
occur in 2 sg. and 3 sg. and pl. In the 2 sg. the stem of thematic verbs functions as imperative without any addition in Sanskrit as in the related languages: bhára, Av. bara, Gk. φερε, Arm. ber, Goth. bair, Ir. beir; prcchá 'ask', Lat. posce; ája 'drive', Gk. ἀγε, Lat. age, etc. With non-thematic verbs the ending is -hi, originally -dhi: ihí 'go', Av. idī, Gk. ἵθι. The original-dhi appears in Sanskrit after consonantal stems (vídhi 'know', Gk. ἴδη, dugdhi 'milk', etc.) and occasionally elsewhere, edhí for *azdhi (cf. Av. zdī) from as- 'to be', juhudhi from hnu- 'to sacrifice'. The Veda has further examples: śṛṇudhi 'hear', gadhi 'go', vṛdhí 'cover'.

The forms of the 3 sg. and pl. are made by the addition of a particle -u to the secondary endings: bhávat-u, etc. Corresponding forms occur in Hittite: 3 sg. eštu: Skt. ástu, kunedu, Skt. hántu; 3 pl. ašandu, Skt. sántu; kunandu, Skt. ghnántu, etc. In the hi-verbs which have no t-ending in the 3 sg. present, this element u appears alone in the 3 sg. impv.: aku, aru from ak- 'to die', ar- 'to arrive', 3 sg. pres. aki, ari.

In the middle the termination of the 2 sg. is -sva. A corresponding formation is found only in Iranian: baranyuha, Skt. bhárasvā; korošvā, Skt. kṛśvā, etc. This -sva is considered to be the stem of the reflexive pronoun. The 3 sg. and pl. are made by the addition of -am to the secondary endings and here too corresponding forms are found only in Iranian, vərəzyatam, xraosontam. The few verbs which have inflections without t in the 3 sg. active (e.g. duhé, áduha) keep this feature in the 3 sg. impv.: duhám, sayám. In the 3 pl. they have -rám with r as in the indicative: duhrám, cf. 3 pl. mid. duhré. Compromise forms are duhratam and šeratam.

Beside the normal endings above there appears, particularly in the earlier language an ending -tāl. This is indifferent to the distinction between active and middle and it appears most frequently used as 2 sg.: brūtāt 'say', dhattāt 'put', dhāvatāt 'run', vīttāt 'know', etc. It may also be used for other persons and numbers: 1 sg. jagrātām ahām 'let me keep awake', 3 sg. rájā mūrdhānam vi pātayatāt 'let the king cause his head to fall off', 2 pl. āpāh... devēśu nāh sukṛto brūtāt 'O waters, announce us to the gods as well-doers'. In the later language the use as 3 sg. tends to preponderate, but the total of examples as compared with the earlier language is small.

This form of imperative appears also in Greek (as 3 sg.) and
THE VERB

in Latin (as 2, 3 sg.): *iōtō 'let him know', Skt. vittāt, δότω, ἵτω, ἵτω, etc.; Lat. vehītō, Skt. vāhatāt, poscitō, habētō, estō, etc., O. Lat. estōd, etc., cf. Osc. likitūd, estud.

In the Veda there are certain 2 sg. forms in -si with imperative value: dhākṣi 'burn', yākṣi 'worship', pārṣi 'cross', prāṣi 'fill', śrōṣi 'hear', etc. The termination is identical with that of the 2 sg. indic. pres., but these imperatives are quite clearly distinguished because the presents are differently formed (dāhasi, śṛṇoṣi, etc.). One corresponding form is quoted from Avestan: dōīši 'show' from daēs-.

In the classical language the imperative forms are from the present stem. In the Vedic language imperatives may be made from all three stems, present, aorist and perfect, and, as in the case of the other moods, no difference of meaning appears between them. Examples of aorist imperatives are: krāhī, śrūdhī, gahi, gantu, yuksvā; sada, sāna, sadatu; vocatāt, vocatu; of perfect imperatives, cikīddhi, mumugdhī, śaśādhi, dīdesthī, vavṛtṛsva. It should be noted that imperatives are not normally made from the s-aorist. There are a few formations such as 2 sg. neṣa, 3 sg. neṣatu and 3 sg. mid. rāsaṭām which are all thematic formations and therefore cannot properly be attached to the s-aorist.

§14. OPTATIVE AND PRECATIVE

Non-thematic:
Active, S. 1 duhyām, 2 duhyās, 3 duhyāt, D. 1 duhyāva, 2 duhyātam, 3 duhyātām, P. 1 duhyāma, 2 duhyāta, 3 duhyār.
Middle, S. 1 duhiyā, 2 duhīthās, 3 duhītā, D. 1 duhīvāhi, 2 duhīvāthām, 3 duhīvātām, P. 1 duhīvāma, 2 duhīvāvāma, 3 duhīrān.

Thematic:
Active, S. 1 bhāveym, 2 bhāves, 3 bhāvet, D. 1 bhāvema, 2 bhāvetam, 3 bhāvētām, P. 1 bhāvema, 2 bhāveta, 3 bhāveyur.
Middle, S. 1 bhāvaya, 2 bhāvethās, 3 bhāveta, D. 1 bhāvevahi, 2 bhāvevathām, 3 bhāvevātām, P. 1 bhāvemahi, 2 bhāvedhvam, 3 bhāveran.

The non-thematic inflection of the optative differs in apophony from the usual system. The strong form of the suffix is not confined to the three singular persons of the active, but extended to all the active with the exception of the 3 pl. That
this is an innovation is clear from Latin which preserves two
grades in the case of the verb ' to be ': O. Lat. siem, siet for
later sim, sit beside simus. A similar extension of the strong
forms was observed in the case of roots in -ā: r pl. pres. yānas
' we go ', aor. ādhāma ' we placed '. In the thematic classes the
diphthongal stem of the optative (bhāres, bhāret, etc. = Gk.
phēpos, phēpoi, Goth. bairais, bairai) is formed by contraction
of the thematic suffix and the weak form of the optative suffix
(o + ā).

The terminations of the optative are mainly the normal
secondary terminations. The r sg. middle has a special ending
which has been noticed (§ 6), and the -ran of the 3 pl. appears in
a minority of preterite forms (āduhran, etc.). The anomalous
Vedic 3 sg. duhiyāt (after which 3 pl. duhiyān) seems to be based
on *duhiyā formed without -t- after the fashion of the indicative
duhi, āduha).

In the classical language the optative is formed from the
present stem. In the Vedic language it is formed from all three
stems, present, aorist and perfect, and, as with the subjunctive,
no difference of meaning is attached to this difference of forma-
tion. Root aorist optatives are fairly common: aśyām,
rāhyām, gamīyās, bhūyāt, middle aṣīya, etc. They are rarer in the
a-aorist and reduplicated aorist. From the sigmatic aorists
optatives are formed only in the middle and the 2 and 3 sg. take
invariably the precative s: masīya (man- ' to think '), maṇ-
siṣṭhās, maṃsiṣṭa, gmiṣiya, janiṣṭa, yāsiṣṭhās, etc. The perfect
optative is common: jagamyām, riricyām, vavṛtyās, nināyāt,
papatyāt, vavṛtyā, cakṣamāṭhās, jagrasīta, etc.

The oldest type of optative is that attached to root stems,
present or aorist. Here the suffix is attached to the root in the
same way as in the various present stems, and the normal
secondary endings are added to it: gam-yā-m like kri-nā-m. This
stem developed on its own lines on account of the special
meaning which became associated with it. The main develop-
ments which produced the optative in its final form were (1) the
incorporation of the optative in the present system (as nyāt
replacing aṣyāt, etc.) and (2) the creation of optative forms to
thematic stems by combining with them the weak form of the
optative suffix. The first process is still incomplete in the Veda.
On this theory the optative was to begin with a quite inde-
pendent stem and its association with the various tense stems
secondary. The perfect optatives should be regarded from the same point of view. Reduplication in early IE was a feature liable to turn up in many parts of the verbal system, and on the other hand though it came to be especially associated with the perfect it was not to begin with an essential feature of that system. Bearing this in mind it is clear that a reduplicated optative is not in its origin connected with the perfect system. We have an optative stem (gamyā-m) originally independent of the tense stems, and beside it a reduplicated optative stem (jagamyā-m) originally equally independent. With the incorporation of the optative into the various tense stems these reduplicated optatives became formally attached to the perfect, but in meaning they never acquired any of the characteristics of the perfect. The dying out in the later language of all forms of the optative except those belonging to the present system, resulted naturally from the absence of any distinction of meaning between the different forms.

The forms of the Precative in the classical language are as follows:

Active, S. 1 bhūyāsam, 2 bhūyās, 3 bhūyāt, D. 1 bhūyāsva, 2 bhūyāstam, 3 bhūyāstām, P. 1 bhūyāsma, 2 bhūyāsta, 3 bhūyāsur.

Middle, S. 1 bhaviṣṭiyā, 2 bhaviṣṭīsthās, 3 bhaviṣṭīstā, D. 1 bhaviṣṭīsvāhi, 2 bhaviṣṭīṣṭhām, 3 bhaviṣṭīṣṭāstām, P. 1 bhaviṣṭāṁdhī, 2 bhaviṣṭāṁdhrām, 3 bhaviṣṭ̄ārān.

The active forms are always made directly from the root by the addition of the optative suffix extended by s. The older form of the 3 sg. act. was bhūyās, which is preserved in the Vedic language. The middle forms are formed from the stem of the sigmatic aorist, and the precative s is absent in the first persons and in the 3 pl. The precative is the only modal form from a non-present stem retained by the classical language.

The use of the precative is not common in the classical language and knowledge of its inflection is based on the statements of the grammarians. In the pre-classical language most of the active forms as given by the grammarians are attested with the exception that the older form of the 3 sg. is used. In the middle there is no distinction in the Veda between optative and precative. The optative of the sigmatic aorist invariably inserts the precative s in the 2 and 3 sg. and this s is employed nowhere else in the conjugation. Such optative forms with precative s are
THE VERB

occasionally formed in the Veda from other stems: root-aorist, padīṣṭa, muciṣṭa, a-aorist, videsṭa, reduplicated aorist, rīrīṣṭa, perfect, sāsahīṣṭhās.

In the Rgveda, as opposed to the later Vedic literature, very nearly the same state of affairs prevails in the active. Precative forms from the root aorist are numerous in the 2 sg. (which cannot in this case be distinguished from the ordinary optative) and in the 3 sg. In the 3 sg. no non-precative forms are recorded. Outside these two persons there occur only 1 sg. bhūyāsam and 1 pl. kriyāsma (once each). Otherwise forms in -yā only appear outside the 2 and 3 sg. It is clear that the two first person precatives are innovations of the later RV. period and that in the original inflection s was proper only to the 2 and 3 sg., and there always used, as in the middle. The inflection may therefore be compared to that of the Hittite verbs mentioned above (§ 10, S. 1 tarnaḫun, 2 tarnaš, 3 tarnaš, P. 1 tarnānumen, 2 tarnatin, 3 tarnir) in which s functions as the common termination of the 2, 3 sg. but does not appear in the other persons. In its earliest form the Sanskrit precative, which is not to be distinguished from the optative of the root aorist, or in the middle from that of the sigmatic aorist, preserves this ancient characteristic of one class of secondary endings. On the other hand, in the rest of the conjugation, the optative has adopted the normal secondary endings in these two persons. The precative is thus one of the most archaic formations in Sanskrit grammar.

§15. SECONDARY CONJUGATION

Under secondary conjugation are classified certain forms of present stem which differ from the ordinary series of present stems because (1) they have acquired a special meaning and (2) they are normally taken by roots in addition to their ordinary presents. The four types of secondary conjugation are (1) passive, (2) intensive, (3) causative and (4) desiderative. They are all essentially present formations, and with certain exceptions their inflection in other systems consists of more or less sporadic innovations.

I. The Passive

The formation of the passive is closely connected with that of the fourth present class. It differs from the middle of that
class only in the position of the accent. In the passive this is on the suffix *ya* whereas in the fourth class it is on the root: *mānyate* 'thinks', but *badhyde* 'is bound'. This distinction is secondary since roots in the fourth class appear in their weak form (*isyati, isyate*) and this indicates original suffixal accent. Furthermore there are a few old intransitives (not passives) which are suffixally accented: *mriyāte* 'dies', *dhriyāte* 'is steadfast'. There is also fluctuation of accent in some passive and intransitive forms, *mucyate* and *mucyāte* 'is released', *kṣiyate* and *kṣiyāte* 'is destroyed', *jiyate* and *jīyāte* 'suffers loss', *pacýate* and *pacydte* 'is cooked'.

The passive in this form is found also in Iranian (Av. *kiryeinte* = *kriyante*), but not elsewhere. It is an Indo-Iranian innovation based on the fourth present class, and its origin was due to the frequency of intransitive verbs in that class, particularly with middle inflection: *jāyate* 'is born', *pácýate* 'becomes ripe, cooked', *tápyate* 'becomes hot', etc. Since a number of these verbs had differently formed transitive presents beside them (*tápati* 'heats', etc.) they could easily form the nucleus from which the passive system developed. Differentiation was made by the retention in the passive of the old accent, for which in the fourth class presents radical accent has been substituted. The examples above in which there is variation of accent are mainly old intransitives which have been adopted as passives (*mucyate* 'gets loose', etc.). The middle inflection is universal in Sanskrit (except for some late and incorrect Epic forms, *dṛśyati* 'is seen', etc.), but active forms are not uncommon in Iranian: Av. *bairyeiti* 'is carried', O. Pers. *bahiymahy* 'we are called', etc. Probably to begin with the usage was uncertain and the exclusive use of the middle later generalised in Indo-Aryan.

The passive is inflected only in the present system. In the perfect and future the middle voice frequently functions as passive: *cakrē* 'was done', *harisyaete* 'will be done'. In the aorist there is a passive 3 sg. of independent formation (*ākāri*) which has already been described. In the immediate pre-classical period there was a tendency, which did not go very far, to extend this by adding other forms. None are found in the Vedic literature, but the grammarians lay down, for roots ending in vowels and *grah-, dṛś-, han-*, special passive aorist forms based on the above, e.g. 1 sg. *ādāyiśi*, 3 pl. *ānāyiśata*, etc.: 3 sg.
This type of stem was further extended to the future: 1 sg. dāyisye, 3 sg. ghānisyate, etc. Such forms occur very rarely in classical Sanskrit, and they are all learned formations taken from the grammar.

In addition to finite verbal forms the passive meaning could be expressed by the passive participles in -ta and the future passive participle in -tavya. In the later history of Indo-Aryan, in the Prakrit period, all forms of active preterite were lost, and their place was taken by passive constructions with the participle in -ta. This process is reflected in the later Sanskrit literature; the usual construction becomes mayā brāhmaṇo drṣṭaḥ 'the brahman was seen by me' instead of aham brāhmaṇam apaśyam 'I saw the brahman'. Associated with this is the increasing use of the impersonal passive: iha sthāyatām 'stay here' (lit. 'let it be stayed here'), tena bhavitavyam 'it must be him', etc. This type of later Sanskrit is largely Prakrit in disguise. By such devices the wealth of the Pāṇinian verbal morphology can be mostly ignored, and this simplified Sanskrit was understandably popular.

II. The Intensive

The intensive is a form of present stem which expresses intensification or repetition of the sense expressed by the root. It is of common occurrence in the Vedic language, being attested from over 90 roots. In the classical language, though allowed by the grammarians to be made from every root, it is of infrequent occurrence. The stem consists of the root preceded by strong reduplication. In the case of roots containing i or u this reduplication has the corresponding guṇa vowel: 3 sg. act. nenekti, vevetti, mid. neniktē, dediśte (niḥ- 'wash', vid- 'know', diś- 'point out'); 3 sg. act. jōhavīti, nōnavīti, 1 pl. nonumās (hū- 'call', nu- 'roar'). Where the vowel is a the corresponding long vowel appears in the reduplication: 3 sg. cākaśāti, pāpalāti, 3 pl. nānadaśi (kāś- 'appear', pāt- 'fall', nād- 'roar'). When roots contain or terminate in r (l) or a nasal, this consonant is repeated in reduplication: 1 sg. carkarmi, 2 sg. dar-daṛṣi, 3 sg. jaṅghanti, calcalīti, (with dissimilation) alarti, 3 mid. nannate (kṛ- 'to commemorate', dṛ- 'to split', hān- 'slay', cāl- 'move', ar- 'rise, go', nam- 'bend'). As an alternative reduplication with long ā is sometimes used with roots of this form: jāgarti 'is awake', etc. An ṭ is frequently inserted be-
between the strong reduplication and the root: 3 sg. *varīvarīti, kanikranti, ganīganti, 3 pl. dāvidyutati, bharibhṛati (vr̥t- ‘turn’, krand- ‘shout’, gam- ‘go’, dyut- ‘shine’, bhṛ- ‘carry’). The apophony of the root follows the usual system; it is strong in the three persons of the active, elsewhere weak: 3 sg. act. nenektī, pl. nenijāti, 3 sg. mid. nenīktē. When i is inserted after the root in the singular active, the root only has guṇa where this does not produce a long syllable: jōhavītī but vēvidītī. The accent is on the reduplication in the strong forms and in the 3 pl. (vēvētī, vēvēdatī) ; elsewhere on the terminations according to the classical grammar (vēvidmās, etc.), but the Vedic usage fluctuates : 3 sg. mid. nenīktē, etc., beside tētīktē, etc.

The terminations are the normal ones (with -ati in the 3 pl. as in the reduplicating class). A common feature is the use of the connecting vowel i. This was observed also in the root class (brāvītī, etc.), but it is much more common in the intensive: johavītī, tartarītī, dādarītī, etc. It is never used when the same kind of i appears after the reduplication. It is employed in the three singular persons and once in the dual (tartarītahas). In the 3 sg. mid. the ending -e occurs about as frequently as the ending -te: cēkite, jōguve, yoyuve, etc. The 2 and 3 sg. of the imperfect suffer the usual phonetic mutilation: ādārdar for 2 sg. *ādārdar-s and 3* ādārdar-t, etc. The connecting vowel -i- appears in the imperfect in the 3 sg. (ājohavīt) and once in the 3 du. (dvāvasītām). The termination of the 3 pl. act. is -ur as in the reduplicating class: ājohavur.

The intensive forms subjunctives commonly, but almost exclusively with secondary endings. The root has guṇa only when this does not make a long vowel: 3 sg. jāṅghanat, bōbhavat; carkṛṣat, dāvidyutat. Imperatives are not uncommon: 2 sg. dārdṛhi, carkṛdhi, 3 sg. vevesṭu, dādhartu, 2 pl. jāgrīd ; with -i-t, 2 sg. carkṛtāt, jāgrītāt. There are a few forms with the auxiliary vowel i : jāṅghanītī, johavītū. The optative is exceedingly rare (veviśyāt AV.).

There exist a few intensives with perfect inflections. These are not perfects to the above, but an alternative type of present, in accordance with the old sense of the perfect. Such are dāvidhāva, nonāva, doddāva, lelāya with the ordinary meaning of the intensive present.

There exists a second type of intensive formation which re-
duplicates in the same way as the above, but forms its stem by the addition of the accented -yá- suffix and inflects exclusively in the middle: marnyjyáte, dédipyáte, dodhuyáte, etc. (mrj-‘wipe’, díp-‘shine’, dhú-‘shake’). This is rare in the Vedic language, but in the classical language it is commoner than the basic type.

Intensive formations corresponding to the Sanskrit basic type were common in Old Iranian: cf. Av. zaozaomi, čárkšeromahi, (opt.) dardairyáti, daédostiš, (thematic) naēnižaiti, corresponding to the Sanskrit intensive bases johav-, carkar-, dardar-, dediš and nenij-. Though not recorded outside Indo-Iranian the formation is evidently ancient in Indo-European. The fact that it does not appear elsewhere is due to the general abandonment of non-thematic verbal inflection in the majority of IE languages. In contradistinction the second type of intensive formation (dédipyáte), though rare in early Sanskrit, has parallels elsewhere, particularly in Greek: πορφύρω ‘be in uneasy motion’ (Skt. bhur-), παμφαινω ‘shine brightly’, δαρδάπτω ‘tear asunder’, μαμμαίρω ‘glitter’, etc.

III. The Causative

The causative is the most productive of the secondary conjugations from the early period onwards. The stem is formed by the addition of the suffix -áya- to the root, which normally appears in its strengthened form, and it is identical with the stem of the tenth class of verbs. There are a considerable number of verbal formations in -áya-, particularly in the early language which have no causative function. Some have a frequentative sense (patáyati ‘flies about’, etc.) which from the comparative evidence is ancient (Gk. ποτεομαι). The causative is only one of the uses attached to the áya-stem, but in course of time it becomes the predominant one. There is in the earlier language a distinction between causatives with strengthened root and non-causatives with weak root: dyutáya-, rucáya-‘shine’: dyotáya-, rocáya-‘illuminate’, etc.; similarly between guna and vṛddhi in patáya-‘fly about’, pátáya-‘cause to fall’. The distinction is not absolute since there are formations with weak root having a causative sense (dṛṇháya-‘make firm’) and conversely formations with strengthened root having a non-causative sense (mádáya-‘get intoxicated’). In the later language the bulk of the non-causative forms die out, and what
remain are combined with formations of a more denominative character to form the tenth present class.

In the causative the root always has guna where this produces a long syllable: tarpadyati, vardhāyati, kalpāyati, bodhāyati, cetāyati from trp- 'to be satisfied', vrāh- 'to increase', klp- 'to arrange', budh- 'to be aware' and cit- 'to observe'. Roots which in their strong form insert a nasal have this in association with guna in the causative: mandāyati 'gladdens', srāmsāyati 'causes to fall', etc. Where the guna form produces a short syllable (kar-, etc.) vṛddhi is most commonly employed in the causatives: kāryati 'causes to do', trāsāyati 'terrifies', nāsāyati 'destroys', cyāvāyati 'causes to fall', etc. But a number of such roots retain guna: gamāyati 'causes to go', tvaṛāyati 'makes to hasten', namāyati 'causes to bend', etc. The non-strengthened form of the root appears normally only with roots that have no other form (guhāyati from guh- 'to conceal'), only rarely elsewhere (girāyati, sphurāyati).

Roots in a commonly insert -p- before the causative suffix: dāpāyati, sthāpāyati, māpāyati, etc., from dā- 'to give', sthā- 'to stand', mā- 'to measure', etc. This -p- is an old suffix or enlargement which is known from comparative evidence to have been associated with certain of such roots (Lith. stāpytis 'to stand still'), and it has been extended to the whole class in the causative. It is further applied to the root r- (arpāyati) and to a number of roots in -i: aḍhyāpāyati from adhi + i 'to study', etc. In ropāyati 'plants' (ruh- 'to grow') it replaces the final consonant of the root. In Middle Indo-Aryan the popularity of this form of causative grew until it replaced the normal kind. A number of such Prakritic formations appear in later Sanskrit (krīḍāpayati 'causes to play', jīvāpayati 'causes to live', etc.).

There are a few other miscellaneous insertions before the causative suffix, namely -l-: pālayati 'protects' (pā-), -n- in prīṇayati 'pleases' (prī-, prīṇāti), -s- in bhīṣayate 'frightens', -t- in ghātayati 'has slain' (han-).

Formations outside the present system are made more commonly from the causative than from the other forms of secondary conjugation. The future (vardhāisyaṭi, etc.) appears only
THE VERB

very rarely in the Rgveda, but later is regularly made. For the aorist, as already observed, the reduplicated aorist has been adapted to serve for the causative. Besides this a few sporadic is-aorist forms occur in the early language (avādayiṣṭhās, etc.). For the perfect the periphrastic form is used: gamayāṁ cakāra, gamayāṁ āsa. The passive is made by suffixing the passive yā directly to the form of the root as it appears in the causative: kāryāte, sthāpyāte, etc. (simple passive kriyāte, sthīyāte). Nominal forms from the causative are: participle in -tā, kāritā-, gerundive, kārayitavya-, kārya-, kāraṇiya-, infinitive, kārayitum, gerund, kārayitvā. The suffix of the gerund in -ya is added directly to the root when this is strengthened in the causative (-kārya), otherwise to the ay of the causative suffix (-gamayya).

The present formations in -aya are closely related to the nominal i-stems (roci-/rocay-: rocdyati). The causative stem consists of a thematic enlargement of this suffix, of a type which occurs, though very rarely, in the nominal formations. The formation, since it contains a series of guṇa vowels, is not likely to be very ancient in Indo-European, but it occurs fairly widely: Gk. τροπέω, στροφέω (τρέω, στρέω), Lat. spondeo (: Gk. σπένδω), moneo, Goth. nasjan, drausjan (ga-nisan, driusan), etc. The meaning is frequentative, as usually in Greek, or causative. The latter meaning is normal in Germanic (nasjan 'to save', ga-nisan 'to be saved') and in Slavonic. Where Verner's law operates Germanic confirms the position of the accent on the suffix, as in Sanskrit: wairpan : fraawardjan.

It has also participial forms corresponding to the Sanskrit participles in -itā (frawardhips) which are thus shown to be ancient. In Slavonic there is a series of causatives with vṛddhi as in Sanskrit, and this is one of the special features which connects the two families with Indo-European: O. Sl. saditi 'to plant', cf. Skt. sādāyati 'makes to sit, settles', slaviti 'to praise', cf. Skt. śrāvāyati 'makes to hear, be heard'.

IV. The Desiderative

The desiderative stem is formed by means of the suffix -sa associated with reduplication. The vowel of the reduplicating syllable is normally i but u is employed when that vowel occurs in the root: bibhītsati, titṛpsati, but yūyutsati (bhid- 'to split', trp- 'be satisfied', yudh- 'to fight'). Long i occurs in a very
few cases: mīmāṁsate ‘investigates’ (man-‘to think’). The accent rests always on the reduplication.

The root appears normally in its weak form, but a final i and u are lengthened: jīgīṣati ‘desires to conquer’ (ji-), jāhūṣati ‘demands to sacrifice’ (hu-). Final r of a root becomes īr or īr before the desiderative -sa: cākīrṣati ‘desires to do’, titīrṣati ‘desires to cross’, māmūrṣati ‘is about to die’. This is phonetically justifiable only in the case of roots in -ṛ, i.e. those originally having final ṛ (ṭṛ-, tarḥ-: titīrṣati) and from these it is extended to the rest.

A number of roots form an abbreviated stem in the desiderative in which the reduplication and the root are contracted into one syllable. An example is dīpsati from dabh- ‘to injure’. Corresponding to this Av. has dīwāṇḍyai (inf.), and from a comparison of the two an Indo-Iranian stem dībha- emerges. This represents a simplification of the original consonant group which occurred when the vowel of the root was elided in its weak form, i.e. dī-dbh-sa-, a regularly formed desiderative. In the same way śikṣa- and sīkṣa- appear from śak- and saḥ-, later dhīkṣa-, rīpsa-, īpsa-, etc. (dah-, rabh-, labh-); to these are added ṭipa- and ṭīpsa- from roots beginning with a vowel (āp-‘to obtain’, rāh-‘to prosper’). The roots dā and dhā make respectively dītsa- and dīhīsas-in which the ā of the root has regularly disappeared in the weak form (di-d-sa-, di-dh-sa-).

The roots van-‘to win’ and san- ‘to gain’ make the desiderative stems vivāsa- and sīṣāsa-with ā out of -ṇh- as in other derivatives.

Roots in ā, apart from those mentioned above, generally keep the strong form in the desiderative: yīyāsa-, pīpāsa-, from yā- ‘to go’, pā- ‘to drink’. This, like the other forms with strong root below, is a Sanskrit innovation, as is clear from the preservation of ancient stems like dītsa- and the existence of Vedic pī-pī-ṣa- beside pīpāsa. Anomalous strong forms appear from certain roots terminating in a nasal: jighāmsa-, jigāmsa- (beside jigāmiṣa-) from han-, gam-. When the desiderative suffix appears as īṣa with the union vowel a final i, u, ṛ of a root necessarily and a medial i, u, ṛ optionally appear in the guṇa grade: sīṣayīṣa-, ninartīṣa-, etc., but also rurudīṣa-. These and similar forms are laid down by the grammarians, but they do not occur in the earlier language.

Like other verbal formations the desiderative sa may be aug-
mented by the union vowel *i* and appear as -īsā-.

In the early language there occurs only didh-ī-sa- (*dhā-, beside dhītsa-*); also *i* in certain cases where this enlargement has produced what is in practice an alternative form of the root (*piyīsa-, jihīsa-*). The numerous classical formations in īsa (which have normally guna of root as noted above) are complete innovations.

From the desiderative there are made, though not in the earliest language: a future in īsya: titikṣīsye, an īś- aorist, ācikīrṣīsam and a periphrastic perfect, īpsām cakāra/āsa. Nominal derivatives from the desiderative stem occur earlier; the most common are an adjective in -u (titikṣū-) and an abstract noun in ā (mīmāmsā).

In most desiderative stems the meaning ('wish to do something') is straightforward and clear, though sometimes it is rather 'to be about to do something' (mīmūṛṣati). In the case of a few roots the desiderative stem has developed a special meaning: cikītsa- 'cure', jugupsa- 'despise', titikṣa- 'endure', bībhatsa- (bādh-) 'abhor', mīmāmsa- 'investigate', śuśrūṣa- 'obey'.

The antiquity of the desiderative in Indo-European is attested by the reduced forms (ditsa-, dipsa-) which have been affected by the old apophony. Nevertheless it is not widely represented, a fact which must be due to loss in the individual languages. The only branch of Indo-European outside Indo-Iranian where a comparable formation occurs is Celtic. Since there are no close relations between these two members of the family this is itself an indication that the formation is ancient. The Celtic formation to be compared is the Old Irish reduplicated s-future: 1 sg. -ninus <*ninikssō* (nigid 'washes', cf. Skt. nīj-, des. niniksati), 2 sg. -riris (con-rig 'binds'), 3 pl. lilsit from ligid 'licks' (Skt. līh-, des. liliksati).

§ 16. Denominative Verbs

Denominative verbs are those that are formed on the basis of a noun stem. Ultimately, as already observed, all verbal stems are not to be distinguished from the corresponding noun stems, but they have acquired independence. The denominative proper is a formation by which verbal stems continue to be made from the nouns existing in the language. The suffix employed in making denominatives is accented -yā-, the same suffix which forms one of the primary verbal classes (*dtvyaṭi*).
The only difference is that the denominatives preserve the original accent of the suffix which in the primary verbs has been replaced by radical accent. The denominative is of IE origin and among the other languages it is particularly well represented in Greek: τεκμαίρω 'determine' (for -aryo from the neut. noun τέκμαρ) ἐχθαίρω 'hate', ὄνομαιν 'name', σαλπιζω 'trumpet' (σάλπιγξ), κηρύσσω 'proclaim' (κῆρυξ), etc., etc. Similar formations in other languages are Lat. custōdio, finio (custós, fínis), Goth. gliimunjan 'glitter', lauhatjan 'shine', etc. They are also common in Hittite, which gives a greater antiquity to the denominative formation than might otherwise have been expected: имвαλια- 'to be ill' (имвαλας 'ill'), κουσανία- 'hire' (κuşan 'pay'), ламния- 'to name' (лάμαν 'name', cf. Gk. ὄνομαιν), etc.

Denominatives in -yά- are formed from all the various nominal stems and they may conveniently be classified accordingly.

**Stems in τ:** vadhanyάτi 'hurls a weapon', cf. vādhar 'weapon'. This type of nominal stem is practically obsolete, and the result is that there are a number of such denominatives where the corresponding nouns-stem has been lost: śrathanyάτi 'becomes loose', saparyάτi 'attends to, worships', ratharyάτi 'rides in a chariot', adhvaryάτi 'performs a sacrifice', vithuryάτi 'stagger'.

**Stems in n:** Denominatives formed from n-stems are krpaVyάτi 'solicits', turanyάτi 'is speedy', damanyάτi 'subdues', bhuranyάτi 'is active', saranyάτi 'hastens', ḍhiṣanyάτi 'pays attention', ruvanyάτi 'roars', huvanyάτi 'calls', etc. This type is based on the old neuter-n-stems, likewise mainly extinct, and corresponding nominal stems are either non-existent or take the form of thematic derivatives: krpanά-, turάνα-, etc.

**Stems in s:** These are well preserved and denominatives are frequent: apasyάτi 'is active', namasyάτi 'reverences', canasyάτi 'is pleased', manasyάτi 'is mindful of', etc. In some cases the corresponding s-stem is not preserved, e.g. irasyάτi 'is jealous', daśasyάτi 'renders service to'. In other cases -asyά- is extended to become an independent suffix, with a desiderative meaning: vṛṣasyάτi 'desires the male', stanasyάτi 'desires the breast'. From the compound stems is and us are formed avisyάτi 'is eager to help' (the identity of this form with the
future in -iṣya- should be noticed), taruṣyāti ‘strives to overcome’, etc.

Rare examples of denominatives formed from stems in occlusive appear in bhiṣajyāti ‘acts the physician’ and (from a stem not otherwise preserved) iṣudhyāti ‘implores’ (Av. iṣūidya-).

It will be observed from the examples quoted above that the denominatives in yā are normally from the neuter consonantal stems. Denominatives from the masculine (agent-noun) stems are rare: e.g. vrṣanyāti ‘acts like a male’. A few such formations are based on the nominative singulars: rājāyāte ‘is kingly’, vrṣāyēti ‘acts like a bull’, svāmīyāti ‘treats as master’.

Stems in ī and ī: janīyāti ‘seeks a wife’ (jāni-), taviṣyāte ‘is strong’ (tāviṣi). The form with long ī is usually extended to stems in short ī (kaviyāti ‘acts like a wise man’, sakhiyāti ‘desires friendship’, arātīyāti ‘is inimical’), but such forms are shortened in the pada text. The suffix -īya- develops to some extent independently, with a desiderative sense, and is applied to other than ī-stems: putrīyāti ‘desires a son’, māṃsīyāti ‘craves flesh’, etc.

Stems in u and ū: Here also the long form of the suffix is applied to both types of stem, though short ū is restored in the pada text: rūyāti ‘is straight’, vasūyāti ‘desires wealth’, etc. In some cases there is no noun-stem and -ūya- functions as an independent verbal suffix: asūyāti ‘grumbles’, aṅkūyāti ‘moves crookedly’, stabhūyāti ‘stands firm’.

Stems in ā: prtanāyāti ‘fights’, ducchunāyāte ‘desires mischief’, manāyāte ‘is well disposed’. Denominatives from ā-stems are an ancient IE type, though more frequently elsewhere formed without the addition of ya: Hitt. newāhun ‘I renewed’, Lat. novāre, Gk. vēavn. This type is found in Sanskrit only when ā is incorporated in the root (trāti), otherwise the -ya- denotative is used. The suffix -āya- early became an independent suffix, and there are a number of roots which inflect in this way without there being any corresponding ā-nouns: mathūyāti ‘stirs’, sṛathūyāti ‘loosens’, muṣāyāti ‘steals’, etc. These stems commonly alternate with stems of the ninth class: mathnāti, sṛathnāti, muṣnāti, etc. As a result of the close association of the two types the denotative yā is sometimes appended to ninth class stems: hṛṇāyā-, hṛṇīyā- ‘be angry’,
In the Vedic language the denominative in -āya- is commonly extended beyond its proper field and it is used to form denominatives from thematic stems beside the regular forms in -ayāti: aghāyāti 'plans mischief', aśvāyāti 'seeks for horses', priyāyāte 'holds dear'.

Thematic Stems: amitrayāti 'acts like an enemy', devayāti 'cultivates the gods, is pious', vasnayāti 'bargains', etc. This is the latest type of denominative formation. The addition of a further suffix to a final thematic suffix is against the principles of IE stem formation. It appears here in the denominative purely by analogy, deva-yā-ti, etc., being created after the pattern of brahma-yā-ti, etc. The resulting stem is similar to the causative, differing only in accent, but the origin and analysis are quite different. On the one hand we have an i-stem with thematic extension (analyse vardhāy-a-), on the other hand a thematic stem with the mechanical and analogical addition of the denominative -yā- (analyse deva-yā-). The similarity of the two forms gave rise to some confusion, and there are stems, apparently denominative in origin which have the causative accent: arthāyate 'desires', mantrāyate 'takes council', mṛgāyate 'hunts', etc. These are normally classified in the tenth present class.

In the later classical language most of the old denominatives made from consonant stems disappear. The thematic type remains living and takes two forms: (1) in the active the normal -ayāti is used, kaluṣayāti 'makes turbid', taruṇayāti 'rejuvenates', (2) in the middle, with intransitive sense, -āyate is used, kaluṣāyate 'becomes turbid'; taruṇāyate 'is rejuvenated'. It was noted above that the -āya-stem, properly a derivative from the nominal ā-stem, was commonly used in the Veda to make denominatives from thematic stems, with the result that there are two alternative formations. In the later development of the language those two are specialised in different uses as just stated.

Forms outside the present system from denominative stems occur with the utmost rarity. There are a few isolated iṣ-aorist (avrśāyīṣata) and future forms (kaṇḍūyīṣyati). Participles in -ta (kaṇḍūyītā-, etc.) are somewhat more frequent. In the Vedic language abstract nouns in ā (vasūyā) and adjectives in -u (vasūyū-), made like the similar formations from the desiderative stem, are common, but the type in general dies out later.
The difference between Vedic and classical Sanskrit is nowhere more marked than in the infinitive. The classical language has only one form of infinitive, in *tum*, which is added to the gunâted root (*kârtum*), and which, like other verbal formatives may be provided with the connecting vowel *i* (*bhâvitum*). In the Vedic language this formation is exceedingly rare, but there exists a whole series of other forms classed as infinitives which do not survive in the later language. These Vedic infinitives consist of a variety of verbal action nouns inflected in various cases, namely:

(i) **Accusative**, from root stems and stems in *-tu*: pratîram ‘to prolong’, dâtum ‘to give’. The former may be compared with the Oscan-Umbrian infinitives in *-om/um*: Umbr. erom, Osc. ezum ‘to be’, Osc. edum ‘to eat’, etc. The latter, which eventually becomes the sole form of infinitive, has parallels in the Latin supine (*datum*) and in Balto-Slavonic (Lith. dētu, O. Sl. dětū ‘to place’).

(ii) **Dative**, much the most frequent type. These infinitives are made from root stems (*drśē ‘to see’, bhujē ‘to enjoy’), from stems in *-as* (āyase ‘to go’, arhāse ‘to be worthy of’), from stems in *-i* (drśāye ‘to see’, yudhāye ‘to fight’), from stems in *-ti* (vīlāye ‘to enjoy’, sālāye ‘to win’), from stems in *-tu* (ētave ‘to go’, yāstäve ‘to sacrifice’) from stems in *-tava* (ētavai ‘to go’), from stems in āhya (āhādhyai ‘to milk’, sāhadhyai ‘to overcome’) from stems in man (*dāmane ‘to give’) and van (dāvane ‘to give’). Of these the infinitive in *-tava* is remarkable in having a double accent (a phenomenon which has not been explained), and in always being followed by the particle *u* (*ētavā u*). This infinitive, and the one in *-āhya* are also distinguished in being formed from stems which are not otherwise in active use, and also in preserving the older form of the dative singular which has been replaced by *-āya* in the declension of nouns.

(iii) **Ablative-Genitive**, from root stems and stems in *-tu*: avapādas ‘falling down’, sampreca ‘coming in contact’; ētios ‘going’, nīdāhos ‘putting down’.

(iv) **Locative**, from root stems (*samcaksi ‘on beholding’), stems in *-san-* (nesāni ‘to lead’), in *-īr-* (vi)dhartāri ‘to support (bestow)’, sōtāri ‘in the pressing’.
The Vedic language (with Old Iranian) represents most accurately the state of affairs in Indo-European. The infinitive as an independent category is not yet fully developed. The forms classed as infinitives are various cases of verbal action nouns, in which as a general rule the case has its normal force:

Acc. vásti árábham 'he desires to begin, wants a beginning'.
Dat. ávis tavana kṛṣuṣe dṛśe kam 'you reveal your body for seeing'.
Abl. sá iṁ mahīṁ dhūnim étor aramṇāt 'he stopped the great river from flowing'.

A curious feature of the Vedic language is that the noun which is logically the object of the infinitive is placed in the same case as the infinitive, so that for instance 'to see the sun' is expressed dṛśaye sūryāya, lit. 'for seeing, for the sun'; similarly, with ablative, trādhvam kṛtad avapādaḥ 'save us from falling into a pit', lit. 'save us from a pit, from falling down'.

In the normal usage of the Vedic infinitive there is not a great deal to distinguish it from an ordinary verbal noun inflected in an oblique case. One of the few things that places these formations in a special category is the fact that the majority of verbal noun stems which appear in this usage are not otherwise used, nor in other cases. Taking the neuter s-stems as an example, there are many regular nouns so formed (yāsas 'fame', etc.), but there are in addition a large number which appear only in the dative case, in this infinitival use. Many such dative infinitives are also distinguished formally, since they are given an accent (jivāse) which is different from that of the neuter nouns. The infinitives in the Veda which are most removed from ordinary nominal formation are those formed from stems which are no longer used in the formation of ordinary nouns. Such are the dative infinitives in -dhyai and the comparatively rare locative formations in -sani and -tari.

Another feature differentiating infinitive from verbal noun, one only partially developed in the Vedic language, is that it governs the accusative like a verb instead of the genitive like a verbal noun, e.g. māhi dāvāne 'to give something big' as opposed to gotrāsya dāvāne 'for the giving of a herd'.

In the classical language where the infinitive in -tum has replaced all others, the infinitive has become quite independent of the nominal formation. It also takes over the sense of the dative infinitive (avasthātum sthānāntaram cintaya 'think
of another place to stay in') so that its original force as the accusative of a verbal noun is obscured. In one respect it retains a trace of its nominal origin, because it can be compounded, like a noun-stem, with kāma- and manas: yaṣṭukāma- ' desirous of sacrificing', vaktaumanas- ' minded to speak'.

The Sanskrit infinitive, in its final form, is much less developed and integrated into the verbal system than the infinitives of Latin and Greek. The latter languages have developed special forms for various tenses (esse, fuisse) and for the voices (agere, acri), by a process of adaptation which took place independently in the two languages. Nothing of this kind appears in Sanskrit. There are in the Veda a few forms where the infinitive appears attached to special tense-stems (puṣyāse 'to flourish', grṇiṣāni 'to praise', -prṛcham 'to ask'; from the perfect vāvṛdhādhyai 'to strengthen'), but these tentative formations came to nothing. The system by which the infinitive is formed only from the root prevailed, and the syntactical use of the infinitive is correspondingly wide. In particular it has to function not only as active and middle indiscriminately, but also, when the context demands it, as passive: kartum ārabdhah 'began to be made', etc. This usage is particularly frequent with the passive forms of sak-: kartum na śakyate 'cannot be done', etc.

§ 18. Active and Middle Participles

Like the infinitives these participles are in origin purely nominal forms and as such have been treated in the chapters concerning the formation and declension of nouns. They belong to the verb inasmuch as they have become integrated into the verbal system. This integration goes further than in the case of the infinitive in Sanskrit (though not as far as in Greek), and the process started earlier. The various participles are attached to particular tense stems, and they are divided, like the finite verb, into active and middle.

The active participle in -ant- is in Classical Sanskrit entirely, and in the Vedic language mainly, formed from the present stems of the verb. In the Vedic language there is a small number of such participles which are attached to the root aorist stem (krānt-, gmānt- from kr- ' do ', gam- ' go ') and to the a-aorist stem (trpānt-, vṛdhānt- from trp- ' be satisfied ' and vṛdh- ' grow '). This association is mainly superficial, since such
formations are not different from typical adjective formations with accented suffix added straight to the root. Before their integration into the verbal system the -ant- formations were ordinary adjectives (of which some examples remain, brhánt- 'tall', etc.), and the original type, derived straight from the root and having the adjectival accent, is preserved in these aorist participles.

The adaptation of ant- adjectives to make participles began early, since there are ant- participles also in Hittite. But at the time of the separation of Hittite the ant- participle had not settled down into its final role since in that language the ant-participles are used in a passive sense, as opposed to the active sense in the rest of Indo-European. The specialisation of the formation in ant as an active participle was followed by its transference to the present system. The radical formations were replaced by formations made from the various types of present stem (kránt- by kṛnvánt-, etc.). In the Veda this process is almost complete and the number of aorist participles is already small. By the classical period the process is complete. In Greek the same process began but ended differently, since there the appearance of present participles (φεύγων) beside the older aoristic (i.e. suffixally accented type) φυγών led to the evolution of a twofold system in which these two types of participle, like the moods associated with the two tenses, express different kinds of action (punctual and durative). Greek has further extended the formation of this participle to the s-aorist stem, where it is to all intents and purposes non-existent in Sanskrit, as it was in Indo-European.

The association of the active participle with the present system had the result that its accent (originally on the final, as an adjective) came to correspond to that of the verbal stem to which it was attached. It appears on the suffix in the case of the suffixally accented thematic class (tudánt-) and in non-thematic verbs (duhánt-, śṝṇvánt-, etc.). On the other hand the radically accented thematic verbs keep this accent in the participle: bhadvant-, etc. The reduplicating verbs have accent on the reduplicating syllable associated with weak form of the participial suffix even in the strong cases: nom. sg. bhṛhrat, acc. sg. bhṛhratam.

The formation and morphology of the active perfect participle in -vas/us have already been detailed. The existence of a
Separate participle for the perfect is in accordance with the view already recorded that the difference between present/aorist and perfect is the most original division in the verbal tense system. The perfect participle has the perfect sense (as opposed to the aorist participle which has no aorist sense, and as opposed to the moods of the perfect), cakrvās- 'one who has done', etc. The accent is on the participial suffix and the perfect stem appears in its weak form. The union vowel i (tenivās, etc.) appears under much the same conditions as in the rest of the perfect.

In the middle the participle used is in -amāna for thematic verbs (bhāvamāna-, viśāmāna-, cintāyamāna-) and in -āna for non-thematic verbs (duhānā-, sunvānā-, yuñjānā-, etc.; accent final except in the 3rd class and intensives: jūhvāna-, cekīlāna-, etc.). The adaptation of these formations as participles is probably later than that of the active participles in -ant, since comparable forms are not widely spread in Indo-European. Corresponding to -amāna- Iranian has -amna- and Greek -oivevos, the actual forms varying in each case. No other IE languages have such participles, and where similar formations appear (Lat. alumnus, etc.) they are purely nominal. The participle in -āna is found only in Indo-Iranian, and only rare formations in the nominal derivation can be compared to it elsewhere (Lat. colōnus, etc.). The middle usage of the participle is through adaptation, and it is certainly much later than the existence of middle forms in the finite verb. How the adaptation came about is no longer clear, since there is nothing about the related men-formations of the noun that is connected with the middle, and in particular the Greek infinitives in -μεν(αι), which have also become part of the verbal morphology, have an active, not a middle sense.

What was said above about the integration of the active participle into the present system applies also to the middle participle. Like other derivatives based on the simple n-suffix and the compound men-suffix these were originally made from the root, and after their adaptation as participles the present stem came to be used instead. In the classical language the aorist formations (drśānt-, vṛdhānt-, sūcāmāna-) which incorporate what remains of the old radical formations are replaced in favour of the present tense. In contradistinction to the active there is no special participial suffix for the perfect in the
middle and the form -āna of the non-thematic verbs is used: cakrānā-, jajñānā-, etc. This is in accordance with the fact, noted before, that the middle is later in the perfect than in the present-aorist system.

§ 19. THE PAST PARTICIPLE PASSIVE

This participle is most commonly made by the addition of the suffix -tā to the weak form of the root (śrutā- ‘heard’, etc.), and like other verbal derivatives it frequently employs the auxiliary vowel -i- (patitā- ‘fallen’, etc.). The meaning is passive except in the case of intransitive verbs (gatā- ‘gone’, etc.). The formation is ancient in Indo-European as is clear both from the fact that it appears in large proportion of the languages, and because it is subject to the old IE apophony. At the same time it does not appear to go back to the period when Hittite separated, since in that language the passive participle is expressed differently, by the suffix -ant. In contradistinction to the active and middle participles it is not associated with particular tense stems but formed directly from the root both in Sanskrit and other IE languages.

A minority of roots form their past passive participle in nā instead of -tā. This is particularly the case with roots in -f (kīrnā- ‘scattered’, gīrnā ‘swallowed’), roots in -i (kṣīnā- ‘wasted away’), roots in -ā (bhīnnā- ‘broken’, chinnā- ‘cut’) and it is found in a number of roots in -j (bhugnā- ‘bent’, bhagnā- ‘broken’). Very occasionally other suffixes are so used, notably pakvā- ‘cooked, ripe’. The details of these formations have been systematically treated in the section dealing with the formation of nouns, and need not be repeated here.

The importance of the past participle passive increases in the later language, and still more so in Prakrit, on account of the change that took place from active to passive construction. It becomes customary in later time to express past actions not by active preterites but by the past passive participle associated with the instrumental: sa mayā dyāḥah ‘he (was) seen by me’ for ‘I saw him’. This resulted in middle Indo-Aryan in the elimination of the old preterites, and in modern Indo-Aryan all the tenses expressing the preterite are based on the old past participle passive.
The past participle passive could be extended by the addition of the possessive suffix -vant: kṛtāvant- 'one who has something (or things) done', and this naturally assumes the functions of an active past participle. This is a creation of Indo-Aryan and the first purely participial formation of this character appears in the Atharva-veda: aśītāvaty ātiḥkau 'one's guest having eaten'. Later the participle in tāvant (-nāvant- when roots take -na in this participle) comes to be used independently, the copula being understood, in place of an active preterite: na māṁ kaścid ādṛṭavān 'no one has seen (saw) me'. In the classical language this is the common usage and it forms another alternative to the use of the preterite tenses in addition to the passive construction mentioned above.

§ 20. Gerundives or Future Passive Participles

Classical Sanskrit has three verbal adjectives of identical function and having the sense of the Latin gerundive: kārya-, kartavya-, karāṇiya- 'to be done, faciendus'. Of these the first is the only one to be found in the Rgveda, where it is common. The suffix is normally to be pronounced -iya. Formations of this kind are found with all three grades of root: gūhya- 'to be hidden', dvēṣya- 'to be hated', vācyā- 'to be said'. Final ā of a root coalesces with the suffix to produce -eya: deya- 'to be given'. Roots in i, u, ś commonly take the augment -t- before this suffix: śrūtya- 'to be heard'. The accent is normally on the root, but there are some exceptions: bhāvyā-, ādyā-.

The formation in -tavya first appears in the Atharvaveda (janitavya- 'to be born', himsitavya- 'to be injured'). It becomes commoner in the period of the Brāhmaṇas, and in the classical language it is freely formed from all roots. The accent of the above two examples is the only type that occurs in accented texts. The grammarians allow also acute accent of the penultimate. In origin the formation is a secondary adjectival derivative from the action nouns in -tā.

The gerundive in -anīya (a secondary adjectival derivative from the verbal nouns in -an) is likewise first recorded in the Atharvaveda (upajīvanīya). It remains rare in the Brāhmaṇas, but is common in the classical language, though not as frequent as the type in -tavya.
In addition to the three types of gerundive that appear in the classical language there are several formations in the same function that appear only in the Veda:

(i) in -tva (normally pronounced as two syllables, -tuva) with accent and guna of root: kārtva- 'to be done', jētva-, nāntva-, vāktva-, etc.

(ii) in -enya (-eniya-): drśénya, yudhénnya, vārenya, etc.

(iii) in -āyya (trisyllabic): panāyya- 'to be praised, praiseworthy', daksāyya-, śravāyya-, etc.

§21. GERUND OR INDECLINABLE PARTICIPLE

This form of participle was analysed above as being a kind of adverbially used action noun. The type of participle is not familiar elsewhere in Indo-European and although the form is explicable through the normal IE processes of stem formation, its adoption in this particular syntactic use is in the main a development of Indo-Aryan.

In the classical language the gerund is formed by means of the suffix -tvā when the verbal root is uncompounded by preposition, otherwise by the suffix -ya. In the Rgveda the latter suffix is in the majority of instances long (-yā) and this no doubt is the more original form, the suffix -yā making verbal abstracts being used adverbially in the same way as -tvā. Other instances have been noted of final -ā (-ah) appearing as short a due to special circumstances of sentence sandhi (atra, etc.).

Beside -tvā the Rgveda also has a form -tvāya which appears to be a contamination of the two alternative forms just mentioned. It also has a form in -tvā (hitiš 'having left', etc.) terminating in the suffix -i, which is used in the same conditions as the -tvā form and is commoner than it. This tvī- form though absent in Sanskrit, is continued in certain Middle Indo-Aryan dialects of the North-West and West, and was clearly a local dialectal feature of Old Indo-Aryan.

Extended gerund forms in -tvānam and -tvānam are mentioned as Vedic by the grammarians but examples of them have not been found in the extant literature. Middle Indo-Aryan has a common gerund in -tūna (gantūna) which appears to contain the same elements as -tvānam, but with different apophony.

The accusative of verbal action nouns in -a is used adverbially in constructions that resemble the gerund: imāny áṅgāni
vyatyaśam sete 'he lies down changing the position of these limbs', etc. This usage does not occur in the earliest literature (RV., AV.), but it is common in the pre-classical prose. In the later classical prose it is comparatively rare, being used chiefly where the form is repeated: darśam-darśam 'continually seeing', śrāvam-śrāvam 'continually hearing'.
CHAPTER VIII

LOANWORDS IN SANKRIT

§ 1. NON-ARYAN INFLUENCE ON SANKRIT

In the preceding chapters the history and development of the Sanskrit language has been described, from its remote Indo-European beginnings until it received final and definite form in India. The process was one of continual linguistic change, and when Sanskrit was artificially stabilised by the grammarians, this process was continued in the popular speech to produce first the Middle Indo-Aryan languages and finally the Modern Indo-Aryan languages. So far we have dealt only with developments that affected the inherited linguistic material which constitutes the basic texture of the language. But this is not all that has to be taken into consideration, since there are to be found in addition many elements in the language whose origin is to be sought elsewhere, namely in the influence of the various non-Aryan languages in contact with which Indo-Aryan developed.

Such influence affected mainly of course the vocabulary of the language. In more general terms such influence is seen in the phonetic development of a new series of occlusives, the so-called cerebrals. To begin with cerebrals appear in pure Aryan words as a result of phonetic changes affecting these \( ni\ddash a \rightarrow ni\ddash da \rightarrow ni\ddash da \) and although such a development is a part of the processes taking place within Indo-Aryan itself, it can hardly be an accident that it should occur in the only branch of Indo-European which was in contact with languages possessing such sounds. In grammar the rapid loss of the Indo-European grammar in the stages subsequent to Sanskrit was very likely accelerated by the acquisition of Aryan speech by peoples who spoke originally different languages. On the other hand foreign influence in matters of detail is always difficult to establish. One feature in Sanskrit which may perhaps be assigned to such influence is the use of the gerund or conjunctive participle. In form these adverbial participles are of course purely Indo-
European in origin, and their structure has been analysed above. On the other hand this type of formation is not used to make such participles elsewhere in Indo-European, and the employment of such adverbial forms to make a type of participle not familiar elsewhere is one of the special characteristics of Indo-Aryan. The same type of participle with the same kind of syntactic usage happens also to be a noteworthy feature of Dravidian. It may well be that the extensive use made of this formation in Sanskrit is partly due to the influence of Dravidian usage.

Although a few points of this kind may profitably be examined from the point of view of foreign influence, it is mainly in the vocabulary that detailed confirmation of such influence must be sought, and it is to an examination of this side of the problem that the present chapter is devoted. The basic vocabulary of Sanskrit is Indo-European, and it is this which has appeared in the preceding chapters, but in addition there exist large numbers of words which are without Indo-European etymology. In the very earliest language such words are few, but they progressively become more numerous. In the Middle Indo-Aryan period there is a further growth of new vocabulary; and again in the Modern Indo-Aryan languages there appears an abundance of words which are unknown to the earlier stages of the language.

The tendency to substitute new words for inherited IE words has been permanently active in Indo-Aryan. Among common examples in Sanskrit we may note ghotaaka- ‘horse’ which appears beside asva- in later Sanskrit and supplants it in the later history of Indo-Aryan. Similarly svān- ‘dog’ gives way to kukkura- and its derivatives. It is not unusual to find pairs of names in Sanskrit, used equally commonly, of which one is non-Aryan, e.g. mārjārā- ‘cat’ (mrj-) beside biḍāla-, vyāghrā- ‘tiger’ beside śārdūla-, ḫṣa- ‘bear’ beside bhallūka-. Sometimes the number of synonyms is much greater. The common word for elephant is hastin- (‘possessed of a hand’), but beside it, all in common use, we find gaja-, kuṇjara-, ṭhā-, nāga- and mātanga-. Similarly beside mahiśā- ‘buffalo’ we find other terms such as kāsara-, lulāya-, sairibha- and heramba-. In such cases what are clearly local words, belonging originally to different languages have been adopted into Sanskrit, and the multiplicity of the Sanskrit vocabulary reflects an original
linguistic complication in India which has receded before the advance of Indo-Aryan.

These few examples serve to illustrate the composite nature of the Sanskrit vocabulary, and the total number of such extraneous words is very large. Their source is mainly to be found in pre-Aryan languages of India. It is likely that there existed in India various linguistic groups which have been totally extinguished by the advance of Indo-Aryan, and in so far as Sanskrit has drawn words from such sources, their origin must remain for ever unknown. On the other hand those non-Aryan languages which have maintained their independent existence form a valuable source for the investigation of the extraneous elements in Sanskrit. It will therefore be convenient to enumerate the various groups involved, and to examine what contribution each has to make to the investigation of the problem.

On its northern and eastern frontiers Indo-Aryan is contiguous with Tibeto-Burman languages and a number of such dialects are spoken within the political frontiers of India. In spite of this contact no evidence of influence from this side on Indo-Aryan has been produced. This linguistic family has always remained essentially external to India proper. Furthermore it appears that on the Eastern frontiers of India these peoples have displaced earlier Austro-Asiatic populations and that their contact is not very ancient. It is possible that a few Sanskrit words may eventually be traced to this origin, but at present no satisfactory evidence of such influence is available.

In the extreme North-West of India there is found Burushaski, a language which so far stands on its own. A connection between Burushaski and certain of the Caucasian languages has been suggested, but not proved, though it is possible that further work in this direction might be fruitful. An earlier form of this language must have existed in this region before the Aryan invasion, and it is likely to have occupied a more extensive territory. Evidence that Sanskrit has been influenced from this source has not been produced. It is a border language and such influence would only have been possible in the very earliest period of Indo-Aryan, since from the Vedic period it must have existed much as it does now, an isolated unit in a remote mountain tract.

In Eastern India there is found a family of languages which
is of considerable importance from this and other points of view. The Munḍa or Kolarian languages as they are variously called, have in no instances achieved the status of literary languages but they are important scientifically firstly because there is definite evidence that Indo-Aryan had been influenced from this source, and secondly because of their connection with Mon, Khmer and other languages east of India. The most important centre of this family is the Chota Nagpur Plateau, where Santali, Mundari, and a number of fairly closely related dialects are spoken. In Orissa, not far from the above area occurs Juang, and further south, on the Orissa Madras border, Savara, Gadaba and two other dialects which form a special group within the Munḍa family. Of these Savara is particularly well preserved and less overlaid by Indo-Aryan than most members of the family. The most western Munḍa tribe is that of the Kurkus, who occupy the Satpura and Mahadeo hills in Madhya Pradesh.

The most important linguistic family in India outside Indo-Aryan is the Dravidian family. Four members of this family have achieved the status of literary languages—Tamil, Malayalam, Telugu, Kanarese, and in the case of Tamil the literary tradition goes back for at least two thousand years. Besides the major languages there are numerous minor non-literary Dravidian languages spoken in various parts of India, namely:

(i) Southern: Tulu, Coorg, Toda, Kota.
(ii) Central: (a) Kolami-Naiki, Parji, Dravidian Gadba; (b) Gondi, Konda, Pengo, Kui, Kuvi.
(iii) Northern: (a) Kūrukh, Malto; (b) Brahui.

The existence of the last member of the family in Baluchistan, far away from the main concentration of Dravidian is consistent with the theory that before the Aryan conquest Dravidian occupied a much greater area including considerably portions of Northern India. We shall see that the extensive influence of Dravidian on Sanskrit, beginning at an early period, also seems to point to this conclusion.

In addition to the above-mentioned linguistic groups it has recently been established that the Nahali language still spoken by a small number of people in the Nimar district of Madhya Pradesh constitutes a further independent unit, unconnected with any of the groups previously mentioned. This language was briefly treated in the Linguistic survey of India where it
LOANWORDS IN SANSKRIT

was wrongly assigned to the Munḍa or Kolanian family. Examination of the material provided by the Linguistic Survey itself rendered this assertion extremely doubtful, and recent field researches, by greatly increasing the material available, have made it clear that Nahali is the last surviving remnant of what must originally have been a quite independent family. Yet others may have existed of which nothing is now known, and the possibility that Sanskrit (and also later Indo-Aryan) has drawn on such sources is always to be borne in mind.

Remains of an ancient language of India have been unearthed in the Indus cities of the third millennium B.C. So far no serious progress has been made in its decipherment, since no key to the solution is available. There is at present no means of knowing what kind of language is represented in these documents, which might be connected with one of the linguistic groups known in India, or be something quite different. Nor is there any means of knowing whether or not Sanskrit may have been influenced from this. There is only the possibility that some day, with the discovery of further information, a new chapter may be contributed to the linguistic history of India.

From this brief survey it is clear that there are two practical sources where the origin of the non-Aryan element in Sanskrit may be sought, namely the Munḍa and Dravidian languages, and in both these directions progress has been made. As far as the Munḍa languages are concerned the main difficulty is that many of them have been inadequately explored. A necessary basis for the study of their influence on Sanskrit is a proper comparative study of the languages themselves, but this cannot be undertaken until adequate grammars and dictionaries exist for all the independent members. At present the most detailed information exists for the Northern group (Santali, Mundari, etc.) but this happens to be the one which has been most profoundly influenced by Indo-Aryan. Consequently in the absence of full comparative evidence it is often difficult to decide which way the borrowing has taken place. There is also the question of the relation of Munḍa and Mon-Khmer. The evidence of this is clear enough to be decisive, but it has not been worked out in proper detail. This will eventually be necessary both for the comparative study of the Munḍa languages themselves, and for the special question under discussion, their influence on Indo-Aryan.
The connection between Munda and Mon-Khmer, etc., as members of a larger Austro-Asiatic family, has normally been assumed by those who have investigated this section of the Sanskrit vocabulary. Such etymologies are in some cases only available from Austro-Asiatic languages outside India. For instance one of the words for elephant mentioned above, mālaṅga- has been explained as Austro-Asiatic for ‘animal with a hand’ (cf. hastin-), but the forms with which it may be compared (tang ‘hand’, maintong ‘elephant’) are quoted not from India but from the Malay peninsula. The same is the case with Skt. aṅga- ‘women’ which is explained as containing a common Austro-Asiatic word for woman with prefix a-. cf. Khmer kan, Mon kʰnā, etc., with prefix a-, Bahnar akan, with prefix en-, Nicobar enkāṅa. The bird known in Sanskrit as kulīṅga- (‘fork-tailed strike’) has apparently an Austro-Asiatic name (Khasi kʰliṅ ‘kite, eagle’, Khmer khleen, Stieng ḥliṅ ‘kite’), but forms are not quoted from Munda. Common Austro-Asiatic words may have ceased to be current in Munda, or not known through defective documentation, and consequently etymologies based on languages outside India may be consistent with Sanskrit having acquired the words in India. In some cases the source of a word is definitely to be sought outside India, e.g. in the case of imported plants. Such is the case with lavaṅga- ‘clove’, where the origin of the plant as well as the name (Javanese lawān, etc.) is to be sought in Indonesia.

The following is a short list of words for which, with reasonable plausibility, a Munda, or more widely, Austro-Asiatic source has been claimed:

alābu ‘bottle-gourd’: cf. Malay labu, labo, Khmer lbow, Batak labu, etc.

undūru- ‘rat’: with prefix un-; cf. Khmer kʰándōr with different prefix, Savara guntur- ‘rat’, further Savara ondren- ‘rat’.


karpāsa- ‘cotton’ (> Gk. κάρπασος): cf. Malayan kāpas, etc. An unprefixed form appears in Črau paç, baç, Stieng patic, which may be reflected in Ta. pańci, Ka. pańji ‘cotton’, and possibly in Skt. picu ‘id’.

jambāla- ‘mud’: cf. Santal jōbo, etc., ‘damp’. Kharia

jim-, jemati ‘to eat’ (late; common in Mod. IA, Hi. jenā ‘to eat’, jemānā ‘to feed’, Mar. jemē ‘to eat’, etc.): cf. Santal jām, Kurku jome, Juang jim, Savara jem, etc.

tāmbūla- ‘betel’: prefixed form; cf. Alak balu, Khmer mluo, Bahnar bōlōu, etc.; various prefixes, Mon jablu, Halang lamlu, etc. No form is quoted corresponding exactly to Sanskrit, but the same radical element is shared by all.

marica- ‘pepper’: cf. Mon mrāk, Khmer merek ‘id’. In the Munda languages there are some forms corresponding to Skt. marica-, but the opinion now is that these are loans from Sanskrit.

lāngala- ‘plough’, Pa. naṅgala: cf., with varying prefixes, Khmer ankāl, Čam laṅal, laṅar, Khasi ka-lynkor, Malay tegala, taṅgala, Batak tiṅgala, Makassar naṅkala. In Munda there is Santal nahel. This word is interesting because Dravidian has borrowed independently from the same source: Ta. ñāncil, Ka. nēgal, etc. A non-prefixed form with the change $k>h$ characteristic of the northern group of Munda languages, appears in Sanskrit as halā- ‘plough’.

sarśapa- ‘mustard’: Pkt. sāsava-; cf. Malay sesawi, etc. Old Tamil aiyavi, if form *sasavi also belongs here.

This short selection of words is sufficient to show the importance of Austro-Asiatic as a source of Sanskrit words. When the languages concerned have been properly studied and properly compared it is expected that more will be available, and that there will be greater certainty about the detailed history of the forms concerned. At present such studies are in their infancy, so that it is not possible to estimate how much of the Indo-Aryan vocabulary will eventually prove to be derived from this source.

The most important source of the foreign element in the Sanskrit vocabulary is to be found in the Dravidian languages. Although the comparative study of the Dravidian languages is still in its infancy, the position is much better than with the Munda languages. Full lexicographical material is available for the major literary languages, and although much work remains to be done in the first-hand study of the minor languages, more is known about them than about the majority of the Munda languages. More work has been done on the influ-
LOANWORDS IN SANSKRIT 381

eence of Dravidian on Sanskrit and more abundant results have been achieved. It is now possible to draw up a considerable list of words in Sanskrit which can be traced either with certainty or with a high degree of probability to a Dravidian origin. This is illustrated by the following list:

-aguru 'fragrant aloe wood': Ta. Ma. akil, Tu. agilu 'id'.
- ankolā- 'Alangium hexapetalum': Ta, ariṅcil, Ma. arinñil 'id'.
- anala- 'fire': Ta. anal 'fire; vb. to burn', Ma. anal 'fire' Ka. analu 'heat'.
- arkā- 'Calotropis gigantea': Ta. erukku, Ma. erikkku, Ka. erke, ekke 'id'.
- ulapā- 'bush, shrub, a kind of soft grass, a creeper': Ta. ulavai 'green twig with leaves on it, branch of a tree, grove, n. of various shrubs'.
- ulupin- 'porpoise: Ka. unaci, Te. uluca, ulusa.
- ulākhala- 'mortar': Ta. ulakkai 'pestle', Ma. ulakka, Ka. olake 'id', Te. rōkali 'a large wooden pestle'.
- eda- 'sheep, ram, wild goat': Ta. yātu, ātu 'goat, sheep', Ka. ādu 'goat', Tu. ēdu 'id', Te. ēta 'ram', Go. ēṭī 'she-goat', Brah. hēṭ 'id'.
- kaṅka- 'heron': cf. Ta. Ma. koṭku 'crane, stork, heron', Tu. koriṅgu 'crane', Te. kọṅga, Kuvi kongi 'id'.
- kajjala- 'soot, lampblack': Ta. karical 'blackness'.
- kātu- 'pungent, acrid, sharp': Ta. kātu 'severe, pungent, sharp', Ma. kātu 'extreme, impetuous, fierce', kaṭukka 'to grow hard, sharp', Ka. Te. Tu. kādu 'severe, intense', etc.
- katkha- 'hard, firm, stiff': Ta. katti 'anything hardened, coagulated', Ka. kāṭugu 'to become hard', gatti 'firmness, hardness', Tu. gatti 'firm, hard', Te. kaṭṭidi 'hard-hearted', gatti 'hard, firm'.
- kāka- 'crow': Ta. kākkai, Ma. kākka, Ka. kāke, Pa. kākal, Kur. kākkā, Malt. qāqe, Brah. kākkō 'id'.
- kāca-, kāja- 'carrying yoke': Ta. kā 'id', kānu 'carry with yoke', Pa. kācal 'carrying yoke', kān- 'to carry with yoke', Kui kāsa, Kuvi kāṇju 'carrying yoke'.
- kāncika-, kānjika- 'rice-gruel': Ta. kānci, Ma. kāṇṭi, Ka. Tu. Te. gaṇji 'id'.
kānana- 'forest': Ta. kā 'forest', kān 'id', kānam 'woodland, grove', kānal 'grove or forest on the seashore', Ma. kāvu 'garden, grove', kānal 'dry jungle', Ka. kā 'forest'.
kāla- 'black': Ta. kār 'blackness', Ka. kār 'id', kargu 'to turn black'.
kūṭa- 'pot': Ta. Ma. kūṭam, Ka. kōda, Ko. korm 'id'.
kūṭī- 'hut, house': Ta. Ma. kūṭi, Ka. Tu. Te. guḍi 'hut, house, temple', Kui hūri 'hut'.
kūṭila- 'crooked': Ta. kōṭu 'crooked', kūṭa 'curved, bent' kūṭavu 'bend, curve', Ma. kōṭu, Ka. kūṭu 'crooked'.
kūṭit- 'to pound': Ta. kūṭī- 'cuff, strike with the knuckles', Ma. kūṭuka 'to pound, cuff', Ka. kūṭu 'to beat, pound'.
kūṇḍa- 'hole in the ground, pit': Ta. kūṇṭu 'hollow, pool, pit', Ma. kūṇṭu 'hole, pit', Ka. kūnte, kūṇḍa, guṇāi 'hole, pit', etc.
kūṇḍāla- 'ring, earring, coil of rope': cf. Ka. guṇḍa, guṇḍu 'round', Tu. guṇḍu 'anything round', guṇḍala 'an ear ornament', Te. guṇḍrana 'roundness', guṇḍrani 'round'.
kūḍḍāla- 'kind of spade or hoe': Ka. guḍḍali 'kind of pick-axe, hoe', Tu. guḍḍoli, Te. guḍḍali 'id', Ko. kudāy 'hoe', Malt. qodali 'id': cf. Ka. guḍḍū 'strike, pound', etc.
kūṇīla- 'hair of head': Ta. Ma. kūṭal, Ka. kūḍal 'id'.
kū́ruḷa- 'curl': Ta. kūruḷ 'to curl; a curl', Ma. kūruḷ 'curls', Ka. kūruḷ, Te. kūruḷu 'id'.
kūḷatthā- 'Dolichos uniflorus': cf. Ta. kōḷ, Ma. kōḷu, Tu. kūḍu, Pa. kōḷ 'id'.
kūvālaya- 'lotus': Ta. kuvalai, Ka. kōmałe, kōval, kōle 'id'.
kūpā- 'mast': Ta. Ma. kūmpu, Tu. kūvē, kuvē 'id'.
kētaka- 'Pandanus odoratissimus': Ta. kaitai, kaital, Ma. kāḍage, Te. gēdage 'id'.
kēmuka- (also kevuka-, kecuka-, kacu-, kacvi) 'Colocasia antiquorum': Ta. Ma. cēmpu, Tu. cēvu, lēvu, Ka. kesu, kesa, kesavu, kēsu, kēsave, Te. cēma 'id'.
kōṭara- 'hollow, cavity': Ka. goṭaru, goṭru 'hollow, hole (in wall, tree, etc.), cf. goḍagu 'id'.
kōṇa- 'corner': Ta. kōṇ 'crookedness, corner, angle', kōṇu 'to be bent, crooked', Ma. kōṇ 'corner, angle', kōṇuka 'to bend', Ka. kōṇ, kōne, Tu. kōne, Te. kōna 'corner'.
kṓraka- 'bud': Ta. kūraī 'sprout, shoot', Kui kōru 'new shoot or bud', Kur. khōrnā 'to shoot out new leaves', khōr 'leaf-bud, new leaves', Malt. goroce 'to sprout'.
**LOANWORDS IN SANSKRIT**

**khala-** 'threshing-floor': Ta. **kālam** 'threshing-floor, open space', Ka. **kāla**, *kāna* 'threshing floor', Te. *kalanu*, Pa. **kali**, Kui **khai** 'id'.

**khala-** 'a rogue': Ta. **kāl** 'to steal', **kāvan** 'thief', **kāvun** 'theft, deception', Ka. **kāla** 'thief', Te. **kalla** 'deceit', **kalari** 'a rogue', etc.

**ganda-** 'lump, excrescence, boil': Ka. **gaddē** 'mass, lump, concretion', Te. **gaḍḍa** 'lump, mass, clot, boil'.

**guda-** 'globe, ball': Ka. **guḍasu** 'anything round', **guḍdu** 'eyeball, egg', Te. **guḍḍu** 'id'.

**ghūka-** 'owl': Ta. **kūkai**, Ka. **gūgi**, *gūge*, *gūbi*, Te. *gūba*, **gūbi** 'id'.

**candana-** 'sandal wood': Ta. **cāntu** 'paste, sandal paste', **cāttu** 'daub, smear', Ma. **cāntu** sandal paste', Ka. **sādu** 'a fragrant substance', Te. **cādu** 'to rub into a paste'.

**cēpaṭa-** 'slap with the open hand': Ka. **capparisu** 'to slap', **cappāti** 'clapping the hands', Te. **cappala** 'a clap of the hands'.

**cikkana-** 'unctuous, viscid': Te. **cikkā-baḍu** 'to become thick or inspissated', **cikkani** 'thick or inspissated', Ka. **cigil jigil** 'to be viscous, glutinous'.

**cumb-** 'to kiss': Ta. **cūppu** 'to suck', **cūmpu** 'to suck, fondle with the lips', Tu. **jumbuni** 'to suck', etc.

**cūḍā-** 'tuft of hair, crest': Ta. **cūṭu** 'to wear on the head'; hair tuft, crest'. Ma. **cūṭuka** 'to wear on the head', **cūṭu** 'cock's comb', Ka. **sūḍu**, etc.

**talina-** 'thin, fine, slender, meagre': Ka. **teḷ** 'thinness fineness', **tellane**, **tellanna** 'thin, delicate', Te. **tellena** 'thinnish', etc.

**tāḍaka-**, **tàla-**, **tālaka-** 'lock, bolt': Ta. **tār** 'bolt, bar', **tār-kkol** 'id', Ma. Ka. **tār**, Tu. **tārkoḷu** 'id'.


**tāla-** palmyra palm': Ka. **tār**, Te. **tāḍu** 'id'.


**tuvara-** astringent': Ta. **tuvar** 'to be astringent; astringency', **tuvarppu** 'astringent taste', Ka. **tuvara**, tovara, togari, togaru 'astringent', Kui **torpa** 'to be astringent'.

**tūla-** 'cotton, down': Ta. Ma. **tūval** 'feather, down', etc.

**nakra-** 'alligator': Ka. **negar**, Tu. **negaru**, Te. **negadu** 'id'.

**nirgundi** 'Vitex negundo': cf. Ta. **nocci**, Tu. **nekki** Ka. **nekki**, lekki, lakki 'id'.


palana- 'Trichosanthes dioecia': Ta. puṭal, puṭalai, Ma. puṭtal, piṭtal, Ka. Te. poṭa 'id'.
panda- 'eunuch, effeminate man': Ta. pen, penu 'woman', pēṭtāyān, pēti 'hermaphrodite', Ka. pen, pēṇa 'woman', Te. pēṇi 'woman', pēdi 'eunuch', etc.
palli 'house lizard': Ta. Ma. Ka. Tu. palli 'lizard', Te. balli 'id'.
palli 'small village': Ta. Ma. Ka. palli 'hamlet, settlement, small village', Te. palli, palliya 'id'.
punkha- (feathered part of arrow': Ta. puḷuku 'arrowhead', Ka. piḷukku, piḷku 'feathered part of arrow'.
puliḍa 'the white ant or termite t: cf. Ta. puḷu, Ka. puttu, Te. piṭṭa, Kur. piṭṭa, Malt. pute 'white anthill'; This Drav. word also appears in Skt. as puṭa-in pijilīkāpuṭa- 'anthill'.
punnāga Calophyllum inophyllum ': Ta. punnai, Ma. punna, Ka. ponne, punnike, Tu. ponne, Te. ponna 'id'.
baka- 'crane': Ta. vakka, vaṅkā 'white stork', Te. vakku 'crane'.
bala- 'strength': Ta. val 'strong', valam 'strength', Ka. bal 'strong', balume, baluhu 'strength', Tu. balu 'big, powerful', Te. vali, valudu 'id', etc.
bila- 'hole, cave': Ta. vilavu 'cleft, crack', vil, vilu 'to crack, split', Ma. vilu 'to crack, burst open', vilalu 'a hollow, rent', vilu 'a crack, aperture'.
bilva- Aegle marmelos ': Ta. vilā, vilavu, celil 'Feronia elephantum', Ma. vilā, Ka. belaval. Te. velāga 'id'.
maṅku- 'confused, stupefied' (Buddh. Skt. madhu-): cf. Ta. makku 'to become dull; dullness', maṅku 'to grow dim, lose lustre', Ma. maṅnika 'id', Ka. maṅku dimness, obscurity', maggu 'grow dim or faint'.
mayāra- 'peacock': Ta. maṅṅai, mayil, Ma. mayil, Tu. mairu, Pa. maṅil 'id'.
mallikā 'jasmine': Ma. mullai, Ma. mulla, Ka. molle, Te. molla 'id'.
maşi- 'ink, lampblack': Ta. mai 'blackness, ink, lampblack', Ka. masi 'dirt, impurity, soot, ink', Tu. maji 'coal, black powder, ink' Te. masi blackness, soot, charcoal, ink'.
māḷa- 'wreath, garland': Ta. māḷai, Ka. māle, Ma. Te. māḷa garland', Ta. malai 'to wear as a garland'.
mīna- ‘fish’: Ta. mīn, Ka. mīn, Te. mīnu, Go. mīn, Malt. mīnu ‘id’.


murungī Moringa pterygosperma’: Ta. murunkai, Ma. muriṇṇa, Ka. nuggi, nuge, Tu. nurige, urge, Te. munaga, Pa. mūnga ‘id’, etc.

lālā ‘saliva, spittle’: Ma. nōla, nōla, Tu. nōli, nōve, Ka. lōle ‘id’.


valu ‘creeper’: Ta. Ma. valli, Ka. bali, Te. valli ‘id’.

śakala- ‘scales of fish; bark’: Ta. cekil ‘skin or rind of fruit’, ‘fish-scales’, Tu. cagulī ‘rind of fruit’, Malt. ceglo ‘shell of fruit’.

śimikā ‘ant’: Te. cīma, Kol. sīma, Kuvi sīma ‘ant’.

hintāla- ‘the marshy date tree’: Ta. intu ‘date palm’, iṅcu, īccam-panai ‘id’, Ma. ītā, ittal, Ka. ical, icil, Tu. īcīl, ācil, Te. īdu, īdādu ‘id’.

huḍukka- ‘small drum’: Ta. utoṭkku, uṭukkai ‘a small drum’, Ma. utoṭkka, Tu. uduku, Te. uduka ‘id’.

heramba- ‘buffalo’: Ta. erumai ‘buffalo’, Ma. erima, Ka. emme, Tu. erme, Go. ermī, armī ‘id’.

Concerning the date when these words were taken into Sanskrit it may be observed that the majority are post-Vedic. On the other hand it is important to note that there is a small nucleus already found in the Rigveda. Such are: uḷūkhalā-, kaṭuka-, kunda, khala-, bala-, bila-, mayūra-.

The number added in the later Samhitās (e.g. AV tūla-, bilva-, VS kaṅka-) and in the Brāhmaṇas (e.g. SB arka-, manku-) remains comparatively restricted. The large majority first appear in the classical language, but in its early stage, being first recorded in
Pāṇini, Patañjali, Mahābhārata, Srautasūtra, etc. The majority appear also in Pali, which is important for dating since these canonical texts take us back to a period from 500-300 B.C. The number that occur first only in later Sanskrit literature is again comparatively small. It is clear that as far as Sanskrit is concerned the active period of borrowing from Dravidian was well over before the Christian era. In Prakrit there are some new borrowings from Dravidian, but they are a good deal less numerous than those recorded above for the early Sanskrit period. They form only a small percentage of the new vocabulary of Prakrit. The common vocabulary of Modern Indo-Aryan has further new elements as opposed to Prakrit, but it is only rarely that any of these can be shown to be Dravidian.

It is evident from this survey that the main influence of Dravidian on Indo-Aryan was concentrated at a particular historical period, namely between the late Vedic period and the formation of the classical language. This is significant from the point of view of the locality where the influence took place. It is not possible that at this period such influence could have been exercised by the Dravidian languages of the South. There were no intensive contacts with South India before the Maurya period by which time the majority of these words had already been adopted by Indo-Aryan. If the influence took place in the North in the central Gangetic plain and the classical Madhyadesa the assumption that the pre-Aryan population of this area contained a considerable element of Dravidian speakers would best account for the Dravidian words in Sanskrit. The Dravidian languages Kurukh and Malto are preserved even now in Northern India, and may be regarded as islands surviving from a once extensive Dravidian territory. The Dravidian words in the Rgveda attest the presence of Dravidian in North-Western India at that period. Brahui in Baluchistan remains as the modern representative of north-western Dravidian.

It follows that the problem of Dravidian loanwords in Sanskrit is somewhat different from what is usually met with in loanword studies, since the particular dialects or languages from which the borrowings took place have vanished leaving no record behind, and the major Dravidian languages of the South, with which mainly the comparisons must be made, are separated by great distances geographically and by anything up to a
millenium or over in time. Fortunately the differences between the various Dravidian languages are not so great as to render dubious the reconstruction of the primitive form of the language and the form of words met with in the loanwords in Sanskrit does not differ materially from that which is arrived at by the comparative study of the existing Dravidian languages. It is a characteristic of the Dravidian languages that they have not evolved with the same rapidity as Indo-Aryan, and consequently the classical Dravidian languages and even the minor spoken languages recorded only in modern times can be used profitably to trace the Dravidian origin of Sanskrit words which were borrowed before any of these languages are themselves recorded, and from other ancient Dravidian dialects which have themselves disappeared.

§ 2. Loanwords from Greek and Iranian

The Sanskrit vocabulary acquired a limited number of Greek words, partly as a result of the rule of the Bactrian Greeks in North-West India in the second and first centuries B.C., and partly through contacts in respect of trade, etc. with the Graeco-Roman world. Words that can be ascribed to the Bactrian Greeks are khaliṇa- 'bridle' (χαλίνος), surūṅgā 'underground passage' (σούριγα) and āparistoma- 'coverlet, blanket' (περίστρωμα), and possibly kunta- 'lance' (κοντός). The Sanskrit lexica have preserved a word keśicā 'tent' which can be explained as a Prakritic adaptation of Gk. ἱκτής. In common with other Hellenistic rulers the Greeks of Bactria and India adopted the title sōtīpa- 'saviour' (rendered trātāra- in their coins). This title, not in its precise sense, but as an honorific epithet gained currency in the local Prakritis as sotīra-/sotīra-, and thence was adapted into Sanskrit as sautīra- 'hero, noble and generous man'.

Other words of Greek origin are better accounted for as having been acquired through trade, etc., e.g. kastiṇa- 'tin' (καστίνες) melā 'ink' (μέλαν), marakata- 'emerald' (μάρακατος, σμάραγδος) kimpala- 'kind of musical instrument' (κύμπαλος). Some words of Greek origin which only appear very late in Sanskrit have probably been taken in the first place from some intermediate language, e.g. kalama- 'pen' (κάλαμος) dramma- 'a coin' (δράχμη). The word kramelaka- 'camel' (κράμηλας) is also late, and disguised by popular etymology (as if from kram-).
It is possible that *harimantha-* 'chickpea' has been similarly adapted from Gk. ἑρᾶβυθος, though if so it has been even more effectively disguised.

There is a special class of Greek words occurring as technical terms in astronomical literature. The development of Indian astronomy in the early centuries of the Christian era was profoundly affected by Greek astronomy and a considerable number of its technical terms were adopted. Such words are ἥλιος 'sun', ἡρα 'hour', κεντρον 'centre of a circle', jāmitra- 'diameter' (Gk. ἕλιος, ὥρα, κέντρον, διάμετρον). Some of these also were distorted by popular etymology, e.g. ὕδρος: 'the zodiacal sign Aquarius' (Gk. ὕδρος).

Contact with the Graeco-Roman world introduced one Latin word only into Sanskrit, namely ḍiṇāra- 'name of a coin' (<denarius).

Following on the Greek invasions the northwestern part of India was the scene of a series of invasions by Iranian tribes, Pahlavas, Śakas, Kuśānas and finally Hūnas. This state of affairs prevailed during most of the first six centuries of the Christian era, and resulted in the establishment of a number of powerful dynasties of such origin, principally in Northwestern and Western India, but sometimes extending their sway further afield. This resulted in the adoption of a number of Iranian terms, first into Prakrit (principally the North-Western Prakrit), and eventually into Sanskrit. Examples from Indian inscriptions in Kharoṣṭhī and Bṛāhmī scripts are ḍora- 'donator', and bakana-pati- 'shrine attendant' (Khot. haur-, hor-'to give', Sogdian βγνπτ). In the North-Western Prakrit used in Central Asia these are quite frequent. In Sanskrit itself there are a not inconsiderable number which have entered the language at various periods. One of the earliest is līpi-'writing' (occurring in Aśokan also in the form dīpi-) from OPers. dīpi-. This word was borrowed at the time writing was introduced into India. Later a word divira- 'scribe' of the same origin was introduced, though it had restricted currency. The word mudrā 'seal' is likewise attributable to Old Persian, although it happens not to be recorded in Iranian until later (Pahl. ṁνhr), and karsa- 'n. of a particular weight' has been considered to derive from OPers. karśa-.

Among the other Iranian loanwords the following may be listed: ksatrapa- 'satrap' used as a title by certain of the above
mentioned Iranian rulers, vārābāna- ‘armour, mail’ (OIr. *varopāna- ‘protecting the breast’), khola- ‘helmet, a kind of hat’ (Av. xaoḍa-, Pašt. xōl), jagara- ‘armour’ (cf. Pašt. zgarā ‘armour’), māḍhī ‘armour mail’ (MPers. māḍī(k)), tīrī ‘a kind of arrow’ (NPers. tīr) paryāna- ‘saddle’ (Ir. *paridāna- in NPers. pālān ‘pack-saddle’, etc.), pīlu- ‘elephant’ (NPers. pīl) bandī ‘prisoner, captive’ (NPers. bandah), gola- ‘ball’ (NPers. gōy<*gauda-), gaṅja- ‘treasury’ (NPers. gaṇ). As can be seen from this list the words borrowed from Iranian have mainly to do with military affairs and equipment, which is in accordance with their military superiority over many centuries. Of words not connected with war, mention may be made of pustaka- ‘book’ ultimately derived from Iranian (Pers.) pōst ‘skin’ and mihira- ‘sun’ (Pers. mihr OIr. miθra-). Some Iranian loanwords are attested only in writers from Kashmir (e.g. gaṅja-, divira-) where they derive from the North-Western Prakrit. There are others which are found only in Buddhist Sanskrit, e.g. kākhorda- ‘wizard’ (cf. Av. kax’ardā-) mocika- ‘shoemaker’ MPers. mōcak) whence Hindi mocī ‘id’. These words are also derived through the North-Western Prakrit, since it was the Buddhist writers of the North-Western schools who were responsible for their adoption.
APPENDIX TO THE THIRD EDITION

Supplementary Notes
and Bibliographical References

CHAPTER I

§ 1. For a detailed discussion of the term ārya- and its cognates see H. W. Bailey, *Iranian arya and daha*, Transactions of the Philological Society, 1959, pp. 71-115. For ārya- as applied to the language of the Indo-Aryans, cf. Śāṅkhāyana Aranyakā 8, 9: yatrāryā vāg vadati, and Aitareya Aranyaka 3, 2, 5: yatra kva ca āryā vāco bhāṣante. For similar usage in Buddhist Sanskrit, see Bailey, op. cit. p. 102. The term Sanskṛta is late in appearing, and it is not used by Pāṇini or Paṭaṇjali. The earliest recorded occurrence is in Rāmāyāna, 3, 10, 54, after which it becomes quite common (Naṭyaśāstra, Suśruta, Kāvyādarśa, etc).

Ancient History, pp. 824–876), 1971. Opinions as to the original Indo-European homeland continue to differ; suggestions include the region south of the Baltic sea (Thieme), the steppes north of the Caucasus (Gimbutas) and the Danube basin and surrounding regions (Georgiev). The last alternative seems to fit in best with the historical distribution of the languages and dialects.

§ 4. The importance of the connections between Indo-Iranian and Baltic in particular has been stressed by H. W. Bailey (BSOAS 21 (1958), pp. 42 ff.) in connection with such words as návanīta-‘ butter’, netra-‘ churning string’ (cf. Lett. nīju, nī ‘to make a circular movement, churn’), bīja-‘ seed’ (with b-<m-; cf. Lith. miežys ‘barley-corn’, Lett. miežis), rip-‘ ascent, elevation’ (Lith. lipti ‘to rise, ascend’).

Further Baltic comparisons, to be added to the list given in this section are as follows: tand- ‘to be weary, slothful’, tandrī ‘sloth’: Lith. tanāus ‘lazy, slothful’; mūrkha-‘ fool’: Lith. mūkis; tvī- ‘to sparkle, glitter’: Lith. tviskėti ‘to lighten’; šakala- ‘chip, fragment, splinter’: Lith. šakalys ‘chip of wood’; pūla- ‘bunch, bundle’: Lett. pūlis ‘heap’, būlī- ‘anus’, Lith. bulis valda- ‘the hair of an animal’s tail (particularly a horse’s tail)’: Lith. vēlas ‘hair of horse’s tail’.

§ 5. The Indo-Aryan (and Indo-European) loanwords in the Finno-Ugrian languages are listed by B. Collinder in Fenno-ugric vocabulary; an etymological dictionary of the Uralic languages, pp. 129–141, Stockholm, 1955.

§ 6. Since 1955 a small amount of new Aryan material from the Near East has turned up. The documents from Nuzi have revealed certain colour adjectives applied to horses, in Hurrian form paŋunu/baŋunu, pünkaranu, paŋilənu, corresponding to Sanskrit baḥrī- pīngalā- and pañi-ā-. The change of original -l- to -r- in paŋila- and pünkara-, a change which had previously been noted in Sūrīaṣ, is of considerable importance, since it shows that this change, characteristic of Iranian and the Rgvedic dialect of Old Indian had already taken place before 1500 B.C. Other words that have been noted in this connection are makanni ‘gift’, maninnu ‘neck ornament’, cf. Skt. man-, maghā-, and possibly urukmannu corresponding to Skt. rukmā-
If the connection between *mištannu* 'bright ornament' and Skt. *mīdá-* proposed by Mayrhofer is accepted, then we have a pre-Vedic Indo-Iranian form (*mižda-*) represented.

A complete bibliography to the end of 1965, and a summing up of the subject, is provided by M. Mayrhofer in *Die Indo-Arier im alten Vorderasien; mit einer analytischen Bibliographie*, Wiesbaden, 1966. There is also a detailed discussion of the subject by A. Kammenhuber in *Die Arier im vorderen Orient*, Heidelberg, 1968. The work contains valuable discussions, but carries scepticism too far (on which see M. Mayrhofer, *Die vorderasiatischen Arier*, Asiatische Studien (Études Asiatiques) XXIII, pp. 139–154), Bern, 1969.

The Aryan gods of the Mitanni treaties are discussed in an important article by P. Thieme in *JAOS*, 80, pp. 301–317, 1960.

**CHAPTER II**


§ 7 (p. 61). The use of mixed Sanskrit in inscriptions, particularly of the Kushanas, is discussed, and illustrated with examples by E. Lamotte in *Histoire de la Bouddhisme indienne*, pp. 640-41, Louvain, 1958.


(pp. 61-2). The vocabulary of Jaina Sanskrit has now been dealt with by B. J. Sandesara and J. P. Thaker in *Lexicographical studies in Jaina Sanskrit*, Baroda, 1962.


CHAPTER III

§ 3. There is now a detailed study of the surd aspirates by R. Hiersche: *Untersuchungen zur Frage der tenues aspiratae im Indogermanischen*, Wiesbaden, 1964. Hiersche rejects the laryngeal explanations, and considers the aspiration to have developed mainly in combinations with sibilant (*sthágati*, as opposed to Gk. *στέγω*, etc., a phenomenon to which reference was made above, p. 72). Initial surd aspirates are explained by assuming loss of mobile *s*- (*phéna-*: OPruss. *spoayno*, etc.). Unfortunately Hiersche does not deal at all with those cases of sonant aspirates where such an explanation is impossible: e.g. *rátha-, sápá-, saṅkhá-, sákha*. For the opposing view see F. B. J. Kuiper, *Indo-Iranian Journal*, 9, pp. 218-227. It seems however that only a portion of the instances can be explained by the laryngeal theory, and that for others (e.g. *phéna-*) an explanation on the lines proposed by Hiersche is preferable.

§ 5. The statement (p. 75, l. 21) that the satem languages have uniformly abandoned all trace of the labial element needs qualification in one respect as far as Sanskrit is concerned. As first pointed out by O. Szemerényi in a paper 'The problem of Indo-European labio-velars' read to the Philological Society in March, 1952, roots in *f* have a weak form in *ur*/ür when the original was a labio-velar, just as happens in the case of the
iabials, whereas when the initial was a pure velar the weak form is in ir/ər. This is seen most clearly in the derivatives from the root gf-/gur 'to welcome' (original labio-velar) on the one hand, and gf-/gir- 'to sing' on the other. See further my article Sanskrit gf/gur- 'to welcome' (BSOAS, 1957, pp. 133–144), and Szemerényi, Einführung in die vergleichende Sprachwissenschaft, pp. 60–61.

§ 10. The most recent comprehensive discussion of IE mobile s is by F. Edgerton, IE s movable, Language 34, pp. 445–453. He takes it to be a sandhi-phenomenon due to the great frequency of final -s in Indo-European.

§ 11. The subject matter of this section is dealt with in detail in my two articles, On the phonological history of Sanskrit kṣām- 'earth', Ḫkṣa- 'bear' and likṣā 'nit', and Sanskrit kṣi-: Gk. ḫθίων, in Journal of the American Oriental Society, 79, pp. 85–90 and 255–262, 1959. The subject is treated differently, but beginning from the same standpoint (IE dheghom- 'earth', etc.) by W. Merlingen in Μνήμες χέρων (Gedenkschrift Kretschmer) II, 49 ff. 1957, and Die Sprache, 8, pp. 74–76, 1962. See also O. Szemerényi, Einführung in die vergleichende Sprachwissenschaft, pp. 46–47.

§ 13. The literature on IE H and its varieties ('laryngeals') since 1955 is extensive. A useful survey and summing up is to be found in W. Winter (ed.) Evidence for laryngeals, The Hague, 1965; especially to be recommended is E. Polome's introductory survey in this volume: The laryngeal theory so far. A critical bibliographical survey (pp. 9–78).

§ 17. On Fortunatov's law see my article A reconsideration of Fortunatov’s law, BSOAS, 35, pp. 531–544, 1972, which contains a brief account of the disputes concerning this subject, as well as a defence of Fortunatov's theory.

As regards spontaneous cerebralisation it was made clear by H. W. Bailey in a series of articles from 1952 onwards that this has taken place to a much greater extent than previously recognised. I have discussed this subject, adding to Bailey's material, in my article Spontaneous cerebals in Sanskrit, BSOAS, 35, pp. 538–559, 1971.

There are also some cases where the occurrence of cerebral -s-
after a and ā can be accounted for by special reasons: see my articles, *Sanskrit jālāśa* in W. B. Henning Memorial Volume, pp. 89–97, 19, 1970, and *Sanskrit śāspa- and bāspa-* , JRAS, 1969, pp. 112–117.

§ 18. Under miscellaneous changes reference should be made to H. W. Bailey’s remarks on the alternation of b and m (Skt. bija-: Ir. miz-, Lith. miežys) in his articles *Iranian miśṣa-*, *Indian bija-*, BSOAS, 18, pp. 32–42, and *Miśṣa suppletum*, ibid. 21, pp. 40–47. See also my article, *Sanskrit āmoda- ‘fragrance, perfume’*, Indological Studies in honour of W. Norman Brown, pp. 23–27, New Haven, 1962.


**CHAPTER IV**


CHAPTER V


CHAPTER VI


§ 2 (p. 268, ll. 33–34). The question as to whether Prakrit se is to be directly compared with the Iranian words quoted in this section has long been a matter of dispute. The subject has recently been exhaustively discussed by M. Scheller: Das mittelindische Enklitikum se, KZ, 81, pp. 1–53. He comes to the conclusion that Pkt. se is a secondary development from un-accented asya.

CHAPTER VII


(p. 299). The use of the Vedic Injunctive has been exhaustively examined and discussed by K. Hoffman: Der Injunktiv im Veda, Heidelberg, 1967.


§ 9. On the periphrastic future see now J. Gonda, A critical survey of the publications on the periphrastic future in Sanskrit, Lingua, 6, 158–179.

§ 10. The Sanskrit aorist has been studied by T. J. Elari-

§ 13 (p. 350). Concerning the imperatives in -si, it should be stated not only that they are not normally formed from roots having root presents, but also that in the majority of cases they are formed from roots which make an s-aorist. From this it is clear that these forms are to be attached to the s-aorist stem, and they may be most simply classified as s-aorist imperatives. This is the conclusion reached by G. Cardona in a recent study of this problem; *The Vedic imperatives in -si*, Language, 41, pp. 1–18, 1965. On the other hand O. Szemerényi (Language, 42, 1–6, 1966) prefers to regard them as syncopated forms of original subjunctives (dar§asi>darṣi). This appears to be less satisfactory, not only on account of the phonetic difficulties involved, but also because the primary and predominant use of these forms is as imperatives. The few cases, to which Cardona and Szemerényi draw attention, in which they are used in subordinate clauses, are probably to be accounted for as misuse by later poets of a form which had become obsolete.

§ 14 (p. 352). The termination -s of the third person singular active of the root aorist optative/precative is found also in Iranian, for which see my article *The Sanskrit Precative in Asiatica* (Festschrift Weller), pp. 35–42, 1954.


**CHAPTER VIII**

20 ff. (1972) where it is argued that it is in origin a middle Indo-Aryan descriptive epithet.

(p. 380). On marica- in the Munḍa languages see now N. H. Zide, Current Trends in Linguistics, Vol. V, pp. 420-421. In the same paragraph he also queries the origin of the verb jim- from Munḍa, on the ground that the vowel is different in the Munḍa languages (Santali jom-, etc.), and further remarks that 'the identification of words in Indo-Aryan and Dravidian as Munḍa loans, even when this has been done by careful scholars, is not often convincing, particularly in the light of newer data'.

As regards sarṣapa- 'mustard', the Austro-Asiatic origin of this word has now been rendered doubtful by an article by W. B. Henning (Istituto Orientale di Napoli, Annali, Sezione Linguistica, VI, 29-47, 1965), where he treats of the Iranian words for 'mustard' going back to an original *sinšapa-, and obviously related to the Sanskrit word. In view of this Malay sesawi, etc., should probably be regarded as loanwords from Indo-Aryan rather than vice-versa.
SELECT BIBLIOGRAPHY

ALLEN, W. S.  Phonetics in ancient India, Oxford 1953.
— Sandhi; the theoretical, phonetic and historical bases of word-
ARNTZ, H.  Sprachliche Beziehungen zwischen arisch und
Balto-slavisch, Heidelberg 1933.
BENVENISTE, E.  Origines de la formation des noms en indo-
européen, I, Paris 1935.
BLOCH, J.  L’indo-aryen du Veda aux temps modernes, Paris
1934.
BRUGMANN, H.  Grundriss der vergleichende Grammatik der
indo-germanischen Sprachen, 2nd ed., Strassburg 1897-1916
(Reprint, Berlin 1967).
— Kurze vergleichende Grammatik der indo-germanischen
DELBRÜCK, B.  Altindische Syntax, Halle 1888.
EDGERTON, F.  Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit, I Grammar, II
Dictionary, Newhaven 1953.
FRIEDRICH, J.  Hethitisches Elementarbuch, I, Heidelberg
1940.
GEIGER, W.  Pali Literatur und Sprache, Strassburg 1916.
GHOSH, B.  Linguistic Introduction to Sanskrit, Calcutta
1937.
GONDA, J.  Old Indian (Handbuch der Orientalistik, II Abt.
HENDRIKSEN, H.  Untersuchungen über die Bedeutung des
Hethitischen für die Laryngaltheorie, Copenhagen 1941.
JACOBSOHN, H.  Arier und Úgrofinnen, Göttingen 1922.
KENT, R. G.  Old Persian Grammar, Texts, Lexicon, Newhaven
1950.
KURYLOWICZ, J.  L’accentuation des langues indo-européennes,
Cracow 1952.
SELECT BIBLIOGRAPHY

MANSION, J.  Esquisse d'une histoire de la langue sanskrite, Paris 1931.
MAYRHOFER, M.  Kurzgefasstes etymologisches Wörterbuch des Altindischen (in progress), Heidelberg 1953 ff.
——  Sanskrit-Grammatik (mit sprachvergleichenden Erläuterungen), Berlin 1965.
MEILLET, A.  Les dialectes indo-européennes, Paris 1908 (1922).
PEDERSEN, H.  Hettitisch und die anderen indoeuropäischen Sprachen, Copenhagen 1938.
——  Tocharisch von Gesichtspunkt der indoeuropäischen Sprachvergleichung, Copenhagen 1941.
PISANI, V.  Grammatica del Antico Indiano (incomplete), Rome 1930–33.
PISCHEL, R.  Grammatik der Prakrit-Sprachen, Strassburg 1900.
RENOU, L.  Grammaire sanscrite, Paris 1930.
——  Grammaire de la langue védique, Paris 1952.
SPECHT, F.  Der Ursprung der indogermanischen Deklination, Göttingen 1944 (1948).
——  Vedische und Sanskrit-Syntax, Strassburg 1896.
SZEMERÉNYI, O.  Einführung in die vergleichende Sprachwissenschaft, Darmstadt 1970.

INDEX

a°, 104, 283
a-, 272, 285
amsū-, 180
āmsa-, 68, 163
amḥati-, 169
āmhas-, 73, 96, 223
amhū-, 73, 182
akṛṣṭaṇapacāya-, 213
ākravihasta-, 160, 177
akṣ-, 290
ākṣa-, 80
ākṣi, 19, 82, 177, 221, 224, 247
ākṣṇayā, 153
agāsti, 164
aguru-, 381
agnāyī, 181, 251
agnāviṣnū, 181, 251
agni-, 157, 184, 223, 233, 245 ff., 252
agnimānt-, 147
agnivānt-, 147
agnimindhā-, 214
āgrā-, 136, 286
agratās, 167
agrimā-, 176
agriyā-, 185
agrā-, 225
agryā-, 185
agka-, 197
aghāyāti, 364
āṅkā-, 76
āṅkasā-, 163
āṅkura-, 149
āṅkūyāti, 363
āṅkola-, 381
āṅgā, 284
āṅganā, 379
āṅgāra-, 22
āṅgūri-, 157
āṅgya-, 185
āṅghri-, 157
ācchā, 287
aj-, 25, 73, 148, 304, 329
ajā-, 20
ajagarā-, 126
ajalomā-, 211
ajāvayāh, 218
ajūna-, 21
ajumā-, 175
ājman-, 131, 175
ājra-, 102, 148, 185
ājryā-, 185
āṇj-, 327, 342
āṇjana-, 136, 138
āṇjasā-, 163
āṇjivā-, 187
at-, 98
atānī-, 98
āṇīyāsakā-, 197
āṇu-, 184
ātās, 277
atasa-, 163
atasi-, 164
ātī, 285, 286
ātīthi-, 137, 188, 196
ātimātra-, 217
ātka-, 39, 197
āttār-, 147
ātyāṃhas-, 216
ātra-, 147, 151
āitra, 132, 277, 280
ātri-, 157
āthāra-, 192
āḍharvan-, 4
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ad-</td>
<td>112, 295, 319, 342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adatī</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adānt-</td>
<td>111, 145, 226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adāśas</td>
<td>276 ff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adānā-</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adābhya-</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adga-</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>addhā</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>addhāttī-</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adharā-</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adyatana-</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adhamā-</td>
<td>176, 275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ādharma-</td>
<td>129, 275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adharahanu-</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adharāt</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adhās</td>
<td>279, 286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adhāstāt</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ādhi</td>
<td>285, 286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ādhivāsā-</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adhyāpayati</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ādhyāvan-</td>
<td>134, 148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adhvarā-</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ādhvaryātīt</td>
<td>362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adhvaryū-</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an-</td>
<td>102, 190, 321, 329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ana-</td>
<td>20, 272, 274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anandvāh-</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ānatiābhubta-</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ānapta-</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anarvīś-</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anala-</td>
<td>381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ānas-</td>
<td>103, 158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anilayā</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ānu</td>
<td>248, 285, 286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anudātta-</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anudrā-</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anusṭhīti</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ántaka-</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ántama-</td>
<td>176, 275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antār-</td>
<td>132, 278, 285, 286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antara-</td>
<td>150, 275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antarā</td>
<td>285, 286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antārhita-</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ānti</td>
<td>85, 102, 279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antrā-</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ándhas-</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>annāddā-</td>
<td>126, 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anyā-</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anyātas</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anyātra</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anyāthā</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anvavasarga-</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āp-</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āpa</td>
<td>68, 102, 286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āpaciti-</td>
<td>114, 169, 288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āpatighnī</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āpamā-</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āpara-</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aparāhna-</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āpas-</td>
<td>39, 103, 140, 158, 203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apās-</td>
<td>160, 203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apasyāti</td>
<td>368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apām nāpāt</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āpi</td>
<td>285, 286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āptūr-</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āpnavāna-</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āpnas-</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apratā</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apvā</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abjīt-</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abhī</td>
<td>285, 286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abhiyānu-</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abhidrīh-</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abhidrōhā-</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abhipītvā-</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abhimātt-</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abhimātin-</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abhiratha-</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abhyāśe</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abhrā-</td>
<td>104, 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ābhri-</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am-</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āma-</td>
<td>39, 272, 275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āmati-</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amatīvān-</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āmatra-</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āmanyuta-</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āmavatlī-</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

amá, 275
amitradambhāna-, 213
amitrayāti; 363
aminā-, 152
āmivā, 191
amū-, 276 ff.
amūrhi, 281
anrayatvā-, 171
āmbhas-, 136
āyā-, 125
āyām, 246 ff.
āyās-, 102
āyase, 159, 224, 365
āyujā-, 57, 124
āyūta-, 262
arāni-, 157
araiti-, 83, 99, 157
āram, 174
arātiyāti, 363
arāṇīvān-, 142
arī-, 40, 185, 222, 245, 247
arunā-, 152
arunudā-, 160
arūṣā-, 163
ārūṣ, 160
arkā-, 124, 381, 385
arghā-, 25, 75, 78, 124
arc-, 342
arcā-, 124
arcātri-, 157
arcī-, 177, 179
ārcīn-, 143
ārciṣ-, 160, 177, 225
ārjuna-, 85, 152
ārnavā-, 189
ārṇas, 159
ārṇasā-, 163
arbh-, 289, 364
ārtha-, 190, 286
arpāyati, 358
ārbha-, 22
ārbhakā-, 197
ārya-, 40
āryā-, 15, 185
āryamān-, 4, 143
ārvan-, 229
ārvant-, 39, 120, 229
ārvāk, 286
ārśas, 158
ārśasānā-, 155
ārha-, 78
ārha-, 124
ārāṇā, 157, 191
ārhāse, 365
dālam, 85, 174
dālu, 379
dāva, 279, 284, 285
davā-, 272, 274
davātā-, 98
davatā-, 21, 39, 98, 153
davatarā-, 150
davādhra-, 147
davapādas, 365
davapannā-, 288
davapāna-, 288
davār, 128, 148, 278
dāvāra-, 148, 285
davālokayati, 331
davās, 279, 286
davasā-, 163
davahitthha-, 57
dāvi-, 68, 88, 102, 177, 222-3, 245
avikā, 197
aviṣyāti, 189, 362
aviṣyā, 189
aviṣyū-, 189
avīrat-, 165
āvyā-, 87, 185
avayathisyai, 164
aś-, 290, 324, 342
asiti-, 91, 261
dāsi-, 157
aśman-, 77, 111, 135
aśmanta-, 130, 153
aśmarā-, 149
aśmari, 135
aśri-, 157
INDEX

áśru, 157, 178
áśva-, 102, 120, 187, 375
áśvatará-, 150
áśvavant-, 120
áśvavála-, 211
áśvavid-, 213
áśvá, 103
áśváyáti, 363
áśádha-, 95
ástamá-, 176, 262
áśtaú, 33, 91, 104, 259–60
áśṝá, 25, 97, 156
as-, 94, 96, 111, 295, 319, 322, 349
asamkhyaeya-, 262
asáná, 157
asl-, 15, 104, 184
áśkini, 99, 161
áśita-, 41, 99, 161
ásu-, 180
ásura-, 5, 24, 40
áśuyáti, 363
ásúryampaśya-, 213
ásṛj-, 85, 128, 221
asai, 226 ff.
ásra-, 137
ásthi, 68, 85, 103, 177, 221, 227
asmá-, 264 ff.
asmadiyá-, 269
ásvapnaj-, 198
áha, 284
ahám, 20, 88, 263 ff.
ahar, 127, 222, 226
áhi-, 184
ahorátrag-, 218
áhnáya, 283
á, 285–7
ákhará-, 290
ákhú-, 290
ágas-, 76, 158
ágnuvesí-, 199
ágnidhra-, 200
ángirasá-, 199
áṅgūśá-, 163
ácārayajáyá, 211
ájarasá-, 216
ájí-, 179
ájya-, 180
ádhya-, 98
ándá-, 22
áśithyá-, 137
álmán-, 134, 269
ádiyá-, 186
ádyá-, 200, 371
ádhorana-, 129
ádhra-, 39
ánusáék, 278
ántrá-, 137
ápathi-, 216
ápas, 158
ápi-, 39, 184
ámátará-, 151
ámodá-, 395
áyasá-, 163
áyu, 160, 178–9, 183–4
áyu-, 183–4
áyuś-, 160
ára, 25
árti, 98
ártviyá-, 199
árya-, 15, 40, 390
árśeyá-, 199
ávám, 263
ávis, 279, 287
ásá, 101
ásiná-, 152
áśisída-, 162
ású-, 103, 146, 182, 184
áśumání-, 146
áśvina-, 200
ás-, 94, 295, 219–20
ás-, 103, 123
ásandí, 192
ásádánya-, 215
áśanváñí-, 146
áśutívalá-, 149
ásya-, 221
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>āhuti-</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-</td>
<td>103, 111, 290, 291, 319, 324, 349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ijjā-</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idādadha-</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itāra-</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itās</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itthām</td>
<td>277, 280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itthā</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ityā-</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itvār-</td>
<td>148-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idām</td>
<td>270, 276 ff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idāā</td>
<td>277, 280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idānim</td>
<td>277, 280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indra-</td>
<td>5, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indravāyu</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indrasātṛu</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indrasenā</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indrotā-</td>
<td>28, 214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ādhdagnī</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ādhmā-</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inv-</td>
<td>290, 324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ibha-</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iyānt-</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ārasyāti</td>
<td>362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ās-</td>
<td>326, 330, 331, 342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āsāni</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āsirā-</td>
<td>39, 149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āsu-</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āsudhyāti</td>
<td>363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āstā-</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āstāṇi-</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ātāpūrtā-</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āstvedā</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ihā-</td>
<td>33, 45, 70, 277, 281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īkṣēnya-</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īdya-</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īpś-</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īrmā-</td>
<td>39, 87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īś-</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īśvārā-</td>
<td>28, 148-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īśāī-</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ī,</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uktā-</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ukthā-</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ukthasāmsīn-</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uṣ-</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uksān-</td>
<td>143, 220, 222, 225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uksavehāt-</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ukhvāh-</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ugrā-</td>
<td>76-7, 147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ugrātama-</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ugrābāhu-</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uc-</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ucātha-</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uccā-</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uccaśaśri</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uccaśtarām</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udu-</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uḷā-</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uttamā-</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>úttara-</td>
<td>150, 285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uṣā-</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ud-</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>úd,</td>
<td>285-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udakā-</td>
<td>208, 221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udakāṭāi</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udakṛtyā-</td>
<td>103, 208, 221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udantīya-</td>
<td>88, 186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udanyā-</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udapātra-</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udāyana-</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udāra-</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udātā-</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udārā-</td>
<td>118, 120, 121, 147, 204, 206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udvāna-</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undurā-</td>
<td>379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>úpa</td>
<td>279, 286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upakāśa-</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upajīvantya-</td>
<td>371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upātāpat</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upatṛnya-</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upanādam-</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upabādā-</td>
<td>73, 90, 109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>úpara-</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

407

upaladat-, 173
upaladjam, 217
upari, 128, 286
upasalruti-, 288
upasarga-, 48
upastha-, 164
upanasa-, 163
upta-, 109
ubha-, 258
uras-, 158
ur-, 182
urushad-, 133, 189
urinasan-, 216
urvara-, 87, 156
ulapa-, 381
ulupin-, 381
ulakayatu-, 211
ulakhalal-, 381, 385
ulka, 191
ulkabhihatal-, 214
ush-, 39, 198
us-, 328
usar-, 81, 128, 135, 222
usas-, 94, 207, 222
usasana-, 217
ust-, 168
ustara-, 151
usna-, 151
usra-, 150
udha-, 78, 91, 95
uit-, 168, 232
udhar, 25, 102, 127, 222, 232
uma-, 175
ur-, 101
urjaswa-, 149
urdh-, 87, 98, 191
urna-, 289
urdhv-, 87, 186, 286
urdhvânabhas-, 216
urdhvayanâh-, 156
urmi-, 87, 185-6
urmya-, 185
urva-, 186
usman-, 134

r-., 323, 330
rkvan-, 142, 145, 206, 229
rkvant-, 145
rksa-, 82, 92, 111, 163, 375, 394
rksharâ-, 150
rc-, 123, 221
rcuse, 159, 224
rijâ-, 163
rij-, 182
rijyâti, 363
rijra-, 152
rnâvan-, 142
rtadhâman-, 28
rtayâ, 282
rtavan-, 142, 227
rtavari, 142, 194
rtuthâ, 280
rtupati-, 57
rte, 286
rdh-, 302, 360
rddhi-, 168
rbhukâ-, 229
rbhvan-, 227
rbhua-, 160, 227
rasbharâ-, 198
râ-, 184
râ-, 4
rsvâ-, 186
rhânt-, 144
eka-, 30, 258, 275
ekalaya-, 263
ekavarta-, 28
ekavirâ-, 210
ekâdasa, 261
eknavimšatâ-, 261
eda-, 98, 381
ela-, 167
elârhi, 281
elave, 171, 365
elavaî, 171, 365
elos, 365
edh-, 292
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index Item</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cāhatū-</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>édhas-</td>
<td>103, 158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ena-</td>
<td>270, 274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>éni-</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>éma-</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>éman-</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eva-</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evām-</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēśa-</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esā-</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eśa-</td>
<td>262, 270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ókas-</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ośivas-</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oja-</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ójas-</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>òjistha-</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ojmán-</td>
<td>134, 207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oni-</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ótw-</td>
<td>170, 207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omán-</td>
<td>134-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ôśtha-</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ausijá-</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ká-</td>
<td>13, 20, 75, 270, 272-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kakúd-</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kakúbh-</td>
<td>70, 198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kakubhā-</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kakuhá-</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>káksa-</td>
<td>68, 76, 92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaṅka-</td>
<td>381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kacu-</td>
<td>382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kacvi-</td>
<td>382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaccha-</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kajjulā-</td>
<td>381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaṭu-</td>
<td>381, 385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaṭhina-</td>
<td>98, 381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaṭehara-</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kanḍūyā-</td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kalamā-</td>
<td>274-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kalarā-</td>
<td>274-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kāli-</td>
<td>168, 274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kālidhā-</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kathām</td>
<td>276, 280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kathā</td>
<td>276, 280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kadāli</td>
<td>379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kadā</td>
<td>20, 276-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kadrā-</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kāniṣṭha-</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kāniṭyas-</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kanyānā</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kanyālā</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kanyā</td>
<td>77, 193, 195, 227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kapanā</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kapi-</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kapilā-</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kapiśa-</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>káprth-</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kapóta-</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kapha-</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kam-</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kārana-</td>
<td>136, 138, 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karunā-</td>
<td>135, 136, 138, 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karmiyā-</td>
<td>371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kāras-</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karásna-</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karīra-</td>
<td>381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kāriṣa-</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karina-</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kārūdāli</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karkaḷa-</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karēr-</td>
<td>139, 188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kārtave</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kārtavya-</td>
<td>172, 371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kārtum</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kārt (nt.)</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kārōs</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kārtra-</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kārtva-</td>
<td>171, 372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karpaṭa-</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karpaśa-</td>
<td>379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karmakara-</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karmathā-</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kārman-</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karmānta-</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karmāra-</td>
<td>141, 154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kārvara-</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kārṣa-</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

kṛtākṛtia-, 218
kṛte, 286
kṛtini-, 158
kṛtrima-, 176
kṛtvana-, 142
kṛtvās, 163
kṛtvā, 172
kṛti, 172
kṛtānā-, 133
kṛdhu-, 182
kṛntatra-, 138
kṛp-, 105
kṛpana-, 138, 362
kṛpanyāḍī, 362
kṛyāmi-, 75
kṛśā-, 124
kṛṣ-, 302
kṛṣī-, 179
kṛṣīvalā-, 146, 148
kṛṣṇā-, 21, 153
kṛṣṇāla, 172, 191
kṛṣṇaśaṅkuni-, 210
kṛṣṇasarpa-, 55, 210
kṛṣara-, 150
kṛṣ-, 81, 330, 355
kṛṣ-, 105
kṛcuka-, 382
kṛṇikā, 387
kṛta-, 124
kṛta-, 382
kṛta-, 382
kṛta-, 99
kṛtāvāna-, 99, 187
kṛtavan-, 145
kṛtavardhana-, 213
kṛtāsmaśrū-, 218
kṛtara-, 99
kṛtara-, 382
kṛtī-, 98, 262
kṛtā-, 57
kṛta-, 382
kṛta-, 57
kṛtulu-, 41, 170, 223, 230, 245
kṛtavāmagha-, 215
kṛnt-, 367-8
kṛnđ-, 292, 343, 356
kram-, 329
kramelaka-, 387
kramaś-, 39, 68, 76-7, 106, 160, 177
krama-, 180
kṛiyā, 190
kṛi-, 75-6, 291, 326
kṛiḍ-, 94, 358
kṛiḍā, 191
kṛudh-, 330
kṛoda-, 57
kṛoṣā-, 151
kṛland-, 292
kṛlam-, 76
kṛloka-, 83, 99, 134
kṛvā, 274
kṛṣatrī-, 4, 92, 138, 292
kṛṣatrīpa-, 388
kṛṣad-, 292-3
kṛṣan-, 82, 290, 292, 325, 334
kṛṣap-, 92, 192, 221
kṛṣapā, 191, 193
kṛṣam-, 291, 295
kṛṣam-, 82, 220, 234
kṛṣamā, 191
kṛṣāmya-, 185
kṛṣā-, 82, 95
kṛṣā-, 95
kṛṣā-, 95
kṛṣī-, 82, 92, 233, 334, 354, 394
kṛṣī-, 168
kṛṣip-, 100
kṛṣipanu-, 148
kṛṣiprā-, 147-8
kṛṣīna-, 95, 370
kṛṣīra-, 136
kṛṣudrā-, 80, 147
kṛṣudha-, 92, 292, 295
kṛṣumānt-, 100
kṛṣumā, 176
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDEX</th>
<th>411</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kṣurā-, 149, 324</td>
<td>gāhvara-, 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kṣepnī-, 148</td>
<td>ga-, 290, 291, 330, 331, 334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kṣētra-, 92, 137</td>
<td>gātū-, 39, 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kṣēma-, 175</td>
<td>gāthā-, 196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kṣoṇī-, 192</td>
<td>gīrī-, 21, 87, 184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kṣnu-, 289, 324</td>
<td>gīrṇā-, 370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khañji-, 81</td>
<td>gūḍa-, 98, 383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khan-, 290</td>
<td>gup-, 361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khānitra-, 188</td>
<td>gur-, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kharvā-, 187</td>
<td>gurū-, 46, 75, 86, 116, 182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khal-, 383, 385</td>
<td>guh-, 358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khalīna-, 387</td>
<td>gūhyā-, 185, 371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khalu, 284</td>
<td>gr-, 342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khā-, 72, 290</td>
<td>grīṣāṇi, 133, 361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khārī, 192</td>
<td>grāhṇī-, 148, 158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khuḍdaka-, 57</td>
<td>grāhrā-, 148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khola-, 389</td>
<td>grbhi-, 184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khyā-, 335</td>
<td>gr-, 22, 75, 87, 290, 358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaja-, 375</td>
<td>gō-, 75, 104, 117, 181, 251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāñja-, 389</td>
<td>goghtnā-, 126, 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ganda-, 383</td>
<td>gōmant-, 223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gatā-, 110, 168, 370</td>
<td>gomin-, 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gātī-, 104, 169, 245, 252</td>
<td>gola-, 389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gatvā, 172</td>
<td>govinda-, 214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gatvī, 172</td>
<td>gōspada-, 212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāntum, 170</td>
<td>gauri, 253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gābhasti-, 164</td>
<td>gnā, 39, 75-6, 205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gam-, 75, 79, 93, 110, 290, 329</td>
<td>gnāspatī-, 212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>334, 339, 356, 358-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gmānt-, 367</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>grah-, 292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>grapsa-, 163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>grābh-, 70, 326, 340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gpras-, 290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>graham-, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>grābhā-, 126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>grāmavāsa-, 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>grāmyā-, 185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>grāvan-, 15, 75, 134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>grāhi-, 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>grīvā, 20, 191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>grīsmā-, 175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>graivya-, 186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>glā-, 331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>glāni-, 157</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

gha, 284
ghanā-, 124
ghārma-, 75, 78, 175
ghas-, 109
ghasmarā-, 149
ghātuka-, 197
ghāsā-, 109
ghūka-, 383
ghrnā-, 151
ghrā-, 329
ghrū-, 187
ghrūvī-, 187
ghōtaka-, 375, 398
ghnānt-, 144
ghramśā-, 162
ghrā-, 329
cā, 77, 104, 113, 284
cakrvas-, 161, 224, 369
cakrā-, 76-7, 83
cakrī, 192
cakrānā-, 370
cakṣ-, 92, 320
cākṣase, 159
cākṣu-, 161
cātasras, 141, 259
caturthā-, 196, 262
cāturdaśa, 260
caturdhā, 280
cātuṣṭaya-, 263
caturas, 263
cavara-, 136, 141, 259
catvāras, 77, 136, 141, 259
catvāri, 238, 259
catvārinśā-, 263
catvārinśāt-, 261
cānas, 39
canasyāti, 362
candana-, 383
candrāmas-, 210
capetā, 383
cam-, 329
camasā-, 163
camasādhvaryu-, 217
camū-, 192, 254
cāyana-, 138
car-, 325, 328
carāni-, 157
cārāse, 159, 224
cariṃśu-, 158
cāru-, 77
cārman-, 131-2
cal-, 355
cāru-, 204
cārulara-, 151
ci-, 191, 322, 343
cikītvī, 166, 279
cikitsa-, 361
cikkana-, 383
cit-, 291, 293, 297, 320, 331, 343, 358
citā, 172
citi-, 179
citti-, 232
cintāyamāna-, 369
cintlayāna-, 156
cirā-, 282-3
cumb-, 383
cur-, 331
cūdā, 383
cēkitāna-, 369
coda-, 124
coditār-, 190
caurabhaya-, 211
cyu-, 358
cyaunśā-, 39, 153
chatā, 57
chad-, 331
chardis, 160
chā-, 292, 328, 331
chāga-, 26-7
chāyā, 93, 191
chid-, 93, 292, 321
chidurā-, 149
chinā-, 370
chināpakṣa-, 215
jakṣ-, 109, 190, 321
jagatkar̥ta, 55
jagara-, 389
jagmūṣṭi, 194
jagadhā-, 95
jājjhat-, 95, 109
jājnānā-, 370
jāhāra-, 97
jāda-, 98
jātu, 78, 178
jatā-, 192
jatūkā, 107
jatru-, 178, 183
jan-, 79, 321, 344, 354
janamejayā-, 213
jānas, 39
jāni-, 39, 247, 363
jāniya-, 88, 186
janītavyā-, 371
jāniyāti, 363
jambāla-, 379
jāmbha-, 73
jāmbhya-, 185
jayā-, 125
jayūś-, 161
jāyya-, 185
jānā, 157, 191
jārant-, 73, 84
jārds-, 159
jārā, 191
jārimān-, 134
jārū, 98
jālāsa-, 395
jālpi-, 179
javā-, 124
jāvana-, 152
jāvistha-, 162
jāstu-, 180
jāswri-, 157
jāsvan-, 142
jāgar-, 305, 327, 355
jāgru-, 187
jālu, 170
jānaśruteyā-, 199
jānu, 73, 178–9, 242
jāmarya-, 129
jāmāta-, 140
jāmī-, 184
jāmītra-, 387
jāyā, 191
jāyāpati, 218
jāyū-, 182
jī-, 79, 110, 190, 290, 301, 324, 326, 343, 354
jigīvās-, 161
jigīśā, 207
jighatsū-, 96
jighāmsant-, 145
jītā-, 110
jītvara-, 148
jīnv-, 290, 324
jīm-, 380, 398
jīṣṇū-, 158
jīhmā-, 175
jīhvā, 191–2, 195
jīrnā-, 45
jīv-, 290, 327, 358
jīvā-, 77, 103, 186, 324
jīvāpitraka-, 216
jīvāputra-, 215
jīvāse, 159
jīvātu-, 170
jūvas-, 158
jūs-, 73, 80, 103, 328
jūṣṭi-, 168, 232
jūhvāna-, 369
jū-, 291
jūlā-, 291
jūti-, 169
jūrī-, 157
jīrṇī-, 157
jīf-, 301–2
jēṭha-, 171, 372
jēnya-, 39
jēya-, 185
jaitra-, 151, 199
jōṣa-, 74, 80, 125
jōṣār-, 74
johūtra-, 151
INDEX

jñā-, 340, 341, 343
jñāti-, 169
jyā-, 291
jyā-, 77
jyānti-, 157
jyeṣṭhātāti-, 173
jyok-, 279
jyōtīs-, 160, 225
jyotiṣkṛti-, 166, 213
jayasānd-, 155

tīkā, 99
damara-, 99
dī-, 98
dhakkā, 99

tā-, 19, 269 ff.
tāku-, 186
takhmān-, 134-5
takš-, 72, 80, 92, 94, 329
tākṣan-, 82-3, 241
lad-, 331
tatā-, 167
tatanuṣṭi-, 164
tātās, 167, 279
tātī, 168-9
tātāra, 280
tātāhā, 280
tadā, 20, 270, 280
tadānīm, 280
taddhīta-, 48
tan-, 325, 341-2
tān-, 127, 193
tāna-, 127
tānaya-, 186
tānuṣ-, 192
tanū-, 192-3, 204, 225, 230, 253 ff., 269
tanūsubhra-, 214
tāntu-, 170, 207
tantri-, 192
tand-, 391
tandī-, 157, 192
tanyatā-, 81
tanyatū-, 189
tap-, 330
tapati-, 192
tāpas-, 158
tāpasvin-, 144
tāpus-, 160-1
tapayatū-, 170
tamasā-, 163
tāmisrā, 138, 156, 191
tār-, 140
tāra-, 125
tāraṇa-, 138
tārāṇī-, 157
taraddvesa-, 216
taras-, 160
tari-, 192
tāriyas-, 162
tariṣāṇī, 162
taruna-, 152
tarunayati, 364
tarunāyate, 364
tarutār-, 190
tarutra-, 151
tarūṣ-, 160
tāriṣa-, 190
tarūṣyātī, 363
tari-, 292
tārīman-, 132
tārīhi, 281
talina-, 383
talpeśayā-, 213
tavas-, 150-60
taviṣā-, 163
taviśi, 164, 192, 363
taviṣṭyātē, 363
tāvīyas-, 161
tāsara-, 136
tasthivās-, 161
tādaka-, 383
tāmarasa-, 383
tāmbūla-, 380
tāyā-, 81
tārā-, 125
INDEX

tārana-, 138
śāla(ka-), 383
tālu, 178
tāvakā-, 269
tigita-, 167
tigmā-, 76, 81, 175
tij-, 81, 356, 361
titau-, 39, 178
titiṣṇu-, 361
tirās, 87, 159, 279, 285, 287
tilāmiśra-, 214
tisrās, 81, 141, 203, 259
tiṅsṇā-, 153
tiṅśā-, 87, 111
tiṅṭū-, 172
tiṅthā-, 45, 196
tiṅvā-, 149
tū, 284
tuccha-, 93
tucchya-, 21
tud-, 81, 301, 329
tudānt-, 145, 368
tubari, 383
tumra-, 148
tur-, 330
turā-, 125
turāṇa-, 362
turanyāti, 362
turiya-, 262
turya-, 262
tuvara-, 383
tuvīṣvāni-, 157
tuṣ-, 330
tū-, 321
tūrṇi-, 157
tūrī-, 190, 290, 329
tūrvāṇi-, 157
tūrvāne, 131, 224
tūrvayāna-, 166
tūrvi-, 184
tūla-, 383, 385
tūṣṇim, 21
tyā-, 25, 111, 328
tyānodakā-, 218
tṛṭṭya-, 259
tyāiyasavanā-, 210
trā-, 111, 328
trādā-, 149
tṛp-, 99, 324, 358
tṛpānt-, 367
ṛṣu-, 182
ṛṣṭā-, 167
ṛṣnaj-, 198
ṛṣṇā, 156, 191
ṛḥ-, 95
rī-, 81, 87, 106, 111, 178, 190, 290, 291, 302, 329, 360
tējas-, 158
tējasvin-, 144
tenivās-, 369
tokā-, 39
tōkman-, 39, 175
tośās-, 160
tyā-, 210, 272-3
tyājas-, 160
trāpu, 178
trayā-, 263
trayastrimsat-, 261
trāyodaśa, 260
tras-, 111, 290, 293, 329, 358
trasādasyu-, 216
trā-, 291, 331
tri-, 68, 80, 259
trimśā-, 263
trimśāt-, 261
tridhā, 263, 280
tridhātu, 280
trivatsā-, 216
triviṭ-, 221
tris, 263
trētā, 201
trailāṇā-, 201
tva-, 210, 272, 274
tvakṣ-, 39, 92
tvādiya-, 269
tvām, 264
tvar-, 358
tvaram, 264
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tvarita-</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tvāśtar-</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tvis-</td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tvisi-</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dāmsṛa-</td>
<td>147, 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāmsāna-</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dākṣa-</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dākṣas-</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dākṣāyya-</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dākṣiṇa-</td>
<td>20, 80, 92, 152, 275, 285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dākṣiṇatās</td>
<td>167, 279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dākṣinatrā</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dākṣinā-</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dākṣināgni-</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dākṣu-</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dākṣus-</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāgadhā-</td>
<td>78, 90, 91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāttā-</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dātra-</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dādhī-</td>
<td>21, 177, 221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dānt-</td>
<td>90, 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dābh-</td>
<td>71, 95, 109, 324, 360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dām-</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāma-</td>
<td>39, 68, 103, 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāmanvā-</td>
<td>362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāmiya-</td>
<td>82, 186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāyā-</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāvaad-</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daridrāti-</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>darttu-</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>darmā-</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dārmān-</td>
<td>143, 175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dārvī-</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>darṣatā-</td>
<td>112, 161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>darśana-</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dala-</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāśa, 68, 74, 173, 258, 260</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāśāt-</td>
<td>165, 168, 261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāśāti-</td>
<td>165, 168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāśataya-</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāśamā-</td>
<td>176, 262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāśasyāti-</td>
<td>362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dasmā-</td>
<td>39, 175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāsyu-</td>
<td>37, 41, 187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dasrā-</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dah-</td>
<td>71, 78, 329, 360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dā-</td>
<td>20, 89, 90, 106-7, 302, 322, 330-1, 334, 343, 354, 358, 360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāksāyana-</td>
<td>152, 199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dālār-</td>
<td>111, 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dātave</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dātvarā-</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dātu-</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dātri</td>
<td>203, 254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dādhrvī-</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāna-</td>
<td>68, 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dānava-</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dānu-</td>
<td>39, 178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dānuprvā-</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāntā-</td>
<td>87, 211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāman-</td>
<td>134-5, 143, 207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāmane</td>
<td>131, 224, 305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāvā-</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāvāne</td>
<td>131, 159, 226, 365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāvāri</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāru</td>
<td>178-9, 200, 222, 227, 247-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dārunā-</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dārśanika-</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāsuri-</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāśvās-</td>
<td>39, 160, 343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāśa-</td>
<td>25, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāsyāhputra-</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīlā-</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīna-</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīps-</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>div-</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divasā-</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divā-</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divālara-</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divit(mant-)</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diviyoni-</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divira-</td>
<td>388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divodāsa-</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divyā-</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Page Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>diś-</td>
<td>73, 95, 220-1, 329, 341, 355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diś-</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diśā</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīh-</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dī-, 98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīdī-</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīdī-</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīnāra-</td>
<td>387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīp-</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīrghā-</td>
<td>68, 76, 87, 198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīrghāśmaśru-</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ducchūnā</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ducchunayde</td>
<td>363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duradabhnā-</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duronā-</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duvasanā-</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duvas-</td>
<td>158, 160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duvasyū-</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duṣ-, 321, 358</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duḥ-, 70, 78, 95, 320, 332, 341</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duhādhyāt</td>
<td>365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duhánt-</td>
<td>368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duhānā-</td>
<td>155, 369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duhādbha-</td>
<td>94, 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duḥā-</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duḥyā-</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duṟakā-</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duṟamgamā-</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duṟvā-</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḍr-</td>
<td>355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḍṛmha-</td>
<td>294, 357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḍṛmithār-</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḍṛś-, 73, 111, 178, 341, 343, 354</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḍṛśatī-</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḍṛśève-</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḍṛśānā-</td>
<td>369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḍṛśe-</td>
<td>123, 365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḍṛśēṇya-</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḍṛśād-</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḍṛṣṭā-</td>
<td>110, 168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḍṛṣṭvā</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>déya-</td>
<td>371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deva-</td>
<td>5, 103, 230, 255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devakilbiṣā-</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devātā</td>
<td>172, 194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devātāti-</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devatā-</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devatrā</td>
<td>132, 280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devatvā-</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devayājana-</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devayāti</td>
<td>187, 363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devayū-</td>
<td>37, 187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devār-</td>
<td>103, 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devavandā-</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devasās</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devastū-</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devāhiti-</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devī-</td>
<td>104-5, 253 ff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deśṭrā-</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deśnā-</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dehi</td>
<td>70, 163, 192-3, 225, 253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāvīya-</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dosā</td>
<td>191, 282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dōs</td>
<td>133, 158, 221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dohada-</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dohala-</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dohās</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dohāse</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daurhrda-</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dyuksā-</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dyut-</td>
<td>292, 331, 356-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dyūt-</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dyumánt-</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dyumnā-</td>
<td>146, 152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīyo-</td>
<td>104, 117, 181, 230, 234, 250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dyotana-</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dyotanā</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dyotanā-</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drapsā-</td>
<td>39, 163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dram-</td>
<td>290-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dramma-</td>
<td>387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dravā-</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dravāl</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dravarā-</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

dhranā-, 152
dharnasi-, 164
dharnī-, 157
dhartāri, 132, 365
dhātra-, 136
dhārma-, 175
dharman-, 142
dhā-, 69, 70, 90, 106, 110, 290, 322, 333-4, 343, 360
dhātu-, 170
dhānā, 22
dhāman-, 135
dhāyase, 159, 224
dhārā, 156
dhārū-, 157
dhārmika-, 199
dhāv-, 294, 329, 356
dhāśi-, 164
dhīk, 283
dhiyamjīnav-, 213
dhiśanyāti, 362
dhī-, 221, 230, 231, 254
dhīti-, 169
dhīnī-, 180
dhū-, 290, 302, 324, 351
dhūti-, 169
dhūmā-, 69, 103, 175
dhūmrā-, 149
dhūrv-, 290
dhūrvane, 131
dhūśara-, 150
dhr-, 290, 341, 354
dhṛti-, 168
dhṛṣ-, 80, 324
dhṛṣāj-, 198
dhṛṣṭi-, 169
dhṛṣṇū-, 158
dhṛṣṇuyā, 283
dhēnā, 157
dhēnu-, 158, 245, 252
dhēnukā, 197
dhenumāti, 194
dhenustari, 211
dhaurita-, 129
dhākuṣu-, 164
dhāna-, 138
dhanajit-, 213
dhanañjayu-, 213
dhānasāti-, 212
dhanin-, 143
dhānu, 180, 192
dhanūtār-, 190
dhānus-, 160, 192, 227-8
dhanūt-, 192
dhānvan-, 130, 134, 160, 192, 223, 227-8
dham-, 22
| dhya- | 339 |
| dhráji- | 179 |
| dhru- | 292 |
| dhruvá- | 186 |
| dhri- | 187 |
| dhvani- | 179, 180 |
| dhvarás- | 160 |
| dhvas- | 290 |
| dhvasánti- | 148 |
| dhvasmán- | 135 |
| dhvasrá- | 148 |
| nú- | 20, 283 |
| nagná- | 151 |
| nákt- | 39, 75, 165, 168 |
| nakútán- | 132, 227 |
| náktam- | 282 |
| nakíaýá- | 282 |
| nákti- | 168 |
| nakra- | 383 |
| naks- | 290 |
| nákṣatra- | 138, 196 |
| nakhá- | 196 |
| náta- | 56, 98 |
| nada- | 98 |
| nadá- | 98, 124 |
| nadí- | 184 |
| nadí- | 192 |
| naddhá- | 70 |
| nántva- | 372 |
| nápáít- | 103, 140, 165 |
| nápídár- | 140 |
| nabhánú- | 152, 192 |
| nábhás- | 68–9, 158 |
| nábhásá- | 163 |
| nábhya- | 177, 180 |
| nám- | 340, 358 |
| nánasáná- | 155 |
| namasyáti- | 114, 362 |
| námasvant- | 228 |
| ná- | 141, 243-4 |
| nariśtá- | 164 |
| narmá- | 175 |
| nárman- | 175 |
| narmátha- | 150 |
| nárya- | 185 |
| nava- | n., 81 |
| náva- | adj., 68, 126, 261, 283 |
| náva- | num., 260 |
| navatí- | 261 |
| navadává- | 210 |
| návanítā- | 391 |
| navamá- | 260, 262 |
| nává- | 86, 194 |
| náviśti- | 164 |
| náviyás- | 161, 194 |
| náviyás- | 161 |
| naś- | 290, 334, 358 |
| náśvara- | 148 |
| nas- | 329 |
| nás- | 102, 221 |
| násánt- | 146 |
| nah- | 70, 330 |
| náhus- | 39, 139, 161 |
| nága- | 375 |
| nádyá- | 200 |
| náná- | 284 |
| nánánám- | 284 |
| nándí- | 192 |
| nápitá- | 167–8 |
| nábhi- | 11, 177, 179, 201 |
| náman- | 19, 24, 48, 68, 223, 226, 232 |
| náyá- | 125 |
| náyaka- | 110 |
| násatya- | 5, 28 |
| ní- | 285–6 |
| ním- | 321 |
| nikáṣá- | 285 |
| nikáta- | 78, 168 |
| níks- | 290 |
| níj- | 78, 322, 355 |
| nílyam- | 282 |
| níd- | 329 |
| nidághá- | 78 |
| nídhí- | 288 |
| nínd- | 329 |
| níndá- | 191 |
INDEX

pakṣati-, 169
pakṣas-, 159
pakṣman-, 131
pakṣmalā-, 149
pakṣin-, 143
pakktī-, 260, 261
pac-, 77, 294, 329, 342, 354
pacchās, 93
pajīrā-, 136
pañca, 68, 77, 259, 260
pañcathā-, 262
pañcātā-, 262
pañcāśā-, 263
pañcāśāt-, 261
pañjarā-, 136
pata-, 97
pañjāla-, 97
pañjāla-, 383
pañ-, 98
pañḍa-, 384
pañḍā, 98
pañḍita-, 98
pat-, 68, 188, 329, 336, 342, 357
pañala-, 198
pañanga-, 198
pañattra-, 138, 196
pañṭana-, 138
pañṭarā-, 148
pañṭurū-, 158
pañṭi-, 102, 169, 223, 247, 249
pañṭi-, 165, 169
pañṭi-, 99, 247
pañman-, 131
pañvan-, 130, 142
pañśala-, 138
pañṭ-, 72, 229
pañ-, 90, 103, 109, 112
pañā-, 127, 174
pañāṭi-, 165, 169
pañvānt-, 146
pañ-, 39, 190
pañayāyya-, 190
pañāyya-, 372
INDEX

panitär-, 190
paniśti-, 164, 190
panyās-, 161
pāyās-, 21
parama-, 176
parasū-, 83
parās, 279, 286
parāśāt, 286
parā, 285-6
parārī, 42
pārī, 84, 279, 285-6
paritas, 167
pariṣaṇṭhīn-, 216
parisādvala-, 149
paristoma-, 387
parīhasta-, 216
parīnas-, 159
parīnasā-, 163
parun, 42, 119, 234
pārus-, 40, 160, 227
pārūṣā-, 40, 163
pāreṣa-, 288
parṇadhva-, 96
pārā-, 84, 329
paryāṇa-, 389
pārvata-, 153
pārvan-, 40, 130, 160, 227
pārśu-, 180
pārśāṇi, 133, 157
palasti-, 164
palāti, 192
palāva-, 83
pāliknī, 99, 167
pālita-, 83, 99, 164, 167, 391
palli, 384
palvala-, 83, 148
pāvīrava-, 189
pāvīru-, 187
pāś-, 81, 330
pāśu, 77, 178, 222, 225, 245-6
pāśu-, 81, 102, 179, 222, 245-6
pāśumānt-, 147, 220, 224, 228
pāscā, 232
pāscāt, 233, 283, 286
pāsas-, 158
pātyā, 39
pā-, 72, 85, 103, 111, 329
pāmsū-, 22
pāmsura-, 149
pāmsulā-, 149
pājas-, 40, 158-9
pāṇcajanya-, 186
pātrahasta-, 215
pāda-, 122
pāpaddhi-, 57
pāpmān-, 134-5
pāmān-, 134-5
pāmanā-, 135, 149
pāmarā-, 135, 149
pāyū-, 40, 183
pārśni-, 84, 157
pāliya-, 199
pāśāṇā-, 98
pī-, 289, 324
pīngala-, 391
pīcu, 379
pīnda-, 98
pītār-, 105, 106, 111, 140, 203, 220, 222, 230, 234, 243
pītāputra-, 218
pītū-, 39, 179, 222, 226, 246
pītṛya-, 185
pīnv-, 289, 324
pīpilakāpuṭa-, 384
pīśuna-, 152, 291
pīs-, 80, 292, 327, 341
pīd-, 94, 292
pītā-, 111
pītvā, 172
pīy-, 291
pīyatnū-, 158
pīyū-, 182
pīyāśa-, 133, 163
pīlu-, 389
pīvan-, 103, 149, 187
pīvara-, 149
pīvari, 142
pīvas-, 118
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hindi Text</th>
<th>Sanskrit Text</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>पिवासः, 163</td>
<td>प्रक्षा-, 162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुम्स-, 228</td>
<td>प्रतनयायति, 363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुंक्का-, 384</td>
<td>प्यथवान-, 156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुः, 97</td>
<td>प्रथु-, 72, 104, 182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुन्यालक्ष्मिक-, 216</td>
<td>प्रथुक-, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुत्रक-, 197</td>
<td>प्रथुवि, 194, 254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुत्रावंत-, 145</td>
<td>प्रदाक्ष-, 197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुत्रीयाति, 363</td>
<td>प्यैन-, 157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पून, 278</td>
<td>प्रसात-, 144, 164, 167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुनरमन्य-, 213</td>
<td>प्रसात-, 167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुननाग-, 384</td>
<td>प्र-, 83, 111, 120, 291, 301-2, 322, 326, 358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पूर्, 83, 87</td>
<td>पेवा-, 171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पूरनाराद-, 213</td>
<td>पोल-, 137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पूरास, 87, 159, 279, 280, 286</td>
<td>पोत्र-, 137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पूरसात, 280, 286</td>
<td>पाउरुकुति-, 199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पूरा, 194, 286</td>
<td>पाउरुसेया-, 199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पूरान-, 155</td>
<td>प्यां-, 291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पूरिष-, 163</td>
<td>प्युक्षा-, 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पूरव-, 87, 182, 207, 230, 245, 250-2</td>
<td>प्र-, 114, 279, 286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पूरुष-, 163</td>
<td>प्रच-, 94, 104, 289, 330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पूरुषाता, 172</td>
<td>प्राजापतिस्र-, 214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पूरुषात्र-, 132, 280</td>
<td>प्रातार-, 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पूरुषार्ग-, 210</td>
<td>प्राती, 177, 279, 285, 287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पूरुशार्ज-, 217</td>
<td>प्रातिद्वान-, 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुलाक-, 164</td>
<td>प्रातिदोष-, 282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुलस्त-, 164</td>
<td>प्रातिनिः, 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुष-, 133</td>
<td>प्रातिरम, 365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुष्टि-, 169</td>
<td>प्रातिसार-, 198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुष्टक-, 389</td>
<td>प्रात्न-, 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पु-, 105, 291, 339</td>
<td>प्रातनाथ-, 280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुता-, 291</td>
<td>प्रातयान-, 221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुति-, 103, 169</td>
<td>प्रात-, 72, 292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुर-, 163</td>
<td>प्रात्मक-, 262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुरुष-, 163</td>
<td>प्रातिहिंद-, 131, 135, 188, 227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुर्ण-, 87, 111, 151 291</td>
<td>प्राधिक्षिनित, 167, 279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुर्णमास-, 210</td>
<td>प्रापित्व-, 171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुरा-, 187, 275</td>
<td>प्राप्यास-, 163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुल-, 391</td>
<td>प्राप्याङ्ग-, 288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुसान-, 153</td>
<td>प्रायतनादक्ष-, 215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुसान-, 133, 143</td>
<td>प्राय-, 158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पुसार्या-, 133</td>
<td>प्रयूष-, 262</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

pravaná-, 152
praśná-, 91, 289, 330
prā-, 344
prākṛta-, I
prāktāt, 280
prajāpatyā-, 186
prātār, 128, 132, 234, 278
prādus, 279, 287
prāyas, 279
prāśū-, 194
priyā-, 125
priyādhāma-, 175
priyāyāte, 304
pri-, 358
pru-, 83, 285, 328
prus-, 22
preṇ-, 157
premān-, 134
plīhān-, 81, 83, 134
plu-, 83, 99, 328
plutī-, 169
plūśi-, 84, 164, 184
psā-, 291
phārvāra-, 136
phalgū-, 40, 192
phāla-, 71, 81
phēna-, 20, 71, 81, 393

baka-, 384
badhirā-, 149
bandī, 389
bandh-, 70
bándhu-, 70, 180
bandhūtā, 172
babhūvās-, 161
babhrū-, 192, 391
babhrusā-, 197
barhāṇā, 157
barhiś-, 21, 160
bala-, 384, 385
baladāvan-, 213
balin-, 195, 225, 253
bahirāhā, 280

bahlis, 20, 102, 131, 279, 280, 286
bahū-, 145, 182
bahudhā, 280
bahūvrihi-, 215
bahvī, 204
bādh-, 190, 329, 367
bāla-, 191, 235
bāspa-, 395
bāhū-, 70, 103, 116, 180
bāhyā-, 102
bidāla-, 375
bībhrat-, 368
bīla-, 384, 385
bīlva-, 384, 385
bīja-, 391, 395
buddhā-, 90
buddhi-, 90
budh-, 20, 21, 104, 328, 335
budhā-, 125
budhnā-, 70
bubudhānā-, 155
buli-, 391
brynh-, 22
bṛhant-, 144, 368
bṛhaspāti-, 209, 212
bōdha-, 125
bradhnd-, 22
brāhman-, 119, 121, 131, 136, 139, 206
brahmān-, 15, 120, 121, 136, 142, 206, 223, 230
brahmabhūya-, 180
brū-, 320-1

bhaktā-, 78, 92
bhakti-, 169
bhaks-, 92, 290
bhagnā-, 370
bhanga-, 22
bhāngurā-, 149
bhaj-, 33, 78, 92
bhaṅj-, 100
bhaṭa-, 98
bhāṭṭā-, 56
bhāṭṭar(a-), 56, 98
bhadrāpāpa-, 218
bhaya-, 174
bhāra-, 21
bhārat-, 167
bhārāvāja-, 37, 216
bhārant-, 145
bhāraṇī, 203
bhārisa-, 163
bhārman-, 131
bhār-, 290
bhala, 284
bhallīka-, 375
bhāvāna-, 118
bhāvant-, 223, 269, 368-9
bhāvamāna-, 369
bhaṣ-, 98
bhas-, 291
bhasad-, 198
bhā-, 70
bhājana-, 138
bhānū-, 158
bhāma-, 175
bhārā-, 125, 207
bhārata(-i), 1
bhāvarā-, 149
bhārmān, 200
bhāvyā-, 200, 371
bhaṣ-, 98
bhāsura-, 149
bhāsatvāra-, 148
bhā-, 327, 359
bhādurā-, 149
bhādelima-, 176
bhānā-, 151, 370
bhīyaś-, 159, 202, 222, 225
bhīyaśānā-, 155
bhīṣāj-, 198
bhīṣajyaṭi, 363
bhī-, 22, 290, 297, 302, 358
bhīmā-, 174
bhīrū-, 158
bhīṣā, 164, 191
bhūgā-, 151, 370
bhūj-, 100, 295, 327
bhūji-, 179
bhūjīṣyā-, 164
bhūjmān-, 143
bhūjyā-, 187
bhūr-, 291
bhūranyāti, 129, 362
bhūrit-, 198
bhūrvāṇ-, 149, 157
bhūvāna-, 138
bhūvant-, 129
bhūvar, 128
bhū-, 30, 333, 342, 365
bhū-, 221, 231, 254
bhūtvā, 172
bhūmān-, 134-5, 227
bhūmi-, 176, 185
bhūnyā-, 185
bhūyas, 161
bhūyasī, 204
bhūri-, 157
bhūrja-, 73, 87
bhūṣ-, 331
bhṛ-, 15, 102, 116, 322, 328, 338, 356
bhṛgavāna-, 156
bhṛt-, 167
bhṛt-, 169
bhṛgena-, 124
bhogā-, 125
bhṛatr-, 103
māks-, 25
māksā, 25
māksikā, 25
maksā, 80, 92, 196, 279
makhā-, 196
maghā-, 391
maghāvan-, 142, 222, 229
manku-, 384
maj-, 94, 329
majjān-, 21, 134
mānt-, 98, 184, 391
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index</th>
<th>Page References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mit</td>
<td>124, 165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mitra</td>
<td>4, 28, 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mitradhā</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mitrabhunā</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mith-</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mihatī</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mithu-</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mithunā-</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miyēdha-</td>
<td>40, 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>misrā-</td>
<td>21, 290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mih-</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mihira-</td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mī-</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīdhā-</td>
<td>40, 94, 391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīdhūṣtama-</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīdhvās-</td>
<td>160, 343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīnā-</td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīmāmsā</td>
<td>361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mukula-</td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muktā</td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mukhatās</td>
<td>387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muc-</td>
<td>22, 330, 354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mudrā</td>
<td>388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mūnī-</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muraśa-</td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muraṣīṅgi</td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mus-</td>
<td>363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musīvaṇ-</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mūhu</td>
<td>130, 279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mūkur</td>
<td>130, 153, 279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muhūrtā-</td>
<td>130, 253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mūrkhā-</td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mūrdhān-</td>
<td>134, 222, 226, 234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mūs-</td>
<td>68, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mr-</td>
<td>354, 360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mrks-</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mṛgāyate</td>
<td>364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mṛj-</td>
<td>78, 290, 320, 342, 357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mṛdā-</td>
<td>190, 331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mṛdayākū-</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mṛdikā-</td>
<td>40, 91, 94, 197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mṛḍā-</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mṛtyū-</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mṛtyubāndha-</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mṛtsna-</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mṛdā-</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mṛdā-</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mṛdāh-</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mṛdhas-</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mṛś-</td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mṛṣ-</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mṛṣā-</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mṛṣṭā-</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mṛ-</td>
<td>291, 326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meghā-</td>
<td>69, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medhā-</td>
<td>33, 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medhirā-</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>melā-</td>
<td>387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mocika-</td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mnā-</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mrit-</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mṛḍāy-</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mliṇā-</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mlec-</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mlecchā-</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yā-</td>
<td>272, 274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yākṣa-</td>
<td>68, 127, 164, 220, 221, 226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yaksā-</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yākṣma-</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yākṣman-</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yaj-</td>
<td>34, 78, 102, 109, 294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yajata-</td>
<td>112, 167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yājatra-</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yajātha-</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yājāmanā-</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yajās-</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yājuṣ-</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yajnā-</td>
<td>4, 102, 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yajnādhirā-</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yāju-</td>
<td>37, 187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yājvarī-</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yata-mā-</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yatārā-</td>
<td>274-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yātī-</td>
<td>168, 274</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
yātra, 274
yāthā, 274
yādit, 274, 280
yantūr-, 139
yam-, 329, 330, 343
yamā-, 4
yārhi, 281
yāvanant-, 147
yāvasa-, 163
yāśas-, 120, 160, 206
yāśas-, 120, 160, 206
yāṣṭukāma-, 367
yas-, 329
yahū-, 40, 120, 186
yahvā-, 40, 186
yahvānt-, 120
yā-, 201, 330, 360
yāga-, 79
yāc-, 292
yācitār-, 188
yātanā, 147
yātar-, 140, 147, 203
yāvant-, 274
yāvari, 142
yu-, 292, 320, 322
yukta-, 78, 89, 91
yukti-, 169
yugā-, 68, 89, 127, 173-4, 232
yugapad, 278
yugmā-, 173, 232
yuj-, 78, 89, 91, 104, 292, 327
yuṣjānt-, 222
yuṣṭānā-, 369
yudh-, 330, 359
yudhāye, 179, 365
yudhēnya-, 372
yudhāmā-, 175
yudhvān-, 142
yuvat-, 229
yuvan-, 68, 141, 222, 229
yuvāsā-, 197
yuvāku, 197, 227
yuvādatta, 267
yuvām, 264
yuṣmāka-, 267
yuṣmādatta-, 267
yuṣhā-, 196, 198
yuṣpa-, 198
yuṣpadāru, 211
yuṣyām, 264
yuṣ-, 68, 221
yoga-, 124
yodhā-, 125
yodhya-, 185
yōnī-, 152, 185
yoṣīt, 141, 166
yōs, 15, 40, 158
rāmhi-, 179
raks-, 82, 290
rākṣas-, 92, 160
rākṣas-, 160, 224, 230
raghū-, 182
raghuyā, 283
rajatā-, 73, 167
rajatapātrā-, 210
rājas-, 40
rajasa-, 163
rāji-, 179
rāṇa-, 138
rāṇvā-, 186
rāṇvan-, 186
rāti-, 168
rātna-, 99, 138
rātnadālamā-, 176
rātha-, 71, 72, 84, 129, 196, 393
raikavyāti, 362
rathaspāti-, 256
rāthiya-, 87, 186
rathirā-, 149
rathī-, 194-5, 205, 253
radāvasu-, 216
rabh-, 360
rābhyas-, 161
rāṇ-, 336
rayi-, 179, 222, 226, 246
raśanā, 157
raśmān-, 134, 175
INDEX

rasmi-, 176
rasa-, 191
rāhas, 281, 283
rā-, 323
rāj-, 15, 68, 92, 103, 123
rājan-, 15, 68, 84, 103, 123, 128, 141–2, 200, 211, 223, 234
rājaputrā-, 211, 215
rājarṣi-, 211
rāja-yāte, 363
rājiva-, 187
rājñī, 205, 254
rājya-, 15, 180, 185
rāt-, 109, 170
rātīn-, 170
rātīr, 157
rāyasporā-, 212
rāṣṭrā-, 137
rāṣtradīpsū-, 213
rāsabhā-, 198
rīktā-, 75
rīkhā-, 196
ric-, 75, 80, 103, 327, 335
rī-, 165
rīp-, 83, 292
rīp-, 391
rīpu-, 182
rīpā-, 136
rīh-, 83, 95
rī-, 328
ru-, 292
rukma-, 175, 391
rukṣā-, 162
ruç-, 291
ruca-, 125
ruči-, 177, 179, 189
rućīrā-, 149
ruj-, 292, 329
rujā-, 124
rud-, 292–3, 321, 340
rudrā-, 57
ruddhā-, 90
rudh-, 70, 327–8, 338
runhira-, 68, 70, 84, 103, 149
rup-, 85, 292
ruvanāyati, 362
rūṣant-, 76, 144, 292
ruh-, 70, 328, 333, 358
rūkṣa-, 163
rūpakā-, 197
re, 284
rēkhas-, 118, 159
renu-, 180
rētas-, 159
reṣmān-, 134
rai-, 15, 86
rokā-, 124
rōga-, 124
rocā-, 124
rocī-, 177, 189
rocīs-, 160, 160, 177, 189
rocīṇa-, 188
rōdaṣā, 40
rōpi-, 179
rōman-, 131
romaśa-, 197
rohīta-, 70, 85
rohiṣyai, 164
lakṣā-, 262
lakṣmī-, 176, 192
laghū-, 68, 75, 83, 182
labāhā-, 90
labh-, 295, 360
lard-, 61
lavanī-, 379
lavanā-, 81, 152
laṅgala-, 380
lalā, 385
likṣā, 394
lip-, 83, 292, 330
lipi-, 388
lih-, 73, 78, 83, 91, 95
li-, 292, 326, 356
lidhā-, 78
lup-, 85, 292, 330
ludbhaka-, 57
INDEX

lubh-, 68, 83
lulāya-, 375
lokā-, 104
lōhita-, 70, 85

vāmsaga-, 198
vāktva-, 171, 372
vakrā-, 147
vakṣ-, 143, 290
vakṣātha-, 196
vagvanā-, 152
vagvanū-, 158
vāc-, 80, 92, 336, 342
vacana-, 151
vācas-, 116, 118, 120, 158
vacasa-, 163
vājra-, 24, 26, 148
vājrabāhu-, 215
vanij-, 198
valsā-, 162
vatsatarā-, 150
vad-, 106, 190, 342, 359
vadh-, 339
vadhā-, 125
vādhatra-, 138, 196
vadhānā-, 128
vādhar, 128-9, 147, 362
vadharyāti, 362
vādhasnā-, 153
vādhasnu-, 158
vādhū-, 192
vādhi-, 40, 157
van-, 340, 360
vān-, 123, 127
vana-, 123, 127
vand-, 158
vānānā-, 157
vānanvant-, 128
vanar°-, 148
vanargu-, 128
vānas-, 158
vānaspāti-, 212
vaniśthū-, 164
vanīś-, 161

vanusyāti, 189
vānya-, 87, 185-6
vāp-, 109, 342
vāpṛ-, 148
vāpuṣ-, 160-1
vāpuṣa-, 201
vām-, 301, 321
vamrakā-, 197
vayān, 264
vayūna-, 138
vara-, 124
varatrā, 198
varāhā-, 25, 198
varimān-, 131, 135
varimāt-, 132
vāriyas-, 159, 160, 188
vāriman-, 161
vāruna-, 28
vārutra-, 324
vārūtha-, 196
vārenya-, 152, 372
vartani-, 157
vartīs-, 160
vārtman-, 131
vārdha-, 125
vārdhitār-, 188
vārdhra-, 198
vārman-, 131
vārśiyas-, 80
vārśman-, 80, 134
valaya-, 385
valgu-, 182
vallī, 385
vaś-, 91, 97, 264, 319
vāṣṭi-, 169
vas-, 93, 96, 267, 295, 320-1,
329, 330, 342
vasati-, 169
vāsana-, 25
vasantā-, 129
vāsar°, 148, 222, 226
vāsiśtha-, 100
vāsiyās-, 100
vāsu, 100, 178, 184
INDEX

vasūtā, 172
vasūtātī-, 173
vasūyātī, 303
vasūyā, 364
vasūyū-, 187, 364
vāstu, 170, 248
vāstra-, 137
vāsnā-, 40
vāsnayātī, 363
vāsman-, 131-2
vāsya-, 161
vah-, 20, 68, 78, 92, 95, 294, 329
vahāt-, 165
vahatū-, 170
vāhni-, 40, 157
vā, 284
vāgurā, 156
vāgmīn-, 144
vāghāt-, 165
vāc-, 68, 92, 103, 123, 207, 221
vācya-, 185, 371
vāja-, 40
vājāyuv-, 37
vājīn-, 138
vātyā, 192
vānara-, 128, 148
vāpūśā, 163, 201
vām, 267-8
vāmā-, 175
vāyavyā-, 199
vāyasā-, 163
vāyu-, 123
vāra-, 125
vārabāna-, 43, 389
vārī, 177, 223, 227, 245, 248
vārya-, 200
vāla-, 391
vāvā, 284
vāvrdhādhyāi, 367
vāhā-, 125
vāhas-, 158
vāsā-, 125
vāsantikā-, 199
vāsarā-, 148, 200
vāsas-, 158, 200
vāstū, 170, 242
vāsteyā-, 199
vī, 285, 287
vī-, 181, 251
vīmśā-, 263
vīmśati-, 261
vīmśatitama-, 176
viklava-, 99
vīkṣiptī-, 57
vīcchitti-, 57
vij-, 292
vithuryātī, 362
vid-, 68, 71, 90, 103, 116, 325, 327, 330, 335, 349, 362
vidātha-, 196
vidādvasu-, 216
vidurā-, 149
vidamāṇāpas-, 214
vidmāne, 131, 159, 224
vidyā, 191
vidvalā-, 148
vidvās-, 228-9
vidhavā, 69, 187
vidhv-, 182, 187
vip-, 292
vīpanyā, 129, 148
vīpānyu-, 129
vīpāś-, 92
vīpula-, 42, 84
vīpra-, 111, 148
vīprūś-, 91, 93-4, 96
vīplava-, 99
vībhāvasu-, 161
vībhṛtra-, 151
vībhvan-, 141
vīrāṣāti, 100
vīrukmant-, 146
vīvāsvan-, 130, 145
vīvāsvant-, 4, 145
viś-, 322, 329
viś-, 33, 73, 91-2, 242
INDEX

visámána-, 369
visyá-, 186, 201
vispáti-, 22, 209, 211
visva-, 275
visvákkarma-, 175
visvajit-, 166
visvádhá, 280
visvaminvá-, 213
visváha, 281
viša-, 80, 126
viśuna-, 152
visra-, 81
viṣá-, 40
viṣáya, 365
viśás-, 85, 103
viśájáta-, 212
vr-, 324, 334
vykáṭā-, 173
vykáti-, 169
vyú-, 195, 225, 252
vyká-, 25
vyksá-, 162
vrjana-, 138
vrjíná-, 152
vyú-, 68, 84, III, 295, 322, 328, 344, 356
vyá-, 165
vyáti-, 104, 168
vyára-, 151
vyárahan-, 213, 220-1
vyádhá-, 90
vyádhí-, 168
vyádh-, 294, 358
vyádhá-, 125
vyádhán-, 367
vyáhasáná-, 155
vyáháná-, 369
vyányáti, 363
vyán-, 143
vyáabhá-, 198
vyáasyáti, 362
vyákapí-, 211
vyáyáte, 363-4
vyáti-, 97
vyánti-, 157
vétana-, 138
vetása-, 163
véda-, 125
ven-, 40
vená, 191
véná, 196
véla, 138
vesánta-, 129, 153
vesás-, 160
vesána-, 138
vehát-, 165
vai, 284
vaiyápytya-, 57
vaiyávrttya-, 57
vaisya-, 201
vyáca-, 323
vyáth-, 292
vyáthis-, 160
vyádvará-, 148
vyádhr-, 330, 343
vyághr-, 375
vratá-, 22
vratácarin-, 213
sámkstar-, 137
sák-, 324, 335, 360
sákala-, 385
sakuná-, 22, 152
sakúni-, 153
sakúnta-, 153
sákrut, 127, 164, 221
sákti-, 168
ságma-, 175
sánk-, 73
sánka, 191
sánkú-, 180
sánkhá-, 72, 196, 393
sáci, 192
sáciva-, 161
sátagvín-, 216
sátatama-, 263
sātām, 13, 24, 73, 104, 262
śalaśās, 263, 281
śātru-, 223
śatīta-, 171
śad-, 102
śānakai, 282
śāntā, 173
śāntivā-, 187
śāpāthā-, 196
śāphā-, 71, 197, 393
śāphara-, 22
śām-, 321
śām, 123
śāma-, 40
śāmi, 177, 192
śāmi, 192
śayu-, 182
śayutrā, 132, 280
śārād-, 74, 198
śārabhā-, 25
śāru-, 180
śārāna-., 77
śārdhānya-, 214
śārvā-, 186
śārvdri, 142
śalākbā-, 198
śalākā-, 27
śalka(la), 386
śalayakrntā-, 214
śāvasānā-, 155
śāvasān-, 143
śāvasṭ-, 164
śaśā-, 99
śaśayā-, 145, 186
śaśtyā-, 145, 186
śaśvānt-, 145, 186
śaspa-, 395
śas-, 99, 290, 292
śasrā-, 137
śā-, 322–3, 331
śākara-, 22
śākinā-, 132
śākvarā-, 148
śākhā, 72, 191, 393
śāni, 87
śaṇi-, 168
śāpa-, 22
śārdūla-, 375
śās-, 94, 99, 320
śastra-, 137
śīkvā-, 186
śīkvan-, 186, 227
śīkvas-, 160, 223
śītā-, 106, 189
śiśhirā-, 46, 149
śiśīlā-, 46, 149
śīpṛā, 40
śīphā-, 191
śīras-, 87, 133, 158, 221, 227
śiśaṁīvā-, 218
śiśaya-, 106
śiśu-, 187
śiśnā-, 292
śīghra-, 198
śīloṣṇa-, 219
śībham, 198
śīrṣān-, 87, 227, 234
śukrā-, 148
śuklā-, 148
śuc-, 291, 321
śucā-, 124–5
śucādrātha-, 215
śucāmāna-, 369
śucī-, 186, 204, 230, 245
śucīvatā-, 171
śunā-, 40, 93
śunḍhyā-, 187
śubh-, 291, 331
śubhra-, 157
śubhn-, 142
śusukvanā-, 152
śusukvānī-, 157
śusruvās-, 161
śūka-, 80, 100, 197
śuṣmāya-, 186
śū-, 291, 331
śūka-, 25–6
śūdrā-, 40
śūnyā-, 74
śūra-, 148
śūsā-, 163
śūña-, 198
śrūvānt-, 368
śr.-, 326
śoka-, 124-5
śocī-, 177
śocīṣ-, 160, 177
śobhāse, 159
śoṣa-, 103
śauṭīra-, 387
śmath-, 292, 321
śmaśṛu-, 77, 99, 178
śmaśrumā-, 149
śmaśrulā-, 149
śyāmā-, 22, 175, 186
śyāvā-, 22, 175, 186
śyeta-, 40, 161
śyenā-, 82
śyēni, 167
śrath-, 292, 363
śratharāltī, 129, 362
śraddāhā-, 15
śraddhāvā-, 187
śram-, 331
śrāvana-, 109, 152
śrāvas-, 73, 83, 158
śravāyya-, 372
śri-, 83, 291, 337
śru-, 22, 110, 111, 290-1, 293, 301, 324, 341, 359, 361
śrutā-, 103, 110, 111, 116, 167, 370
śrūtya-, 371
śrūṣ-, 290
śrūṣṭīvān-, 142
śrēṇi-, 157
śreniśās, 281
śreyas-, 228
śrōṇā-, 152
śrōṇi-, 73, 83, 157
śrōtra-, 137
śrōmata-, 138
śrōṣamāna-, 77
ślaksṇā-, 83, 99, 153
śliṣ-, 99
śleṣmān-, 99
śleṣmanā-, 148
ślesmalā-, 149
ślokā-, 84, 197
ślonā-, 152
śvān-, 73, 141, 222, 375
śvanin-, 143
śvābhra-, 136
śvāśura-, 77, 99, 149
śvaśrū-, 192, 253
śvas-, 190, 321
śvās, 279
śvī-, 291
śvīt-, 22, 291
śvīticī-, 197
śvītina-, 151
śvītrā-, 148
śvetanā, 129, 148
śvetra-, 129
śvāṣṭāri, 129
śāl, 100, 260
śadāhā, 95
śaṭti-, 261
śaṭṭitama-, 263
śaṭṭhā-, 262
śōdāsa, 260
śōdhā, 95
sā, 268 ff.
sanvatsara-, 150
samskṛta-, 1
saktī, 258
saktu-, 170
saktihi, 177, 234
saktā-, 163
sakṣāni-, 157
sākhī-, 111, 137, 180, 181, 185, 196, 223, 230
sakhyā-, 137, 180
sakhitvānā-, 171
sakhiyāti, 363
sagh-, 291
samgamā, 125
sac-, 77, 93, 109, 295, 329
sacātha-, 196
sācā, 194, 286
sāci, 177, 185
sacive-, 187
saj-, 322
sattarā-, 90, 137
satyā-, 185
satyātāti-, 173
salyavadīn-, 213
salyānārā-, 218
salyāvan-, 142
sāvan-, 28, 145
svatvā, 152
svatvānt-, 145
sad-, 88, 94, 109, 178, 329, 335–6, 342, 359
sādana-, 138
sadandī-, 198
sādam, 174
sādas-, 109, 158
sādā, 194
sadāpyāñā-, 214
sadīvās, 179
sādman-, 131, 142, 174
sadmān-, 142
sadyās, 279
sadhāsthā-, 88
sādiḥś-, 197
san-, 111, 325, 360
sāna-, 68, 102, 126
sanakā-, 197
sanaj-, 198
sanat, 166
sanaya-, 186
sānara-, 136
sānāt, 233, 283
sānātāna-, 153
sāni-, 179
sanitūr, 278
sānitva-, 171
sanītyā-, 130
sanisyāti, 189
sanisyū-, 189
sānular-, 190
sanuār, 132, 150, 278
sānutara-, 150
sannatara-, 115
sānyas-, 161
sap-, 40, 129
sapadi, 283
saparyāti, 40, 129, 362
saptā, 104, 173, 259, 260
saptāta-, 261
saptathā-, 262
saptamā-, 176, 260, 262
sāptī-, 169
sapsara-, 150
sabardūgh-, 128
sām, 285, 287
sama-, 272, 275
samā-, 258
samanā, 191
sāmanā-, 138
sāmanas-, 258
samām, 285
samāyā, 285
samāha, 275, 281
samānā-, 155, 258
samit-, 165, 168
sāmiti-, 168
samipe, 286
samuṣyālā-, 149
samrājñi, 194
sar-, 81, 291
sarāgh-, 198
saranyāti, 362
sarātham, 285
sarasī, 164
sarit-, 166, 291
sarirā-, 149
sārgā-, 79
sarpīṣ-, 83, 160
sārma-, 176
sārva-, 187, 275
INDEX

sarvátas, 167
sarvátáti(-), 173
sarvadá, 280
sarvanánman-, 48
sarvavedasá-, 216
sarsa[pa]-, 380, 398
sá[li]-, 149
sá[ilíva]-, 171
sávyá-, 21
saścát-, 165
sas-, 40, 319, 322
sasthávan-, 149
sasvár-, 130, 279
sasvártá, 194
sah-, 78, 360
sahá, 281, 285
sáhadhuyá, 198, 365
sáhas-, 158
sahasáñá-, 155
sahasra-, 262
sahasraśás, 281
sáhuri-, 157
sa[hobhári-, 213
sáhyas-, 161
sáhyu-, 187
sá-, 85, 106, 291, 331
sákám, 285
sákhá, 283
sádhá-, 78
sá[li-, 87, 111
sá[tá-, 365
sádá-, 125
sádh-, 324
sádhú-, 182, 324
sánas-, 164
sánu, 178–9, 200, 247–8
sá[ná-, 22
sámaná-, 135
sámi-, 102, 279
sámanvípra-, 214
sámidheni, 152
sárdhám, 285
sává-, 125
sáhá-, 126
sáhvas-, 140, 343
si- (see also sá-), 189, 291
sic-, 292–3, 330, 335
síla-, 41
sítá-, 106, 189
síníhu-, 72, 88, 180, 197
simá-, 275
sín, 268
símán-, 134
símánta-, 153
símiká, 385
su-, 289, 323
sutarman-, 27
súvan, 142
sunvánt-, 222
sunváná-, 369
súpíá-, 75
sumánas-, 137, 203, 230
sumná-, 152
sumnáyá, 282
súyasás-, 216
sura-, 41
súrá, 25, 156, 191
surungá, 387
suvásas-, 122
susíšvi-, 187
súsíhu, 284
sú-, 320, 342
súlá-, 167
súlave, 171
súlu-, 170
sátara-, 137
súri-, 157
súnu-, 68, 104, 158, 233,
245 ff., 251
súrya-, 29, 83, 185
súryatejas-, 215
súrmi, 176, 192
súkvan-, 130
súkvin-, 131, 177
srj-, 78, 329
sri-, 157, 185
srñi, 192
sénya-, 185
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDEX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>styāna- , 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sthag- , 68, 71-2, 76, 329, 393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sthāpati- , 169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sthāla- , 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sthā-, 71-2, 103, 106, 107, 190, 298, 322, 329, 330, 334, 343, 358-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sthātar , 132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sthātār- , 139, 206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sthātrā- , 137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sthāvanā- , 148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sthāvarā- , 148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sthitā- , 106, 189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sthitā- , 106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sthirā- , 106, 149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sthānā- , 98, 157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sthīrā- , 148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sthūlā- , 148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sthūlabhā- , 198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sthēman- , 106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sthēyas- , 106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snā- , 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snātvā , 172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snāyu- , 178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snāvan- , 130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snihiti- , 106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snuṣā- , 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snuh- , 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spās- , 81, 92, 123, 221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spūrdhāse , 159, 226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spr- , 292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sprāh- , 292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sprś- , 329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spṛh- , 292, 331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spṛhā- , 191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sphaṭika- , 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sphịū- , 192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sphịū- , 198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sphirā- , 149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sphaṭa- , 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sphiṅga- , 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sphiṅj- , 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sphyā- , 71, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sma , 284</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| srivan- , 142                                                       |
| srivarā- , 148                                                     |
| sṛp- , 68, 84, 295, 329                                             |
| sṛmarā- , 149                                                     |
| sṛṣṭā- , 78                                                        |
| sētu- , 25, 170                                                     |
| sēnā- , 4, 157, 252                                                |
| sevā- , 191                                                         |
| sairibha- , 375                                                   |
| sodhā- , 78                                                         |
| sólari- , 365                                                      |
| sóltu- , 170                                                        |
| sóma- , 4, 176                                                      |
| somán- , 143                                                        |
| somapāvan- , 213                                                   |
| somasutī- , 212                                                    |
| somyā- , 185                                                       |
| saumanasā- , 137, 201                                               |
| saumyā- , 199                                                     |
| skabk- , 326                                                        |
| shad- , 81                                                          |
| stan- , 106, 321, 328, 330                                            |
| stāna- , 100                                                        |
| stanayihīnu- , 81, 106, 158, 189                                       |
| stanasyāti- , 362                                                   |
| stanitā- , 189                                                    |
| stabhūyāti- , 363                                                  |
| stār- , 140                                                          |
| stari- , 192                                                        |
| stāyānt- , 81                                                       |
| stāyū- , 81                                                        |
| stigh- , 40, 69, 76                                                   |
| stīrṇā- , 291                                                        |
| stu- , 94, 292, 320                                                   |
| stūkā- , 198                                                          |
| stūt- , 124, 165                                                        |
| stuti- , 169                                                        |
| stubh- , 292                                                          |
| stubhīvān- , 142                                                      |
| stūpā- , 198                                                        |
| stṛ- , 291, 323-4                                                   |
| stēnā- , 81, 151                                                   |
| stotrā- , 137                                                        |
| stōma- , 176                                             |
| smât, 279 | hántar-, 284 |
| syd, 270, 272–3 | hántavai, 171 |
| syand-, 72, 88, 197, 292 | hántos, 171 |
| syûman-, 131, 134 | hántva-, 172 |
| syonâ-, 40, 152 | hánman-, 134 |
| srâms-, 137, 360 | hâras-, 40, 78, 158 |
| srâgvin-, 144 | hâri-, 139 |
| srâj-, 198 | harî-, 166 |
| srâvât-, 165 | hârita-, 166–7 |
| srâvâtha-, 196 | harinâ-, 152 |
| srâstara-, 137 | hârînî, 167 |
| srâmâ-, 22, 176 | harimân-, 134 |
| sru-, 84, 291, 328 | harimantha-, 387 |
| srutâ-, 168 | harmuâta-, 150 |
| sruti-, 169 | harmyâ-, 150 |
| sruvâ-, 186 | hary-, 40 |
| srîtas-, 118, 159 | háva-, 125 |
| sv-, 141, 268 | hávana-, 110 |
| svâdhävan-, 142 | havirâd-, 213 |
| svan-, 290, 328 | havirâdyâ-, 180 |
| svap-, 190, 202, 321, 343 | haviâ, 160, 193, 253 |
| svapânas-, 151 | háviman-, 135 |
| svâpna-, 46, 75 | hávyâ-, 185 |
| svâpnayâ, 282 | hávyâ-, 87 |
| svayâm-, 268 | hávyavâh-, 221 |
| svar-, 290 | hala-, 380 |
| svarâ-, 129, 226 | hâlikâna-, 153 |
| svarita-, 115 | has-, 109 |
| svaru-, 180 | hasanâ, 157 |
| svâvas-, 228 | hásta-, 74 |
| svâsar-, 19, 25, 203, 234, 243 | hástakrta-, 214 |
| svâdîshâ-, 162 | hastin-, 375 |
| svâdû-, 103, 182 | hasrâ-, 147 |
| svâduksådman-, 213 | hâ-, 290, 322–3, 361 |
| svâdman-, 131, 134 | hâs-, 290 |
| svâdmân-, 134 | hâtaka-, 97 |
| ha, 384 | hârdi, 177 |
| hamsâ-, 102, 163 | hâsa-, 109 |
| hatâ-, 104, 110, 168 | hi-, 324 |
| han-, 32, 70, 75, 78–9, 110–1, | hî, 284 |
| 319, 343, 355, 360 | hîmsâ, 191 |
| hânu-, 180 | hîmsîtavyâ-, 371 |
| | hîlâ-, 70 |
| | hîtû, 372 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page references</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hintála</td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hinu</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>himá</td>
<td>32, 73, 175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>himá</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hiranya</td>
<td>4, 25, 87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hiranyakesya</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hiranyáya</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hiranyarathá</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>híd</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hu</td>
<td>322, 360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hudukka</td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huvanyúti</td>
<td>362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hū</td>
<td>22, 79, 110, 329, 331, 355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hūtá</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hṛnáya</td>
<td>363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hṛniya</td>
<td>363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hṛttás</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hṛdaya</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hṛdayavidh</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hṛdroga</td>
<td>387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hṛṣ</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hetú</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hēman</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hemaná</td>
<td>73, 103, 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heramba</td>
<td>375, 385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heli</td>
<td>387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hēsa</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>holar</td>
<td>4, 137, 140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hotrvárya</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hotrá</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hōtrā</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hóma</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hóman</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horā</td>
<td>387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hyās</td>
<td>82, 279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hyastana</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hradá</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hrasvá</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hrádúni</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hṛi</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hrút</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hvar</td>
<td>323</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>